BIOLOGISKE

MEDDELELSER

UDGIVET AF

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB

BIND 21

KØBENHAVN

I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD

1949—53

INDHOLD

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 1

STUDIES ON THE SAPROPELIC FLORA OF THE LAKE FLYNDERSØ WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE OSCILLATORIACEAE

BY

TYGE W. BÖCHER

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

Printed in Denmark.
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

1. Introduction.

Foul mud at the bottom of the small brackish-water lagoon Flyndersø in N.W. Zealand has been examined. Among the large number of different organisms found in the mud particularly the *Oscillatoriaceae* attracted the writer's attention, among them some species that were yellowish green, thus of quite a different colour from other *Cyanophyceae*. Both Lauterborn (1915) and Geitler (1932) mention the yellowish green forms and discuss their peculiarities.

The samples of foul mud were examined partly immediately after being collected, partly after standing over. The latter procedure proved to be profitable because after a prolonged standing over under suitable conditions it was possible to obtain a rapid growth and multiplication particularly of the blue-green algae. The *Oscillatoriae* might develop very vigorously and form a dense coating over the mud. The best culture conditions were obtained by filling long narrow glasses with foul mud, saturating the mud with water, stoppering the glasses, and placing them on a window-sill, or a little mud might be put into a tall narrow glass, which was filled up with water, and then a glass lid was put over its neck. It was evident that a good development of the blue-green algae was tantamount to putrefactive bacteria not developing. In some of the glasses these from the start got the upper hand and here there was only a scanty development of *Oscillatoriae* and the like. In the best cultures, which were examined at intervals for more than two years, the flora changed somewhat. In one of the glasses the yellowish-green *Oscillatoriaceae* at first were predominant, later the purple sulphur bacteria took the lead. The possibility of making prolonged observations under cover-glass was of great importance for the investigations. A number of organisms could live in a little mud stirred into water or simply in water under a large cover-glass closed at the edge, in the best way by means of paraffin oil. Several good preparations could be used for 4—6 months, *Oscillatoriae*, *Flagellates*, and certain of the bacteria being motile during the whole of this period. It was tried without success to isolate and cultivate the species by transfer to a sterile nutrient solution (Benecke solution with or without the addition of sugar or peptone) or a sterilized diluted decoction of the foul mud. Not either in the cases when these nutrient media were used under anaerobic culture conditions it was possible to make the plants grow and multiply.

2. Ecological Conditions in Flynderso.

Flyndersø is an alkaline shallow brackish-water lake only separated from the sea by a rather narrow isthmus covered with vegetation. Sig. Olsen (1944, p. 20) states the pH of the water to be 7.6 (7.2—8.6), total hardness 9.0 (German degrees) and the contents of salt 590 mg chloride per litre. The lake in most places is surrounded by a reed-swamp of *Phragmites*, *Scirpus Tabernaemontani* or in some places of *Cladium mariscus*. Towards the land the surrounding vegetation bears the character of a spring fen with abundant *Juncus subnodulosus*. Many large stones rise above the surface of the water. Below they are surrounded by a white zone of chalk formed by the blue-green algae at a time when the surface of the water in the lake was a little higher. At present there is at and immediately below the water-level most frequently a zone of *Dichothrix gelatinosa* vegetation with a heavy incrustation of chalk (cf. Böcher 1946). There is no vegetation of plants with floating leaves and the rooting vascular hydrophytes are very scattered; but there are well developed communities of *Characeae* (*Chara contraria*, *hispida*, *polyacantha* and *aspera*, and *Tolypella glomerata* according to Sig. Olsen), particularly where the bottom is softest. The eastern part of the lake is cut through by a dam. Near this the soft layer of mud is particularly thick, viz. 15—30, rarely 40 cm, and is here covered by 20—50 cm water. The lower part of the mud contains comparatively much sand and less organic matter, whereas the upper part is mainly of organic origin. The mud is calciferous and effervesces at acid being added. The contents of oxygen and hydrogen sulphide in the mud is of great interest. In the mud gases are developed which fairly often rise to the surface as bubbles. These mainly consist of hydrogen sulphide. A quick bubbling may be started by thrusting a stick into the mud a few times. This is due to the fact that a

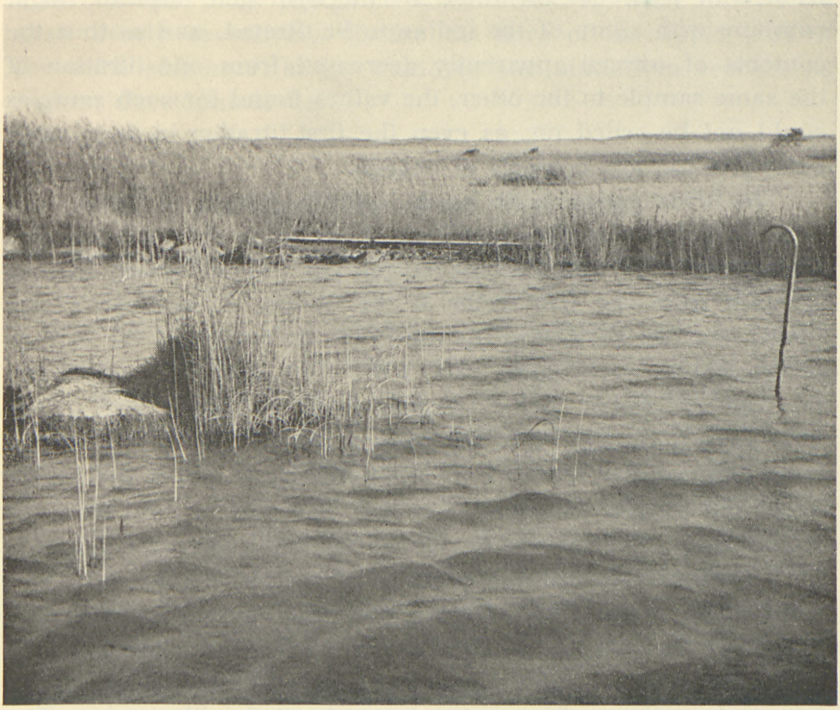


Fig. 1. The lake Flyndersø near Rørvig in Zealand. The stick on the right has been stuck through the mud on the firm sandy bottom. The lake is cut through by a narrow, low dam, part of which is seen. Near the dam on the left *Phragmites communis*. Beside the stone jutting out in the foreground *Scirpus Tabernaemontani*. T.W.B. phot. Oct. 1944.

rather dense surface layer is often formed which keeps back the air. The organisms living in the mud no doubt are exposed to the effect of hydrogen sulphide dissolved in the water. Under such conditions the contents of oxygen must be very low. In order to have this problem elucidated some analyses were made by means of WINKLER's oxygen titration.

Mud or water was sucked up in a tube and transfered to 3 bottles of 15 cm^3 and with ground glass stoppers. Only the middle part of the contents of the tube, which had not been in touch with the air, was used. Then, before closing, manganous chloride and caustic soda were added. During the titration the addition of hydrochloric acid in some of the samples caused a vigorous development of hydrogen sulphide, probably originating from iron pyrite in the mud. As the hydrogen sulphide might combine with some of the iodine to be titrated, and as thus the contents of oxygen apparently decreased from one titration of the same sample to the other, the values found for such samples could not be relied on, as even the first titration in these cases must give too low contents of oxygen.

The investigations were made in the beginning of October. In three samples of surface water (3—5 cm below the surface) were found 1.30, 1.29, and 1.18 mg oxygen per 100 cm^3 water. In four samples from the free water at the bottom or between Chara plants near the surface of the mud (15—30 cm below the surface of the water) were found 1.09, 1.07, 1.00, and 0.68 mg oxygen per 100 cm^3 water. Three samples from the upper part of the mud gave 0.31, 0.02, 0.00 mg oxygen per 100 cm^3 water. In the latter two samples, however, a little hydrogen sulphide developed, hence the oxygen values are too low. Samples of mud from the lowermost part of the mud developed too much hydrogen sulphide for a determination of the quantity of oxygen. It may, however, simply be assumed that there are very small quantities of oxygen present in these layers, as the accumulation of iron pyrite is due to the activities of strictly anaerobic bacteria. At the prevailing temperature the surface water was saturated with oxygen. The decrease in the oxygen value with increasing depth is not even, as immediately above the surface of the mud there are values of about 1 mg, while there is only 0.3 mg or less in the upper part of the mud.

The vegetation in the lowermost part of the mud is very sparse. By microscopy one chiefly comes across bacteria, some animal flagellates, and very few diatoms and blue-green algae, but the uppermost part of the mud, which is in the light, there is a fairly rich flora. It is particularly rich where the layer of mud is very soft and thick. Sampling from different places in the lake, from the middle, where there is a thin layer of mud, and from the dense Chara sociations nearer to the shores or from reed-swamps or the surroundings of the dam, where there is deep, soft mud, gives widely different results. In several samples from the middle no blue-green algae developed at all, only green and purple sulphur bacteria and a very large spirillum. No doubt the thin layer of mud is less rich in nutritious matter, and also contains more inorganic constituents. In what follows we shall nearly exclusively discuss the flora of the upper part of the thick soft mud, as the characteristic mud flora reaches its highest development here.

3. The Flora of the Foul Mud.

Introductorily it should be remarked that the following list of the flora cannot be considered exhaustive. In the first place I have found that by examining fresh samples there is always a chance of finding new organisms, secondly my expert knowledge is not so great that I have been able to determine all the vegetable organisms I have come across. Some of these, in fact, were too sparse to permit a closer determination. I have particularly taken pains to have the characteristic species determined and among them the *Oscillatoriae* are in an absolute majority. The list of bacteria is very defective, as nearly only the groups of sulphur bacteria and *Spirochaetales* have been considered. Mr. Erik G. Jørgensen, M.Sc., has kindly examined the diatomaceous flora of a single sample.

Cyanophyta.

1. *Microcystis elabens* Kütz. Very common, in some places forms green coatings over the mud. Survives in the culture glasses and multiples quickly also in old cultures. No doubt indigenous to the mud.

2. *Microcystis marginata* (Menegh) Kütz. In a single sample, no doubt an accidental visitor to the mud vegetation.

3. *Microcystis parasitica* Kütz. A few small colonies in some of the samples. Also observed by Hayrén (1944) in Oscillatorietum.

4. *Microcystis pulvera* (Wood) Forti. Small colonies in a single sample.

5. *Aphanocapsa pulchra* (Kütz) Rabenh. Several colonies in a single sample.

6. *Aphanocapsa* cp. *litoralis* var. *macrococca* Hansg. In one of the samples an *Aphanocapsa* was observed, which from its size and other qualities should, if anything, be referred to the variety mentioned. *A. litoralis* is a halophilous species. Among freshwater species with cells of about 8 μ like *A. lit. macrococca* hardly any but *A. Roeseana* may be considered, but this species has broadly oval, pale blue-green cells, whereas the species found

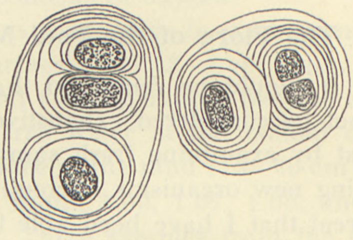


Fig. 2. *Gloeothece* cf. *rupestris* (Lyngbye) Bornet, probably a variety or form with small cells from sample of foul mud from Flyndersø $\times$ 800.

by me had spherical, deeply blue-green cells. *A. litoralis* was found in sapropelic vegetation by Hayrén (1944).

7. *Gloeocapsa granosa* (Berk) Kütz. In mucus among sulphur bacteria and *Chroococcus*. Observed a few times.

8. *Gloeocapsa dermochroa* Näg. This species is not indigenous to the foul mud. It preferably grows on the stones in the lake, but it was found in mucus among other *Chroococcaceae* from a sample taken near the stones in the dam across the lake. Undoubtedly an accidental visitor.

9. *Gloeothece* cf. *rupestris* (Lyngbye) Bornet. In mucus among other algae, perhaps also a fairly accidental visitor. It multiplied quickly in the surface of the mud in one of the old culture glasses. Obviously it cannot endure the strongly anaerobic conditions farther down in the mud. The cells were at most 9 μ in length and 5.5 μ in breadth, the contents of the cells were very granular and the integuments round the cells very distinct, cf. fig. 2. As the cells generally did not exceed 8.8 μ in length, I have referred it to *G. rupestris* with some hesitation. It may be a variety or a modification of *G. rupestris* with small cells. A referring to *G. membranacea* cannot, however, be excluded.

10. *Chroococcus turgidus* (Kütz.) Näg. in a form which without integuments is 10—14 μ in breadth with a very distinct formation of integuments as in *C. tenax*. Abundant in all samples. Undoubtedly indigenous to the surface of the mud. It was also abundant in old cultures.

11. *Chroococcus minutus* (Kütz.) Näg. A few single specimens in some samples. Also found in foul mud by Hayrén (1921).

12. *Chroococcus limneticus* Lemm. Plankton alga, which may be found accidentally, perhaps dying, in the surface of the mud.

13. *Gomphosphaeria aponina* Kütz. Abundant in fresh samples, particularly in the surface of the mud. Survives and multiplies in the culture glasses, also in two year old cultures. There can be no doubt that this species, which otherwise lives as a plankton organism, is indigenous to the mud.

14. *Eucapsis alpina* Clements & Shantz. A few colonies in one of the samples. Cells 5.5—6 μ in breadth. — var. *minor* was observed by Hayrén growing on bottom mud.

15. *Synechococcus Cedrorum* Sauvageau. In mucus among *Oscillatoriae* and *Pseudanabaena* there were in several samples some peculiar ellipsoidal cells, blue-green, but rather pale. Generally the cells stuck together by twos (fig. 3), but the bicellular groups were apt to form irregular lumps or coenobia (fig. 3*g*) in the mucus. These coenobia had never any independent mucous integuments. Often the cells showed a clear division between centro- and chromoplasm (fig. 3f). Movements were not observed with certainty, not even in cells detached from the mucus. But in some cases a polar formation of often very large gas vacuoles (fig. 3*a*—*c*) was observed. The cells are 3—4 μ in breadth and 4—7 μ in length, which agrees with the description of *S. Cedrorum*, a species which has elsewhere been found i. a. in stagnant water. The similarity between the organism found and bicellular stages of species of *Pseudanabaena* is remarkable and will be mentioned below on p. 43.

16. *Synechocystis minuscula* Woron. In the same places as the preceding species a great many pale blue-green spherical cells were found, about 2—2.5 μ in diameter and with a thin, hyaline membrane. Sometimes they stuck together by twos, but they were generally more inclined to part after division (see fig. 3*h*) than was the case of *Synechococcus Cedrorum*. The size of the cell

corresponds to that of *S. minuscula* and the pale-green colour may be due to the special environment. The species is otherwise reported from a salt-spring in the Caucasus. In one of the preparations in which this organism occurred, there were two cases of chain-formation in which the cells stuck together. In one case there were 17 cells in the chain (fig. 3*h*), in the other 24 cells. One of the terminal cells in the chain with 17 had a gas vacuole.

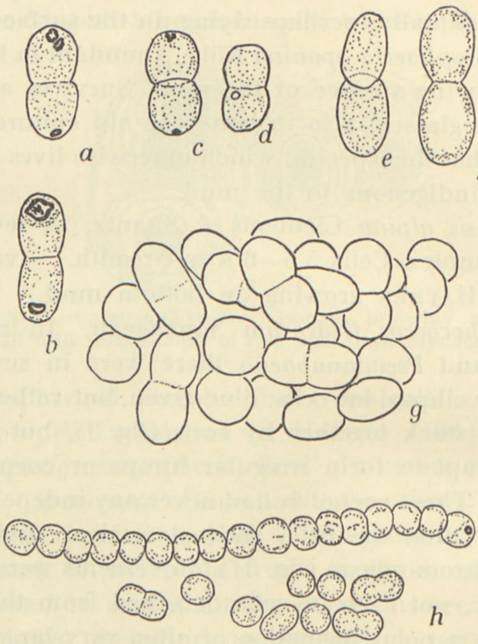


Fig. 3. *a—g Synechococcus Cedrorum*, *a—c* individuals with gas vacuoles, *d—f* without vacuoles, *g* coenobium-like collection of bicellular groups. — *h—i Synechocystis minuscula*, in normal cells and bicellular groups, *h* a catenulate collection of cells. All figs. × 1700.

No kind of movement was observed. On the strange chain-formation see below.

17. *Pseudanabaena biceps* Böcher. As to this species reference may be made to the description in Böcher (1946). A few important observations may be added. In a culture glass filled with foul mud the surface near the glass was not, as so frequently, covered by a coating of yellow-green *Oscillatoriae*, but by a dark-green coating which chiefly consisted of *Pseudanabaena biceps* and

a few species of *Oscillatoria*. There was here a formation of a skinlike "lager", which probably is not otherwise found in *Pseudanabaena*, but certainly in *Oscillatoria*. At the transverse walls there were always very distinct red disc-like bodies. In this material they were so large that they could easily be made out to be gas-vacuoles. The cells in *P. biceps* are always rather hyaline and mostly pale in the centre (fig. 4*h*), but in this material a great many individuals had a darker central filament, which often with a somewhat bent or eccentric direction ran through the central axis of the cell. It seemed that the filament continued through the pore-like connexion between the cells. The formation of the filament is undoubtedly a vital process, for the individuals were just as active in their movements as the others. To all appearance it is a special question of cheritomy, as is known from a few other blue-green algae, e. g. *Oscillatoria Borneti* (see on this in Geitler's handbooks). In a few cases it could be observed (fig. 4*k*) that from the axial filament some lateral filaments branched off, and these generally led to cyanophycin granules, which nearly always were very close to the filament. In the cytologically different individual depicted in fig. 4*l* the uppermost cell has an axial filament and in connexion with it both cyanophycin and gas vacuoles. In the material this type of cytologically deviating individuals was very rare. They were interesting by highly supporting the hypothesis about a closer connexion between gas vacuoles and cyanophycin granules advanced by Cannabaeus (1929). The gas vacuoles in the deviating individuals were abnormally placed and near or close to them the refractive, mostly rounded granules were found. In the individuals with an axial filament it was not easy to decide whether there was also parietal plasma. Several observations would seem to indicate that this was so. In connexion with the axial filament it should be mentioned that in preparations treated according to the ordinary technique of staining bacteria with desiccation and staining with carbol-fuchsin, pictures of *P. biceps* like fig. 4*i* were obtained. The cells have shrunk as a result of the treatment, but the connective area has been drawn out as if into a fine thread. The whole filament seemed to be bedded in a slightly stained mucus. The possibility cannot be excluded that the organism is run through by a plasmatic filament which is

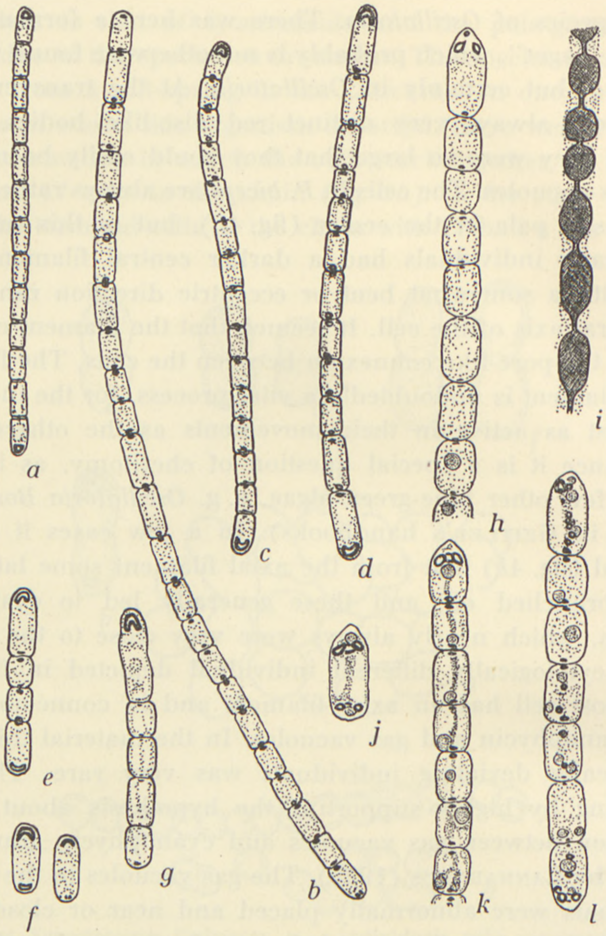


Fig. 4. *a—g Pseudanabaena galeata, a* a small variety of the species, *b* an individual with small gas vacuoles in the terminal cells, *f* unicellular "hormogonia". — *h—l Pseudanabaena biceps, i* stained with carbol fuchsin, *j* unicellular "hormogonium", *k* an individual presumably with cheritomy, *l* an individual with abnormal placing of the gas vacuoles. All figs. × 1700.

only visible under certain conditions. The connective filament between the cells, which is seen in fig. 4*i*, has a striking similarity to protoplasmatic filaments connecting the cells of *Streptococci* when these are observed in an electron microscope at 20,000 times' magnification, see fig. 261 in Frobisher (1946). The central plasmatic filament might be supposed to be of importance for the movement of the filaments, which may here be characterized as a sliding to and fro, often by small starts and sometimes rather quickly, but without a rotation round the longitudinal axis as in most species of *Oscillatoria*.

18. *Pseudanabaena galeata* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 1.4—2.2 *μ latae,* 2—5 *(7) μ longae ad genicula inter se plus minusve rotundatae; ambae terminales plerumque ceteris dissimiles, vacuolo aerico magno fornicato galeatae. Septis utrobique vacuolum aericum minus appositum. Chromoplasma a centroplasmate nonnumquam manifesto discretum. Fila* 1—30 *cellularum observata, fluenter lapsa progredientia. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

This alga (fig. 4 *b*—*g*) was found partly as single individuals in the same samples as the preceding species, partly in samples without *P. biceps* and then in larger quantities. It is clearly distinct from *P. biceps* by the terminal gas vacuoles, which formed a hood or dome. In some individuals in which the terminal gas vacuoles were in process of development it could be observed that they begin as circular vacuoles. These, however, have a smaller diameter and are closer to the end of the cell than in case of *P. biceps*. During growth the vacuoles change and become galeate, sometimes nearly hemispherical. It is also distinct from *P. biceps* by the terminal cells never being acuminate, but rounded. The gas vacuoles at the transverse walls are also somewhat larger in *P. biceps* than in *P. galeata*. The species further is clearly distinct from *P. catenata* by the very specially equipped terminal cells and the gas vacuoles at the transverse walls.

There is no doubt that the specimens depicted in fig. 4 *d* and *g* represent some of the broadest-celled within the species, and most probably fig. 4 *c* is a typical narrow-celled individual. It is a question which must be left unanswered for the time being whether the still narrower filaments in the material with a breadth of 1.1—1.2 *μ* (see fig. 4 *a*) belong to the same species. If so, *P. galeata* as compared with *P. biceps* has a very great width of variation. I am most inclined to think that the thin filaments a little more than 1 *μ* in breadth belong to a particular species or a variety of *P. galeata*. This new species or variety also distinguishes itself by having very small, often nearly invisible gas vacuoles at the transverse walls and by being less constricted at these.

Both of the *Pseudanabaena* species mentioned multiply by the filaments breaking into a number of pieces. In so far as these consist of several cells, they may simply be termed hormogonia. The parts, as already mentioned in the case of *P. biceps*, however, are often unicellular and such parts may hardly be defined as hormogonia. They are able to move, mostly slowly or by small starts. They might perhaps be termed planococci. As, however, they do not differ from the hormogonia except in the number of cells, it would after all be more advisable to term them unicellular hormogonia (fig. 4*f* and *j*). They are at any rate very interesting from the point of view of cell physiology. It often seems to be terminal cells that are detached. One end of the cells thus is equipped in the way characteristic of terminal cells while the other end often is not equipped like this. Soon after the detachment of the cell the conditions of polarity seem to change. From being built with two polarly opposite ends, the cell gradually becomes uniform at both ends, but this does not mean that it ceases being polarly built. The difference now manifests itself as a difference between the distal parts and the median part of the cell. When this part after a cell-division becomes the two non-terminal parts of a bicellular hormogonium, these parts appear clearly different from the terminal parts of the two cells.

The formation of hormogonia was particularly frequent in the mucus between other algae. Hormogonia with any number of cells could be found, but it was actually, as in other *Oscillatoriaceae*, impossible to distinguish the hormogonia from other filaments.

19. *Pseudanabaena catenata* Lauterb. Observed here and there in several samples, seems never to have had any gas vacuoles.

20. *Spirulina maior* Kütz. Observed a few times in some of the samples.

21. *Spirulina* cf. *subtilissima* Kütz. In mucus among other algae and sulphur bacteria a few individuals of a *Spirulina* species were found (fig. 5*f*). They were rather pale green, without visible boundaries between the cells, and the coils were a little more removed from each other than in the typical *S. subtillissima*. Further the coils were not quite regular, for which reason one might also think of relationship with *S. Meneghiniana* Zanard.

Oscillatoria. Some of the most important species of the foul mud belong to this genus. First the blue-green, olive-green, or brownish forms will be mentioned, then the completely or nearly colourless forms, and finally the yellow-green or pale green forms.

22. *Oscillatoria limosa* Ag. Olive-green-brown, cells often 10—14, in some cases 19—22 μ in breadth and 2—2.2 μ in length, granulated at the transverse walls, in some cases, because of the intercalary growth, only at every second transverse wall. Frequent

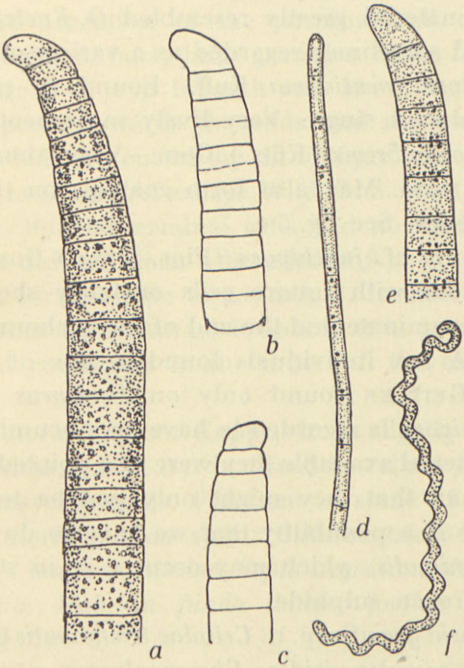


Fig. 5. *a—c Oscillatoria chalybea* (× 800), *d Oscillatoria gracilis* with granules near the almost invisible transverse walls, *e Oscillatoria brevis, f Spirulina subtilissima* (?) (*d—f* × 1700).

in some of the samples. Survives in culture glasses and may here form coatings.

23. *Oscillatoria chalybea* Mertens. This species was not with certainty found in Flyndersø, but in the foul mud in a small lagoon on Skansehage in the neighbourhood. Here it occurred with large quantities of *O. brevis* and *O. profunda* and species of *Beggiatoa*. The cells showed the measures characteristic of

O. chalybea and the filaments were slightly constricted at the transverse walls. At the ends they were tapering somewhat more than is usually stated of the species, further the colour was different by being olive-green. Hence it may be a variety of *O. chalybea*, cf. further fig. 5 a—e.

24. *Oscillatoria tenuis* Ag. In many samples from Flyndersø very abundant, particularly in the surface of the mud. Both var. *natans* Gom. and var. *tergestina* Rabenh. were observed.

25. *Oscillatoria amphibia* Ag. A few filaments in one of the samples. The material greatly resembled *O. Kuetzingiana* Nag., which is indeed sometimes regarded as a variety of *O. amphibia*.

26. *Oscillatoria acutissima* Kuff. Found in practically all samples, but always single. Very lively movements.

27. *Oscillatoria brevis* (Kütz.) Gom. Very abundant on the surface of the mud. May also form coatings on the surface in the culture glasses. See fig. 5 e.

28. *Oscillatoria* cf. *janthipora* (Fior.-Mazz.) Gom. Filaments 6—8 μ in breadth with square cells or fairly short cells. The terminal cells acuminate and the end of the trichome bent almost like a sickle. A few individuals found in one of the samples. According to Geitler found only on *Hydrurus foetidus* near Rome. *O. janthipora* is recorded to have very acuminate terminal cells. In the material available they were also pointed, but perhaps no more so than that they might only just be termed "spitz-kegelig". There is a possibility that we have to do with a "var. *crassa*" of *O. animalis*, which may occur e. g. in stagnant water containing hydrogen sulphide.

29. *Oscillatoria gracilis* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 0.7—1 μ *latae*, 2—5 μ *longae, coeruleo-virides. Chromoplasma a centroplasmate nonnumquam distinctum. Septis aegre conspicuis, utrobique interdum granulu minus appositum. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

This very narrow species formed coatings in the upper part of the foul mud in some of the culture glasses and single specimens were found in fresh samples from the surface. It is no doubt closely related to *O. angustissima* W. & G. S. West, but has somewhat broader and longer cells, see figs. 5 *d* and 8 (No. 3). Sometimes it is impossible to discover the transverse walls. In the cases in which the chromoplasm could be distinguished from the centroplasm there were also generally granules at the transverse walls, one granule on each side of the walls. These granules assisted in the discovery of the transverse walls and thus the establishing of the length of the cells.

The following species are very pale and can hardly to any appreciable degree take nourishment by photosynthesis. In the material there was further in a single culture glass a strange *Oscillatoria* species, which unfortunately was observed in few specimens. It had an extremely faintly pale yellow plasma, but this, with the exception of the terminal cell contained some spherical blue-green, fairly large granules, about four in each cell. The cells were 7—8 μ in breadth and about 4 μ in length. The trichomas tapered towards the ends and the terminal cell was broadly rounded and cut off by an oblique wall. Thus it looked like the species *O. subproboscidea* W. & G. S. West described from the Antarctic, but the terminal cells had no thickened wall and the trichomes did not reach a breadth of 9 μ. Of course I cannot decide if this form is able to assimilate. It showed lively movements like other *Oscillatoriae*. Probably it is a modification due to the special conditions in the mud (cf. the experiments with *O. putrida*).

30. *Oscillatoria angusta* Koppe, from slightly bluish to completely colourless, 0.8—1.2 μ in breadth, cells 6 μ in length with indistinct transverse walls. Frequent in some of the samples.

31. *Oscillatoria pallida* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 0.5—0.6 μ *latae,* 2.5—3 μ *longae, pallidae. Septa aegre conspicua. Trichomata valde flexibilia. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

This completely colourless, very narrow species was observed in numerous samples. Its movements are extremely lively. There is nothing particularly characteristic about its exterior. The terminal cells are broadly rounded; there are no constrictions at the transverse walls, which are often almost invisible.

32. *Oscillatoria profunda* Kirchn. Observed as a pale bluish, almost colourless form, with cells 2 μ in breadth which were 2—3 times as long as broad. The trichomes were not wavy. Frequent in several samples.

33. *Oscillatoria guttulata* van Goor. Cells 2.5—3.3 μ in breadth, 7—9 μ in length, pale blue-green with granulated con-

tents, in some cases with dark granules. These did not show the red interference colour, but very much resembled sulphur granules. The species was observed in two of the samples only, being very frequent in one, cf. fig. 8.

The following species are all more or less yellow-green. There is a possibility that the form already mentioned as reminding of *O. subproboscidea* also belongs to this group, in which case it will be closest related to the marine species *O. laetevirens* and *subuliformis*. The species most thoroughly investigated is *O. putrida*, which because of its great abundance and the breadth of the cells invited experiment.

34. *Oscillatoria putrida* Schmidle. A long-celled species which according to SCHMIDLE (1901) has cells 2 μ in breadth and 8—14 μ in length and 1—3 small glistening granules (gas vacuoles) near each transverse wall. As regards the breadth and the small gas vacuoles my material agrees with the original description, the cells, however, not being so long as those in SCHMIDLE's form. They measured 5—10, mostly 7—8 μ. This difference, however, is hardly greater than allowing to consider my material as a short-celled variety of the species. My material no doubt approaches *O. minima* Gicklhorn, the cells of which, however, does not exceed 6 μ in length and which have not the distinct granules along the walls. My material resembles *O. minima* by the filaments often being fairly regularly spirally coiled and by often having a blue lustre ("blauglanz", cf. GICKLHORN 1921).

O. putrida was kept under observation for four years and proved very constant in the characters mentioned, even though conditions slowly changed in the culture glasses. Only once a form that was narrower than the others and as a rule had only one gas vacuole at the transverse walls was found in an old culture glass (fig. 6*b*). This may be a modification.

In material fixed in NAWASHIN's fluid, hydrolyzed for 20 minutes in normal hydrochloric acid, and stained for 60 minutes according to FEULGEN's method with fuchsin-sulphuric acid a central chromatin apparatus was found in which it was difficult to distinguish details in the form of granules or threads. It was, however, obvious that the chromatin apparatus chiefly consisted of separate bodies or threads and that there was a particular density at the ends of the long cells. It often seemed as if the chromatin was already divided into two sections, and this agrees very well with other observations showing that the long cells very often must be assumed to be dividing and forming a wall in the middle of the cell, only that this wall is not visible until later.

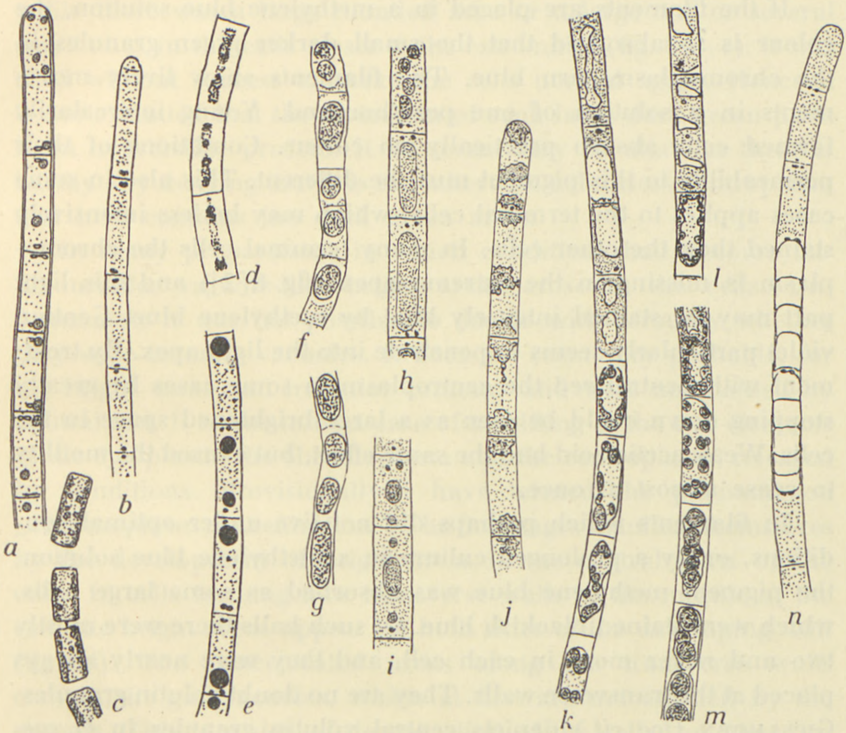


Fig. 6. *Oscillatoria putrida*, *a* cultivated in the dark; yellowish protoplasm with green granules and gas vacuoles near the transverse walls, *b* narrow form from old culture, *c* decay of filament showing plasmodesm, *d* the chromatin apparatus after staining with Feulgen, *e* volutin granules stained with methylene blue, *f*—*g* spore-like dark green bodies developed after preceding chromoplasm concentration, *h*—*i* large central dark green areas (volutin?) after treatment of the cells with H_2S, *j* chromoplasm concentration, *k*—*m* chromoplasm concentration and plasmolysis, *n* nannocyte formation in an otherwise normal motile filament. × 1700.

The chromoplasm is yellow-green with a granulated structure, the granules being small and dark green. According to GICKLHORN yellow-green species in a fluorescence microscope shows the red fluorescence colour of chlorophyll. My material of *O. putrida* in a microspectroscope showed an absorption which nearly corresponded to that of a leaf at light falling through.

The gas vacuoles along the transverse walls are glistening red with interference effect. Centrifugalization does not affect them, but they disappear if 2.5 or 5 per cent. KOH and weak NH_4OH are added, and seem to decrease in size in 4.5 per cent. acetic acid, whereas alcohol does not influence them.

If the filaments are placed in a methylene blue solution, the colour is so absorbed that the small darker green granules in the chromoplasm turn blue. The filaments show lively movements in a solution of one per thousand. Young intercalarily formed cells absorb practically no colour. Conditions of their permeability to this pigment must be different. This also in some cases applies to the terminal cells, which may be less intensively stained than the other cells. In many terminal cells the chromoplasm is missing in the extreme apex (fig. 8[2]) and this light part may be stained intensely blue by methylene blue. Gentian violet particularly seems to penetrate into the light apex. By treatment with neutral red the centroplasm in some cases by greatly stopping down could be seen as a large brightened space in the cells. Weak acetic acid had the same effect, but caused the motility to cease almost at once.

In filaments which perhaps did not live under optimal conditions, or by a prolonged culture in a methylene blue solution, the pigment methylene blue was absorbed as some large balls, which were stained blackish blue. Of such balls there were mostly two and never more in each cell, and they were nearly always placed at the transverse walls. They are no doubt volutin granules. GICKLHORN (*loc. cit.*) depicts central volutin granules in *O. coerulescens*, which has short cells. Perhaps the situation of the volutin granules in *O. putrida* is connected with the more or less bipartite chromatin apparatus. Terminal cells often have no or small volutin granules.

In some preparations which were kept in constant darkness from the 4th of December to the 14th of March and in which the filaments still were very motile, the chromoplasm was faintly yellow, and the cells contained a number of blue-green spherical granules (fig. 6*a*). The similarity to the above-mentioned *O. subproboscidea*-like form was great. It seemed as if the green pigment had preferably concentrated in these granules or drops. The cells were alive and motile. In some other preparations treated in various ways, thus with addition of H_2S to the water, and in which conditions obviously were unfavourable, as the movements of the filaments were slow or had ceased, fairly large dark green rounded areas developed in the middle of the cells. In the middle of the filaments there were several separate parts in each cell, while there was a large rounded area or a large one or several small ones in the cells closer to the extremities (fig. 6*h*—*i*). It was tried without success to make the cells normal again. Hence it is not excluded that the formation of such large dark green parts is an irreversible process. It all seems very peculiar, as there is hardly any denying that it is the otherwise colourless centroplasm that here contains the dark green areas.

In many preparations in which conditions had become unfavourable, vacuole-like bright areas arose in the cells. Unfortunately it was not possible to decide with certainty whether they were actually vacuoles. It does not seem very probable, for the bright areas had irregular contours and were not stained by neutral red. It seems to be a case of a shifting of the two elements of the cytoplasm, the chromoplasm and the centroplasm, released by conditions. Provisionally I have termed the phenomenon „chromoplasm concentration". The first stages manifest themselves by the development of bright areas in the central parts of the cells. In cells forming new transverse walls in the middle of the cell, the bright areas appear on both sides of the developing wall (fig. 6*j*). The concentrated areas along the transverse walls contain the gas vacuoles, which at first are not affected by the process. This is a sign of degeneration of the cells, but they are no doubt still alive. In a filament with chromoplasm concentration which was placed under more favourable conditions the development continued, the concentrated areas being changed into spore-like dark green bodies (fig. 6*g*). Unfortunately an attempt at making these bodies, which remind of the so-called endospores in *Beggiatoa*, develop further proved unsuccessful; hence their nature is obscure. It is more important that cells with chromoplasm concentration can be plasmolyzed. As with plasmolysis experiments with many other blue-green algae, a highly dissimilar behaviour of the cells was observed by treatment with low concentrations of NaCl or KNO_3. In some cells, particularly young ones, the plasma did not or almost not withdraw from the walls. In these cells only bright areas appeared, in others there was a withdrawal and at the same time the chromoplasm concentration was intensified so that the bright portions reached the surface of the plasma and the dark portions were rounded off into some dark green bodies in the same way as described above. With increasing distance from the non-plasmolyzed cells these dark green bodies increased in size (see fig. 6*k—m* and further pp. 38—41).

After many of the treatments to which *O. putrida* was exposed there was at last a breakdown of the filament, the cells coming apart. At the same time the gas vacuoles along the transverse walls disappeared. In some cases a plasmodesm between the cells was discovered (fig. 6*c*).

In a three year old culture glass, in which *O. putrida* throve well, there was a filament in which a formation of nannocytes was observed (see Geitler 1925). Two cells had divided speedily into respectively 4 and 5 small cells (fig. 6*n*). The gas vacuoles of the original cells could still be seen in the space between and at the ends of the two groups. It is very strange that the nannocytes in question had pale blue-green cells without granulated plasma, while the normal cells surrounding them were yellow-green with granulated plasma. The formation of nannocytes has not hitherto been described as regards forms belonging to the *Hormogonales*.

It was tried to cultivate *O. putrida* in water with different concentrations of H_2S. In all experiments the filaments soon degenerated, in a much diluted solution, however, a few filaments were motile up to a week after the start of the experiment. The species undoubtedly will stand weak concentrations of H_2S in nature, but does not seem so resistant to this substance as the yellow-green species *O. coerulescens* examined by Gicklhorn.

Low light intensities have a positive phototropic effect on *O. putrida*, higher intensities a negative effect. This appeared from the distribution of the green coating in the culture glasses when these were placed with onesided illumination of different intensities.

Measurements of the oxygen pressure in the foul mud in culture glasses in which *O. putrida* was abundant, showed that there was here 0.2 cc oxygen per litre or less.

35. *Oscillatoria subtilissima* Kütz. Observed in a form with cells 1 μ in breadth and about 5 μ in length and with indistinct transverse walls. No gas vacuoles; the filament often very slightly undulating with distinct centroplasm. Pale green chromoplasm. Not so lively movements as in the other yellow-green species. Abundant in some of the culture glasses; not observed in fresh samples; see fig. 7*a*—*b*.

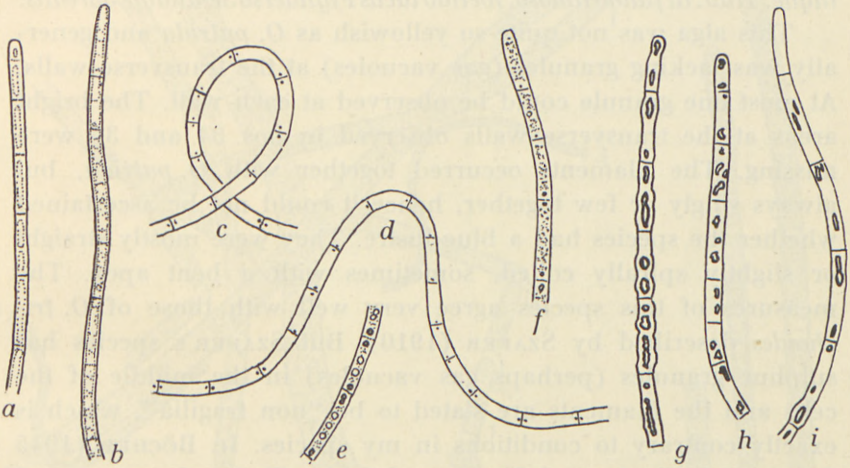


Fig. 7. *a—b Oscillatoria subtilissima, c—f O. mirabilis, g—i O. fulgens.* Gas vacuoles with a thick black contour. × 1700.

36. *Oscillatoria mirabilis* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 1—1.2 μ *latae,* 2.5—5 μ *longae, flavo virides. Septis utrobique vacuolum aericum parvum vel minutum appositum. Trichomata ad* 300—350 μ *longa, recta, motu proprio praedita, sinibus distantibus retro currentibus instructa. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

This organism was found abundantly in preparation from one of the culture glasses and looked extraordinary by having 1—3 displaceable loops or sinuosities on the otherwise quite straight or slightly curved trichomes. The loop developed at the foremost end, and during the forward movement of the trichome was shifted backwards until it disappeared at the other end. Cytologically the similarity to *O. putrida* was great, the plasma being granulated, now and then with fairly large dark green bodies. At the transverse walls there was always a small gas vacuole in the form of a larger or smaller reddishly shining granule. These granules mostly, as in *O. putrida*, were situated apart from the chromoplasm in a bright area at the transverse walls. See further fig. 7*c—f*.

37. *Oscillatoria fragilis* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 1.2—1.5 μ *crassae*, 4—9 μ *longae, flavo virides de more sine vacuolis aëricis. Trichomata in aqua pura fragilla, in aqua putrida mobilia vegetaque. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

This alga was not quite so yellowish as *O. putrida* and generally was lacking granules (gas vacuoles) at the transverse walls. At most one granule could be observed at each wall. The bright areas at the transverse walls observed in nos. 34 and 36 were missing. The filaments occurred together with *O. putrida*, but always singly or few together, hence it could not be ascertained whether the species had a blue lustre. They were mostly straight or slightly spirally coiled, sometimes with a bent apex. The measures of this species agree very well with those of *O. trichoides* described by Szafer (1910). But Szafer's species has sulphur granules (perhaps gas vacuoles) in the middle of the cells and the filaments are stated to be "non fragilia", which is exactly contrary to conditions in my species. In Böcher (1945 fig. 6) a small piece of filament of *O. fragilis* has been referred to *O. trichoides*.

The name *O. fragilis* refers to the plasmoptysis which takes place when the filaments are transferred to clear water. Similar phenomena may exceptionally be observed in some of the other *Oscillatoria* species, but in this one the occurrence of plasmoptysis is a rule. The plasmoptysis takes place at the transverse walls, where a colourless mass of plasma is pressed out, the filament at the same time being bent and often later broken. In one case the process took place as follows: At 11^{30} the filaments normal, 11^{40} 4 bends (places of plasmoptysis), no ruptures, 12^{00} 16 bends, no ruptures, motility nearly ceased, 13^{00} 22 bends, 3 ruptures, 14^{40} 20 bends, 7 ruptures. A picture of the plasmoptysis and the ruptures is found in fig. 8 (1), cp. further pp. 38—41.

Under unfavourable conditions there is here as in *O. putrida* a chromoplasm concentration (fig. 8) and at a plasmolysis the cells behave as those of *O. putrida* by being very dissimilar as regards the withdrawal of the plasma from the wall.

38. *Oscillatoria fulgens* sp. n. *Cellulae trichomatis* 1—1.3 μ *latae,* (3) 4—7 μ *longae, laete-virides,* 1—4 *vacuolis aericis magnis lobatis rubicundis fulgentibus ornatae, ad vacuola aerica magna plerumque dilatata. Septa interdum aegre conspicua. Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

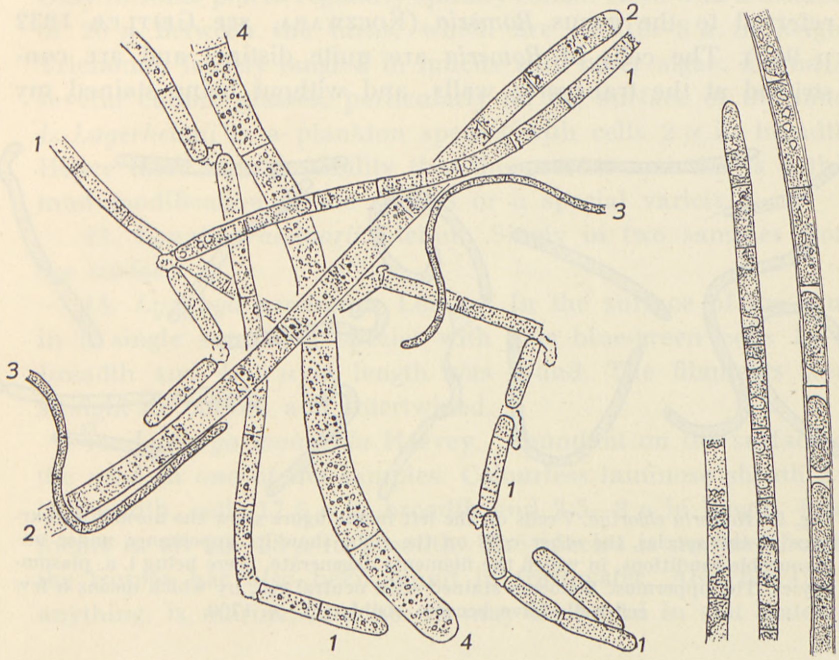


Fig. 8. On the left a small section of a preparation in which filaments of various *Oscillatoria* species have been placed in pure water. No. 1 is *O. fragilis*, which shows zigzag formation, plasmoptysis, and below on the right detachment of a bicellular piece of filament. No. 2 is *O. putrida*, no. 3 *O. gracilis*, and no. 4 *O. guttulata*. — On the right, chromoplasm concentration and plasmolysis (10 per cent. NaCl) in *O. fragilis*. × 1700.

This species was very abundant in the material and was also observed in fresh samples. It is obviously related to *O. Lauterbornii* Schmidle, in whose cells there are 1—2 large central lobate gas vacuoles and whose transverse walls are almost invisible. *O. Lauterbornii* differs from the new species by being more than twice as broad, by having fewer gas vacuoles and by lacking the swellings at the largest vacuoles. The swellings are simply due to the fact that the gas vacuoles spread and make the exterior part of the cell bulge. Young cells, hence often terminal cells, have no or small gas vacuoles, cp. fig. 7. In this species the colour is pale green, not yellowish green.

39. *Romeria chlorina* sp. n. *Trichomata* 1 μ *crassa*, *(5)—9—20* μ *longa*, *viridiflava*, *flexibilia*. *Septa non conspicua*. *Hab. in fundo limoso, foetido lacus Flyndersø Selandiae borealis.*

A very strange organism, which is not without great hesitation referred to the genus *Romeria* (Koczwara, see Geitler 1932 p. 915). The cells of *Romeria* are quite distinct and are constricted at the transverse walls, and without being stained my

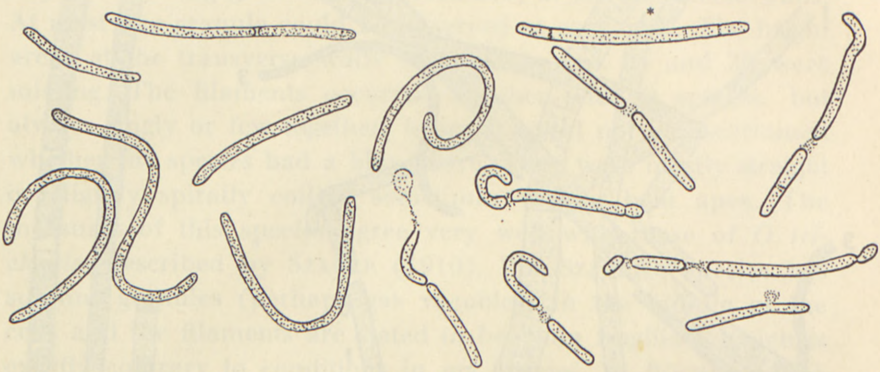


Fig. 9. *Romeria chlorina*. 7 cells on the left in the figure show the normal appearance of the species, the other cells on the right show its appearance under unfavourable conditions, in which the filaments degenerate, there being i. a. plasmoptyses. The uppermost filaments stained with neutral red, by which means a few cell-walls have become visible (*). $\times$ 1700.

organism has no visible transverse walls. In this character it approaches *Spirulina*. There are also points of resemblance with *Crinalinum* and *Chlorobacteriales* (see below).

Under unfavourable conditions the trichomes break, as there is plasmoptysis (fig. 9), in which a pale green mass of plasma is pressed out. The smallest pieces probably correspond to cells and are 1.5 μ in length. By staining with neutral red it is possible to observe a few transverse walls (fig. 9), which, if anything, suggests a cell length of 2.5 μ. The latter size probably is the one in best agreement with facts; for the small pieces produced by the plasmoptysis may easily have shrunk somewhat. In preparations in which the organism occurred in water from the foul mud, the filaments moved in a very lively manner changing their form all the time, sometimes they were u-shaped, sometimes rod- or s-shaped. Gas vacuoles were never observed.

40. *Phormidium valderianum* (Delp) Gom. In a single sample from the surface of the mud.

41. *Lyngbya Lagerheimii* (Möb.) Gom. In a narrow form with cells 1.2—1.5 (1.8) μ in breadth and 1—2 μ in length and with blue-green granules along the walls. A fairly thin sheath. Only in some places regularly spirally coiled. Here with a distance of 20 μ between the turns, which are (2—) 6—8 μ in height. Trichomes loosely tangled in mucus with other algae. Found in several culture glasses, particularly on the surface of the mud. *L. Lagerheimii* is a plankton species with cells 2 μ in breadth. Hence there is a possibility that the present material is a thin mud modification of the species or a special variety.

42. *Lyngbya aestuarii* Liebm. Singly in two samples from the surface.

43. *Lyngbya perelegans* Lemm. In the surface of the mud in a single sample a species with pale blue-green cells 1 μ in breadth and 4—5 μ in length was found. The filaments were straight or curved and intertwined.

44. *Lyngbya maiuscula* Harvey. Abundant on the surface of the mud in one of the samples. Colourless laminose sheath 5 μ in breadth, cells 17.6 μ in breadth and 2.5—3 μ in length. Filaments in all 26—28 μ in breadth. The species is marine, but in the tropics has also been found in freshwater. Also no. 42, if anything, is marine, and no. 43 may be found in salt water.

Chlorobacteriales.

45. *Pelogloea* sp. (?). It is not without great hesitation that my material of green bacteria is given this systematic name. It is done on the basis of the undoubtedly correct view that the establishment of new species, in so far as bacteria are considered, is hardly of any importance until extensive cultivation experiments revealing the width of variation and physiological properties have been made. The green bacteria in the Flyndersø material belongs to the rod-type, but may assume rounded forms or even develop into streptococci. The *Chlorobium limicola* described by Nadson (1912) generally is a coccus the cells of which "manchmal, obwohl seltener, haben das Aussehen ausgesprochener Stäbchen". The question is whether it is imaginable that Nadson's and my material are extremes in a continuous

variation within a single species which may be both chiefly coccus- and chiefly rod-shaped, or whether there are two different organisms. If the latter, the chiefly rod-shaped type may come under the genus *Pelogloea* (Lauterborn), and it might suitably be termed *P. heteromorpha*, for its width of variation seems very great.

The green bacteria occurred in two manners in the material.

(1) In the cultures originating from the deep soft mud along the shores of the lake and in which blue-green algae were dominant, there often, particularly after some time and always in connexion with increasing abundance of the purple sulphur bacteria, appeared some small colonies of a rod-shaped green bacterium (fig. 10*a*). The cells were 0.5—0.7 μ in breadth and 1—10 (mostly 2—5) μ in length, immotile, yellowish green and dispersed in thin mucus, which was pale greenish. The organism had a great variation in length, but was always distinctly rod-shaped and hence might perhaps be a *Pelogloea*. It differs from the other *Pelogloea* species by the cells being narrower and longer.

(2) In a culture originating from the middle of the lake where the layer of mud was thin, no filamentous Cyanophyceae appeared at all. Purple sulphur bacteria (*Lamprocystis*), a large colourless spirillum and, after six months' culture, a green bacterium were abundant. The last-mentioned organism formed very large connected masses of mucus which was so watery that the spirilla could work their way through them, although with distinctly reduced speed. The rod-shaped form was dominant, but the cells were a little thicker than those in the other cultures (0.7—0.8 μ in breadth), and further there appeared a number of deviating cell forms which highly reminded of those found in *Chlorobium limicola* (see Nadson, *loc. cit.*, Table III). There were two types of deviating cell forms, involution forms and streptococcus- or diplococcus-forms. The involution forms were dispersed among normal rod-shaped cells and might be more swollen than these, sometimes completely rounded-off with a bright median part (cf. Nadson's fig. 11), in rare cases somewhat ramified; cf. fig. 10*e*. The diplococcus- and streptococcus-forms were found here and there among normal rod-shaped cells; see fig. 10*c*, *d*. These cannot be termed involution forms. In the material studied by Nadson (*loc. cit.*) and van Niel (1931) the streptococcus form is dominant, while the rod-shaped and spirillar

forms are considered involution forms. The material studied by SKUJA (1948) contains only the streptococcus form but deviates with regard to the breadth of the cells (0,3—0,5 μ). It may belong to *Chloronostoc* (Pascher). There is very little evidence that there

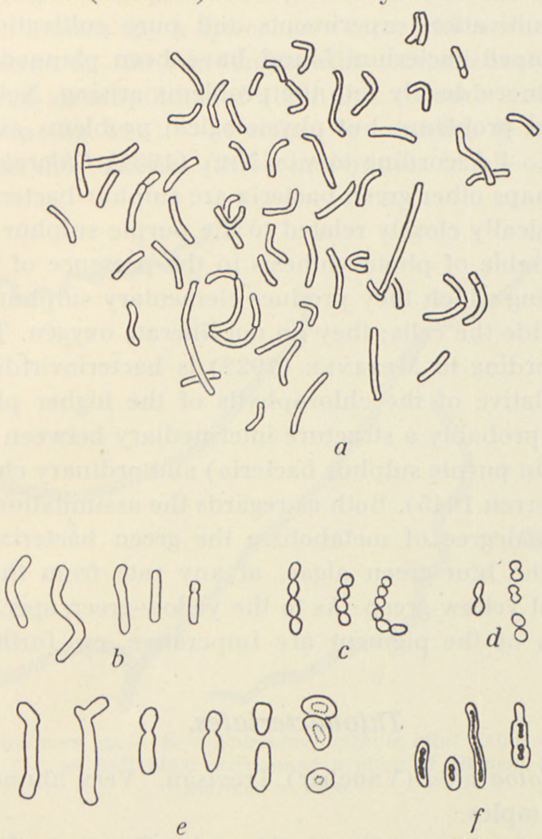


Fig. 10. Material of green bacteria from Flyndersø, *a* colony from mud near the shore. *b—f* examples of cells in large green masses of bacterium mucus from mud in the middle of the lake, *b* normal or typical cells, *c* streptococcus forms, diplococcus forms, *e* involution forms, *f* cells with gas vacuoles. × 1700.

should be a mixture of two different bacteria in my material; for there were all possible transitions between the normal rodshaped cells on the one hand and the involution forms and the diplococcus- and streptococcus-forms on the other. Both types of deviating cells never occurred in groups but always single among normal cells. Of special interest was the observation of cells with reddishly shining central areas, presumably gas vacuoles of quite the same type as those in the *Oscillatoriae* (particularly *O. fulgens*), see fig. 10 *f*. Cells of this type were particularly frequent in certain parts of the material and seemed to indicate that here there were special physiological circumstances conditioning the development of gas vacuoles.

Special cultivation experiments and pure cultivation of the green rod-shaped bacterium found have been planned in order to penetrate more deeply into the problems arising. Not only the morphological problems, but physiological problems as well are innumerable. — According to van Niel (1931) *Chlorobium limicola* and perhaps other green bacteria are sulphur bacteria, which are physiologically closely related to the purple sulphur bacteria. They are capable of photosynthesis in the presence of hydrogen sulphide during which they produce elementary sulphur which is excreted outside the cells; they do not liberate oxygen. The green pigment according to Metzner (1922) is bacterioviridin, which is a close relative of the chlorophylls of the higher plants and algae; it has probably a structure intermediary between bacteriochlorophyll (in purple sulphur bacteria) and ordinary chlorophyll (cp. Rabinowitch 1945). Both as regards the assimilation pigment and the high degree of metabolism the green bacteria seem to differ from the blue-green algae, at any rate from the species which are not yellow-green. As to the yellow-green species closer investigations of the pigment are imperative, cp. further p. 42.

Thiobacteriales.

46. *Beggiatoa alba* (Vaucher) Trevisan. Very abundant, but not in all samples.

47. *Beggiatoa leptomitiformis* (Menegh.) Trevisan. Very common in the material; constantly occurring in fresh samples.

48. *Achromatium mobile* Lauterb. Very abundant.

49. *Chromatium fallax* (Warming) Kolkwitz. In large quantities in some of the culture glasses. According to Bavendam (1924) probably a species of *Thiovolum*. Besides this a rather long, slightly spirally coiled form was observed, which generally was without sulphur granules. In size and form it reminded very much of *Thiospira bipunctata* (Molisch) Wislouch.

50. *Lamprocystis roseo-persicina* (Kütz.) Schröter. Very abundant in particular in old culture glasses.

51. *Thiothece gelatinosa* Winogr. Scattered in old cultures.

Spirochaetales.

52. *Spirochaeta plicatilis* Ehrenberg. Frequent in several samples.

52 a. *Spirochaeta* sp. A *Spirochaeta* form which was 0.5—0.6 μ thick and about 30—50 μ in length with comparatively few coils, which showed an amplitude of about 3 μ. At each end a flagella-like extension (fig. 11 *a*). — I refuse to establish it as a species at present as the material (three individuals in all observed) is

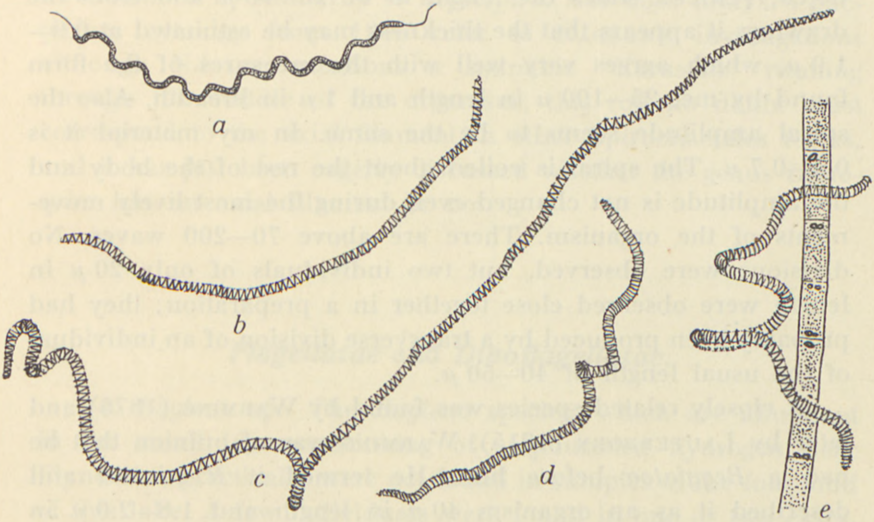


Fig. 11. *a Spirochaeta* sp. — *b—e Spirophis flexibilis* after fixing with La Cour 2 BD; in fig. 11 *e* an individual coils round a piece of filament of *Oscillatoria putrida.* × 1700.

two small for an exact statement of the measures of length of the species and its other properties. The species may be related to *S. stenostrepta* Zuelser, which is found in water containing H_2S and has pointed ends, but deviates in dimensions (0.25 μ in thickness and 20—60 μ in length, spiral amplitude very narrow with steep windings).

53. *Spirophis flexibilis* Nägler. This remarkable organism occurred in not a few specimens in one of the culture glasses together with *Oscillatoriaceae* and *Pseudanabaena* species. It is extremely motile, its movements show bending rotation, rapid spinning and intermittently active lashing as stated about *Leptospira* (Nogouchi 1918). Also its cytological conditions are in good

agreement with *Leptospira*, particularly the thin close permanent coil. The main differences between the two genera are that *Spirophis* is much larger than *Leptospira* and is not bent into a hook at one or both ends, nor is its terminal portions more flexible than the median part. Actually it is a question whether the two genera ought not to be united. If so, the name of *Spirophis* should presumably be adopted for both, as being the oldest name, even though NÄGLER's description of the genus (1909) is somewhat defective.

As to the species *S. flexibilis* the following facts should be noted. NÄGLER states the length to be 20—70 μ and from the drawings it appears that the thickness may be estimated at 0.9—1.0 μ, which agrees very well with the measures of the form found by me, 25—100 μ in length and 1 μ in breadth. Also the spiral amplitude seems to be the same. In my material it is 0.4—0.7 μ. The spiral is coiled about the rest of the body and the amplitude is not changed even during the most lively movements of the organism. There are above 70—200 waves. No divisions were observed, but two individuals of only 20 μ in length were observed close together in a preparation; they had probably been produced by a transverse division of an individual of the usual length of 40—50 μ.

A closely related species was found by WARMING (1876) and later by LAUTERBORN (1915). WARMING was of opinion that he had a *Beggiatoa* before him. He termed it *B. minima* and described it as an organism 40 μ in length and 1.8—2.0 μ in breadth. LAUTERBORN then referred it to *Spirophis* as *S. minima*. Unfortunately this very large species thus came to be named *minima*. LAUTERBORN states its measures to be a length of about 100 μ and a thickness of 1.5—2.0. He does not seem to have calculated the measures of *S. flexibilis* described by NÄGLER and thinks that it is identical with *S. minima*. However, as long as there are two observers who have found individuals of up to 2 μ in thickness and two who have found a thickness of 1 μ only, it seems to me that the two species must be kept apart. Future investigations must decide whether the two species should be united, in which case the new species will have a considerable width of variation as regards the breadth of the cells. This variation increases further if also the very narrow form (breadth 0.5 μ) found by SKUJA (1948) in Sweden is included.

It is rather curious that only two of the large monographs mention WARMING's and NÄGLER's organism. ZUELSER (1931) and BERGEY (1948) are the only authors who include it in their work. ZUELSER mentions it on p. 1671 under water spirochaetes as an uncertain species, which may be due to NÄGLER's brief mention and BERGEY mentions it under the name of *Spirochaeta flexibilis* as an uncertain species due to inadequate description, and on p. 1053 he does not give any description of its characters. Nor is it mentioned in NOGOUCHI (1928) and nobody seems to have noticed its similarity to *Leptospira*. Nor does KNAYSI's bacterium cytology from 1946 refer to NÄGLER's investigations although NÄGLER mentions a stainable "Kernstab" running through the middle of the organism; this rod no doubt must correspond to the axial filament in other Spirochaetales forms, and it has just been eagerly discussed whether the genus *Leptospira* has an axial filament or not.

Flagellatae and *Dinoflagellatae*.

54. *Euglena* sp. The *Euglena* species, which are abundant in the small lagoons stinking of sulphuretted hydrogen near Flyndersø, practically were not found in samples of the foul mud of this lake. A few individuals were found in one or two cases, but they were not determined. *Euglena* is probably an accidental visitor to the mud in spite of the fact that the genus includes greatly saprophilous species.

55. *Ochromonas viridis* Böcher. Apart from what has been stated in my paper (1945) it may only be said about this species that it is not common in fresh samples. It has been observed in two samples in all only, and never in great quantities in newly made preparations. On the other hand, conditions in such preparations in which the water with the organisms was surrounded by an edge of vaselin or paraffin oil, obviously were particularly favourable to it so that it could here reach abundance in few days.

56. *Peridinium cinctum* Ehrb. In the surface of mud in samples taken in October this plankton organism was fairly abundant.

Chlorophyceae.

57. *Pediastrum integrum* Näg. var. *scutum* Raciborski.
58. *Pediastrum duplex* Meyen var. *coronatum* Raciborski.
59. *Pediastrum Boryanum* (Turpin) Menegh.

These three *Pediastrum* species were found in surface samples taken in October, but not in great numbers. Most cells were dead or dying.

60. *Scenedesmus bijugatus* (Turp.) Kütz. This species, which is considered slightly mesosaprobous, was so constantly present in the samples that it may be considered enter naturally in the mud vegetation; but it was never present in great numbers and did not multiply very rapidly in the preparations.

61. *Coelastrum proboscideum* Bohlin. In a single surface sample very frequent and greatly variable.

Conjugatae.

62. *Closterium Leibleinii* Kütz. In a single sample this species had multiplied at a great rate on the surface of the mud.

63. *Staurastrum alternans* Breb. Dying individuals observed in the surface of mud in a sample taken in October. In the same sample several other *Desmidiaceae* belonging to the genera *Cosmarium* and *Euastrum* were seen. These were not determined and also were dying. Without doubt mud of this type is not a natural habitat to *Desmidiaceae*.

Diatomeae.

Determination and counting done by Erik Jørgensen, M.Sc.

Table 1.

Species	Number of Indivi-duals	Per-centage	Place in Kolbe's Halobion System
64. *Achnantes flexella* (Kütz.) Brun	26	9.0	Halophobous
65. *Amphora coffaeiformis* Ag.	+	—	Mesohalobous
66. — *ovalis* Kütz.	5	1.7	Indifferent
67. *Anomoeoneis sphaerophora* (Kütz.) Pfitzer	+	—	Halophilous

(to be continued)

Table 1 (continued).

Species	Number of Indivi-duals	Per-centage	Place in Kolbe's Halobion System
68. *Caloneis alpestris* (Grun.) Cleve......	1	0.3	Indifferent
69. — *silicula* (Ehrb.) Cl. var. *truncatula* (Grun.) Cl...........	+	—	,,
70. *Cymbella aequalis* Sm...............	12	4.1	,,
71. — *lesatii* (Rabh.) Grun........	1	0.3	Halophobous (?)
72. — *helvetica* Kütz.............	31	10.9	Indifferent
73. — *incerta* Grun...............	10	3.4	Indifferent (?)
74. — *parva* (W. Sm.) Cl.	3	1.0	Indifferent
75. *Diploneis ovalis* (Hilse) Cleve........	1	0.3	,,
76. *Epithemia argus* Kütz...............	151	52.2	,,
77. — *turgida* (Ehrb.) Kütz......	+	—	,,
78. — *zebra* (Ehrb.) Kütz........	1	0.3	,,
79. *Eunotia arcus* Ehrb..................	3	1.0	,,
80. *Gomphonema intricatum* Kütz........	1	0.3	,,
81. *Mastogloia Braunii* Grun.............	2	0.7	Mesohalobous
82. — *elliptica* Ag..............	1	0.3	,,
83. — *Smithii* Thw.............	8	2.8	Indifferent[1]
84. — — var. *amphicephala* Grun............	4	1.4	,,
85. — — var. *lacustris* Grun.	3	1.0	,,
86. *Navicula oblonga* Kütz...............	4	1.4	,,
87. — *radiosa* Kütz..............	7	2.4	,,
88. *Nitzschia denticula* Grun.............	7	2.4	,,
89. — *vermicularis* (Kütz.) Grun. .	+	—	Halophobous (?)
90. *Pinnularia gentilis* (Donkin) Cleve ...	+	—	Indifferent
91. *Rhopalodia gibba* (Kütz.) O. Müll.....	8	2.8	,,
	290	100.0	

[1] Perhaps mesohalobous (cf. Boye Petersen 1943 p. 76).

4. Summarizing Remarks on the Flora and Vegetation.

It appears from the preceding treatment of the flora that some species must be considered typical mud organisms, while others may be considered more or less accidental visitors. The typical exclusive species, i. e. species which in plant sociology are generally called character species, ought to be those which lend their names to the community. There can be no doubt that the yellow-green Oscillatoriae and the *Pseudanabaena* species are the best character species. Hence the community may suitably be named *Oscillatorietum putridum*, a saprobous community particularly bound up with shallow ponds with *Characeae*. Strictly speaking the *Chara* species have their lower parts growing in the mud, and so it might with some right be said that this *Oscillatorietum putridum* after all was a synusia in the bottom vegetation, a kind of "mould flora" in the "Chara wood". But the ecological conditions in the mud are so specific that however the community is considered, it will be most natural to treat it as something quite apart.

Hayrén (1921, 1933, and 1944) mentions a highly mesosaprobous community which he names *Oscillatorietum benthonicum*. It is found in foul mud in slightly salt seawater. As character species he mentions *Oscillatoria amphibia*, *chalybea* and *tenuis*. Of these *O. chalybea* did not with certainty appear in my material from Flyndersø, but in a small lagoon smelling strongly of H_2S, in which there was much rotting seaweed and plenty of *Euglena proxima* (see p. 15). Here all the yellow-green *Oscillatoriae* were missing, and Hayrén does not mention them as occurring in his community in Finland. Thus there are in the mud vegetation at any rate two distinct *Oscillatorieta*, of which *O. putridum* most likely is oligohalobous and slightly mesosaprobous whereas *O. benthonicum* is meso-euhalobous and highly mesosaprobous.

As character species of *Oscillatorietum putridum* I consider nos. 17, 18, 34—39, 45, and 53.

As character species common to the two *Oscillatorieta* and perhaps even more related associations: nos. 24, 32, 46, 47, 49, and 52.

Natural elements in the vegetation: nos. 1, 10, 13, 15, 16, 22, 26, 27, 29—31, 33, 41, 44, 48—50, 58, 60, 61, 75, and 91.

More or less accidentally occurring species: nos. 2—4, 7—9, 12, 40, 42, 56.

On the basis of the investigations of the diatoms mentioned on pp. 34—35 we may for the foul mud in Flyndersø set up a Diatom-Halobion Spectrum. This spectrum has in Table 2 been compared with a similar spectrum adduced from Boye Petersen 1943, Table 26. Boye Petersen's spectrum originates from scrapings off stones on the bottom of Flyndersø. Strangely enough there is rather a considerable difference between the two spectra, a difference inviting closer study. *Achnantes flexella* (*Eucocconeis flexella*) was not found on the stones at all by BOYE PETERSEN, but is frequent in the foul mud between the stones. It is halophobous. As there also in the very sample from the stones are several meso- and euhalobous species, this might seem to indicate that the flora of the foul mud was less halobous than the flora of the stones. In all 12 species only are common to the two samples, and the abundant species are also different: in the mud *Epithemia argus* and on the stones *Achnantes minutissima*.

Table 2.

Diatom Halobion Spectra, Flyndersø.

		Sample of bottom mud analyzed by ERIK G. JØRGENSEN		Scrapings off stones according to BOYE PETERSEN 1943, Table 26	
		Number of forms	Percentage of individuals	Number of forms	Percentage of individuals
Oligohalobous	halophobous	1	9.0	0	0.0
	indifferent	20	*86.3*	18	59.7
	halophilous	1	0.0	7	*26.1*
Mesohalobous		3	1.0	7	*12.3*
Euhalobous		0	0.0	1	0.0
? ? ?		3	3.7	1	1.9
		28	100.0	34	100.0

In several culture glasses in which purple sulphur bacteria developed to some degree, it was impossible at the microscopy not to notice that particularly certain yellow-green *Oscillatoriae* and an immotile pale green species belonging to the *Oscillatoriaceae* and needing a closer study formed a mosaic with the red bacteria. In the picture, which formed rich colour contrasts, the sulphur bacteria often constituted spindleshaped islands surrounded by the filamentous green species. There were many things indicative of a kind of symbiosis. Perhaps the sulphur bacteria get oxygen from the green species. In fresh samples such a contact between the two kinds of organisms was not observed. However, a partnership of this type is very probable also in nature, but here the organisms occur more sporadically in the mud and hence visible evidence of such a partnership will rarely be found.

5. Some Plasmolysis and Plasmoptysis Experiments with Oscillatoriae.

The strange species *Oscillatoria fragilis* which would not stand being put into pure water (p. 24), but broke here after plasmoptysis, invited a closer study of the plasmoptysis and the conditions needed to produce it. It was probable that *O. fragilis* was a particularly characteristic inhabitant of the mud, adapted to live at a fairly high concentration of osmotically active substances, but would not stand low concentrations in the surrounding liquid. As for marine species, particularly *O. proboscidea*, a similar breakdown of the filaments in connexion with plasmoptysis has been described by Stroh (1925). This worker could produce plasmoptysis experimentally by first placing the filaments in a hypertonic solution and then transferring them to a hypotonic solution. The hypertonic solution produced plasmolysis, after which the cell contents gradually became isotonic with the plasmolyzing fluid. By being transferred to water from the city supply the cells in some cases absorbed the water so rapidly that they burst.

My experiments included the species *O. fragilis* and *putrida*, *putrida* alone, and *O. brevis* and *profunda*. Isosmotic concentrations of cane sugar, KNO_3, and NaCl were used. The fluids had concentrations corresponding to pressures of 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, or 40 atmospheres.

In the first experiments filaments of *O. fragilis* and *putrida* were placed for two hours in the solutions, after which they were transferred to water from the city supply and observed. The result corresponds very well to that of Stroh's. The zigzag formation, which is due to plasmoptysis near the transverse walls, and the subsequent decay of the filaments became more pronounced the higher the concentration of the fluid used at the introductory treatment. The two species clearly behaved differently, the plasmoptysis in *O. fragilis* being produced by fluids of introductory treatment with lower concentrations than those which produced plasmoptysis in *O. putrida*. Further it was evident that KNO_3 had a different effect from the other two solutions, even though isosmotic concentrations were used. KNO_3 had a much stronger effect than the others, a fact that may be due to a particularly high degree of permeability in KNO_3. Moreover, the conditions of permeability must be very different in the different cells in the filaments. Often plasmolysis and plasmoptysis were observed in one part of a filament of a thread and apparently unaffected cells in another part. It was peculiar to see that the plasmolysis in some cells could hold out long after the filaments had been transferred to water. Thus it seemed that the process might be irreversible, or the cells very slowly returned to their original state.

In an experiment in which only *O. putrida* was used and in which the observations were protracted until 13 days after the beginning of the experiment, it could be demonstrated that 20 atmosphere concentrations always caused a permanent degeneration, whereas high motility could be re-established after introductory treatments with a solution of sugar or NaCl with osmotic values of 10 or 5. KNO_3 caused permanent degeneration, i. e. breakdown of the filaments and dissolution of the cells, and this even after an introductory treatment with a solution corresponding to 5 atmospheres. Still lower concentrations (1 and 2 atmospheres) had no injurious after-effect.

In one more experiment with *O. putrida*, in which only sugar and KNO_3 with an osmotic value of 10 were used, but in which the time in which the filaments were exposed to the plasmolyzing solution was varied ($\frac{3}{4}$, 2, and 4 hours), it could, in the case of the preparations with the sugar solution, be ascertained that the injurious after-effect increased the longer the duration of the introductory treatment. Such a difference could not be observed in preparations treated with KNO_3; all the three spaces of time gave the same picture: plasmoptysis, „chromoplasm concentration", (see p. 21), decay, and dissolution.

Experiments with *O. brevis* and *profunda* with introductory treatment for two hours with the same concentrations as used in the experiments first mentioned, on the whole gave the same result. *O. profunda*, however, was more liable to plasmoptysis than *O. brevis*. NaCl had a slight influence, sugar a somewhat greater, and KNO_3 the greatest influence. After an introductory treatment with solutions with an osmotic value of 5, a great many bends appeared in *O. profunda*, still the bends very often appeared near hormogonia already developed. In *O. brevis* the effect was different in different parts of the filaments. Some pieces of filaments which were particularly light and undoubtedly represented terminal or intercalarily developed young pieces of filament, were particularly apt to plasmoptysis and detachment from the other parts. It was interesting here to observe how the refractive concave cells which are so characteristic of this species very often formed a boundary between the young and the older parts of the filaments; thus they came to function in a similar way as heterocysts. In concentrations corresponding to 10 to 20 atmospheres similar conditions were observed, but also interior disturbances in the cells of *O. brevis*, which reminded of the above-mentioned "chromoplasm concentration". In a few cases filaments were seen which had been exposed to numerous plasmoptyses at one end, but were quite normal at the other. These normal ends were motile and dragged the part bent in zigzags after them.

In some of the experiments it seemed that the plasmolysis held out in spite of the transfer to water and that later ruptures of the filaments occurred in these places. In order to investigate this question in more detail, filaments of *O. putrida*, *fragilis*, and *brevis* were placed in NaCl and KNO_3 with osmotic values of 5, 10, and 20, and were observed for three weeks in these solutions. The plasmolysis held out and the motility ceased, at the same time chromoplasm concentration arose, which also held out or became more and more pronounced (fig. 6*k—m*), but the most curious thing was that both in NaCl with an osmotic value of 10 and in all the three concentrations of KNO_3, some bends appeared with escape of plasma at the place of the rupture. This was particularly clear in *O. fragilis*. It all looked completely as a case of plasmoptysis, but, indeed, it can only with difficulty be interpreted like this. Perhaps it may be a question of the organism itself by a vital process producing states in the cells which lead to plasmoptysis. It is not improbable that we have here a similar process to that described as autolysis in *Beggiatoa alba* (see

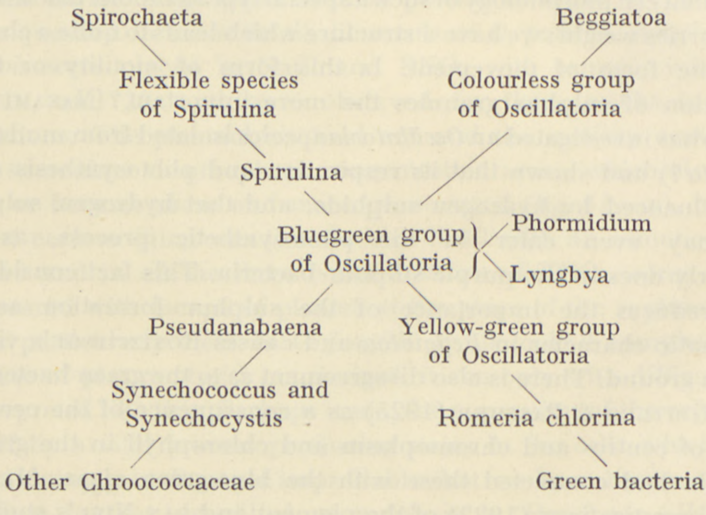
D. Ellis 1932, pp. 94—98); this autolysis is induced by many different unfavourable conditions and involves escape of mucus between the cells, zigzag formation and decay and dissolution of the cells. It must be left for future investigations to make out the relation between genuine plasmoptyses and such autolyses.

6. Remarks on the Relationship of the Oscillatoriaceae.

In the case of microorganisms the unravelling of relationship must always be uncertain. The comparatively few characters is one of the chief reasons for the uncertainty. In certain bacteria the great morphological variability is a further factor of uncertainty. Hence it is not strange that, instead of these, physiological characters are extensively adduced at the judgment of relationship, indeed, in many cases physiology has been considered decisive. This has led to several disagreements of views. Thus *Beggiatoa* because of physiological accordance with colourless sulphur bacteria is generally counted among the bacteria. From the point of view of cell morphology, however, it is closely related to the *Oscillatoriaceae*, which made Rosenvinge (1913) place *Beggiatoa* as a colourless type within *Oscillatoriaceae*. The question is which is the more correct view? Undoubtedly everybody will admit that cell morphology of such a special type as the one discussed here carries weight; we have a structure which leads to quite a characteristic form of movement. Is this form of motility or the formation of sulphur granules the more important? Nakamura (1938) has investigated an *Oscillatoria* species isolated from mud (*O. neglecta*?) and shown that its respiration and photosynthesis are not influenced by hydrogen sulphide, and that hydrogen sulphide may even enter in the photosynthetic process, as it regularly does in the purple sulphur bacteria. This fact considerably reduces the importance of the sulphur formation as a systematic character in *Beggiatoa* and causes Rosenvinge's view to gain ground. There is also disagreement as to the green bacteria. After Geitler & Pascher (1925) as a consequence of the occurrence of centro- and chromoplasm and chlorophyll in the green bacteria had connected these with the blue-green algae, Metzner's investigations (1922) of the pigment and van Niel's studies

(1931) on the great metabolism and physiological similarity to the sulphur bacteria led to the green bacteria being considered bacteria. VAN NIEL even writes (*loc. cit.* p. 73) that the group of green bacteria "has nothing to do with the group of bluegreen algae," and (p. 92) "So much is certain, that these green bacteria cannot be considered as small bluegreen algae". Indeed, these are strong words, which one might be tempted to change into: "The evidence would seem to indicate that the green bacteria are more closely related to the bacteria than to the blue-green algae". For it must be kept in mind that their pigment (bacterioviridin) is considered intermediary between chlorophyll and bacteriochlorophyll and that there are a long series of *Cyanophyceae* of the same pale green colour, hence perhaps bacterioviridin, and finally that certain blue-green algae physiologically approach to the green bacteria by their relation to hydrogen sulphide.

For my part I see no reason whatever for such a sharp distinction between bacteria and blue-green algae. The boundaries between these groups is actually blurred. From the genus *Oscillatoria* as the centre with may draw radiating lines to other groups of organisms, several of which belong to the bacteria. These lines are based on similarity between the forms. Probably many of them also denote relationship. The following survey shows my view:



Besides the lines indicated in the survey there are undoubtedly many others; but I cannot throw light on them on the basis of material observed by myself. The line *Chroococcaceae—Pseudanabaena—Oscillatoria* is of particular interest; for there is a possibility that this is an evolutionary line so that it would be possible to derive the *Oscillatoriaceae* direct from the *Chroococcaceae*. The connexion is supported by the following facts, viz. that *Synechocystis* may form chains, that *Synechococcus* may form polarly arranged gas vacuoles like those in *Pseudanabaena*, and that motility has been observed in several species of *Synechocystis* and *Synechococcus*.

The genus *Pseudanabaena* which GEITLER did not consider as a natural group seems now to be fully established. In addition to the discussion in BÖCHER (1946b) of *P. biceps*, SKUJA (1948) has described several new species and concludes that the genus is well characterized and presumably a progressive group. In *P. constricta* he mentions »Anlagen von Heterocysten« which, however, cytologically resemble the ordinary vegetative cells. If these cells have anything to do with genuine heterocysts, there is a possibility of a relation between *Pseudanabaena* and *Anabaena*.

7. Literature.

Bavendamm, W. 1924. Die farblosen und roten Schwefelbakterien. Pflanzenforschung Heft 2. Jena.

Bergey, D. H. 1948. Manual of Determinative Bacteriology. 6th Edition by R. S. Breed, E. K. D. Murray and A. P. Hitchens. Baltimore.

Boye Petersen, J. 1943. Some Halobion Spectra (Diatoms). Det Kgl. Danske Vidensk. Selskab, Biol. Medd. **17**, No. 9, pp. 1—95.

Böcher, T. W. 1945. Ochromonas viridis sp. n., a Green Flagellate Belonging to the Chrysomonadinae. Vidensk. Medd. fra Dansk naturhist. Foren. **108**, pp. 233—238.

— 1946a. Dichothrix gelatinosa sp. n., its Structure and Resting Organs. Det Kgl. Danske Vidensk. Selskab, Biol. Skrifter **4**, No. 4, pp. 1—15.

— 1946b. Pseudanabaena biceps, a New Sapropelic Species from Bottom Mud. Botaniska Notiser 1946, pp. 281—284.

Cannabaeus, L. 1929. Über die Heterocysten und Gasvakuolen der Blaualgen und ihre Beziehungen zueinander. Pflanzenforschung Heft **13**, Jena.

Ellis, D. 1932. Sulphur Bacteria, a Monograph. London, New York and Toronto.

Frobisher, M. 1946. Fundamentals of Bacteriology. Philadelphia and London.

Geitler, L. 1925a. Synoptische Darstellung der Cyanophyceen in morfologischer und systematischer Hinsicht. B.B.C. II. Abt. **41**.

— 1925b. Cyanophyceae. Pascher: Süsswasserflora. Heft 12, pp. 1—450.

— 1932. Cyanophyceae. Rabenhorst's Kryptogamenflora **14**, pp. 1—1196.

— 1936. Schizophyzeen. Handb. d. Pflanzenanatomie 4, 1, B.

— & Pascher, A. 1925. Cyanochloridinae = Chlorobacteriaceae. Pascher: Süsswasserflora, Heft 12, pp. 451—463.

Gicklhorn, J. 1921. Über den Blauglanz zweier neuer Oscillatorien. Österreich. Botan. Zeitschrift **70**, pp. 1—11.

Hayrén, E. 1921. Studier över föroreningens inflytande på strändernas vegetation och flora i Helsingfors hamnområde. Bidrag t. Kännedom af Finlands Natur och Folk 80, No. 3, pp. 1—128.

— 1933. Förorening och strandvegetation i Helsingfors hamnområde år 1932. Ibid. 84, No. 5, pp. 1—38.

— 1944. Studier över saprob strandvegetation och flora i några kuststäder i Södra Finland. Ibid. 88, No. 5, pp. 1—120.

Knaysi, G. 1946. Elements of Bacterial Cytology. Ithaca, New York.

Lauterborn, R. 1913. Zur Kenntnis einiger sapropelischer Schizomyceten. Allgem. Bot. Zeitsch. 19. Jahrg., pp. 97—100.

— 1915. Die sapropelische Lebewelt. Verhdl. d. Naturhist.-mediz. Vereins zu Heidelberg, N. F. 13, pp. 395—481.

Metzner, P. 1922. Über den Farbstoff der grünen Bakterien. Ber. d. deutsch. Bot. Gesellschaft 40, pp. 125—129.

Nadson, G. A. 1912. Mikrobiologische Studien. 1. Chlorobium limicola Nads., ein grüner Mikroorganismus mit inaktivem Chlorophyll. Bulletin du Jardin Imp. Bot. de St.-Pétersbourg 12, pp. 83—87.

Nakamura, H. 1938. Über die Kohlensäureassimilation bei niederen Algen in Anwesenheit des Schwefelwasserstoffs. Acta Phytochimica 10, pp. 271—281.

Nägler, K. 1909. Eine neue Spirochäte aus dem Süsswasser. Centralblatt f. Bakt. u. Parasitenk. 1. Abt. 50, pp. 445—447.

Niel, C. B. van 1931. On the Morphology and Physiology of the Purple and Green Sulphur Bacteria. Archiv f. Mikrobiologie 3, pp. 1—112.

Nogouchi, H. 1918. Morphological Characteristics and Nomenclature of Leptospira (Spirochaeta) icterohaemorrhagiae. Journ. Exper. Medicine 27, pp. 575—592.

— 1928. The Spirochaetes. Jordan-Falk: The Newer Knowledge of Bacteriology and Immunology. Chicago.

Olsen, S. 1944. Danish Charophyta. Det Kgl. Danske Vidensk. Selskab, Biol. Skrifter 3, No. 1, pp. 1—240.

Rabinowitch, E. I. 1945. Photosynthesis and Related Processes 1. New York.

Rosenvinge, L. K. 1913. Sporeplanterne. Kjøbenhavn og Kristiania.

Schmidle, W. 1901. Neue Algen aus dem Gebiet des Oberrheins. B.B.C. 10, pp. 179—180.

Skuja, H. 1948. Taxonomie des Phytoplanktons einiger Seen in Uppland, Schweden. Symbolae Bot. Upsal, IX, 3, pp. 1—399.

Stroh, L. 1938. Über prämortale Mazeration bei Oscillatorien. Archiv f. Protistenkunde 91, pp. 187—201.

Szafer, W. 1911. Zur Kenntnis der Schwefelflora in der Umgebung von Lemberg. Bull. Internat. de l'Académie des Sciences de Cracovie. Classe Sciences Mathém. et Nat. Sér. B. 1910, pp. 161—167.

Warming, E. 1876. Om nogle ved Danmarks Kyster levende Bakterier. Vidensk. Medd. fra den naturhist. Forening i Kjøbenhavn 1875, Nr. 20—28, pp. 1—116 (307—420). Kjøbenhavn.

Zuelser, M. 1911. Über Spirochaete plicatilis Ehrbg. und deren Verwandschaftsbeziehungen. Arch. f. Protistenkunde 24, pp. 1—59.
— 1921. Biologische und systematische Spirochätenuntersuchungen. Centralblatt f. Bakt. u. Parasitenkd. I. Abt. 85 (Beih.),pp. 154—167.
— 1931. Die Spirochäten. Handb. d. pathogenen Protozoen herausgegeb. v. S. von Prowazek. 3, pp. 1627—1797.

Indleveret til Selskabet den 11. maj 1948.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 12. marts 1949.

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 2

THE PRODUCTION OF MATTER IN AGRICULTURAL PLANTS AND ITS LIMITATION

BY

P. BOYSEN JENSEN

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

CONTENTS

Printed in Denmark
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

1. Introduction.

The amount of energy radiating from the sun makes up 3.10^{30} kg.cal. per year. Of this amount of energy only a very slight part, viz. 1.34×10^{21} kg.cal., will hit the earth. Most of this energy is transformed into heat, but a small part, namely 0.01 per cent. or 0.162×10^{18} kg.cal., is used for carbon dioxide assimilation in the green plants.

Table 1 (SCHROEDER 1919).

	Billion kg.cal.
Total solar radiation per year	3 000 000 000 000 000 000
Incident radiation at the edge of the atmosphere ...	1 340 000 000
Consumption of energy by assimilation	162 000

Through the carbon dioxide assimilation light energy is transferred into chemical energy, 6 molecules of carbon dioxide + 6 molecules of water being transformed into 1 molecule of sugar under the absorption of 708 kg.cal., and thereby elevated to a higher level of energy (fig. 1). The sugar formed is used in two different ways, first, as a source of matter, as the compounds found in the living organisms, plants as well as animals, are formed from the sugar which arises by the assimilation of carbon dioxide, in connection with small quantities of other elements; secondly, the sugar is used as a source of energy, as by means of enzymes it can by a voluntary process be split up into carbon dioxide + water, the latent chemical energy thereby being liberated. Part of the latter becomes free energy, which is used for the non-voluntary processes in plants and animals, for the building up of matter, for growth, movements, etc. This splitting up of the sugar takes place gradually and is regulated.

Consequently the living organisms are built into the run-down of the free energy of the solar radiation by its conversion

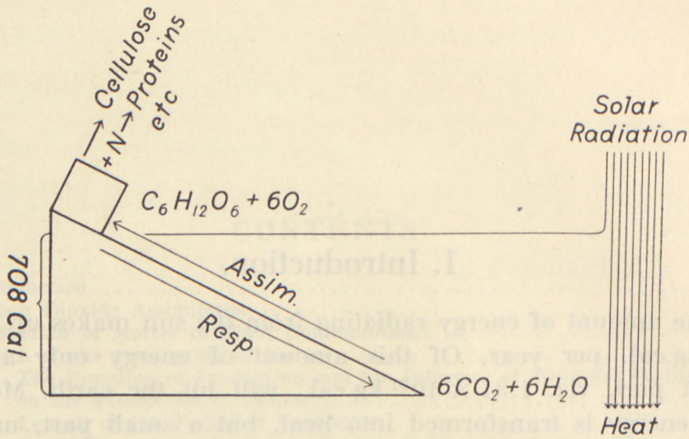


Fig. 1.

into heat, but the part of it which is transformed into chemical energy in the green plants is, as will be seen from the above, very slight.

The basis of all life on earth is consequently the process

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{carbon dioxide} + \text{water} & + \text{radiant energy} & \rightarrow & \text{sugar} + \text{oxygen} \\ 6\,CO_2 & + 6\,H_2O + 708\ \text{kg.cal.} & \rightarrow & C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\,O_2. \end{array}$$

It is the quantity of organic matter formed annually by the carbon dioxide assimilation on the surface of the earth which determines how many heterotrophic organisms, heterotrophic plants, animals, and human beings can live on the earth.

II. Carbon Dioxide Assimilation.

If we want to analyze the annual production of matter per unit of area, we must begin by examining the carbon dioxide assimilation.

When examining the influence of light intensity on the rate of carbon dioxide assimilation in a horizontally placed leaf of *Sinapis alba* at 20° C. and the carbon dioxide tension of the atmosphere, we get a curve, which is represented in fig. 2*a*. The curve begins below the axis of abscissae. When the intensity of light is 0 (darkness), no intake of carbon dioxide will take place, but a giving off of carbon dioxide as a consequence of the respiration. At the intensity of light where the curve intersects the axis of abscissae, there is an equilibrium between carbon dioxide assimilation and respiration. This point is called the compensation point; as far as light leaves are concerned, it is between 500 and 1000 BJ-Lux, i. e. at 1—2 per cent. of the average intensity of light in the middle of the day in summer. Then the curve rises in a straight line with the intensity of light, until it turns over and reaches a maximum, whereupon it runs parallel to the axis of abscissae. The said maximum is reached at an intensity of light of 12.000—15.000 BJ-Lux, about 30 per cent. of the average intensity of light in the middle of the day.

It will be seen from the above statement that a horizontally placed leaf is unable to utilize the full daylight completely, because the maximum assimilation is reached already at an intensity of light far below that of the full daylight. We might therefore be inclined to conclude that in nature there is an excess of light. Such a conclusion will also be correct as far as solitarily growing plants are concerned, which have so few leaves that they do not shade each other. In natural plant communities, however, conditions are different.

In a field of grass or cereals the leaves are not placed horizontally, but more or less slanting. At the same time the leaf area is increased and becomes much larger than the ground area. Therefore the leaves are exposed to an intensity of light amounting only to a certain percentage of the free daylight, and a possibility is thereby created of far better utilization of the light than in the case of leaves fully illuminated.

If we therefore examine the intensity of assimilation of a plant community in various intensities of light, we must expect to get another shape of curve than the one which holds good of horizontal leaves. The result of an examination of this case is represented in fig. 2; as already mentioned *a* represents the assimilation curve for horizontal leaves of *Sinapis alba*, *b* represents the corresponding curve for the leaves in a stock of *Sinapis alba*, like *a* calculated per 50 sq.cm leaf area and hour. The rate of respiration is the same in both cases, but as the leaves in the stock partly shade each other, the slope of curve *b* is far less steep than that of curve *a*, and the compensation point for curve *b* will therefore be at a higher intensity of light. As the leaf area in the stock was 3.4 times that of the ground area, the rate of assimilation at the various intensities of light per

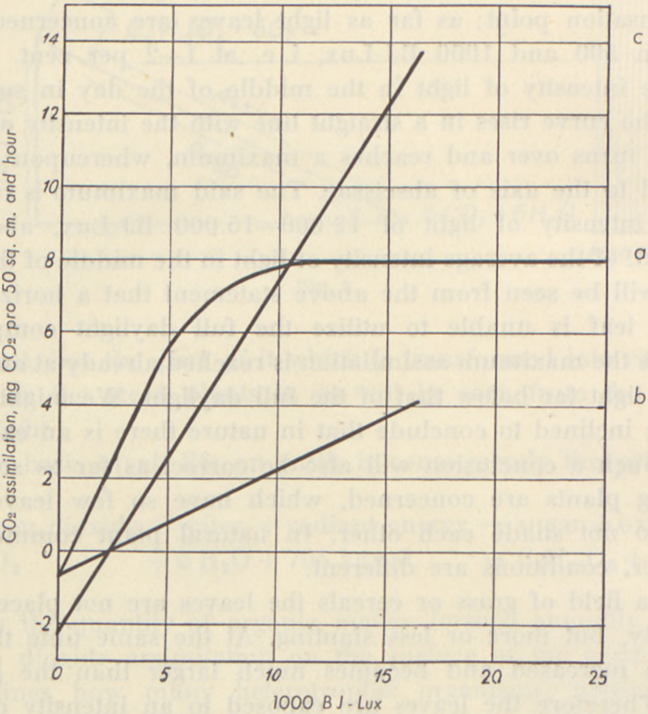


Fig. 2. Light-assimilation curve for horizontal *Sinapis* leaves, measured unilaterally per 50 sq.cm. and hour (a), and for a stock of *Sinapis*, partly per 50 sq.cm leaf area and hour (b), partly per 50 sq. cm. ground area and hour.

50 sq.cm ground surface can be calculated from curve *b*. The curve *c* is the light-assimilation curve of the stock. Its compensation point lies at the same intensity of light as for curve *b*, and therefore considerably higher than for curve *a*. The stock, therefore, demands more light than the horizontal leaf to get a positive result of the assimilation, on the other hand it is able to utilize a far higher intensity of light. Indeed, there is reason to believe that the maximum intensity of assimilation is only reached at an intensity of light of 40—50.000 BJ-Lux, i. e. the stock is able to completely utilize the daylight.

III. Production of Matter in Plant Communities.

The dry matter formed during the carbon dioxide assimilation is used either for an increase of the mass of the individual, or for the formation of reproductive organs, for instance seeds, which may develop into new individuals. With regard to the production of matter, two questions now arise, viz. what factors will determine (1) the course of the production of matter and its size, and (2) the distribution over the different organs of the plant of the matter produced and the nature of the same.

1. Size of the Production of Matter.

a. *The Equation of Production and the Influence of External Factors on the Production of Matter.*

The bulk of the dry matter of the plant is, as already mentioned, produced through the carbon dioxide assimilation. Therefore, when it is asked why a certain quantity of dry matter is produced by a certain plant or in a certain area during the period of vegetation, the answer must be: in the first instance because the said quantity of matter is produced through the carbon dioxide assimilation. The total quantity of dry matter produced in this process is called the gross production. However, the case is not simply that all the gross production becomes plant dry matter. Part of the dry matter produced in the leaves by the gross production is lost by the respiration in the leaves. When this loss of dry matter due to the respiration of the leaves, together with the dry matter that has been used for the formation of the leaves, is subtracted from the gross production, a quantity is obtained that may be called the net production of the leaves, i. e. the quantity of dry matter given off by the leaves to roots, stems, and reproductive organs.

The said quantity of dry matter has then been used partly to build up axial organs and roots as well as reproductive organs, partly to cover the loss of dry matter that has taken place by the respiration in the organs mentioned. When the loss of dry matter by the respiration in axial organs and roots, as well as in the reproductive organs, is subtracted from the net production of the leaves, the result will be the total weight of dry matter of these organs.

We then get the following balance sheet of the production of dry matter in the plants (Table 2).

Table 2.

Gain of dry matter by carbon dioxide assimilation in the leaves (gross production) ....

— Loss of dry matter by respiration in the leaves ....

— Dry matter, used for the formation of leaves ....

Net production of dry matter by the leaves ....

Loss of dry matter by respiration in	Dry matter present in
Axial organs	Axial organs ....
Roots	Roots ....
Reproductive organs	Reproductive organs (flowers, seeds)

According to the above survey, the total production of dry matter comprises all the dry matter formed in leaves, axial organs, roots, and reproductive organs.

As to their significance for the production of matter the organs of the plants fall into two groups, the matter-producing organs which, in general, practically comprise the leaves only, and the rest of the organs, such as stems, roots, flowers, and fruits, which are built up of the matter produced by the leaves, and in which dry matter is also lost by respiration.

From the point of view of economy a distinction must be made between the parts utilized, and the parts left in the field of growth (Table 3).

Table 3.

	Parts utilized	Parts left behind
Cereals	Leaves + Stems, Seeds	Roots
Sugar beets	Leaves, Roots	

We are now able to record which factors are of importance to the size of the production of matter. They may be divided into 6 groups: (1) Temperature with regard to its effect on the growth and thereby as a determining factor for the length of the period of vegetation. (2) Factors which influence the size of the carbon dioxide assimilation, viz. light, temperature, and carbon dioxide tension. (3) Temperature with regard to its effect on the respiration in leaves, axial organs, and roots, as well as in the reproductive organs, and thereby on the loss of matter by respiration in the said organs. (4) Factors that are of importance with regard to the water balance. Under this heading belongs, first, the quantity of water available, which is determined partly by the size of the rainfall, partly by the properties of the soil; here also belong the factors influencing the transpiration especially the saturation deficit of the air, and winds. (5) The edaphic factors or the properties of the soil; to these belong chiefly the mineral nutrients, but also the hydrogen ion concentration, the contents of air in the soil, etc. The edaphic factors may often, when unfavourable for the plants, be altered by the intervention of man, and that is the reason why those factors have preferably been considered in connection with investigations on the production of matter. (6) The pathological factors. The latter comprise not only attacks from parasitic fungi and animals, but also certain climatic factors, for instance hail.

The factors 1—5 will now be examined with regard to their effect on the size of the production of matter.

b. *Length of the Period of Vegetation.*

The length of the period of vegetation will be of the very greatest importance to the size of the production of matter in the course of a year. By the period of vegetation is understood the the time of the year during which the development of plants is not limited by external factors. It will now be investigated what external factors can limit the period of vegetation.

In regions with uniform, constantly warm and humid weather, the period of vegetation will extend over the whole year.

In regions with seasonally changing temperature and rainfall, it will in many cases, e. g. in North and Central Europe, be the temperature that determines the length of the period of vegetation by its influence on the growth. In the early spring, towards the end of March and all through April, there is sufficient light in Denmark for enabling a rather vigorous carbon dioxide assimilation, but the production of matter is nevertheless slight, e. g. in fields with winter cereals. This is due to the fact that the temperature is too low to enable growth. There is, therefore, no consumption of matter in the growth processes; the plants are filled with assimilates, and the carbon dioxide assimilation stops. Not until May does the temperature become so high that growth commences, and development is given an impetus.

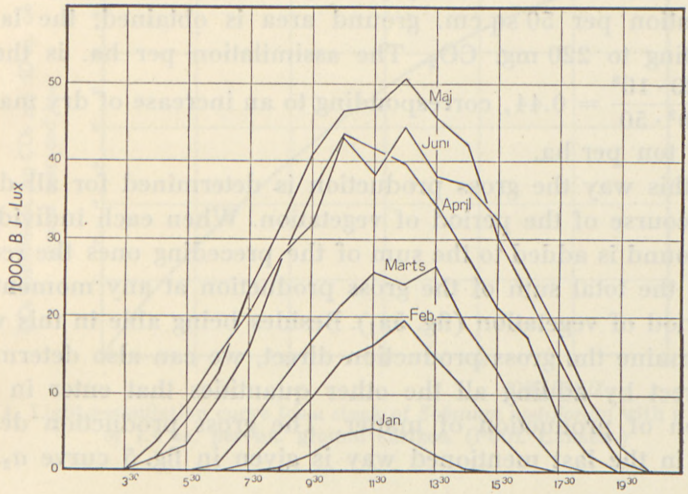
c. *Production of Matter in the Period of Vegetation.*

(*a*) When a closer examination of the production of matter is made, it will be natural to begin by considering the case in which water and mineral substances are present in optimum, and no pathological factors are acting on the plants. It will now be examined how it is possible to measure the individual quantities determining the size of the production of matter per ha. As object is chosen a stock of *Solanum nodiflorum.* (POUL LARSEN 1941).

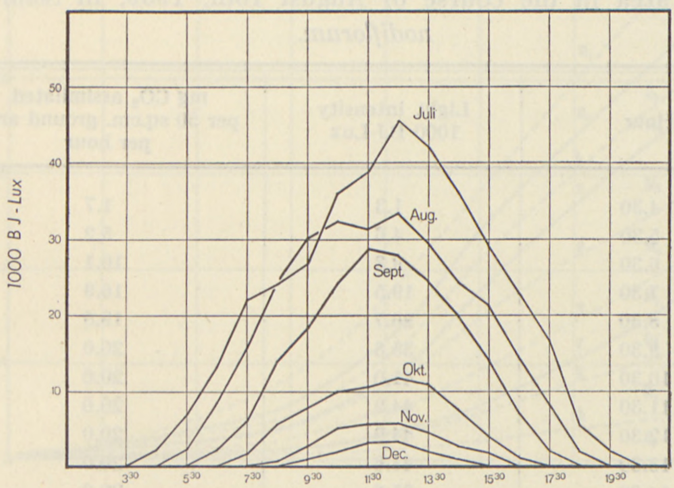
(1) *Gross Production.* It will first be shown how the size of the gross production is measured in the course of 24 hours, namely August the 10th, 1939. To make this determination we must know (1) the course of the intensity of light during the day, (2) the leaf area per ha. of the stock, and (3) the light assimilation curve of the stock. The course of the intensity of light on the 10th of August, 1939, is given in Table 4, 2nd column.[1] By means of the curve in fig. 4, giving the real assimilation for the stock per 50 sq.cm. ground area (compare fig. 2, curve *c*)[2], the assimilation value corresponding to each of the above-mentioned intensities of light is found. The latter values are stated

[1] The average daily course of the intensity of light during the individual months of 1937—38 is given in figs. 3*a* and 3*b*.

[2] The curve in fig. 4 differs from that in fig. 2*c* by being displaced parallelly to the ordinate axis, so that it commences in the intersecting point of the axes; by this displacement the quantity of carbon dioxide given off by respiration is added to the quantity apparently taken up. The curve in fig. 4 thus renders the influence of light on the gross production, the so-called real assimilation. The leaf area in the experiment was only 1.6 times that of the ground area. Such a leaf area is not sufficiently large to utilize the full light intensity. Already at a light intensity of 30.000 BJ-Lux the curve will be almost parallel to the axis of abscissae.



3 *a* *hours*



3 *b* *hours*

Fig. 3*a* and 3*b*. The curves represent the daily course of the light intensity during the months from July 1937 to June 1938 in Copenhagen. The light intensity, given in BJ-Lux, was measured with a photo-electric cell connected to a self-registering ampèremeter (Romose 1940).

in Table 4, 3rd column. By adding the said values, the total assimilation per 50 sq.cm. ground area is obtained, the latter amounting to 220 mg. CO_2. The assimilation per ha. is therefore $\frac{220 \cdot 10^8}{10^9 \cdot 50} = 0.44$, corresponding to an increase of dry matter of 0.27 ton per ha.

In this way the gross production is determined for all days in the course of the period of vegetation. When each individual value found is added to the sum of the preceding ones the result will be the total sum of the gross production at any moment in the period of vegetation (fig. $5a_1$). Besides being able in this way to determine the gross production direct, we can also determine it indirect by adding all the other quantities that enter in the equation of production of matter. The gross production determined in the last mentioned way is given in fig. 5 curve a_2.

Table 4.

Calculation of the absorption of carbon dioxide per 50 sq.cm. ground area in the course of August 10th, 1939, in *Solanum nodiflorum*.

Hour	Light intensity 1000 BJ-Lux	mg CO_2 assimilated per 50 sq.cm. ground area per hour
4.30	1.3	1.7
5.30	4.6	5.2
6.30	9.8	10.1
7.30	19.5	16.9
8.30	26.7	19.5
9.30	35.8	20.0
10.30	41.0	20.0
11.30	44.9	20.0
12.30	44.9	20.0
13.30	41.6	20.0
14.30	35.8	20.0
15.30	23.4	18.6
16.30	12.4	12.3
17.30	5.9	6.5
18.30	7.8	8.2
19.30	0.7	0.9

Total... 219.9 mg CO_2

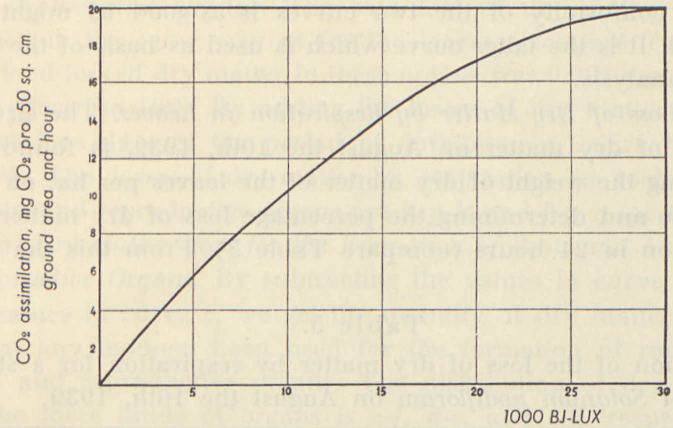


Fig. 4. Light-assimilation curve for a stock of *Solanum nodiflorum* with a leaf area of 1.6 ha. per ha. ground surface. (Poul Larsen.)

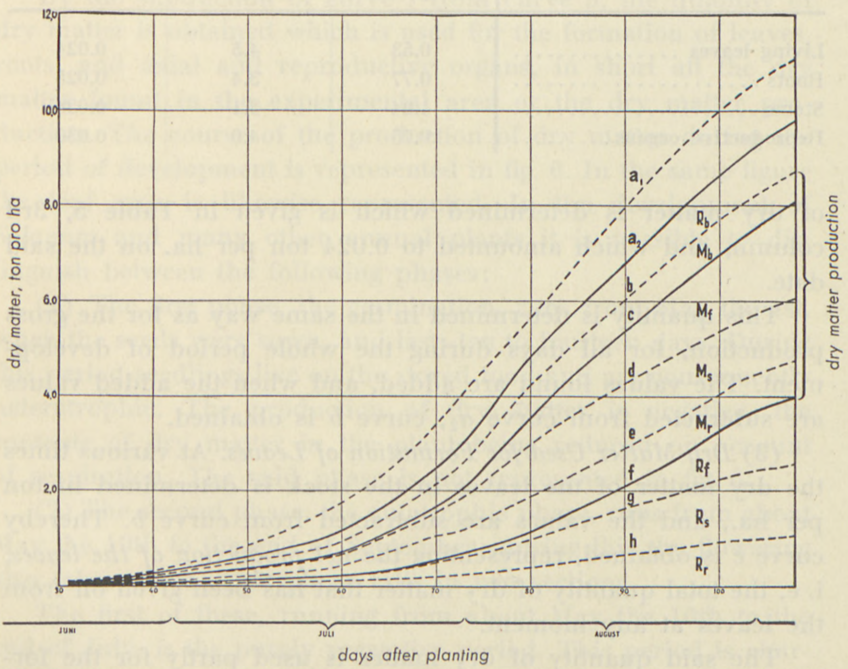


Fig. 5. The course of the individual quantities determining the production of matter in a stock of *Solanum nodiflorum*. All quantities expressed in ton dry matter per ha. M_b, M_f, M_s, and M_r represent the amount of leaves, reproductive organs, stems, and roots; R_b, R_f, R_s, and R_r represent the loss of dry matter by respiration in the same organs. For further particulars see text (according to Poul Larsen).

The conformity of the two curves is as good as might be expected. It is the latter curve which is used as basis of the following analysis.

(2) *Loss of Dry Matter by Respiration in Leaves.* The size of the loss of dry matter on August the 10th, 1939, is found by measuring the weight of dry matter of the leaves per ha. on the said date and determining the percentage loss of dry matter by respiration in 24 hours (compare Table 5). From this the loss

Table 5.

Calculation of the loss of dry matter by respiration for a stock of *Solanum nodiflorum* on August the 10th, 1939.

	Average weight of dry matter of the organs, ton per ha.	Percentage loss of dry matter during 24 hours at 19°	Loss of dry matter Aug. 10th, 1939, ton per ha. 19°
Living leaves	0.53	4.5	0.024
Roots	0.77	3.4	0.025
Stems	1.24	3.1	0.038
Reproductive organs	0.75	4.0	0.030

of dry matter is determined which is given in Table 5, 3rd column, and which amounted to 0.024 ton per ha. on the said date.

This quantity is determined in the same way as for the gross production, for all days during the whole period of development. The values found are added, and when the added values are subtracted from curve a_2, curve b is obtained.

(3) *Dry Matter Used for Formation of Leaves.* At various times the dry matter of the leaves in the stock is determined in ton per ha., and the values are subtracted from curve b. Thereby curve c is obtained, representing the *net production of the leaves,* i. e. the total quantity of dry matter that has been given off from the leaves at any moment.

The said quantity of dry matter is used partly for the formation of axial organs and roots, as well as reproductive organs, partly for covering the loss of dry matter by respiration in these organs. The latter quantity is determined first.

(4) *Loss of Dry Matter by Respiration in Axial Organs, Roots,*

and Reproductive Organs. The said loss of dry matter is calculated in the same way as for the leaves (compare Table 5). The total loss of dry matter in these organs was 0.093 ton per ha. on August the 10th. By adding the losses of dry matter during the various days of the period of development, curve *f* is obtained. The losses of dry matter by respiration in roots, axial organs, and reproductive organs are *h*, *g-h*, and *f-g*, respectively[1].

(5) *Dry Matter Used for the Formation of Roots and Axial and Reproductive Organs.* By subtracting the values in curve *f* from the values in curve *c*, we get the quantity of dry matter which has at any moment been used for the formation of roots and axial and reproductive organs. The distribution of dry matter on the three kinds of organs is *e-f*, *d-e*, and *c-d*, respectively. It is seen that the formation of reproductive organs does not get an impetus till the latter half of July.

By the subtraction of curve *f* from curve *b*, the quantity of dry matter is obtained which is used for the formation of leaves, roots, and axial and reproductive organs, in short all the dry matter found in the experimental area or the dry matter production. The course of the production of dry matter during the period of development is represented in fig. 6. In the same figure the leaf area is likewise represented. In the development of *Solanum* and many other annual plants it is possible to distinguish between the following phases:

(1) The first phase, the germination, runs from May the 1st, when the seeds were sown, and lasts ten to fourteen days. During this period seedlings live on the stored food and are consequently heterotrophic. The production of dry matter is negative, the contents of dry matter in the plant being reduced on account of respiration. The said phase is not represented in fig. 6.

(2) The second phase, the autotrophic phase, runs from about May the 10th to the end of September; during this the flowering also takes place. This phase falls in two sections.

The first of these, running from about May the 10th to the end of July, is the purely vegetative period. This period is characterized by the development of the assimilatory system, partly

[1] Besides in the leaves, chlorophyl is likewise found in herbaceous stems, immature fruits a. s. o. In the latter a recovering assimilation will therefore be able to take place, by which part of the carbon dioxide produced by the respiration will again be built up, if light is present.

roots and axial organs, partly leaves. At first the plants are sparse, a coherent leaf area is developed only gradually. As the development of the leaf area is progressive, the net production of the leaves and the quantity of dry matter will also increase progressively according to a curve which is convex against the axis of abscissae.

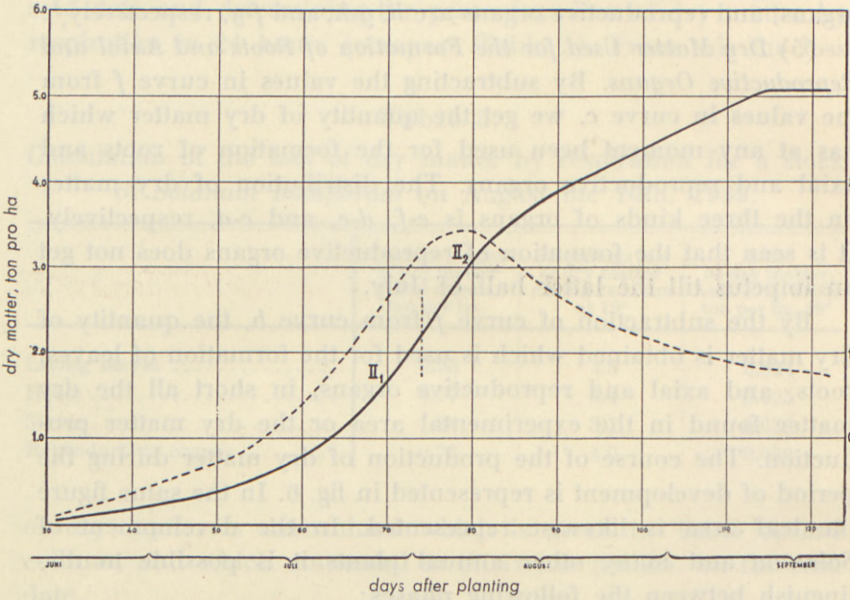


Fig. 6. Production of dry matter in *Solanum nodiflorum*. The numbers for the inked-in curve denote dry matter per ha.; for the stippled curve the leaf area in ha. per ha. on the various times after the planting out. II_1 and II_2 are the two sections within the autotrophic phase (Poul Larsen).

The second section of the autotrophic phase runs from the end of July to the end of September; it is characterized by the fact that the development of leaves, roots, and axial organs ceases, and that the assimilation products, besides being used to cover the respiratory loss, are also used for the formation of reproductive organs. The leaf area is at most 1.7 times as large as the ground area and is slowly decreasing as part of the leaves wither and die. So the daily net production of the leaves is also slightly decreasing; as the loss of dry matter by respiration in roots and axial and reproductive organs is simultaneously increasing, the curve for the production of dry matter will be concave against the axis of abscissae during this period.

The curve for the production of dry matter during the autotrophic phase is consequently S-shaped.

When the leaves have withered completely, the production of dry matter ceases; the curve for the production of dry matter will then run parallel to the axis of abscissae, at last it falls off slightly.

(β) Water deficiency. When a period of water deficiency sets in, the stomata are closed, the intake of carbon dioxide, and consequently the production of matter will then stop almost completely, so that the part of the period of development when the supply of water is insufficient is lost for the production of matter.

The effect of such a period of drought is very different on one hand in plants with purely vegetative development (e. g. beets) and on the other in plants in which the development of leaves is limited by the formation of flowers.

In the first case the carbon dioxide assimilation and consequently the production of matter ceases during the period of drought, but if the latter does not to any further degree damage the plants, the production of matter will continue, when rain comes again, so that the only effect of the period of drought is that the said period is lost to the production of matter.

In cereals, e. g., the effect of a period of drought may on the other hand be more complicated, as besides stopping the production of matter, it may also restrain the development of leaves and accelerate the development of the ear. When the said change from purely vegetative development to formation of flowers has occurred, it cannot recede any more. Besides its direct stopping effect on the production of matter, the drought may, therefore, also have an indirect effect on such plants, namely by preventing the assimilatory system from reaching a sufficient development, and thus reducing the production of matter.

The large fluctuations in the harvest yield seen from one year to another in Denmark may, especially as far as the summer crops are concerned, be traced back to fluctuations in the supply of water during the period of vegetation.

(γ) The significance of mineral nutrients. In plants suffering from want of nitrogen or potassium or phosphate, the maximum rate of assimilation may go down to half the normal value and even further, even if the stomata are open, and the content of chlorophyl has no limiting effect on the carbon dioxide assimilation.

The decrease in the rate of assimilation is only one of the causes of the restraining effect of nitrogen and phosphate deficiency on the production of matter; another, more indirect, effect consists in the fact that the formation of stems and roots is furthered at the expense of the leaves, and such an unfavourable distribution of matter will contribute further to diminish the production of matter (D. Müller 1932).

In potassium deficient plants the relation stem + root : leaf area is, on the other hand, normal (D. Müller and P. Larsen 1935).

2. The Distribution of Matter.

Annual and biennial plants are characterized by the fact that besides the vegetative organs—leaves, stems, and roots—storage organs are likewise produced, such as seeds or tubers, containing relatively little cellulose, but much starch, sucrose or fat and protein. The distribution of the matter produced through the carbon dioxide assimilation over the different organs takes place in a way which is specific to each plant species.

In the experiment with *Solanum nodiflorum* mentioned above, the production of dry matter per ha. (i. e. the quantity of dry matter found in the field at the end of the period of vegetation) was 4.77 ton. Of the said amount the leaves made up 0.66 ton (14 per cent.), the roots 0.79 ton (16 per cent.), the stems 1.32 tons (28 per cent.), and the reproductive organs 2.00 tons (42 per cent.).

In an experiment with *Sinapis* (Hornberger 1885) the production of dry matter per ha. was 9.4 ton, distributed over the different organs in the following way: leaves 0.9 ton (10 per cent.), stems 5.9 ton (63 per cent.), roots 0.3 ton (3 per cent.), and siliques 2.3 ton (24 per cent.).

Of a crop of wheat about 30 per cent. becomes grain, 50 per cent. straw, and the rest, 20 per cent., is left in the field in the shape of stubble and roots.

The distribution over the various organs of the matter produced may be altered somewhat under the influence of external factors. As mentioned above, deficiency of mineral nutrients may further the development of stems and roots at the expense of the leaves. In many plants the length of day also determines the time in which the flowering will occur and consequently the distribution of matter. (GARNER and ALLARD, see MAXIMOV 1929.)

In long-day plants, e. g. barley, the long day favours the formation of grains, the short day the formation of vegetative organs, in short-day plants, e. g. millet, it is vice-versa. The effect of the length of day on the distribution of matter in the plants mentioned appears from Table 6. It should, however, be emphasized that such extreme conditions as those in the table will not normally appear in nature, because the plants growing or being cultivated in a given locality will generally be adapted to the day length of the latter.

Table 6.

Influence of the length of day on the distribution of matter in short- and long-day plants (RASUMOV).

	Length of day in hours	Weight; per cent. of total weight			
		Leaves	Roots	Stems	Ears
Barley (long-day plant)	18	12	11	55	22
	12	30	32	37	1
Millet (*Panicum*, short-day plant)	12	19	10	26	45
	18	25	17	40	18

IV. Increase of the Production of Matter and its Limitation.

Of the large number of plants found in nature only a rather small number is especially valuable as food for man and domestic animals. The aim of agriculture is, therefore, to replace the natural vegetation by cultures of such valuable utilitarian plants.

Now in order to get as large a production of matter of these as possible, two different ways may be followed. We may try to utilize the given conditions of vegetation as well as possible and further try to improve them still more, or we may try to improve the plants proper by breeding.

1. Utilization and Improvement of the Conditions of Vegetation.

(α) Utilization of the Period of Vegetation. It will be seen from the above, partly that there is a *period of vegetation* limited by external factors, temperature or rainfall, partly that many cultural plants, e. g. cereals, have a definite *period of development*, by which is understood the time from germination to ripening. Hence, it is a question of selecting plants, whose period of development is such that they are able to utilize the period of vegetation as well as possible. Possibly several crops may be cultivated after each other.

Among the plants cultivated in Denmark the period of vegetation is rather badly utilized by the cereals. The assimilation is finished as early as July, so that the large quantities of light in August-September are lost to the plant production in the fields of cereals. The period of vegetation is utilized far better by grass and beet crops, which continue assimilation into the month of October. The annual production of dry matter is therefore also considerably larger in a beet crop than in a cereal crop, and the introduction of beets into the agriculture of Denmark has therefore involved an increase in the annual yield. Cereals are, however, the most important food for man, and also play a great part as fodder for the domestic animals; so they can be only partly replaced by beets, and there is a limit how far we may go in replacing cereal crops by grass- and beet-crops.

(β) Alteration of the Edaphic Factors. These factors may be altered by the farmer to an extreme degree, especially the necessary mineral nutrients may be added, and the hydrogen ion concentration may be regulated, so that it reaches its optimum.

The products harvested in the fields are preferably storage organs, containing relatively large quantities of mineral nutrients. With a potato crop 90 kilos N, 18 kilos P, and 130 kilos K are removed. It is evident that the condition for an intensive plant culture over prolonged periods is the restoration to the soil of at least part of the mineral nutrients removed from it. As regards most of the essential elements it is unnecessary to supply them by fertilizing, because the quantities absorbed by the plant are small as compared to the quantities present in the soil. The most important fertilizers are N-, P-, and K-compounds.

Though on the whole the mineral requirements of the plants are known, it is not possible to develop a completely rational theory of fertilization. The basis of such a theory must be the fact that it is the substances present in minimum quantities which chiefly limit the size of the production of matter, and which must therefore preferably be added; it must consequently be the endeavour to see that all fertilizers are present in an optimum quantity. This optimum quantity of fertilizers is, however, very difficult to determine, partly because we are only able to determine the available salts in the soil very roughly, partly because the requirement of the plants vary very much and finally because the optimum quantity of fertilizers is also dependent on other factors influencing growth, especially the rainfall, which is not known in advance. In practice, e. g. heavy fertilization with nitrogen in humid summers will be able to further the formation of lodging, whereby the production of matter is diminished.

Another edaphic factor which is of importance to the production of matter, is, as mentioned above, the hydrogen ion concentration. As far as the latter is concerned, we must likewise endeavour to obtain the optimal value for the plant in question; for the cereals it is near the neutral point. A displacement of pH in a basic direction is obtained by addition of marl or pure carbon of lime.

(γ) Supply of Water. When the edaphic factors are optimal the key to creating a large production of matter is above all to keep the stomata open during the period of development, and this is again dependent on a favourable supply of water. This factor can, however, as already mentioned, be regulated to a slight degree only. Excess of water may certainly be carried away by means of draining, which must not be so deep that too much water is drained away from the soil. Deficiency of water may generally be remedied with difficulty only; it must be the endeavour to utilize the water present as economically as possible; this may to a certain degree be effected by means of the planting of shelters, which diminish the promoting effect of the wind on transpiration.

Attempts at increasing the resistance of plants to drought were made by HENCKEL and KOLOTOVA (1934) by alternatively dessicating and moistening the seeds before the sowing.

There is a possibility that the increase of the production of dry matter which according to certain authors (cf. AMLONG und NAUNDORF 1938, and later papers by AMLONG) is said to be obtained by treating seeds with growth substances (for instance β-indolyl-acetic acid) is due to a more vigorous development of the root system, so that the plants become able to absorb more water.

(δ) Tension of Carbon Dioxide. Some years ago much work was devoted to the problem of increasing the production of matter by means of an increase of the tension of carbon dioxide in the air, especially in green-house cultures, but also in agricultural crops. It must be considered probable that an increased tension of carbon dioxide involves an increased intensity of assimilation. It may not, however, be concluded that it will also involve an increase of the production of dry matter, because there is a possibility that the plants cannot transport away and utilize more assimilates than those formed at the normal tension of carbon dioxide. Experiments are published, according to which it should be possible to increase the production of matter in green-house cultures by 50—100 per cent. (cf. BORNEMANN 1920). The said experiments do not appear to have got any practical value hitherto.

(ε) Control of Weeds, Noxious Animals, and Plant Diseases. It would take us too far to approach these problems here, but they are of far-reaching importance to the production of matter.

(ζ) Distribution of Matter. It is not, however, sufficient to increase the production of matter; the point is also that the matter produced is distributed in the right way, that as large a percentage as possible is deposited in the organs which are the main object of the cultivation, and that means—at any rate as far as our cereals are concerned—in the grain. It must therefore be our endeavour to obtain the most favourable distribution of the matter produced. On the one hand there must be leaves enough to utilize the light, and on the other there must be a sufficient number of organs, e. g. in cereals ovules, in which the assimilates may be stored. The maximum yield of grain in the cereals is dependent upon the flowering commencing at the right time. This may be obtained by using species and varieties whose requirement as to the length of day is in accordance with that found in the place of cultivation. In certain cases the time of flowering may be promoted by external factors, especially by exposing seeds in a partially soaked state to low temperature. This treatment is generally called vernalization (Lysenko and others, Maximov 1934, Imper. Bur. Plant Genet. 1935).

(η) Summary. The factors of vegetation may be divided into two groups, viz. those which can be altered, and those which cannot be altered. To the first belong the climatic factors, light, temperature, to the second the edaphic factors, mineral nutrients, and, in part, the supply of water.

When the influence of a factor of the latter group, e. g. the concentration of phosphate, on the production of matter is examined, it will be seen that the yield is first increased by an increasing supply of phosphate, until it has reached a certain size. A further increase of the concentration of phosphate will cause no further increase of the yield and the curve will run parallel to the axis of abscissae (fig. 7). This law holds good not only of phosphate, but of all the other edaphic factors alike. When they are optimal, an increase of them will not involve an increase in yield. It will then be the climatic factors which cannot be altered that will limit the size of the yield.

2. Plant Breeding.

Plant breeding may have various aims. It may be the endeavour to extend the area of cultivation of a plant, for instance a cereal. Through the production of races with a shorter period of development it has been possible to displace the limit of the cultivation of cereals northwards. In other cases the same aim has been achieved by producing types which are especially winterproof, or the temperature acquirement of which is lower during the period of development. Yet the object of plant breeding will often be to produce varieties with a larger yield than those formerly known. The said aim may be gained by the production of types, which by a vigorous development of roots are especially

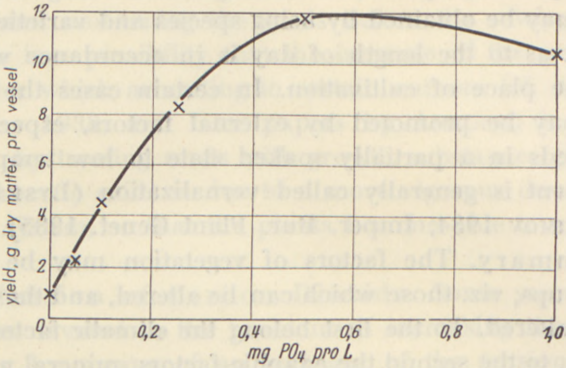


Fig. 7. Influence of phosphate concentration on the yield in maize. (PARKER.)

resistant to drought, or which show a better distribution of matter, for the cereals for instance because of their having more ovules and stiffer straw. It is, however, obvious that it is the gross production that determines how far we may reach with regard to an increase of the yielding capacity of the plants. As mentioned above the size of the gross production is determined by the climatic factors, especially the light, partly also the temperature—provided the edaphic factors and the water supply are optimal. The problem is, therefore, whether it is possible to produce races which are able to utilize the light better than those already existing. The utilization of the light is again determined by two factors, viz. the assimilatory capacity of the leaves, and the more or less adequate structure of the assimilatory system.

It might be thought that an improvement of the assimilatory capacity of the leaves could be reached in two different ways, either by producing types with a higher maximum assimilation, or with a steeper assimilation curve than the types hitherto known (cf. fig. 8). In the first case the gross production of the stock would increase, because a smaller leaf area per ground area would be required in order to utilize the daylight completely.

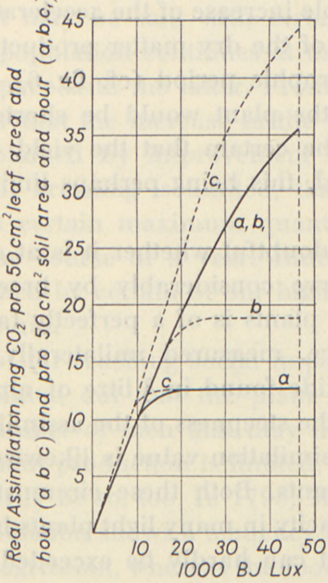


Fig. 8. Curve a represents the assimilation curve for a horizontal leaf and a_1 the corresponding curve for a stock of the same plant; a leaf area about 3 times the ground area is required in order to utilize the daylight fully. Curve b is a curve for a horizontal leaf, the maximum assimilation of which is larger than for the leaf in curve a; the corresponding assimilation curve for the stock b_1 is identical with a_1, but it demands a leaf area of only twice the ground area in order to utilize the daylight fully. Curve c is a curve for a horizontal leaf that has a steeper assimilation curve than the leaf in a; the corresponding assimilation curve for the stock is c_1; a leaf area of 4 times the ground area is required to utilize the daylight completely.

But it would be of greater importance still, if the steepness of the assimilation curve was increased. Not only would the maximum assimilation of the stock become considerably larger hereby, but in addition such a stock would be particularly able to utilize the smaller intensities of light to a higher degree; to be sure, a larger leaf area would also be required to utilize the full daylight, but that would be of no great importance. With regard to the increase of the net production of the leaves which might be reached by the alterations of the assimilation curves represented in fig. 8, it may be thought that the net assimilation in the course of 24 hours at intensities of light such as those stated in Table 4 would be increased by 5 per cent. in the case of curve *b* and by about 20 per cent. in the case of curve *c*. The said increase, however, means considerably more than it seems, as it would involve a considerable increase of the acceleration of the development of leaves and of the dry matter production during the first section of the autotrophic period (cf. fig. 6), so that the period of development of the plant would be shortened; on the other hand it might not be certain that the yield of grain in cereals would be augmented, this being perhaps limited by the number of ovules per ha.

Still it is rather doubtful whether it is at all possible to alter the assimilation curve considerably by breeding. The rate of assimilation in light plants is of a perfectly fantastic size, as per 1 sq.cm. leaf surface, measured unilaterally, during one hour all the carbon dioxide found in $\frac{1}{2}$ litre of air can be taken up. As far as we know the steepness of the assimilation curve as well as the maximum assimilation value is likewise surprisingly alike in different light plants. Both these circumstances suggest that the assimilatory capacity in many light plants has already reached such a height that it can hardly be exceeded.

The adequate structure of the assimilatory system is obtained when a suitable leaf area is present in the stock, and the light is distributed as homogeneously as possible over the leaves. A suitable leaf area is obtained by a suitable number of plants, which is again determined by the quantity of seeds sown. The structure of the assimilatory system is determined by morphological properties in the plants and can hardly be altered; in the cereals with their long, slanting leaves it may be supposed that the distribution of light in the stock approaches the optimum.

V. Conclusion.

It may be considered certain that considerable improvements in the direction of increasing the yield may still be obtained by improving the growth conditions and by plant breeding. If we want to estimate the importance of such improvements, it will be most correct from a social point of view not to calculate their value in money, but to compare them with the increase of population. In Denmark, e. g. the population has almost doubled in 50 years, and the same applies to many other countries. Even if the plant production has been very much increased during the said period, it may be said with certainty that it will not, if the increase of population continues at the same rate, be able in future to keep pace with the latter. From what is said above, it will even appear that the increase in the production of matter which may be obtained by improvement of the conditions of growth or by plant breeding is limited, that it will be possible to produce only a certain maximum quantity of dry matter in a given area in the course of a year. Indeed we may suppose that the yield reached by certain of our high-bred cultural plants is near the maximum.

This result is of far-reaching social importance. In the introduction it was pointed out that the plant production is determinative of the number of men that may live on the surface of the earth. As the plant production is limited, the population of the earth must necessarily be so, too. In 1798, Malthus put forth the theory that the population shows a tendency to increase according to a geometrical progression, whereas the food increases according to an arithmetical progression only, and that if measures were not taken against this, this fact must lead to lack of food. As is well known, Malthus was not justified in his prediction in the first instance, but it is not out of the question that he will be in the next. There must necessarily exist a balance between plant production and population.

The reflections set forth preferably concern countries with a highly developed agriculture, but they will, if the increase of population continues, gradually make themselves felt everywhere.

From the Laboratory of Plant Physiology.
University of Copenhagen.

VI. References.

Amlong, H. U. und G. Naundorf, Die Wuchshormone in der gärtnerischen Praxis. Berlin 1938.

Avery, George S. and Elisabeth B. Johnson, Hormones and Horticulture. New York—London 1947.

Bornemann, F., Kohlensäure und Pflanzenwachstum. Berlin 1920.

Boysen Jensen, P., Die Stoffproduktion der Pflanzen. Jena 1932.

— Die Elemente der Pflanzenphysiologie. Jena 1939.

Gabrielsen, E. K., Einfluss der Lichtfaktoren auf die Kohlensäureassimilation der Laubblätter. Dansk botanisk Arkiv. Copenhagen 10, Nr. 1, 1940.

Henckel, P. A. and S. S. Kolotova, On Acquiring Drought-Resistance by Plants before Sowing under the Conditions of Vegetation Experiment. Bull. de l'Institut d. rech. biol. de Perm IX, 13, 1934.

Hornberger, R., Untersuchungen über Gehalt und Zunahmen von Sinapis alba an Trockensubstanz und chemischen Bestandteilen in 7-tägigen Vegetationsperioden. Landw. Versst. 31, 415, 1885.

Imperial Bureaux of Plant Genetics, Vernalization and Phasic Development of Plants. Aberystwith and Cambridge 1935.

Larsen, Poul, Vergleich der direct bestimmten und der aus Messungen der Assimilation und Atmung errechneten Stoffproduktion einjähriger Pflanzenbestände. Planta (Berl.) 32, 343, 1941.

Maximow, N. A., Experimentelle Änderungen der Länge der Vegetationsperiode bei den Pflanzen. Biol. Zentrbl. 49, 513, 1929.

— The Theoretical Significance of Vernalization. Herb. Publ. Ser. Bull. 16, 1934.

Müller, D., Analyse der verminderten Stoffproduktion bei Stickstoffmangel. Planta (Berl.) 16, 1, 1932.

Müller, D. und Poul Larsen, Analyse der Stoffproduktion bei Stickstoff- und Kalimangel. Planta. (Berl.) 23, 501, 1935.

Romose, V., Ökologische Untersuchungen über *Homalothecium sericeum*, seine Wachstumsperiode und seine Stoffproduktion. Dansk bot. Arkiv. Copenhagen, 10. Nr. 4, 1940.

Schroeder, Die jährliche Gesamtproduktion der grünen Pflanzendecke der Erde. Die Naturwissenschaften 1919, S. 8.

— Quantitatives über die Verwendung der solaren Energie auf Erden. Die Naturwissenschaften 1919, S. 976.

Indleveret til Selskabet den 23. september 1948.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 19. april 1949.

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 3

CAUSAL PLANT-GEOGRAPHY

BY

P. BOYSEN JENSEN

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

Printed in Denmark.
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

Let us suppose that on a map of Scandinavia we mark down a point in Denmark. In the place of the point we shall probably find a higher plant, e. g. a beech-tree or an oat plant. If we ask why these plants are growing there, it is apparently easy to give an answer: the cause is that men have determined that these plants shall grow in this place. If on the other hand we mark down the point in a territory in Sweden or Norway where culture has not yet been able to impress the natural plant distribution to any essential degree, we shall probably again find a higher plant in the place of the point. In this case it is very difficult to answer the question why this plant is growing there. We are here confronted with the central problem of causal plant-geography, namely that of elucidating why this plant grows in this place at this moment.

This problem cannot be solved in an absolute way, but it is possible to a certain degree to approach the solution of the problem. We shall begin by limiting the task somewhat by not regarding the place as a point, because in that case chance will play a very large part for the plant distribution, but rather as a narrow, homogeneous territory, a locality.

We shall begin by mentioning some previous attempts at solving the problem of plant distribution in nature.

It has sometimes been thought that this problem might be solved statistically. From the correct idea that it is the climate which plays the greatest part as to the distribution of the plants, it has been attempted to find the connection between climate and vegetation by examining the percentage distribution of the species within the growth-forms in a definite geographical territory. In Denmark the following percentage distribution of the species has for instance been found: (MM + M are mega-, meso-, and micro-phanerophytes, N nanophanerophytes, Ch chamaephytes, H hemicryptophytes, G geophytes, HH helo- and hydrophytes, and Th therophytes).

Number of species:	MM+M	N	CH	H	HH	G	TH
1084	4	3	3	50	11	11	18

The conclusion has been drawn that, the hemicryptophytes having by far the largest number of species, the climate of Denmark is a hemicryptophytic climate (Raunkiær 1907).

Against this method and the results obtained with it the objection may be raised that the same weight is attached to the different species of plants; thus no greater importance is attached to a plant as for instance the beech, growing in large parts of Denmark and in large numbers, than for instance to *Oenothera ammophila*, which grows in few localities only. It is this procedure which causes the hemicryptophytes, the species of which are very numerous, to have been regarded as the plants characterizing vegetation in Denmark and which makes the four per cent. MM+M, i. e. the trees and bushes, in Denmark disappear, although if the vegetation were left to itself they are those which would characterize the whole vegetation of Denmark. Therefore the climate of Denmark is not, as it has been deduced from the said figures, a hemicryptophytic climate, it is a forest climate, the climate being of such condition that the growth-form which has the greatest demands, but at the same time the one best equipped for the struggle for existence, namely the tree, can grow there. Hence it appears that the statistical method described above is unserviceable.

Or it has been tried to find climatic lines, for instance isotherms, coinciding with certain boundaries of vegetation. Now it cannot be denied that such coincidences may be found. Plants, for instance, which cannot bear freezing can only grow in places where the temperature does not drop so far that they freeze. But the attempt of connecting the plant distribution with a single climatic or edaphic factor is wrong in principle, as will be shown below.

When we shall try now to solve the problem of the distribution of plants in nature, we must begin with some preliminary remarks. What is immediately given in nature is the individual plants, not plant-communities. What is called plant-communities is not entities in the same sense as insect states, or human societies. There is nothing binding together the individual plants of a community, on the contrary they live in a merciless struggle with each other. Definite kinds of plants grow together only because they make about the same demands to surrounding conditions.

Hence it is concrete plants which must be the starting-point in our investigations and as it is impossible to investigate all plants we must limit ourselves to the characteristic ones; all rarities must be disregarded, at any rate to begin with; but when we really get hold of the representative plants the investigations at the same time take on a universal character, as they will hold good not only of the species examined, but also of a number of species of the same type.

As mentioned above, it is in general wrong to connect the distribution of a plant with a single climatic or edaphic factor. The fact is that every single plant is built into a definite environment, that is to say that by means of its morphological and physiological qualities it is able to maintain its existence under a definite combination of external conditions, light, temperature, precipitation, various qualities of the soil, and so on, which interact in determining the growth and development of the plant, and it is therefore necessary, if we want to understand its growth and development and also its distribution in nature, to see it in relation to all the said factors. It is difficult, but it can be done, and we thereby gain an understanding which the statistical investigation would never be able to provide. All this is best obtained when we try to imagine the demands of the plant on the basis of our knowledge of its manifestations of life. Its presence in a given locality is dependent on its demands being satisfied in the locality in question.

The main point, therefore, is not to investigate the dependence of many plants on a single factor, but the dependence of a few plants on all significant factors, both climatic and edaphic factors and other living organisms.

The starting-point of our investigation was the question: why does this plant grow in this locality at this moment? This problem may be subdivided into two:

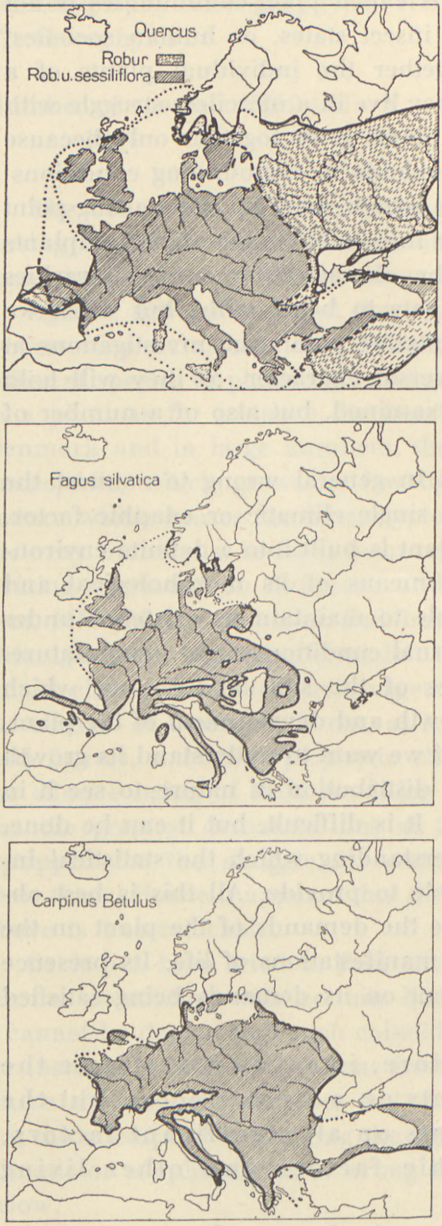


Fig. 1. The actual area of distribution of *Quercus pedunculata*, *Fagus silvatica* and *Carpinus betulus* (Rübner). Some of the boundaries of the actual area of distribution are identical with the boundaries of the potential area of distribution.

(a) What plants can grow in the locality in question?
(b) Which of the plants able to grow there is really found there?

(a) The Potential Area of Distribution.

To begin with we suppose that we have only a single higher plant, for instance the birch, *Betula verrucosa* (or perhaps better a definite race of this plant), on the surface of the earth; unhampered by the competition with other plants it would be able to occupy the whole territory, where it is able to grow. If we marked down the distribution of the said plant on a map, we should get its potential area of distribution; however, this area will not generally be a continuous one. Within the area localities may be found where it cannot grow and which will then lie as islands within the area of distribution; nor is there anything to prevent the potential area of distribution from consisting of several, mutually separated areas (fig. 1).

In order to explain the causal connection between the morphological and physiological qualities of the plant and its area of distribution, it would now be expedient to suppose that the places where the plant in question is not found are places where it cannot grow. A causal explanation of its potential area of distribution must therefore consist in attempting to carry out an estimation of the limits for the possibilities of existence of the plant in question.

There seem to be three main groups of conditions which must be fulfilled in order that a plant shall be able to exist.

(1) The yield of the production of matter must be positive; during the period of vegetation so much organic matter must be produced that it does not only cover the various forms of loss of dry matter during the year, but also that a surplus is left over for growth and for the reproductive organs.

(2) The plant must be able to maintain itself in the locality for an unlimited period, it must consequently be able to propagate, either vegetatively or by sexual propagation.

(3) The plant must be able to survive the unfavourable season, should such a one exist.

The said possibilities of existence will now be dealt with individually.

1. The Production of Matter as a Limiting Factor.

The production of dry matter in a plant is composed of the following items:

Gain of dry matter by assimilation of carbon dioxide
in the leaves (gross production) ....
— Loss of dry matter by respiration in the leaves ....
— Dry matter, used in the formation of leaves ....

Net production of dry matter of the leaves ....

Loss of dry matter by respiration in	Dry matter produced in
Axial organs	Axial organs ....
Roots	Roots ....
Reproductive Organs	Reproductive Organs (flowers, seeds)

It is expressed in the equation:

Gross production—leaf respiration—consumption of dry matter by the formation of leaves = production of dry matter in axial organs, roots and reproductive organs + loss of dry matter by respiration in axial organs, roots and reproductive organs.

As explained elsewhere, each individual quantity is influenced by a number of different factors, by the length of the period of vegetation, by climatic and edaphic factors and so on.

We are now able to estimate all the quantities entering in the equation of production at a given combination of conditions.

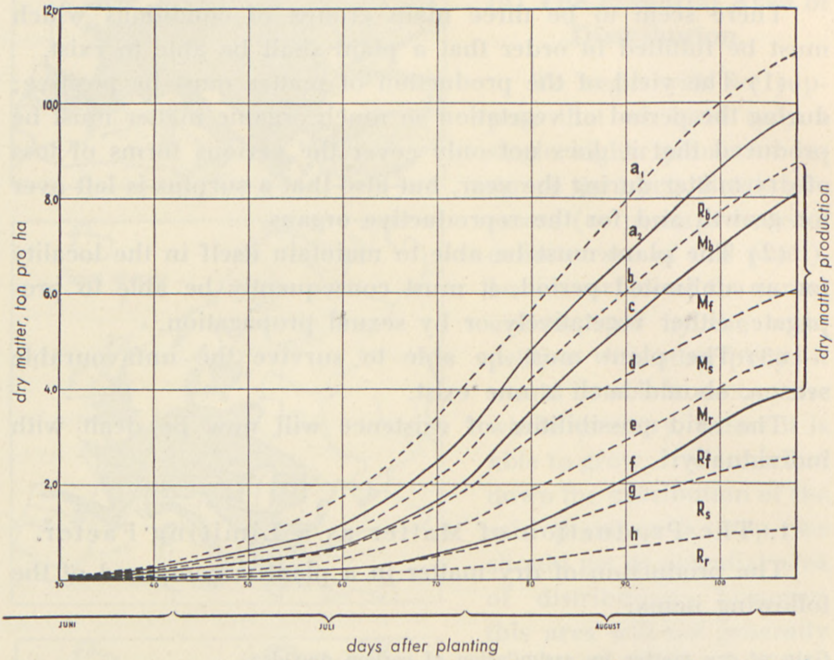


Fig. 2. The course of the individual quantities determinative of the production of matter in a stock of *Solanum nodiflorum*. All the quantities expressed as ton dry matter per ha. M_b, M_f, M_s, and M_r represent the mass of leaves, reproductive organs, stems, and roots, respectively. R_b, R_f, R_s, and R_r represent the loss of dry matter by respiration in the same organs. For further particulars see the text. (According to Poul Larsen).

As a proof hereof an investigation made by Poul Larsen (1941) of a stock of an annual plant *Solanum nodiflorum*, may be quoted. The result of this investigation is rendered in fig. 2. It appears from the figure that the quantity of matter produced and its distribution over the individual items in the equation of production can be determined at any time of the period of vegetation, and that the gross production (a_1) found agrees rather well with a_2, the production of dry matter measured directly + the loss of dry matter.

As far as forest trees are concerned, Carl Mar: Møller (1945) has made an examination of the beech, the result of which is rendered in fig. 3. From the diagram is seen the magnitude of the gross assimilation less the leaf respiration in each individual year during the whole development of the beech and further how the said quantity is distributed over the individual items of the equation of production.

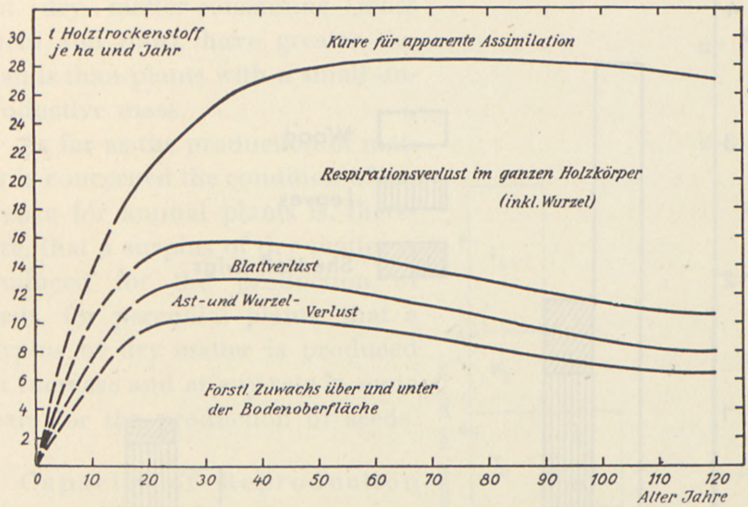


Fig. 3. Diagram showing the production of matter and its distribution in various ages in the beech, Bon. II. (Carl Mar: Møller).

In this way we are also able to determine how the production of matter changes with the surrounding conditions and to estimate when it decreases to zero, i. e. to estimate the boundaries of the potential area of distribution of the said plant as far as they are determined by the production of matter. As an example we may quote investigations made by Mork (1942) on the production of wood and leaves (+ twigs) in the birch, partly in the lowlands, and partly at an altitude of 800 m. (fig. 4). The main difference between the two localities is the length of the period of vegetation. The diagram on the left in fig. 4 shows the lowland birch with the long period of vegetation and the large production of dry matter, two thirds of which become wood, and one third only leaves and shed-off twigs. The diagram on the right shows the mountain birch with the brief period of vegetation and the low production of matter, half of which is used for the productive organs, the leaves, so that only 40 per cent. is left for wood. From the said investigations we may extrapolate the

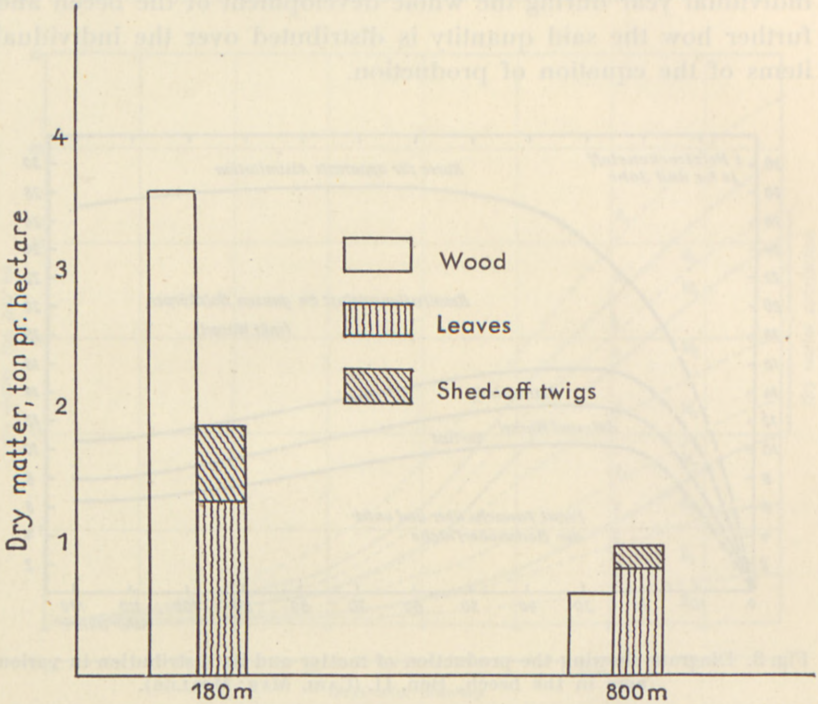


Fig. 4. Annual production of wood, leaves and shed-off branches in the birch from the lowlands and at an altitude of 800 m. (According to Mork; the production of wood corrected according to Møller 1945 p. 96.)

approximate altitude, where practically the whole annual production of matter must be used for leaves (and for covering the loss of respiration in the axial organs), so that the production of wood ceases. Thus we have reached the timber-line.

Parallel observations may be made when young tree plants growing in different intensities of light are examined (fig. 5). When the intensity of light has dropped to a certain limit, dependent on the kind and size of the tree, all the dry matter produced is used for production of leaves and loss by respiration, the production of wood ceases, and the tree dies (fig. 5, Kl. III).

There is some relation between the growth-form of the plant and the demands it makes to the external conditions during the period of vegetation, a fact which is especially seen when the light intensity is slight during the period of vegetation, e. g. in forests, or when the period of vegetation is brief, e. g. in arctic territories. Annual plants have greater demands than perennial weeds; trees, having a large unproductive, but dry matter-consuming mass (stem and root), have greater demands than plants with a small unproductive mass.

As far as the production of matter is concerned the condition of existence for annual plants is, therefore, that a surplus of dry matter is produced for the production of seeds, for perennial plants, that a surplus of dry matter is produced for increase and at any rate in some years for the production of seeds.

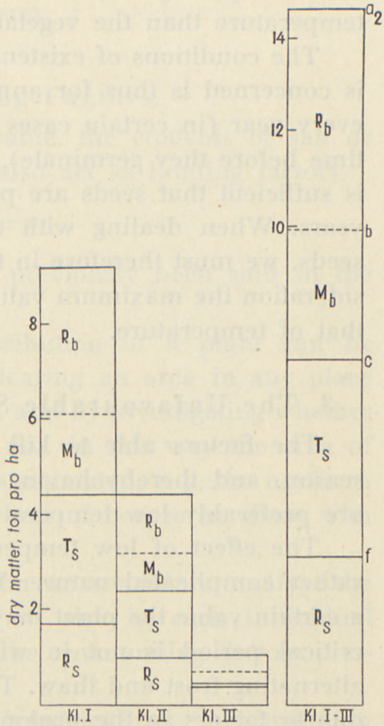


Fig. 5. The various quantities decisive of the production of matter in an unthinned 12 year old stock of ash, partly for the different classes of trees, for dominating trees (KL. I) middle-class trees (KL. II) and suppressed trees (KL. III) and partly for the whole growth (Kl. I—III). All the quantities expressed as ton dry matter per ha. The height of the columns is the gross production, M_b means mass of leaves, R_b and R_s mean loss of dry matter by respiration in leaves and axial organs, T_s means increase in the stem. As for the meaning of the letters a_2—f see fig. 2.

2. Capacity of Reproduction as a Limiting Factor.

In so far as the plant is able indefinitely to reproduce in a vegetative way, the reproduction will be conditioned only by an annual surplus production of dry matter.

The sexual reproduction is of a more complicated nature. It is especially dependent on the following conditions.

(1) Formation and development of flower buds. The formation of flowers is dependent on a number of different factors, the most important among which is a suitable length of the day, a suitable tem-

perature, and sometimes a certain age. Pathogenic factors, e. g. a heavy drought, may contribute to accelerate the formation of flowers.

(2) Pollination, which frequently occurs with the collaboration of definite insects.

(3) Ripening of seeds and fruit sometimes demands a higher temperature than the vegetative functions.

The conditions of existence as far as the sexual reproduction is concerned is thus for annual plants that seeds are produced every year (in certain cases seeds may, however, lie for a long time before they germinate), whereas for the perennial plants it is sufficient that seeds are produced with an interval of several years. When dealing with the conditions of the formation of seeds, we must therefore in the latter case take into special consideration the maximum values of the climatic factors, especially that of temperature.

3. The Unfavourable Season as a Limiting Factor.

The factors able to kill the plant during the unfavourable season, and thereby having a limiting effect on its distribution are preferably low temperature and lack of water.

The effect of low temperatures on the plants may be of a rather complicated nature. When the temperature drops below a certain value the plant may die. To many plants, however, the critical period is not in winter, but in the early spring with alternating frost and thaw. The resistance to low temperatures is due to factors in the protoplasm, and cannot be obtained only by alterations in the form of the plant[1]; on the whole no relation is therefore found between the growth-form of the plant and its resistance to cold. When estimating the significance of the low winter temperatures to the distribution of the plant, consideration must preferably be given to the absolute minimum temperatures, which often occur with an interval of many years only.

Not only during the favourable, but also during the unfavourable seasons a balance of water must be kept up, and lack of water may therefore frequently have a limiting effect on the distribution of the plants. The maintenance of the balance of

[1] However, a thickening of the cell wall may be supposed frequently to be of importance to the cold resistance of the plants.

water is to a very high degree dependent on the morphological properties of the plants, partly on the form and size of the root system, and partly on the anatomical structure of the leaves. There is a strong relation between the water supply and the morphological and anatomical properties. Plants throwing off the transpiring system, the leaves, are especially resistant to lack of water during the unfavourable season.

4. Other Limiting Factors.

Edaphic factors, e. g. the pH value, the contents of salt or other substances in the soil, may also act as limiting factors.

We may summarize what has previously been said in the following way:

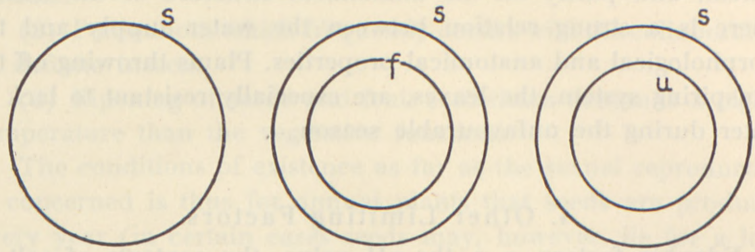
(1) The potential area of distribution of a plant can be determined quite empirically, by clearing an area in any place of the surface of the earth whatever, and by investigating whether the plant is able to grow there or not. In this way the area of distribution of our cultural plants is estimated, e. g. the northern limit of the cereals, but the same can of course be done with regard to all other plants.

(2) Within the area of distribution we are able to analyse the production of matter, to estimate its size in each individual place, and to give an account of the surrounding factors conditioning the said size.

(3) We are able to ascertain which factors limit the distribution of the plant. The limiting factor may be (1) the surplus of the production of matter being too small (in the said case the plant may be able to produce ripe seeds right up to the limit of vegetation, compare fig. 6*a*)[1] or (2) lack of the capacity of producing ripe seeds (in this case the plant will be able to grow vegetatively outside its area of distribution, e. g. the chestnut in Denmark, compare fig. 6*b*) or (3) incapacity of surviving the unfavourable season (in this case the plant may grow vegetatively and produce seeds capable of germinating when protected from the unfavour-

[1] The production of matter may be a limiting factor on the outer boundary of the area of distribution. On level country it is always a limiting factor on all inner boundaries (towards all the holes) within the area of distribution.

able season, e. g. plants which are able to produce seeds in the open, but must be hibernated in green-houses, compare fig. 6 *c*).



a *b* *c*

Fig. 6. Limiting factors, s production of matter, f propagation, u unfavourable season. The innermost circle marks the limit of the potential area of distribution.

Consequently we are generally able to explain the potential area of distribution of a plant, and to account for the connection between the latter and the morphological-physiological properties of the plant.

b. The Actual Area of Distribution.

For plants growing in open communities where no competition between the plants exists the potential area of distribution is identical with the actual area of distribution, i. e. the area where a given plant grows.

When on the other hand a competition exists, it is this factor that determines which of the plants able to grow on a locality is found there at the present moment. Due to this factor the actual area of distribution is in general lesser than the potential area of distribution.

We shall now try to solve the problem how to determine the actual area of distribution for a given plant if a competition with other plants exists. In order to deal with this problem we shall choose a concrete instance, namely the vegetation of Denmark.

We have in Denmark about 1100 species, the potential area of distribution of which in general comprises the greater part of the country; there is reason to suppose that, besides those, there is a number of other plants which might likewise grow in

Denmark, but which are not found here, because they have not yet arrived here on their migrations. The latter question will be disregarded here; we shall consider only the plants which are actually found in this country.

Among the plants growing in Denmark, a great number would spread over the larger part of the country if there were no other plants. The reason why they do not do so is that they are kept down in the competition with such other plants.

When, therefore, we return to the question forming the starting-point of this paper: why does this plant grow in this locality at this moment?—the answer must be: because among those whose potential area of distribution comprises the locality in question the said plant is superior to the others.

The factor being of decisive importance to the result of the struggle for existence, is generally the height of the plant. The taller plants will take away the light from the lower ones, thereby keeping them away, unless they are able to grow in the shade of the taller plants; but in that case they are only accompanying plants; they will not be able to threaten the existence of the taller plants.

When we therefore ask which growth-form will occur in a definite place in Denmark, when culture does not interfere, and vegetation is in equilibrium, the answer will be that it is the tallest growth-form able to grow in the locality in question, and that will generally be a forest tree. It is the forest trees, and not the hemicryptophytes, which, as already mentioned, will be dominating in a Denmark untouched by culture.

Among the forest trees we have again two rather different biological types, the light-trees and the shadow-trees. The difference between them is caused partly by the architecture of the assimilatory system, partly by the size of the maximum intensity of assimilation per area of leaf surface. The shadow-trees, beech, lime, and elm, have leaves placed in two rows, and a perfect architecture for utilizing the light, having a number of horizontal, almost coherent leaf planes lying above each other, the light-trees, ash, birch, and oak, have opposite leaves or $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{2}{5}$ position of the leaves, which does not make it possible to build up a system of leaves able to utilize the light in a rational way. On the other hand the light-trees, at any rate ash, have a maximum intensity of assimilation which is considerably larger than that of the shadow-trees. The latter condition causes young isolated light-trees to grow faster than the shadow-trees, but the imperfect architecture of the assimilatory system causes them to be able to endure shadow to a far slighter degree than the shadow-trees. As is well-known it is the latter fact which is decisive in the competition between the trees; as the shadow-trees are able to grow up in the shadow of the light-trees, they are therefore able to displace the latter.

The shadow-trees, above all the beech, are therefore the first choosers when it is a question of covering the soil of Denmark with vegetation. The beech will therefore claim all the territories they like, i. e. light, not too meagre, mould-covered ground, preferably with a hilly surface. Under natural conditions we shall not generally get a pure beech wood in such localities, but a mixed wood, consisting mainly of beeches, especially intermingled with ashes, which, thanks to their rapid growth when young, are able to outdistance the beeches, and by means of the said quality they are to a certain degree able to assert themselves in the competition. In the beech wood an interspersion of limes and especially of elms will also appear.

In low, moist localities with stiff clay and on meagre sand beeches will not thrive and the next chooser, the oak, will get its chance here. In the said localities the oak will have superiority in the struggle with the beech, and these localities will therefore be covered mainly with oak wood. In localities with a nutritious soil, rich in mould, the oak wood will be strongly mixed with ashes, in very moist localities with running water also with alders.

Both beech and oak avoid the sour and peaty soil, whereas birches thrive on such a soil, and it will therefore be this tree which claims the latter areas.

At the bottom of the said tree communities accompanying plants will grow which are fitted for growing in their shade. In woods consisting of shadow-trees the ground vegetation is slight and, as is well known, consists partly of a spring flora, the vegetative development and flowering of which takes place before the sprouting of the trees, and which is at rest during summer. In the oak wood the light is sufficient for a development of a lower flora of ligneous plants, namely of bushes, *Corylus*, *Crataegus*, *Rhamnus*, and several others. In the birch woods an undervegetation of under-shrubs, *Calluna*, *Vaccinium* species and the like will appear.

The forest having occupied all the parts of Denmark where it is able to grow, there are still some localities left over. Those areas are the beach, the dunes, and the grey dunes behind them, which are all occupied by plants able to grow in such localities, owing to a strong specialization of their morphological and physiological properties. Further there are the fresh and the salt waters. Here we may also observe that it is the height of the flora which is the decisive factor in the struggle for the locality. In freshwaters we have closest to the beach, i. e. in low water, a bog vegetation, the assimilatory system of which lies above the surface of the water and which, if being sufficiently dense, is able to keep out other plants. Where the depth is too large for the latter vegetation, a belt of aquatic plants, fixed to the bottom and with floating leaves, will often appear, especially *Nymphaea* and *Nuphar*, which are also able to keep out other aquatic plants, and outside the latter again a belt of submerged aquatic plants.

Summary.

The central problem of causal plant-geography is this: Why does a given plant grow in this locality at this moment? This problem may again be subdivided into two: (a) what plants are able to grow in the locality in question, and (b) which of the plants able to grow there is found there at the present moment.

In order to solve the first problem, the determination of the potential area of distribution of the plants, we must investigate the conditions of existence of the plants. These seem to be the following:

(1) The yield of the production of matter must be positive; during the period of vegetation so much organic matter must be produced that it does not only cover the various forms of losses of dry matter during the year, but that a surplus is also left over for increase and (or) for the formation of reproductive organs.

(2) The plant must be able to maintain itself in the locality for an unlimited time; it must therefore be able to propagate, either vegetatively, or by sexual propagation.

(3) The plant must be able to survive the unfavourable season, should such a one exist.

The second problem, the determination of the actual area of dispersion of a plant, is solved by investigating which of the plants able to grow in the locality in question is superior to the others in the struggle for existence. The factor decisive of the result of the competition will generally be the height of the plant. The forest will therefore be the first to claim the areas, where it is able to grow, then will come lower ligneous plants, bushes, and at last the herbs.

References.

Boysen Jensen, P., Undersøgelser over Stofproduktionen i yngre Bevoksninger af Ask og Bøg II. Det forstlige Forsøgsvæsen 10, 365. København 1930.

— Die Stoffproduktion der Pflanzen. Jena 1932.

— Plantefysiologi. 2. Udg. København 1943 (German ed. Jena 1939).

— The Production of Matter in Agricultural Plants and its Limitation. Kgl. Danske Vid. Selskab, Biol. Medd. 21, Nr. 2, 1949.

Boysen Jensen, P., and D. Müller, Undersøgelser over Stofproduktionen i yngre Bevoksninger af Ask og Bøg. Det forstlige Forsøgsvæsen 9, 221. København 1927.

Larsen, Poul, Vergleich der direct bestimmten und der aus Messungen der Assimilation und Atmung errechneten Stoffproduktion einjähriger Pflanzenbestände. Planta 32, 343. 1941.

Mork, Elias, Om ströfallet i våre skoger. Medd. f. det norske Skogforsögsvesen Nr. 29. Oslo 1942.

Møller, Carl Mar:, Untersuchungen über Laubmenge, Stoffverlust und Stoffproduction des Waldes. Det forstlige Forsøgsvæsen 17, 1. København 1945.

Raunkiær, C., Planterigets Livsformer. København 1907.

Indleveret til Selskabet d. 23. september 1948.
Færdig fra trykkeriet d. 19. april 1949.

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 4

ACTIVITY AND MIGRATION OF *PLUSIA GAMMA* L.

STUDIES ON THE ACTIVITY OF INSECTS III

BY

ELLINOR BRO LARSEN

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

Printed in Denmark
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

I. Introduction.

Plusia gamma and a few other species occupy a place apart among the noctuids in that they are active both by day and by night (cp. HERING, 1926 p. 131 and others). *P. gamma* has attracted attention also by its occurence in large numbers in certain localities, and it is one of the oldest migrating *Lepidoptera* known.

A large number of observations have been published concerning *P. gamma*'s migratory habits (WILLIAMS 1930, FRAENKEL 1932, FISHER 1938, WILLIAMS, COCKBILL, GIBBS, DOWNES 1942, PALMÉN 1947 et alii), but studies of its behaviour under controlled conditions and field observations in relation to influencing factors have been scarce.

The present investigation is an attempt to throw light on certain aspects of the latter problems. Aware of the fact that her arguments ought to have been better supported by experiment the author has nevertheless decided to publish her paper now as in Denmark an occurrence of *P. gamma* in large numbers as that in 1946 can only be expected at long intervals.

In 1938 and subsequent years the activity of noctuids was investigated at the laboratories of Pilehuset (North Zealand), Skallingen (Southwest Jutland) and Tipperne (West Jutland) (LARSEN 1943, LARSEN 1950). The investigations included observations of *P. gamma*, which were continued at the Mols laboratory (East Jutland) in 1943 and 1946, and completed in August 1946 at Pilehuset.

II. Experiments on Temperature Preference.

In September, 1939, at Pilehuset, the typical autumn species: *Orthosia circellaris* Hufn, *Agrotis xantographa* Fabr., and *Agrotis c-nigrum* Linn., *Xanthia fulvago* Linn., *Xanthia lutea* Strøm, and *Catocala nupta* Linn. were observed to be coming to sugar bait every night, *P. gamma* was observed with them on only one or two, particularly warm nights. The lowest temperature at which *P. gamma* was observed on bait was 16° C (Sept. 6th, cp. LARSEN 1950); as it was lively by day in the sun and also known to be active at night, the reason why it seldom accompanied the species mentioned above presumably was that it preferred a different temperature.[1]

In August 1943 at Mols *P. gamma* was occasionally observed together with *Amphipyra tragopoginis* Linn. during the night, but it was chiefly active by day in the sun. During these two periods experiments on the temperature preference of *P. gamma* were made which also served as a basis of comparison with the species associated with which it flew by night. In both cases individuals of *P. gamma* were collected in the day-time on heather, the other noctuids on sugar bait, and during each experiment one individual from each of the two species compared were in the apparatus at the same time. In 1939 the air humidity in the apparatus was as near as possible 100 per cent, in 1943 75 per cent.[2]

Fig. 1a and b show the results of the experiments. It appears that in August 1943 (fig. 1b) the temperature preference of *P. gamma* was 30° C, while *Amphipyra tragopoginis* preferred a temperature of about 16° C, which is about the average night temperature of the season.

In September 1939 (fig. 1a) the preference of *P. gamma* was found to be 25° C, while the other species (the average of the three species: *A. c-nigrum*, *A. xantographa* and *O. circellaris*)

[1] In general, *P. gamma* is seldom found on sugar bait except when there is a shortage of food on account of the large numbers, as was the case in Denmark in 1946, when it was observed by a number of lepidopterists.

[2] The experiments were made with a temperature gradient apparatus (HERTER 1924, p. 27). Like many experiments of this kind they must be viewed with some reservation as the environment offered by a "temperatur-orgel" is very different from that natural to the animals and hence may influence the result to some extent.

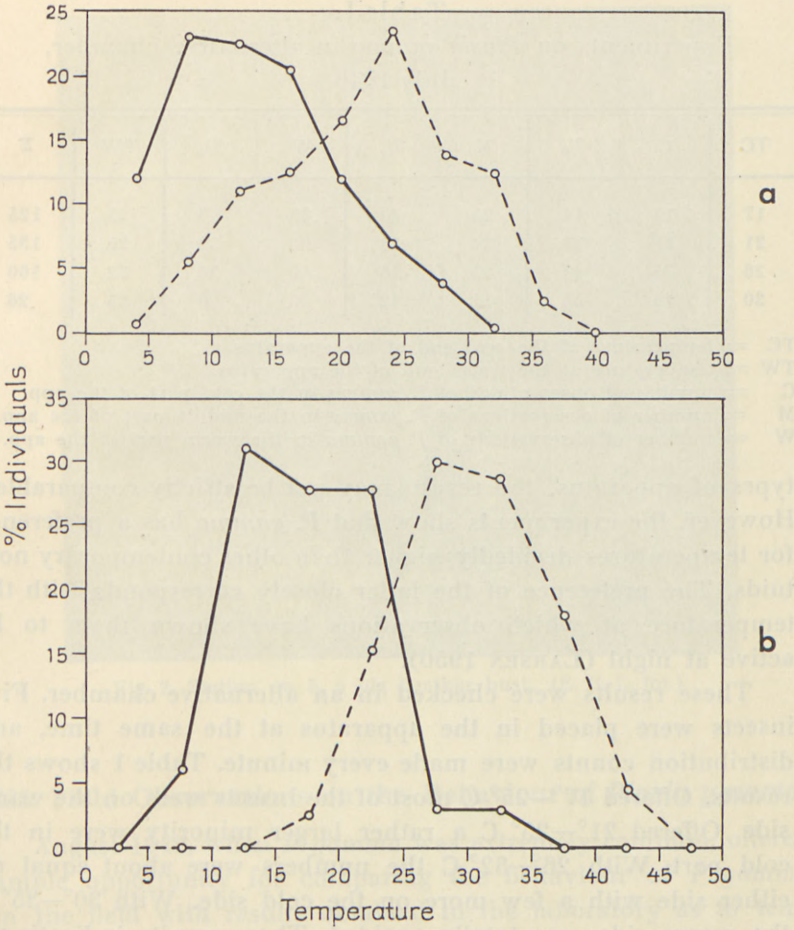


Fig. 1. (a) Temperature preference experiments in 'temperatur-orgel' on *Plusia gamma* and the late autumn species, September 1939. — *Plusia gamma*, --- *Orthosia circellaris* + *Agrotis xanthografa* + *Agrotis c-nigrum*. — (b) Temperature preference experiments with *Amphipyra tragopoginis* and *Plusia gamma*, August 1943. — *Plusia gamma*, --- *Amphipyra tragopoginis*.

showed a preference for about 12° C, which is the prevailing night temperature of the season when conditions are favourable. *P. gamma*'s preferred temperature being lower in September and extended further towards the cold side may be due to the fact that we were dealing with the last stragglers of the population, and further, a temperature adaptation may have taken place (in any case, as the experiments were carried out with two different

Table I.
Experiments on *Plusia gamma* in alternative chamber, July 1946.

TC	C	%	M	%	W	%	TW	Σ
17	17	14	25	20	83	66	25	125
21	31	23	24	18	80	59	25	135
26	75	47	25	16	60	38	32	160
30	15	58	11	42	0	0	35	26

TC = temperature at the cold end of the apparatus.
TW = temperature at the warm end of the apparatus.
C = number of observations of *P. gamma* in the cold part of the app.
M = number of observations of *P. gamma* in the middle part of the app.
W = number of observations of *P. gamma* in the warm part of the app.

types of apparatus, the results may not be strictly comparable). However, the experiments show that *P. gamma* has a preference for temperatures decidedly higher than other contemporary noctuids. The preference of the latter closely corresponds with the temperature at which observations have shown them to be active at night (Larsen 1950).

These results were checked in an alternative chamber. Five insects were placed in the apparatus at the same time, and distribution counts were made every minute. Table 1 shows the results. Offered 17°—25° C most of the insects were on the warm side. Offered 21°—25° C a rather larger minority were in the cold part. With 26°—32° C the numbers were about equal on either side with a few more on the cold side. With 30°—35° C the warm side was totally avoided. These results indicating a preferendum between 25° and 30° C are consistent with those obtained with the gradient apparatus.

Apart from the species being dependent on temperature and needing more heat than contemporary species, it is not evident what the high figures for temperature preference mean, as the insects soon die when constantly exposed to such high temperatures. The insects presumably react as if they were exposed to the radiant heat of the sun, while in the laboratory they are influenced by the high air temperatures. Further the high degree of vertical fluctuations in temperature in nature is of a certain importance.

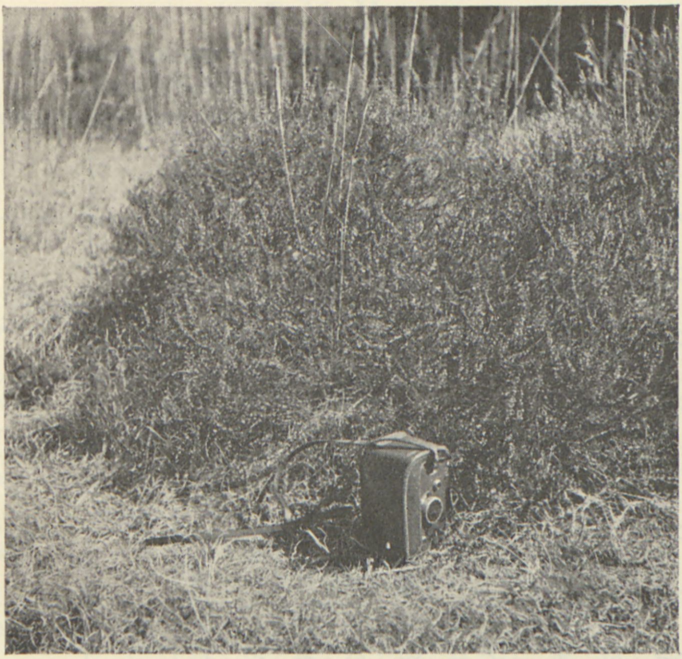


Fig. 2. Station no. 5, a big heather bush. (E. B. L. fot.)

III. Field Observations on the Behaviour of *Plusia gamma.*

August 1946, when *P. gamma* was extremely common, offered ample opportunity for comparing the behaviour of *P. gamma* in the field with results obtained in the laboratory as to temperature preference and activity pattern.

Observations were made at the Pilehuset laboratory. Nine stations were chosen where counts were taken every two hours except at 1 a. m.—5 a. m. (cp. Park 1935, p. 169, and Larsen 1943, p. 353). The first station was 3 m^2 of a field of flowering clover, the second a cluster of flowering *Chamaenerium angustifolium,* and stations 3—9 groups of flowering heath, *Calluna vulgaris)* (Fig. 2 shows station no. 5). Temperatures were measured by means of distance thermo-couples at the top of the heath, under foliage, and at places with free radiation at heights of 2, 8 and 15 metres. An ordinary thermograph registering the varying temperatures during the period of observation was placed at station no. 5.

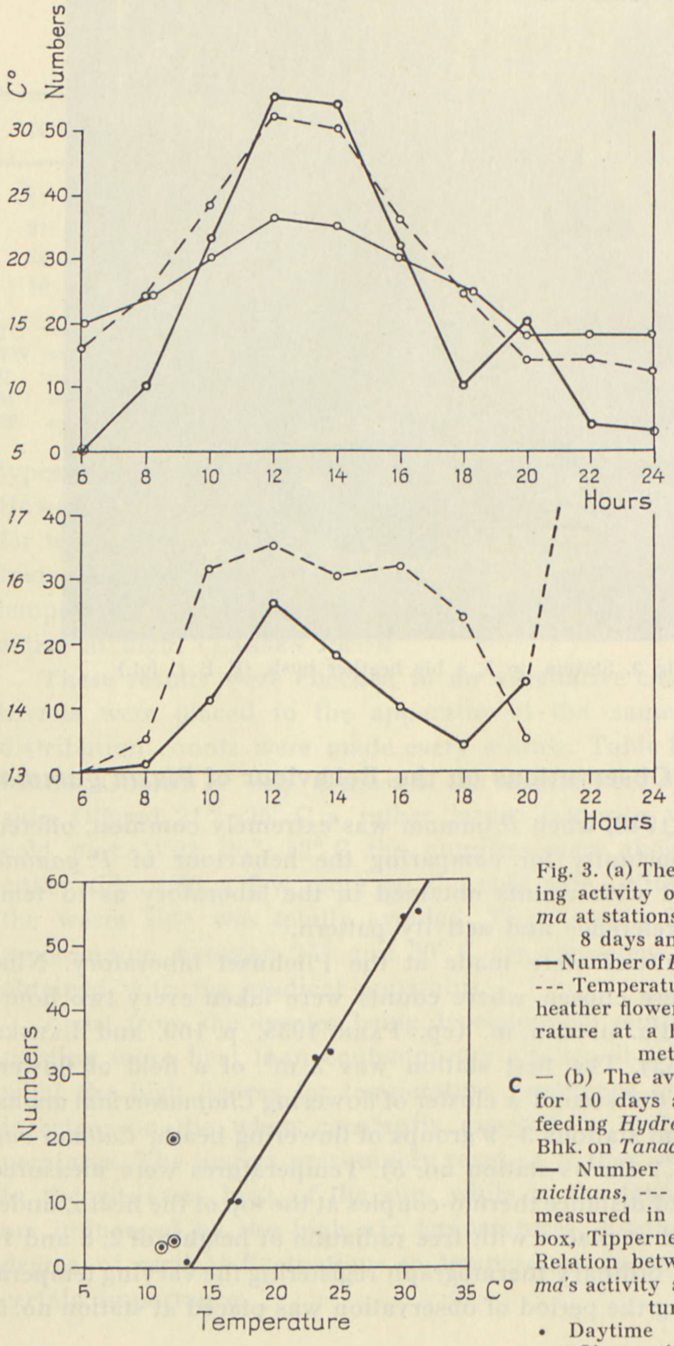


Fig. 3. (a) The average feeding activity of *Plusia gamma* at stations I—IX during 8 days and nights. —Number of *Plusia gamma*, --- Temperature among the heather flowers, — Temperature at a height of two metres. — (b) The average activity for 10 days and nights of feeding *Hydroecia nictitans* Bhk. on *Tanacetum vulgare*. — Number of *Hydroecia nictitans*, --- Temperature measured in the weather box, Tipperne 1941. — (c) Relation between *P. gamma*'s activity and temperature.
• Daytime observations,
⊙ Observations at dusk.

Table II.

Counts of *Plusia gamma* from 10/8—16/8, the temperature being measured at the top of the heather.

Time .... Date	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	2
Numbers 10/8	..	..	..	..	36	28	9	**14**	11	9	..
Temp. .... C°	..	..	..	..	34	21	17	**14**	17	16	0
Numbers 11/8	..	..	28	96	101	75	10	**11**	1	1	0
Temp. .... C°	..	..	24	43	37	24	16	10	8	7	..
Numbers 12/8	0	35	51	67	..	21	13	**23**	7	5	8
Temp. .... C°	8	18	28	32	..	21	19	15	15	14	14
Numbers 13/8	1	9	49	51	38	21	2	**37**	4	6	..
Temp. .... C°	17	..	22	28	26	24	19	15	15	14	..
Numbers 14/8	0	3	9	23	44	21	28	**30**	2	1	0
Temp. .... C°	15	18	20	28	29	27	14	12	12	11	..
Numbers 15/8	1	2	33	54	72	37	6	**21**	0	0	0
Temp. .... C°	13	16	24	25	24	23	17	10	10	10	..
Numbers 16/8	0	1	28	40	30	19	5	**4**	0	0	0
Temp. .... C°	11	17	22	31	30	23	16	8	5	4	..
Mean numbers	0.4	10	33	55	54	34	10	**20**	4	31	2
Mean temperature	13	17	24	31	30	23	17	12	12	11	..
Maximum = 100	0.7	18	60	100	98	62	18	36	7	5	..

The force and direction of the wind were also measured, and observations of the clouds made. Observations of the humidity of the air were made, but as the species flies in the brightest sunshine, low relative air humidity does not seem to play so important a part as in the case of other noctuids.

The results of the counts show that *P. gamma* has a very characteristic diurnal activity cycle (Table II and fig. 3 a). The average activity curve follows the temperature so that a peak is reached from noon to 2 p. m. at 30° C.[1]

[1] It is evident that if the counts had been taken later in the year when the temperature was lower, the peak would have been at a lower temperature. But as the counts were taken in the animals' optimal season, they have more than accidental value.

Activity then declined until 6 p. m., but after this there is a new rise at sunset (cp. Wahlgren 1928, p. 248), and then the activity drops and remains low all night. Apart from the dusk observations, fig. 3 c shows a very clear correspondence between temperature and activity.[1]

The activity pattern is complex and variable because temperature and light, which rise and fall roughly together in nature, have in themselves opposite effects on activity, and because *P. gamma* unlike other noctuids is not immobilised by light. The curve registered is the activity pattern of feeding moths. This curve showing that the activity depends on two factors of which first one and then the other is the master factor, closely resembles the activity curve of *Hydroecia nictitans* Bkh. as recorded at Tipperne in 1941 and 1942 (fig. 3 b). As a rule this species seldom flies during the day and is chiefly active at night. If, however, bad weather sets in during the nights, the species is active in the daytime (presumably driven by hunger), and a midday feeding activity peak develops in addition to the evening one. Once the animal's light inhibition has been weakened, temperature becomes the "master factor", and a peak appears at the time of highest temperature, midday.[2] Later in the day the temperature falls and the activity is lowered as both temperature and light are unfavourable. Soon after sunset the light is favourable and becomes the master factor which outweighs the unfavourable influence of the falling temperature, and activity again increases. If there is a further drop in temperature, this outweighs the accelerating influence of the dark, and activity decreases. If, however, the night is favourable, the activity rises as shown in fig. 3 b (cp. Larsen 1943, p. 372). A preference for activity in the dark must be presupposed in *P. gamma* if the curves of the two species are truly comparable, and the following section provides evidence that such a preference exists (p. 17).

The typical feeding behaviour of *P. gamma* was as follows: In the morning when temperature was low, there was no ac-

[1] Veikko (1946) argues the various flying periods may be due to differences of behaviour in the two generations.

[2] The possibility cannot be ignored that a diurnal cycle of nectar secretion by *Tanacetum* may affect the activity of *Hydroecia nictitans* (Boëtius 1948).

Fig. 4. *Plusia gamma* fluttering over heather. (E. B. L. fot.)

tivity. When the temperature in the sun rose to 15°—20° C. (measured immediately above the heather),the insects flew, but avoided the shade. If the weather was clear, activity increased very quickly (Table II, $^{12}/_{8}$), but more slowly if it was rainy or cloudy (Table II, $^{14}/_{8}$, $^{15}/_{8}$, $^{16}/_{8}$). During the first hour the temperature appeared to be too low to release the feeding reflex itself. Many of the moths did not feed but flew about at random, now and then basking in the sun for 10, 15, or 30 minutes (cp. KENNEDY 1939, p. 464). At noon all the insects were feeding actively, swarming over the heather (fig. 4). Feeding activity then declined with the declining temperature.

About sunset and immediately after dusk the insects reappeared, feeding but also making sudden darting flights and seeming very restless. Soon they disappeared from the feeding stations near the ground and were found high up in the air, no longer feeding. Fisher (1938, p. 242) mentions that Atkin and Newman saw *P. gamma* rise from a field at dusk. The evening was stated

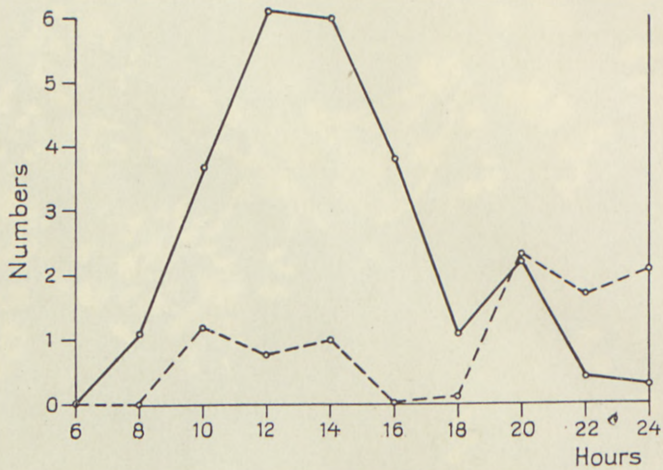


Fig. 5. Distribution of *Plusia gamma* on the stations. — Stations I—IX. --- Station II.

to have been warm and calm, and in one instance the insects flew straight upwards so that the direction of the flight could not be determined. Fisher believes this to have been the start of a migratory flight; in my opinion, however, the phenomenon observed by me—and by Fisher as well—is not the beginning of a directive migration, but is an expression of a migratory urge.

At station no. II the numbers of *P. gamma* were small during the day but much larger than at the other stations during the evening, when the temperature approaches the lower threshold value (cp. Table III and fig. 5). This was due to the fact that the day temperature above the *Chamenerium angustifolium* was comparatively low because the flowers were overshadowed by trees which in the evening prevented the rapid loss of heat by radiation typical of the open field heather.

Table III.

Average activity at stations I—IX compared with the activity at station II.

	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24
St. I—IX ÷ II ..	0.04	1.1	3.7	6.1	6.0	3.8	1.1	2.2	0.4	0.3
St. II	0.0	0.0	1.2	0.8	1.0	0.0	0.1	2.3	1.7	2.1

It is also noteworthy that at the time when the insects made restless, darting flights over the heather—as described above—the temperature there was lower than at two metres above it (cp. fig. 3), while earlier in the day the opposite was the case. This restless flight may perhaps indicate a beginning migratory restlessnes, but since the animals evidently demand a high temperature of their own to be able to fly, the intensified movement may be an attempt at keeping their body temperature at a certain level in spite of falling temperature of the environment. (At an air temperature of 13° C. the temperature in the interior of the animals was measured at 25°.) Finally the experiments show that transition from light to dark in itself has an accelerating influence on activity. In places with less radiation the feeding activity ceases much later, and in such places the evening feeding activity may even surpass that of the daytime (unpublished reports from Dr. E. Palmén, Finland, and Mr. N. L. Wolff, civil engineer, Denmark). Observations in Copenhagen late in the year showed no daytime activity whatever, only feeding insects being seen for half an hour at dusk, an observation corresponding to the evening peak in August. Evidently the day temperature was now so low that it could not—as in summer—outweigh the inhibitory influence of daylight on the activity of the insects even though a restricted feeding time had made them hungry.

Finally, it appears from Table II that both the size of the evening maximum and the number of insects flying during the night depend on the temperature. If this fell below a certain minimum, there was no evening activity (for instance $^{16}/_{8}$, 1946) as in that case the accelerating influence of the dark could not outweigh the inhibitory influence of the fall in temperature.

IV. Activity of *Plusia gamma* under Controlled Conditions.

While few experiments have been made on the dependence of the activity of noctuids on temperature and light, many other insects have been investigated in this way. *Ptinus tectus* for example (BENTLEY, GUNN and EWER 1941, p. 188) showed a pronounced diurnal rhythm dependent on the light and reversible by reversing the periods of light and darkness. Some species,

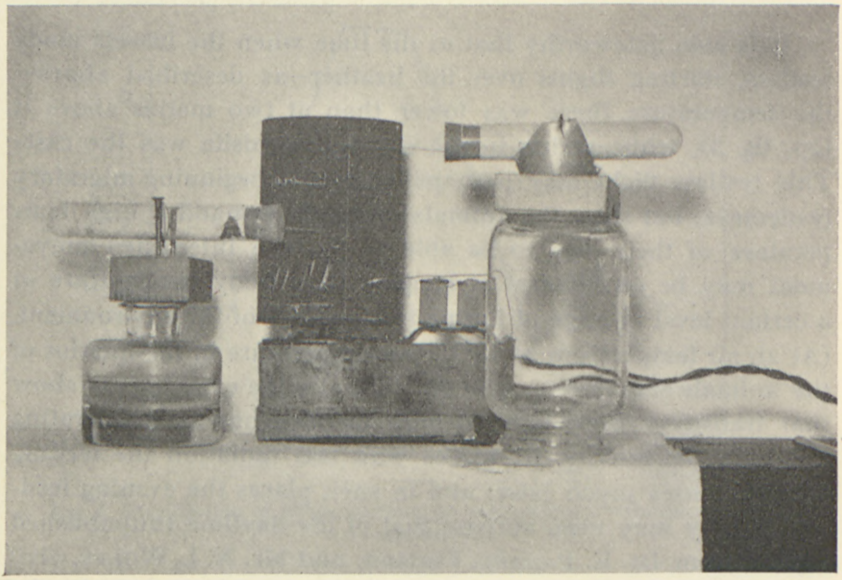


Fig. 6. The actograph. (E. Tetens Nielsen fot.)

for instance *Carambus pellucidus*, seem to be quite arhythmic (PARK 1935, p. 165), while others—very few—seem to have a hereditary diurnal rhythm independent of light and darkness (*Megalodacne heros*, PARK 1935, p. 169). Sometimes we find a diurnal rhythm dependent on light but changing rather slowly when the light regime is changed, as for instance in the cockroach (MELLANBY 1940, p. 278, GUNN 1940, p. 267).

Individuals of *P. gamma* were tested in an actograph subjected to changes of light and temperature.[1] Individuals of

[1] The actograph was of a very simple design and quite adequate for the purpose. It consisted of a cellophane cylinder mounted on a rocking device with a stylus at one end writing on a smoked paper drum which rotated once every 24 hours (NIELSEN 1945, p. 75). (Fig. 6).

P. gamma were collected in July at the Mols laboratory and placed in the actograph. The insects were captured in sunshine and first exposed to a temperature of 19° C. They did not move, but when the temperature was raised to 22° C. during a quarter of an hour, they became very active for 5 minutes, and then quiet again. In another experiment with the test temperature between 19° an 20° C. for 5 hours *P. gamma* displayed no activity although individuals of the same species were very active in the field at the same time. The temperature was now increased to approx. 24° C., and the test animals became very active for a short time, to become quiet again afterwards. Similar experiments were repeated several times, and they all showed that at a temperature below 20° C. there was no spontaneous activity, whereas it was high at 22°-23°-24° C. One oviposition took place at 22.5° C. Later experiments with the August generation at Pilehuset showed some activity at 18°—20° C. (8 experiments), but it was twice as high at 21°—23° (6 experiments), whereas it did not increase correspondingly at still higher temperatures. The non-linear relation between activity and temperature over this part of the temperature range suggests that what occurs is not so much an evocation of activity by temperature, but rather a release of spontaneous activity at a temperature threshold of about 20° C.

Subsequent experiments were therefore made with a temperature of about 22° C. and a constant humidity. As a rule the test animals were collected from among those feeding outdoors at the evening maximum. Each experiment on *P. gamma* was duplicated with other noctuids. The insects were not fed during an experiment. Typical results were as follows:

I. (2 experiments). With darkness from 12 p. m. to 11. a. m. and light from 11 a. m. to 10 p. m. *P. gamma* showed moderate activity both in light and darkness, while *Amphipyra tragopoginis* only showed activity in darkness and when it was night outdoors (fig. 7).

II. (4 experiments.) When the order was reversed with light from midnight to 11. a. m. and darkness from 11 a. m. to 10 p. m., *P. gamma* was active both in the light and the dark, while *Agrotis c-nigrum* was active by day in the dark only (fig. 8).

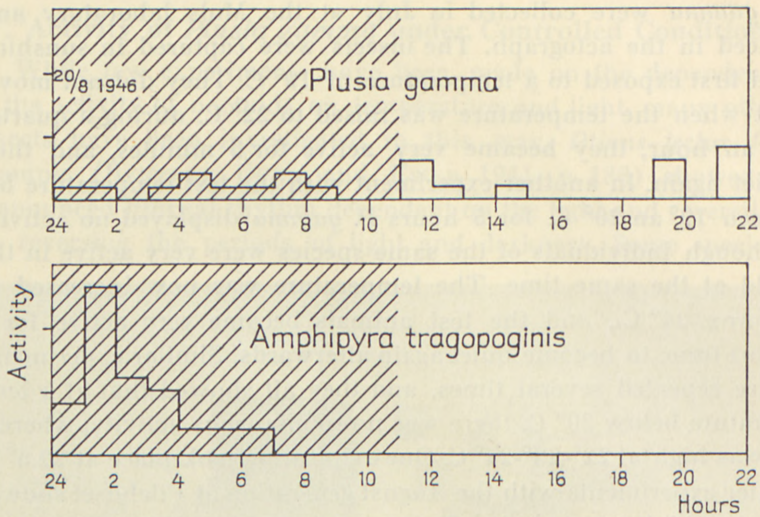


Fig. 7. Actograph experiments with *Plusia gamma* and *Amphipyra tragopoginis*. Shaded part = darkness. The abscissa shows in millimetres the part which is unblackened, when the writer scratches the roll as a consequence of the activity. See text.

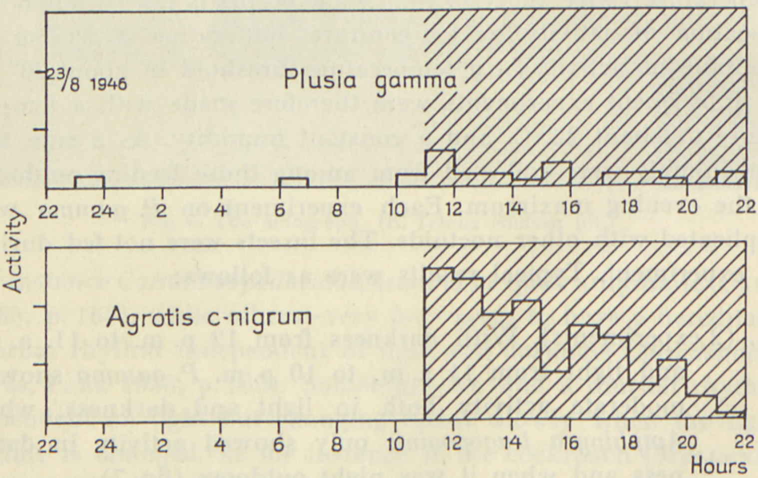


Fig. 8. Actograph experiments with *Plusia gamma* and *Agrotis c-nigrum*. See fig. 7.

III. (5 experiments). When exposed to constant light *P. gamma* showed sporadic activity both by day and by night while *Amphipyra tragopoginis* was inactive (fig. 9).

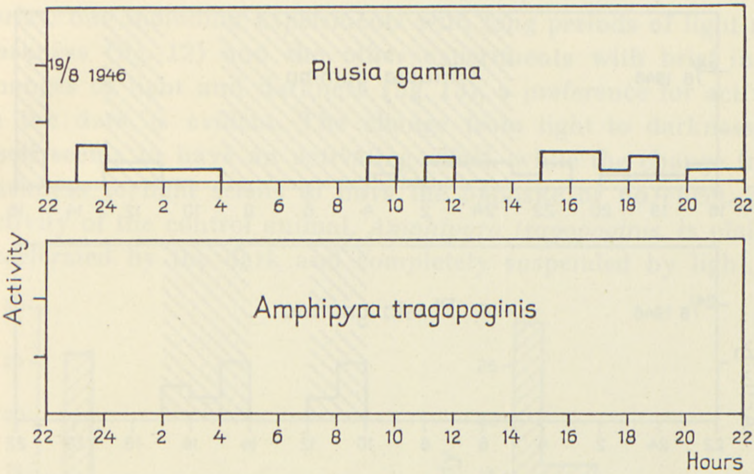


Fig. 9. Actograph experiment with *Plusia gamma* and *Amhipyra tragopoginis*. Light day and night. See fig. 7.

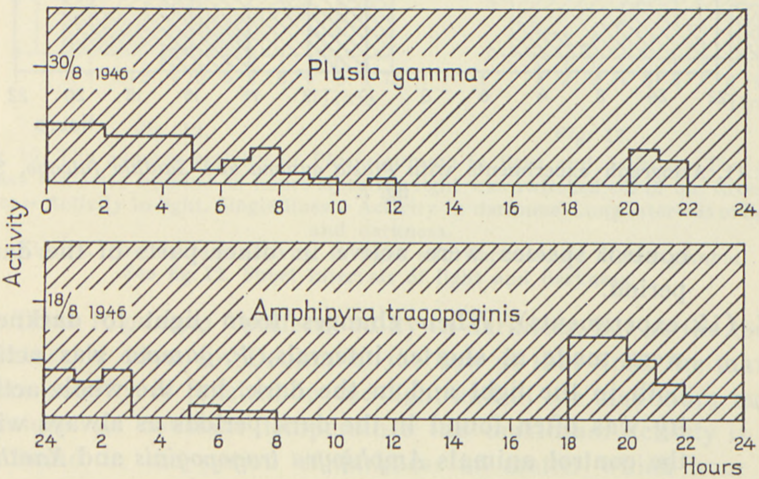


Fig. 10. Actograph experiments with *Plusia gamma* and *Amphipyra tragopoginis*. Darkness day and night. See fig. 7.

IV. (7 experiments). In complete darkness *P. gamma* was active during a considerable part of the 24 hours, while in this particular experiment *Amphipyra tragopoginis* was active in the night, morning and evening, but inactive in the middle of the day (fig. 10). In other experiments the

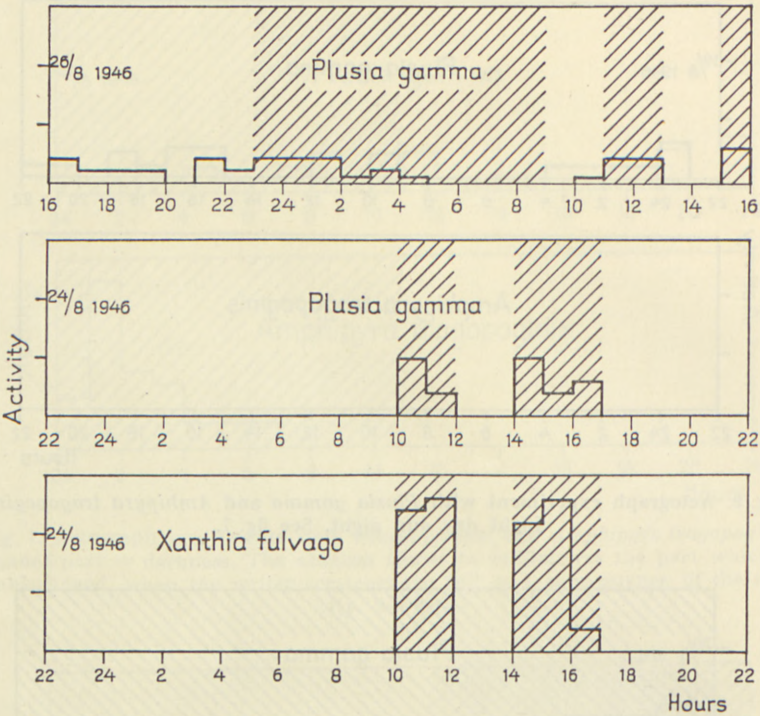


Fig. 11. Actograph experiments with *Plusia gamma* and *Xanthia fulvago*. See fig. 7.

control species were active in other parts of the dark period.

V. (15. experiments). When changes from light to darkness were made at shorter intervals, *P. gamma* was active both in the light and in the dark, but the whole activity was often found in the dark periods as always with the control animals *Amphipyra tragopoginis* and *Xanthia fulvago* (fig. 11).

The sample experiments described above support the supposition of near indifference in *P. gamma* to light and darkness and to the hour of day. The noctuids used for control purposes showed a pronounced rhythm which was associated with light and reversible by it.

If, however, all experiments are gathered together in two series, one including experiments with long periods of light and darkness (fig. 12) and the other experiments with brief interchanges of light and darkness (fig. 13), a preference for activity in the dark is evident. The change from light to darkness in itself seems to have an activating effect, while the change from darkness to light seems to have the opposite or no effect. The activity of the control animal, *Amphipyra tragopoginis*, is plainly accelerated by the dark and completely suspended by light.

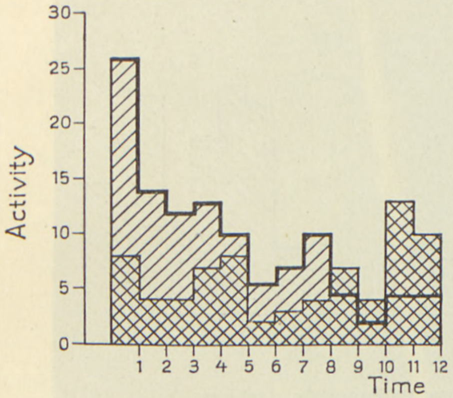


Fig. 12.

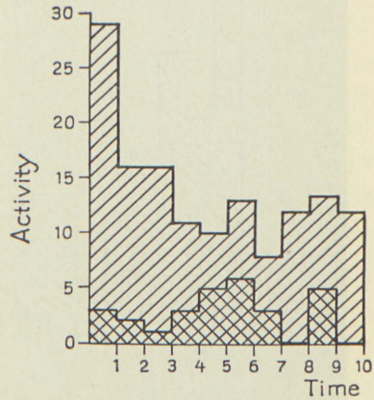


Fig. 13.

Fig. 12. The average activity of *Plusia gamma* in light and darkness. The Abscissa indicates number of hours since the light was switched off or on. Crossed lines = Activity in light, Single lines = Activity in darkness. Long intervals of light and darkness.

Fig. 13. The average activity in light and darkness of *Plusia gamma*. See fig. 12. Short intervals of light and darkness.

Thus *P. gamma* "prefers" to fly in darkness, but as the temperature is often (in Denmark) too low at that time, the maximum activity is reached in the light and at the maximum temperature. At constant temperature the maximum activity is to be found in the period of darkness no matter which hour of the day this is.

When the activity of individuals kept in darkness was recorded (the test animals were unfed and used for only 24 hours; five experiments were made) the average values shown in fig. 14 were obtained.

On the assumption that this activity pattern is not accidental, the curve may be interpreted in the following way: The peak just after midnight is caused by the onset of darkness when the experiment begins, the animals having been in artificial light before that. Then there is a decrease of activity corresponding with that observed under natural conditions. With a constant temperature there is no increase towards noon. The insects normally feed at noon and may therefore be supposed to feel hungry at that time, but as normally accompanying factors such as rising temperature, sunshine, scent of

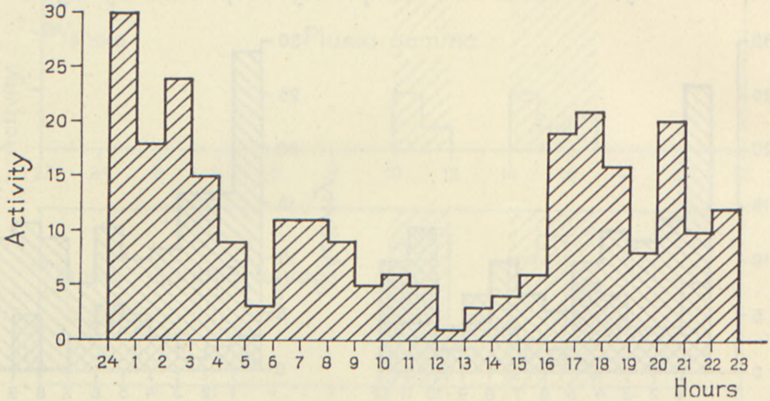


Fig. 14. Average activity in complete darkness.

flowers, etc., are absent, the feeding activity is postponed, expressed by the activity from 16—22 in fig. 14.

V. The Migratory Flights.

The preference for activity in dim light already mentioned combined with the need for a high temperature explain the two peaks of the activity curve obtained in the field, but this of course, was for feeding activity only (cp. p. 10). Although feeding activity ceases about 9 p. m. at the stations, flying does not. It is by now too cold for flight near the ground, but the insects rise as temperature inversion proceeds and continue flying in the warmer air aloft for some hours (cp. p. 21). Now *P. gamma* is a well-known migrant and this high-flying, non-feeding phase of their diurnal behaviour is one that could readily involve long-range movement. Of course many other noctuids will be seen simultaneously in the air, and also some at a similar height, but their normal behaviour differs from that of *P. gamma* in various respects.

(1) *P. gamma*'s flight differs from the feeding flight in being drifting, floating and "unenergetic", while other noctuids fly about fast and energetically. (2) *P. gamma* does not seek food

Fig. 15. The projector put on. (E. Tetens Nielsen fot.)

and flies downwind, while other noctuids most often go against the wind following the smell drifts from the food (nectar) or the opposite sex. (3) The two sexes are represented in a way differing from "normal" noctuids caught by light. In noctuids the males generally preponderate very considerably in light catches; Williams (1936) found the males constituting 81 %, Dercks (1939) 77 %, and Williams (1939) 83 %; in the observation period from Pilehuset, touched upon, the light catch showed 72 % of males. In *P. gamma* the male-percentage, however, only was 44 % $\pm$ 3.7 %, and this was not due to the fact that the females outnumbered the males in the population, since by day-counting on the heather the percentage of males was determined at 55 % $\pm$ 1.9 %. This means that in the population males and females are present in almost equal numbers, and during the nights they fly in this proportion,[1] which seems to indicate that *P. gamma*'s night-flight has another function than that of the other noctuids, where feeding and copulation are the main problems, two functions in which the ♂♂ always are the most active (cp. HERING 1932). This flight are therefore here called migratory flight.

The high-flying nocturnal activity of the insects was observed in the beam of a searchlight (fig. 15). The light can be revolved so that the individual flight may be observed.

High-level flying began shortly after the heather-level activity had passed its evening maximum; it increased until about midnight, and then it decreased until ceasing at 2 p. m. The night activity depended on temperature and wind, being enhanced by high temperature and inhibited by strong wind. In table IV three grades of high-flying activity are distinguished[2]: (1) Nil, (2) moderate, and (3) intense, according to the number of moths

Table IV.

Correlation between combined factors and activity.

Date	Temp.	Wind	t — w	1	2	3
6/8	18°	1—2	16	..	..	x
7/8	17°	1—2	15	..	..	x
8/8	20°	0—1	19	..	..	x
10/8	18°	7	11	x	..	..
11/8	14°	5	11	..	x	..
12/8	17°	5	12	..	..	x
13/8	16°	8—9	7	x	..	..
14/8	13°	7	6	x	..	..
15/8	12°	0—1	11	x	..	..
16/8	11°	2	9	x	..	..
17/8	14°	1	13	..	..	x
19/8	16°	0—1	15	..	..	x
21/8	13°	0—1	12	..	x	..
22/8	15°	2	13	..	x	..

[1] In a few other species equal numbers of ♂♂ and ♀♀ can be observed, too; especially towards the end of the activity period of the species the ♂— percentage will go down, because noctuids are prothandric.

[2] It is to be regretted that only three categories could be set up; but exact counts were only taken during some nights of observation as the influence of the physical factors on the migration had not been taken into account.

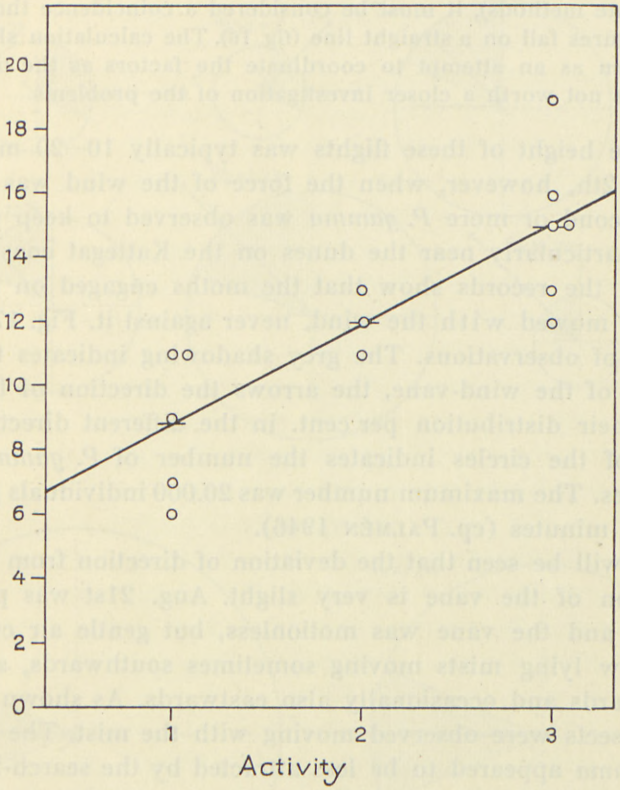


Fig. 16. Correlation between activity and combined climatic factors for *Plusia gamma*. The Abscissae shows the three grades of activity, the ordinate the difference between the temperature and the strength of the wind blowing at the same time (t-w) See text. The graph has been drawn through the average values.

observed. Table IV shows no correlation between activity and temperature alone or wind alone (cp. LARSEN 1943, p. 358, 363), but the activity depends upon both these factors.

If we try to combine the activating influence of temperature with the inhibitory influence of increasing wind, by assuming that activity rises in a nearly straight line with rising temperature, over the temperature range in question and falls in a straight line with increasing wind force, over the range of wind forces in question, then the combination will be t — w = activity. This is done in Table IV, from which it appears that high values of t — w coincide with intense activity, whereas there is no activity when the combination of both factors falls below 11. With so rough a method of recording activity and of combining the effects of temperature and wind (the material does not deserve more elaborate methods), it must be considered a coincidence that the average figures fall on a straight line (fig. 16). The calculation should only be taken as an attempt to coordinate the factors as the material at hand is not worth a closer investigation of the problems.

The height of these flights was typically 10—20 metres. On Aug. 12th, however, when the force of the wind was 5 metres per second or more *P. gamma* was observed to keep unusually low, particularly near the dunes on the Kattegat coast.

All the records show that the moths engaged on migratory flights mowed with the wind, never against it. Fig. 17 shows a series of observations. The grey shadowing indicates the movements of the wind-vane, the arrows the direction of the flights and their distribution per cent. in the different directions. The area of the circles indicates the number of *P. gamma* per 10 minutes. The maximum number was 20.000 individuals per 100 m in ten minutes (cp. Palmén 1946).

It will be seen that the deviation of direction from the mean position of the vane is very slight. Aug. 21st was practically calm, and the vane was motionless, but gentle air current set the low lying mists moving sometimes southwards, sometimes westwards and occasionally also eastwards. As shown in fig. 17 the insects were observed moving with the mist. The migrating *P. gamma* appeared to be less attracted by the search-light than other noctuids, but as they greatly outnumbered the latter, many specimens were secured all the same.

It was hardly possible to distinguish in what direction the insects were facing and therefore flying (their "courses"—see Gunn et al., 1948), and these records refer only to their "tracks", i. e. the directions in which they were moving over the ground, the resultant of their own flight exertions and the movement of their medium, the air.

Exact measurements of the ground speed of the migrants would have helped to determine how far the insects on the one hand and the wind on the other, were responsible for the speed and direction of the insects relative to the ground.

The outstanding point is that the tracks of the moths were always down-wind, so that any long-range movements occurring during this migratory flying would also be with the wind.

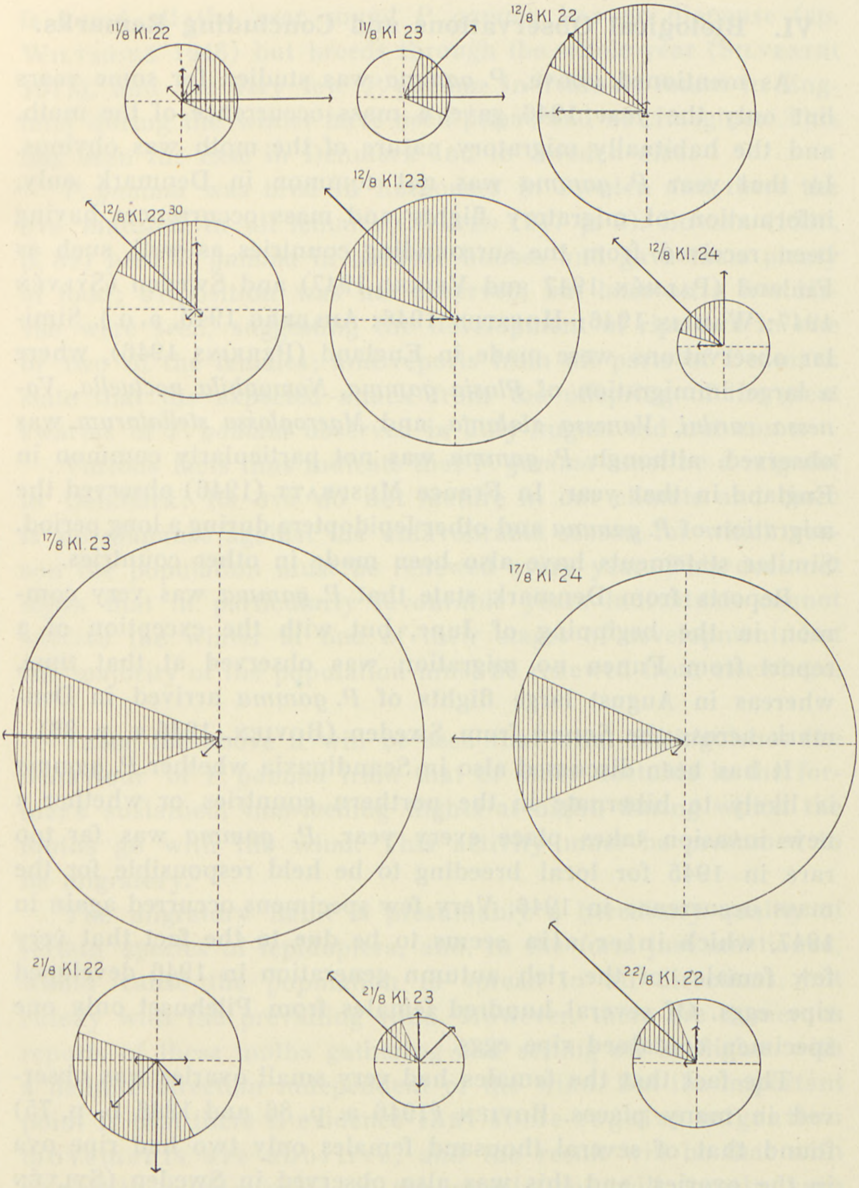


Fig. 17. Diagram of flying direction, direction of wind (shaded areas), and grade of activity. The arrows show the direction of flight and their length indicate the percentage distribution of the animals in various directions. The size of the circles indicates the number of animals observed. Kl. = o'clock.

VI. Biological Observations and Concluding Remarks.

As mentioned above, *P. gamma* was studied for some years but only the year 1946 gave a mass occurrence of the moth, and the habitually migratory nature of the moth was obvious. In that year *P. gamma* was not common in Denmark only, information of migratory flights and mass occurrences having been received from the surrounding countries as well, such as Finland (Palmén 1947 and Veikko 1947) and Sweden (Sylvén 1947; Wahlin 1946; Hofsten 1946; Ahlberg 1946, a. o.). Similar observations were made in England (Perkins 1946), where a large immigration of *Plusia gamma, Nomophila noctuella, Vanessa cardui, Vanessa atalanta*, and *Macroglossa stellatarum* was observed, although *P. gamma* was not particularly common in England in that year. In France Muspratt (1946) observed the migration of *P. gamma* and other lepidoptera during a long period. Similar statements have also been made in other countries.

Reports from Denmark state that *P. gamma* was very common in the beginning of June, but with the exception of a report from Funen no migration was observed at that time, whereas in August large flights of *P. gamma* arrived in Denmark across the Sound from Sweden (Bovien, 1946 a, p. 86).

It has been discussed also in Scandinavia whether *P. gamma* is likely to hibernate in the northern countries or whether a new invasion takes place every year. *P. gamma* was far too rare in 1945 for local breeding to be held responsible for the mass occurrence in 1946. Very few specimens occurred again in 1947, which inter alia seems to be due to the fact that very few females of the rich autumn generation in 1946 developed ripe eggs. Of several hundred females from Pilehuset only one specimen contained ripe eggs.

The fact that the females had very small ovaries was observed in many places. Bovien (1946 a. p. 86 and 1946 b. p. 75) found that of several thousand females only two had ripe ova in the ovaries, and this was also observed in Sweden (Sylvén 1947 p. 10). Fisher (1938 p. 232) mentions from England that all females of *P. gamma* sent to her had undeveloped ova and small ovaries. Hence she concludes that *P. gamma* hibernates as imago. However, it seems that in places where the species is found all the year round *P. gamma* has no diapause (cp. Wiltshire 1946) but breeds through the whole year (Silvestri 1911), and the very few *P. gamma* individuals found in England during the winter have been pupae and not imagines. This has been the case in Denmark and in Sweden also.

P. gamma was bred in hothouses in Sweden and there the ova matured in all females (Sylvén 1947 p. 9). Bovien (1946, p. 89) bred *P. gamma* in outdoor houses and gave them plenty of food; oviposition was not observed, but later on a few larvae were seen, suggesting the development of ripe ova in one or two of the females; and reports from all parts of Denmark state that the expected attack from the offspring of the great swarms of *P. gamma* observed in July-August did not come.

Various facts thus indicate that *P. gamma* must be a migrant in Denmark: Its ova do dot mature in our climate and there is no diapause against the unfavourable season for which reason the population must be renewed every year. This does not mean that in particularly favourable years individuals cannot survive the winter at one of their stages of development, but the majority of the population must be renewed from elsewhere.

From the above it will be seen that what distinguishes the behaviour of *P. gamma* from that of other noctuids is the former's sustained, non-feeding flights at night, during which the moths go with the wind. This activity must be presumed to be migratory.

The migratory habit is presumably a hereditary quality of certain species of lepidoptera, and, in the form just mentioned, would cause the population to spread in all directions, but chiefly with the prevailing wind. However, there are numerous reports of these moths gathering and setting off in flights with a definite direction independent of the wind. But the important point is that there is evidence that some regular migration movements are abortive, and the result will be that with variable winds parts of the populations will largely keep within a limited but large area, and that the gradual elimination of the migratory habit which according to Williams should take place at the centre of the outbreak (Williams 1942, p. 250) need not occur even if migrations with definite orientation take place. Thus, a return flight is not necessary for maintaining the migratory tendency of the species (cp. Wiltshire 1946).

The migrations of *P. gamma* have been compared with the regular migrations of birds, northwards in the spring and southwards in the autumn (Fisher 1938). In the author's opinion, however, the comparison is not quite satisfactory because *P. gamma* breeds more freely in the south than in the north all the year round. Nor has it a diapause in the south, so a northward migration would seem valueless

Even with no self-determined direction of the migratory flight it will be seen that *P. gamma* in places like England, where it does not occur in winter, will come from the south where it is notoriously found in the winter, and this circumstance may be taken into consideration when its disappearance in the autumn is to be explained: From each locality the insects spread in the direction of the prevailing winds, but on account of the reduced activity in colder regions the north-bound insects will be less noticeable and will die earlier on account of the lower temperature. But of course this does not disprove a return flight.

Large migratory flights of *P. gamma* will often, at least when observed from the same place, be seen moving in the same direction, independently of variations in wind and light, for a long period. For the formation of such migratory flights more than an increased activity is needed, namely the development of gregarious behaviour. That this is present in *P. gamma* has been, if not proved, at least suggested by the following statement. Mr. Henning Anthon (unpublished) observed in fields of flowering clover where the insects were swarming in dense crowds, that excitation centres occasionally sprang up which spread in an undulating manner so that waves of insects set off together. Often they flew only for a short time before they landed again, but all the same the observations seem to indicate that gregarious behaviour does occur. If, then, the insects did not land again, there would be considerable "gregarious inertia" over a wide starting front, which would enable the whole flight to keep to the same direction for some time (cp. Kennedy 1945, p. 252).

The vision of *P. gamma* is excellent, and the swarm might well keep together by the individuals making compensatory reactions to one another and, from time to time, to the sun (cp. KENNEDY 1945, p. 256). Their hearing is also exceptionally keen[1] and may help to keep the flight together in darkness.

Acknowledgements.

I am highly indebted to Dr. H. M. THAMDRUP, Director of the Mols laboratory, and to Dr. E. TETENS NIELSEN, Director of the laboratory of Pilehuset, for their great hospitality and help.

Grateful acknowledgement is made to Mrs. AASE HOLST who has undertaken the translation of this paper into English, and to Dr. J. S. KENNEDY for his helpful criticism and corrections of the M. S.

Copenhagen, Nov. 25th 1948.

Summary.

(1) Parallel field observations and laboratory experiments were made on *Plusia gamma* in Denmark, particularly during its mass appearance in 1946, in an attempt to analyse its behaviour and phenology in comparison with other, non-migrant noctuids.

(2) The preferred temperature of *P. gamma* was determined experimentally as 25—30° C., considerable higher than that of other noctuids active in the same season. Its activity was negligible below 18—20° C.

(3) *P. gamma* was active in the laboratory both in light and darkness and regardless of the time of day, whereas the other species were active only in the dark. But *P. gamma* showed a preference for activity in the dark and was especially responsive to a change from light to darkness.

(4) In the field, *P. gamma*'s feeding activity showed two peaks: a temperature-dependent one at midday and a light-dependent one at dusk, which contrasts with the typical noctuid

[1] It is almost impossible to photograph the insects with a reflex camera because the slight noise caused by the turning of the mirror puts them to flight.

curve with its night peaks. Where trees or cloud cover delayed the cooling of the ground the night peak sometimes surpassed the midday one and feeding continued far into the night. In the absence of such cover the night peak was smaller than the midday one and feeding decreased rapidly with falling temperature after dark.

(5) When evening temperature inversion occurred and feeding activity ceased the moths rose into the upper, warmer air layers, where they continued flying till after midnight. The moths always moved in the same direction as the wind during this high-level, non-feeding flight activity, which is regarded as migratory.

(6) The failure of *P. gamma*'s ova to mature in Denmark, its lack of diapause and its high preferred temperature, show that its home must be elsewhere in a warmer climate, whence the Danish population must be replenished every year. Its exceptional readiness to feed in the daytime enables it to exist in cooler regions, covering a far wider geographical range, than other noctuids with a similar temperature preference. Its migratory tendencies enable it to reach these regions, but some of its most regular journeys, as to Denmark, may be quite "abortive" for the insects concerned.

Literature.

1. Ahlberg, H. 1946. Gamma flyet 1946. Växtskyddsnotiser Nr. 6.
2. Bentley, E. W., Gunn, D. L. and Ewer. D. W. 1941. Biology and Behaviour of Ptinus tectus Boie. L. The Daily Rhythm of Locomotory Activity Especially in Relation to Light and Temperature. Journ. Exp. Biol. Vol. XVIII.
3. Boëtius, J., 1948. Über den Verlauf der Nectarabsonderung einiger Blutenpflanzen. Beih. Schweiz. Bienen-Z. B. 2 H. 17.
4. Bovien, P. 1946 a. Gammauglens Masseoptræden i 1946. Naturhistorisk Tidende Nr. 6.
5. — 1946 b. Maanedsoversigt over Plantesygdomme 285 and 287.
6. Fisher, K. J. 1938. Migrations of the Silver-Moth (Plusia gamma) in Great Britain. Journ. Animal Ecol. 7.
7. Fraenkel, G. 1932. Die Wanderungen der Insekten. Ergebn. der Biol. IX.
8. Gunn, D. L. 1940. The Daily Rhythm of Activity of the Cockroach, Blatta orientalis L. II. Observations and Experiments on a Natural Infestation. Journ. Exp. Biol. 17.
9. — and others. 1948. Locust Control by Aircraft in Tanganyika.
10. Hering, M. 1926. Biologie der Schmetterlinge. Berlin.
11. Herter, K. 1923. Untersuchungen über den Temperatursinn der Feuerwanze (Pyrrhocoris opterus L.). Biol. Zbl. 43. p. 27—30.
12. Hofsten, C. G. von. 1946. Gammaflyets härjninger av betydanda omfatning. Några iakttagelser och reflexioner. Lantmannen Nr. 33.
13. Kennedy, J. S. 1939. The Behaviour of the Desert Locust (Schistocerca gregaria Forsk.) in an Outbreak Centre. Trans. Roy. Ent. Soc. Lond. 189. o. 385—542.
14. — 1945. Observations on the Mass Migration of Desert Locust Hoppers. Trans. R. Ent. Soc. Lond. 95, 247.
15. Larsen, Ellinor Bro. 1943. The Importance of Master Factors for the Activity of Noctuids. Studies on the Activity of Insects I. Entomol. Medd. XXIII. Copenhagen.
16. — Quantitative Studies on the Activity of Noctuids. Studies on the Activity of Insects II. (In press).
17. Mellanby, K. 1940. The daily Rhythm of Activity of the Cockroach, Blatta orientalis L. II. Observations and Experiments on a Natural Infestation. Journ. Exp. Biol. 17.

18. Muspratt, V. M. 1946. Migration of Lepidoptera at St. Jean/de Luz, Basses Pyrénées, in June, and in the Hautes Pyrénées June—July 1946. The Entomologist. Vol. LXXIX.
19. Nielsen, E. Tetens 1945. Moeurs de Bembex. Spolia zool. Mus. Havn. VII.
20. Palmén, E. 1947. Ein auffallender Massenflug von Phytometra gamma L. und Pyrameis cardui L. (Lep.) in Südfinland. Ann. Ent. Fenn.
21. Park, Orlando, Roberts, T. W. and Harris, S. J. 1941. Preliminary Analyses of Activity of the Cave Crayfish Cambarus pellucidus. The Amer. Naturalist. Vol. LXXV.
22. Park, Orlando and Sejba, O. 1935. Studies in Nocturnal Ecology IV. Megalodacne Heros. Ecology. Vol. XVI. No 2.
23. Perkins, R. C. L. 1946. Sterrha saeraria L. (Lep.) and Other Immigrants near Lydford Devon. Ent. Monthly Mag. 4. Se. No. 83.
24. Silvestri, F. 1911. Contribuzioni alla conoscenza degli insetti dannosi e dei loro simbionti. II. Plusia gamma L. Boll. Labor. Zool. Gen. Agr. Vol. V.
25. Sylvén. E. 1947. Undersökningar över Gammaflyet, Phytometra gamma L. Statens Växtskyddsanstalt. Nr. 48.
26. Wahlgren, E. 1928. Massupträdande af Phytometra gamma L. Entomol. Tidsskrift. Stockholm.
27. Wahlin, B. 1946. Gammaflyets härjningar i Östergötland. Lantmannen Nr. 36.
28. Waloff, Z. 1946. Seasonal Breeding and Migrations of the Desert Locust in Eastern Africa. Anti-Locust Memoir I. London.
29. Veikko, K. 1947. Über das Massenauftreten der Gammaeule, Phytometra gamma L. (Lep. Noctuidae) im Sommer 1946 in Finland. Ann. Entomologici Fennici. Nr. 3.
30. Williams, C. B. 1930. Migrations of Butterflies. Edinburgh.
31. — 1935. The Times of Activity of Certain Nocturnal Insects chiefly Lepidoptera as Indicated by a Light Trap. Trans. R. Ent. Soc. Lond. 83.
32. — 1939. An Analysis of Four Years Captures of Insects in a Light Trap. Trans. R. Ent. Soc. Lond. 89.
33. — G. F. Cockbill, and Gibbs. M. E. 1942. Studies in the Migration of Lepidoptera. Trans. R. Ent. Soc. Lond. 92.
34. Wiltshire, E. P. 1946. Studies in the Geography of Lepidoptera III. Trans. Roy. Ent. Soc. Lond. Vol. 96.

Indleveret til selskabet den 29. november 1948.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 21. september 1949.

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 5

SOME MARINE ALGAE FROM MAURITIUS

ADDITIONS TO THE PARTS PREVIOUSLY PUBLISHED

BY

F. BØRGESEN

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

Printed in Denmark
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

As till now I have rather frequently received collections of algae from Director, Dr. R. E. Vaughan and as these collections have contained also some *Chlorophyceae* and *Phaeophyceae* not formerly found in Mauritius, the present part also contains some species of these groups and furthermore some species of *Rhodophyceae* belonging to the *Nemalionales*.

In a later part I hope to be able to publish what may be found of interest in the remaining not yet worked-out material of the latter group.

Besides species not formerly found in Mauritius several already known from the island are mentioned again here, because better and more copious material has made it possible to add supplementary information to more incompletely known species.

In a former part is mentioned the interesting occurrence of several characteristic West Indian algae in Mauritius. This applies also to the small dainty *Caulerpa Vickersiae* Børgs. mentioned in the present part. Being first known from Japan and later also from Hawaii, it has been found in several places in the West Indies and now in Mauritius, a rather peculiar discontinuous distribution. But because of its small size it is of course easily overlooked.

While the collection of Dr. Th. Mortensen contained several sublittoral algae from deep water, those received from Dr. Vaughan have been gathered in the littoral and in the uppermost parts of the sublittoral regions; but among a batch received quite recently some specimens taken at greater depth upon submarine banks were included; some species hitherto unknown from Mauritius were taken there. To improve upon this drawback as to the want of sublittoral algae from deeper water I have sent a small dredge to Dr. VAUGHAN.

As it was of importance for me to be able to see the specimens of the genera *Liagora* and *Galaxaura*, preserved at the Kew Herbarium which formerly have been determined by Professor G. DICKIE, his determinations being published in his paper On the Algae of Mauritius, I am much indebted to Professor, Dr. E. J. SALISBURY, Director of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, who upon my application allowed me to get the specimens of these genera on loan here in Copenhagen.

During a visit to Lund in the early spring of 1948 I have by the courtesy of Docent, Dr. H. WEIMARCK been able to compare some specimens of algae from Mauritius with specimens preserved in J. AGARDH's Herbarium.

To Director, Dr. R. E. VAUGHAN I want to express my warmest thanks for his continual interest in sending me collections of algae from the island.

To the TRUSTEES OF THE CARLSBERG FOUNDATION I am much indebted for a continued grant for algological investigations.

CHLOROPHYCEAE

Siphonocladales.

Fam. Anadyomenaceae.

Valoniopsis Børgs.

1. Valoniopsis pachynema (Martens) Børgs.

Børgesen, F., Some Marine Algae from the Northern Part of the Arabian Sea, 1934, p. 10, figs. 1, 2. — *Valonia confervoides* Harv., Alg. Ceylon exsicc. no. 73 (nomen nudum). *Bryopsis pachynema* Martens. Die Preussische Exped. nach Ostasien. Bot. Theil. Die Tange von G. v. Martens, p. 24, tab. IV, fig. 2. Berlin 1876.

In some collections lately received from Mauritius some small not quite well developed specimens of this plant are found. The specimens, even small, seem to be in good comformity with my description. The thallus is about 700—800 μ thick.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, "Rocks exposed at low tide", May 5, 1948. G. Morin no. 863.

Dasycladales.

Fam. Dasycladaceae.

Neomeris Lamouroux.

Neomeris annulata Dickie.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 43.

Of this species, of which Mauritius is the type locality, as Dickie described the species upon specimens from the island, I have formerly seen only some very few specimens preserved in the Kew Herbarium.

It was therefore of great interest to me in a collection sent recently from Dr. VAUGHAN to receive a really large and beautiful collection (no. 775) of this small, so nicely built *Dasycladaceae*. The specimens are from 8 mm to about 1½ cm high of light-green colour, darkest near the apical ends, where the assimilating filaments protrude. In the fructiferous part of the thallus the characteristic annular calcification round the gametangia was very prominent; compare YAMADA's figure 16 in his paper "The Marine Chlorophyceae from Ryukyu", Sapporo 1934. The gametangia are oblong to cylindrical, many of them a little broader upwards; for instance a gametangium with a length of 171 μ was 80 μ broad near the base and 87 μ above.

To judge from the material the plant has in most cases grown gregariously; it occurred "on coral in one foot of water at low tide".

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, March 24. 1948, G. MORIN no. 775.

SIPHONALES

Fam. Caulerpaceae.

Caulerpa Lamouroux.

1. **Caulerpa Vickersiae** Børgs.

BØRGESEN F., Some Chlorophyceae from the Danish West Indies, 1911, p. 129, fig. 2. — *Caulerpa ambigua* Okamura, On the Algae from Ogasawara-jima (Bonin Islands), 1897, p. 4.

In some material quite recently received from Dr. VAUGHAN (Nos. 843 and 861) I was agreeably surprised to find this dainty little *Caulerpa*, which I, through all the intervening years, have had no opportunity to re-examine, since I first found it in the former Danish West Indies and gave it the name *Caulerpa Vickersiae*, because Mlle VICKERS had found it on Barbados shortly before.

Mlle VICKERS referred her specimens to *C. ambigua* Okamura described by Okamura a few years previously, but as I, as stated in detail below, found it impossible from Okamura's description and figures to believe that the Japanese and the West Indian plants could be identical, I described the latter as an independent species.

I therefore take this opportunity of replying to the few objections which, through the years, have been directed against the soundness of my species, first and foremost on the part of Okamura, whose mild defence of his species did not justify an earlier reply. On the other hand, Miss Lois Eubank's recent attack distinctly calls for an answer.

When I did not at the time find it possible to classify the West Indian material as belonging to Okamura's species, it was because a close comparison with Okamura's description and illustrations led me to conclude that the Japanese and the West Indian plant could not possibly be reconciled, as they differed radically in nearly every respect. I refer to my comparative analysis in my paper from 1911 and should like to stress the main point: that Okamura's description of his species seemed to show that the material upon which he based his description was a mixture of two different species, one which resembled the West Indian form to a certain extent, and another which is described as follows in Okamura's paper: "has contracted as if articulated rachis" and that this "is more especially so in frond bearing ramenta constricted at base", characters which cannot possibly be applied to the West Indian species. And even if it has later transpired that Okamura's "dubious" plant did in fact represent a deviating, poorly developed form of this species, and that its different appearance is almost certainly due to extreme external conditions, very different from the plant's ordinary habitat, this cannot, in my opinion, justify recognition of a description so misleading, that it caused Mme Weber in her monograph, after correspondence with Okamura (see his paper 1897, pp. 6—7 under *Caulerpa Okamurai*), to place *C. ambigua* in the group *Opuntioides*, just after *Caulerpa sedoides*.

In order to remedy this, Okamura has later (see "Icones of Jap. Algae", vol. III, 1915, p. 168, pl. 139), on the plate mentioned, reproduced the illustrations from his earlier paper and added three new ones. These show a plant which unmistakably belongs to this species, even if it is not completely true to type; but this cannot of course alter the consequences of his earlier and very unfortunate description and figures. Curiously enough OKAMURA here quotes VICKERS, "Phycologia Barbadensis", where the species, as stated above, is called *C. ambigua*, but no reference to my species is given.

Not till 1931 does OKAMURA (see his paper "On the Marine Algae from Kotosho (Botel Tobago)", p. 101) produce an answer to my arguments. He refers to the added illustrations on his plate and claims that these, compared with the former ones, will show that his species does not comprise two species. But this is at any rate too late and cannot in any way alter the fact that I was the first to give a proper description of the species.

W. RANDOLPH TAYLOR, who in his valuable paper "The Marine Algae of Florida", 1928, p. 104, pl. 12, fig. 20, pl. 13, fig. 12 uses my name for the species, has been the first to find *C. Vickersiae* at the coast of Florida and describes a variety, var. *luxurians* Tayl., from there, a form which, however, hardly differs appreciably from the typical form. And in a later paper "Notes on Algae from the Tropical Atlantic Ocean", II, 1933, p. 396, pl. 36, TAYLOR describes the beautiful *C. Vickersiae* var. *furcifolia* Tayl. from the coast of Costa Rica.

In 1934 YAMADA mentions (see his paper "The Marine Chlorophyceae from Ryukyu", p. 64) that he has found the plant at the south coast of Japan. He calls it *C. ambigua* without comment. The plant he found (fig. 33), as YAMADA stresses, shows close relationship with the typical West Indian plant, with distichously arranged ramuli and marked periodical growth; in one specimen ramuli were scattered or nearly verticillately placed.

Last in the line comes Miss LOIS EUBANK, who discusses the matter in her paper "Hawaiian Representatives of the Genus Caulerpa", 1946, p. 410, and, as already mentioned, it is mainly her paper, together with the discovery of *C. Vickersiae* in Mauritius, which has caused my reply.

After reviewing the various authors who have dealt with the subject, Miss EUBANK states that she has examined some of OKAMURA's material as well as her own, and then sums up as follows: "I conclude that but one species is involved, the proper designation of which is *C. ambigua*, and that *C. Vickersiae* should be considered a synonym of it. Such polymorphism within a species is not unusual for this genus. OKAMURA probably overstressed the importance of what appeared to be "spurious articulations" in a specimen to which he later referred (1931) as showing an extreme rather than a typical development." I should like to point out that there was no need at all for this drastic verdict, as nobody acquainted with the matter as it now stands will deny that OKAMURA's material did in fact comprise only one species. OKAMURA was unfortunate in getting hold of a poorly developed, practically deformed type from an unsuitable habitat. When OKAMURA's misleading description is viewed objectively, my conclusion at the time, that the West Indian plant belonged to another species than the Japanese one, was fully justified.

Next: Miss EUBANK tries to explain away the constrictions and articulations of ramuli and rachis, mentioned by OKAMURA, by stating that in her material from Hawaii "slight constrictions at the bases of the ramuli" were observed. But the real facts are that the ramuli may now and then taper evenly and slightly from the apex towards their base. In the same paragraph it is quite obvious that Miss EUBANK completely misunderstands TAYLOR's expression in his description of *C. Vickersiae* var. *furcifolia* (1933, p. 397) where he says about the ramuli: "very slightly contracted towards ramular bases", the idea being that they taper slightly towards their base, not that constrictions are found at the base. Therefore, I whole-heartedly agree with Miss EUBANK when she writes: "No significance is assigned to them, however, as they are not a typical feature of the plant, and are very obscure at best, showing no regularity of occurrence." How true! They do not even exist. But this hardly helps OKAMURA's description.

Furthermore, Miss EUBANK mentions the question of the rhizome. As is well-known, OKAMURA described his plant as lacking a prostrate rhizome ("with no repenting surculus"), and later on in his description he refers to this lack as "the doubtful question of surculus". Later investigations have shown that the alleged lack of a rhizome was a complete misunderstanding. When Miss EUBANK therefore writes: "Before the absence of a prostrate rhizome can be relied upon as a distinguishable feature of *C. ambigua*, it must be remembered," etc., it suffices to state that hardly anybody nowadays will doubt that the plant is in fact furnished with a prostrate rhizome. By the way: if the words quoted above are addressed to me, I should like to refer to my conclusion (1911, p. 131) where, after an examination of Okamura's specimen of *C. ambigua* in "Algae Japonicae Exsiccatae", no. 95, I point out that "this seems to me very clearly to show a rhizome." Compare Fig. 1.

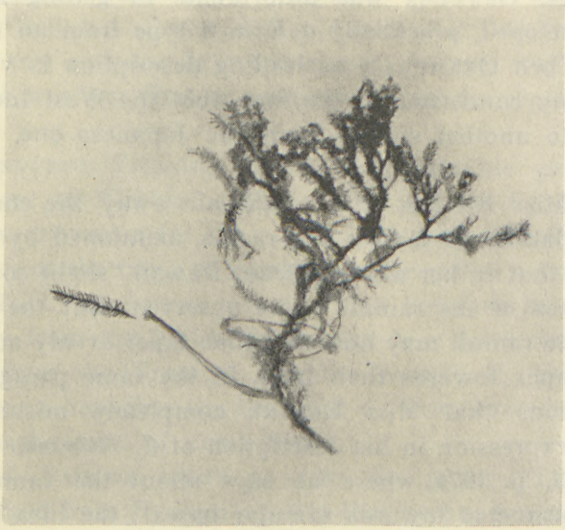


Fig. 1. *Caulerpa Vickersiae* Børgs. Habit of a specimen. (× 3).

Finally, I take the opportunity to say a few words about the varieties which Miss Eubank has proposed. First, var. *Vickersiae*: As I maintain that my name for the species ought to be retained, it follows that the type which was the basis of my description of the species should be considered the typical form and be named var. *typica*. In my opinion this variety also comprises var. *simplex* Eubank, which is described as follows: "Frond beset with distichously arranged unbranched ramuli, dichotomous ramuli rare to completely lacking." Such a distinction, in my opinion, is not only artificial, but actually impossible, as plants from the same collection may vary from specimens with completely unbranched ramuli to others with several pairs of dichotomously divided ramuli. In this connection it may be mentioned that my renewed investigations of this small, insignificant plant, based as they are on a comparatively rich material from Mauritius, lead me to conclude that it is, to a very great extent, the external conditions which determine whether the ramuli become dichotomously divided or not. The specimens from Mauritius were growing more or less

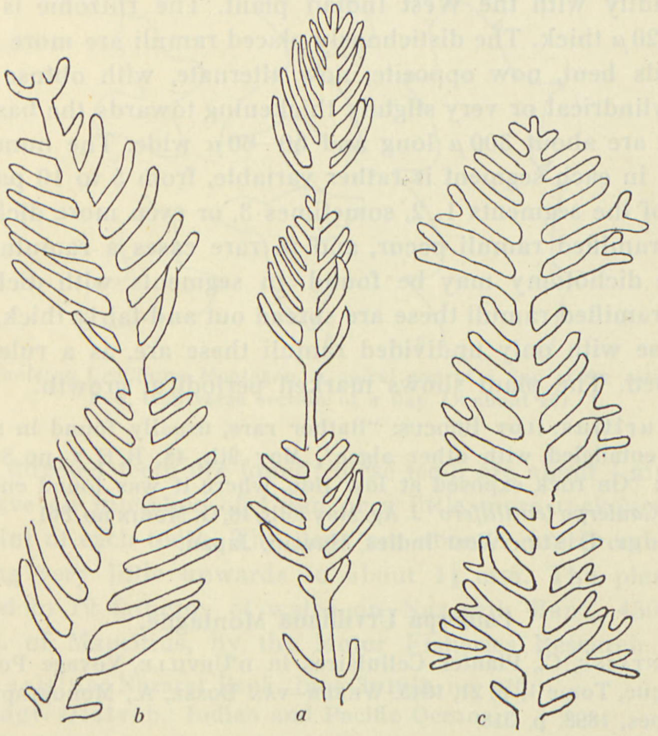


Fig. 2. *Caulerpa Vickersiae* Børgs. Forma *typica*. *a*, *b*, fragments of the thallus without dichotomously divided ramuli; *c*, fragment with dichotomously divided ramuli (× about 20).

walled in by tussocks of *Caulerpa lentillifera*, J. Ag., which, although quite small, is a giant compared to *C. Vickersiae*. Consequently the minute *C. Vickersiae* has to stretch to its utmost extent in order to keep up, as far as possible, with the growth of its big neighbour, and it must therefore dispense with the luxury of dichotomously branched ramuli. The figure (Fig. 2a) shows such a segment: the upturned, slender ramuli and the elongated, bare portions of the rachis are plainly visible, showing how the plant is forced to lengthen itself. Referring to the above, it is likewise my opinion that var. *dichotoma* EUBANK cannot be maintained either. Miss EUBANK's plant (l. c. pl. 22, figs. b and c) has almost certainly grown in favourable surroundings, where no serious interference from other algae was encountered.

As for the specimens (Fig. 2) from Mauritius, they are in good conformity with the West Indian plant. The rhizome is about 200—220 μ thick. The distichously placed ramuli are more or less upwards bent, now opposite, now alternate, with obtuse apical tips, cylindrical or very slightly thickening towards the base. The ramuli are about 300 μ long and 50—60 μ wide. The number of ramuli in each segment is rather variable, from 5 to 10 pairs. In some of the segments 1, 2, sometimes 3, or even more dichotomously ramified ramuli occur, and in rare cases a ramulus with double dichotomy may be found. In segments with dichotomously ramified ramuli these are spread out and fairly thick, while in those with only undivided ramuli these are, as a rule, more upturned. The plant shows marked periodical growth.

Mauritius: ILOT BROCUS: "Rather rare, usually found in shallow water, entangled with other algae", May 9th, 48, R. E. V. no. 843. Ilot Barkly: "On rock exposed at low tide, where it was found entangled among *Caulerpa lentillifera*" J. Ag. May 10th, 48, G. MORIN no. 861.

Geogr. Distr.: West Indies, Hawaii, Japan.

Caulerpa Urvilliana Montagne.

MONTAGNE, C., Plantes Cellulaires in D'URVILLE, Voyage Pole Sud, Botanique, Tome 1, p. 21, 1945. WEBER—VAN BOSSE, A., Monographie des Caulerpes, 1898, p. 318.

A specimen (no. 816) of this rather variable plant has recently been received from Mauritius. It seems to me to agree quite well with Mme WEBER's fig. 8 a, pl. 26 in her monograph. This figure originates from specimens collected during the Forschungsreise S. M. S. Gazelle and according to Mme WEBER is identical with the typical specimen.

However, having no authentic material for comparison I give here a short description of the specimen.

It is a vigorous plant with a terete stem fixed with strong rhizoids in the sandy bottom. The erect assimilator is about 15 cm high and several times rather regularly furcate. While the rhizome and the basal part of the assimilator is terete, the flaps are deeply furrowed, but in rather an irregular way, as is seen from some transverse section of an assimilator having been preserved in formalin and seawater and thus having kept its natural shape (Fig. 3 b—e). Along the margins of the flaps a continuous row of sharp up-

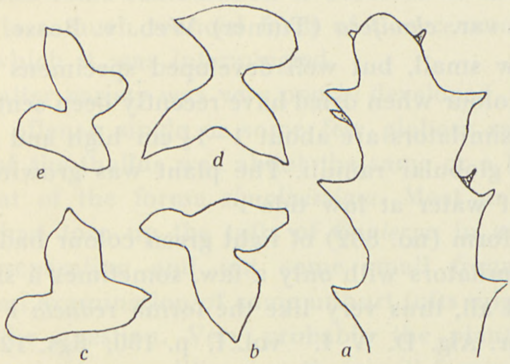


Fig. 3. *Caulerpa Urvilliana* Montagne. *a*, apical end of a flap of the assimilator; *b—e*, transverse section of a flap. (× about 10).

wards directed teeth are found; these teeth are about ½ mm long and have an interstice of 1 mm or a little more reckoned from the point of each tooth. The flaps are about 2 mm broad below, tapering very little upwards to about 1½ mm. The plant was dredged in 19 fathoms of water on Nazareth Bank, 450 miles N.N.E. of Mauritius, by the Motor Fisheries Research Vessel.

Mauritius: Nazaret Bank, June 3, 1948, no. 816.
Geogr. Distrib.: Indian and Pacific Oceans.

Caulerpa serrulata (Forssk.) J. Ag. emend. Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, I, p. 50 and Addit. List 1946, p. 38.

Of this species, of which I formerly from Mauritius have seen only very little material, some well prepared specimens (nos. 811, 865) collected in situ are contained in previously received collections from the island.

The specimens come near to var. *typica* Weber, forma *lata* Weber (1898, p. 313). Tseng in "*Chlorophyceae* from Hainan", 1936, p. 178—9 gives a good figure of this form.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, "in two feet of water at low tide" April 24 1948, G. MORIN no. 811. And same locality, "on Coral exposed at low tide", June 8 1948, G. MORIN no. 865.

Caulerpa racemosa (Forssk.) Web. van Bosse.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 51; Add. List., 1946, p. 39 and do., 1948, p. 32.

var. *clavifera* (Turner) Web. v. Bosse.

Some few small, but well developed specimens (no. 812) of dark green colour when dried have recently been sent from Mauritius. The assimilators are about 1—1½ cm high and densely clad with nearly globular ramuli. The plant was growing "on rocks in 1⅓ feet of water at low tide".

Another form (no. 862) of light green colour had small much reduced assimilators with only a few, sometimes a single or even no ramuli at all, thus very like the forma *reducta* I have described in "Mar. Alg. D. W. I." vol. I, p. 150, figs. 121—122. This form was growing "on rocks exposed at low tide".

forma *simplicissima* nov. form.

Forma assimilatoribus nudis, sine ramulis globosis, 8—15 mm altis, subcylindricis-subclavatis, apicibus late rolundatis instructa. (Fig. 4).

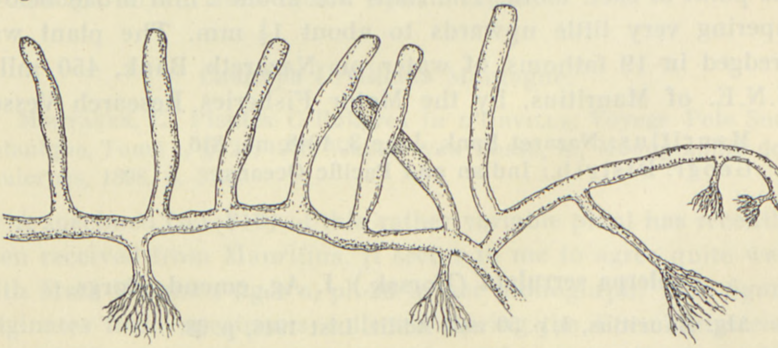


Fig. 4. *Caulerpa racemosa* (Forssk.) Web. v. Bosse. forma *simplicissima* nov. form. (× 3).

In some material of *Caulerpa* (nos. 812, 828, 863) which formed small tufts upon rocks in exposed localities a little peculiar form occurred of which fig. 4 gives an illustration. From the terete rhizome, about 1 mm in diameter, rhizoids are given out below, while from the upward-turned side erect subcylindrical to subclavate assimilating shoots issue. As a rule these are a little narrowed towards their base and have broadly rounded apical ends; their length varies from about 8 mm up to 1½ cm. The largest specimen found in the collection was about 5—6 cm long.

At first, when finding this small plant, I thought it was a new species, but after some examination it occurred to me very probably that it is a much reduced form of *C. racemosa* var. *clavifera*, among which it was intermingled.

Also this latter variety was very poorly developed, the assimilators having often a single or some few globose ramuli only, and the size of the thallus was about the same or a little bigger only than that of the forma *simplicissima*. Most unfortunately the collector had torn up the tufts of *Caulerpa* in small pieces during the preparation and put some small fragments only in the bottle, an examination of some unhurt tufts might perhaps have solved the question. Very probably the plant has been growing under similar conditions as the small forma *reducta* referred to above.

The above-described form may also show likeness to *Caulerpa ramosa* var. *Lamourouxii* forma *Requinii* (Mont.) Weber, 1898, p. 369, pl. 32, fig. 7, but in this form the assimilators are ribbon-like and more or less ramified; comp. Reinke, "Ueber Caulerpa", p. 39, fig. 58. And it may also remind of *Caulerpa Freycinettii* var. *integerrima* Zanardini, "Plant. Mar. Rubr". 1858, p. 75; compare Reinke's fig. 39, p. 27 of this form in his above quoted paper; but this form has likewise ramified and flattened assimilators.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, "on rocks exposed at low tide", May 10, 1948, G. Morin no. 862 and 863 a. Ilot Barkly, "Creeping upon old corals and rocks", May 24, 1948, R. E. V. no. 828. Ilot Barkly, April 24, 1948, G. Morin no. 812.

Caulerpa lentillifera J. Ag.

Agardh, J., Alg. Rüppell, 1837, p. 173. Till Algernes Systematik, Nya bidrag I. Caulerpa, p. 42. Weber v. Bosse, Monographie, 1898, pl. 34, figs. 1—2. Reinbold in Johs. Schmidt, Flora of Koh Chang, Part IV, Marine Algae, Copenhagen 1901, p. 105.

To this species I think a small *Caulerpa* (no. 813) (Fig. 5) recently received from Mauritius is to be referred. When some doubt about the referring of the plant to this species and not to *Caulerpa racemosa* var. *clavifera* forma *microphysa* is left, it is because the characteristic feature of this species, and upon the whole of the group *Pedicellatae*, namely a marked constriction of the pedicel just below the ball-shaped ramuli, is not always present, the pedicel instead of this tapering evenly upwards or being nearly cylindrical. Fig. 6 shows some ramuli with pedicels and Fig. 7 an assimilator densely clad with the globose ramuli.

Fig. 5. *Caulerpa lentillifera* J. Ag. A dried specimen. Natural size.

Regarding the more or less marked constrictions of the pedicels variations have previously been mentioned, thus for instance by Gilbert, in his paper "Notes on Caulerpa from Java and the Philippines", 1942, p. 23, who has found that in specimens from Java the constrictions were less marked than in those from the Philippines, and in the same paper, regarding the above-mentioned var. *microphysa*, he points out that in the short pedicels of this small form he has sometimes found "a suggestion of a constriction between the globular head and the pedicel of the ramulus, which may indicate some relationship between var. *microphysa* and the Pedicellatae" characterized by constrictions of the pedicels.

The plant from Mauritius is quite a tiny, delicate plant (Fig. 5); the rhizome is about $\frac{3}{4}$ mm thick only, and the longest assimilators have a length of about 1 cm; but most of them are scarcely half this length or even smaller. In some cases the assimilators are densely covered by the ball-shaped ramuli, but in others some few or even a single ramulus is present only. The diameter of the ball-shaped ramulus is up to about 1 mm long; the length of the pedicels is rather variable, mostly about 300 μ.

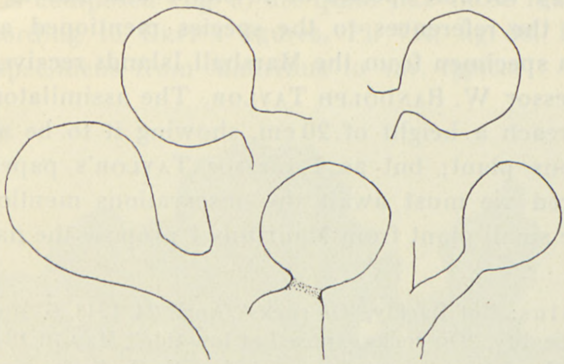


Fig. 6. *Caulerpa lentillifera* J. Ag. Globose ramuli with more or less constricted pedicells. (× 20).

When compared with the figures found in Mme WEBER's monograph, the Mauritian plant differs very much, thus also when it is compared with the figures of SVEDELIUS, "Ecological and

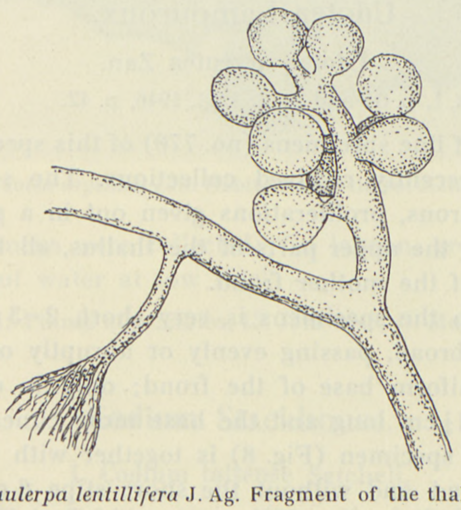


Fig. 7. *Caulerpa lentillifera* J. Ag. Fragment of the thallus. (× 15).

Systematic Studies of the Ceylon Species of Caulerpa", 1907, p. 137, fig. 45, here named *Caulerpa longistipitata* (Weber—van Bosse). On the other hand it agrees rather well with a small form figured by Miss EUBANK in her paper "Hawaiian Representatives of the Genus Caulerpa", 1946, p. 418 figs. 2k,l.

Besides, *Caulerpa lentillifera*, like most *Caulerpa* species, seems to be a very variable species as to shape and size to judge not only from the references to the species mentioned above, but also from a specimen from the Marshall Islands received recently from Professor W. RANDOLPH TAYLOR. The assimilators in this specimen reach a height of 20 cm, showing it to be a very tall and vigorous plant; but as Professor TAYLOR's paper has not yet appeared we must await the observations mentioned here.

For the small plant from Mauritius I propose the name forma *parvula*.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, "On rocks", April 24, 1948, G. MORIN no. 813, and, same locality, "On rocks exposed at low tide", May 10, 1948, G. MORIN no. 861; in the latter locality associated with the quite tiny *Caulerpa Vickersiae*.

Geogr. Distrib.: Red Sea, Madagascar, Java, Philippine Islands, Hawaii, etc.

Fam. ***Codiaceae.***

Udotea Lamouroux.

Udotea argentea Zan.

Alg. Mauritius, I, p. 60 and Add. List, 1946, p. 42.

A number of fine specimens (no. 770) of this species are included in some recently received collections. The specimens are all very proliferous, proliferations given out in a great number especially from the upper parts of the thallus, all being replicae in small size of the mother frond.

The stipe in the specimens is very short, 2—3 mm only, terete, 2—3 mm broad, passing evenly or abruptly over in to the broadly subreniform base of the frond; only in one specimen the stipe was 1¼ cm long and the base more cuneate.

The largest specimen (Fig. 8) is together with the proliferations 9 cm broad and without the short stipe 6 cm high. The colour is greyish-green. All the fronds show soft fan-like foldings starting from near the stipe (in the proliferations from their base) towards the margin. The surface has a mealy, spumose appearance.

While the shape of the frond, when compared with Gepp's figures in their monograph of var. *typica* and var. *spumosa*, agrees best with the latter (Pl. II, fig. 15), the filaments of which the frond is composed (fig. 9) are quite like those found in var. *typica* according to Gepp's figures, Pl. VII, fig. 58. I therefore refer the specimens from Mauritius to var. *typica*.

Fig. 8. *Udotea argentea* Zan. Habit of a specimen. Natural size.

The specimens were collected: "in lagoon, growing on coral in eight feet of water at low tide".

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 13. Jan. 1948, G. Morin no. 770.

Codium Stackhouse.

1. Codium taitense Setchell.

Setchell, W. A., Tahitian Algae, 1926, p. 83, pl. 12, figs. 3, 4.

In Alg. Mauritius, Add. List, 1946, pp. 49—52 I have referred several specimens of *Codium* of rather different shape and structure to *C. Geppei*. In doing so I relied upon a correspondence about a group of *Codium* related to *C. Geppei* I had had some years ago with SETCHELL, who, as is well known, for a number of years had made the study of this genus a speciality.

But since I have later found a rather typical form of *C. Geppei* (comp. Addit. List, 1948, p. 38) and furthermore in recently received collections have found specimens which seem to agree

Fig. 9. *Udotea argentea* Zan. Filaments from the flabellum. (× 150).

quite well with SETCHELL's description of *C. taitense* Setchell, I now refer them to this species. This primarily applies to some specimens (no. 760) recently received from Mauritius.

Fig. 10 shows one of the specimens. The decumbent thallus is said to be creeping upon old corals near the shore in a lagoon. It is fixed to the substratum by means of groups of rhizoids emerging here and there from the thallus. The vesicles (Fig. 11) are subcylindrical to subclavate and show much likeness to those figured in figs. 20—22 l. c. Their length varies from 450 to 700 μ and their breadth from 165 to 350 μ; the apical wall is mostly vaulted and the wall thickened.

Also some fragments of a specimen (no. 416) seem referable to this species. The thallus in this specimen is broader than that in the above-mentioned one.

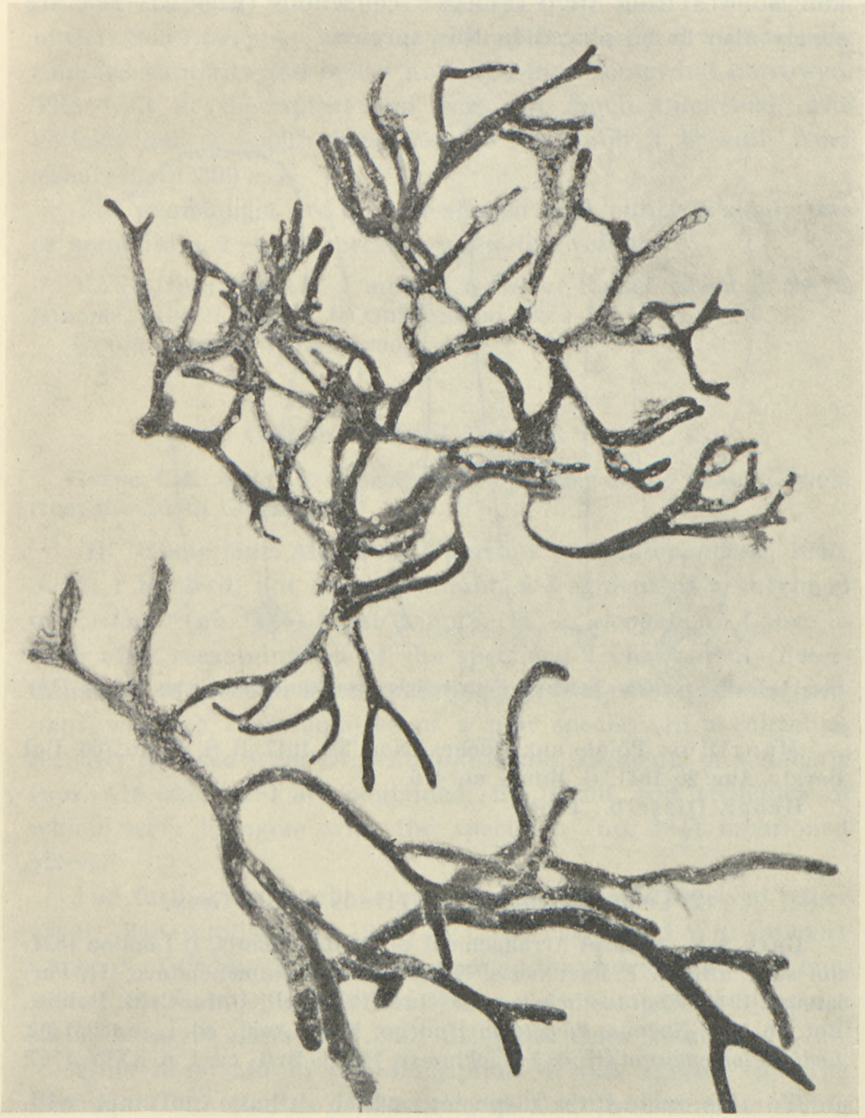


Fig. 10. *Codium tailense* Setchell. Habit of a specimen. Natural size.

And moreover some of the specimens mentioned in my paper of 1946, for instance JADIN's specimens no. 478 b (Fig. 20) and no. 413 from Dr. VAUGHAN's collections (Figs. 21—22), are surely also to be placed in this species.

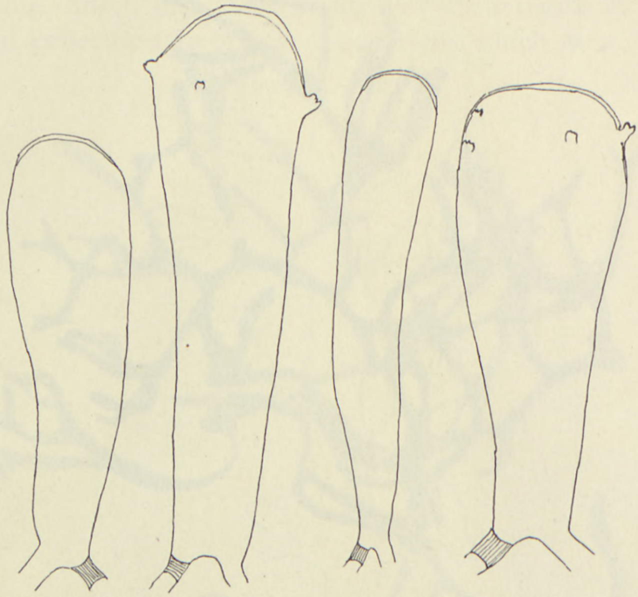


Fig. 11. *Codium taitense* Setchell. Four vesicles from the specimen no. 760. (× 115).

Mauritius: Pointe aux Roches, Nov. 28, 1947, R. E. V., no. 760. Ilot Barkly, Aug. 26, 1941, G. MORIN no. 416.
Geogr. Distrib.: Tahiti.

2. Codium dichotomum (Huds.) S. F. Gray.

GRAY, S. F., Natural Arrangement of British Plants, I. London 1821; not seen, after G. F. PAPENFUSS, Notes on Algal Nomenclature, III, Farlowia I, 1944.—*Codium dichotomum* (Huds.) Setchell, Univ. Calif. Public., Bot., 16, 1937. *Spongia dichotoma* Hudson, Flora Angl., ed. I, p. 489, 1762. *Codium tomentosum* (Huds.) Stackhouse, Nereis Brit., ed. I, p. XXIV, 1797.

To this wide-spread species, which I have not met with earlier in the collections from Mauritius, I think a specimen is referable which was gathered at a depth of 20—22 fathoms. The specimen is not complete without the basal disc; the fragment, 10 cm high, has a completely cylindrical thallus below, about

5 mm thick, tapering slowly a little upwards, and is more or less regularly furcated.

The shape of the vesicles answers quite well to the figures of O. C. SCHMIDT, p. 41, being clavate to subcylindrical with broadly rounded summits and below now and then somewhat narrowed. The wall at the apical end was not much thickened. The vesicles had a length from 550 to 700 μ and a breadth from about 70 to 300 μ.

The gametangia are spindle-shaped and either a single one or sometimes 2—4 are present upon the vesicles.

Mauritius: About 1–2 miles S. S. W. of Round Island in 20–22 fathoms, June 27, 1948, F. D. OMMANEY no. 838.

Geogr. Distr.: Wide-spread.

3. Codium bartlettii Tseng & Gilbert.

TSENG, C. K. and WM. GILBERT, On New Algae of the Genus *Codium* from the South China Sea.

In "Some Mar. Alg. from Mauritius", I. *Chlorophyceæ*, 1940, p. 72, I referred, not without doubt, a fragment of a specimen of *Codium* (no. 334), cast ashore, to *C. elongatum*. Later in 1946 after reexamination of the specimen I changed my determination to *Codium* spec., pointing out that the specimen perhaps was the representative of a new species. In a collection recently received from Dr. VAUGHAN some fragments of a *Codium* (nos. 415 and 529) are contained, the habit and structure of which seem to agree with the specimen (no. 334) mentioned above.

And further in the above quoted quite recently received paper (Sept. 1948, published in 1942) by C. K. TSENG and WM. GILBERT a species of *Codium* is described, namely the above-mentioned one, whose characteristic habit as well as its anatomical structure seems to agree quite well with the plant from Mauritius.

Thus it is said in the description of this species that the forking of the thallus is unequal, one of the branches being less developed, while the other becomes vigorous, continuing with the axis below, and this characteristic feature is also present in the Mauritian plant, giving it a conspicuous unilateral appearance. And the branching of the thallus is divaricate. While in the specimen cast ashore (compare fig. 25, 1946) the flattened dilatations below the furcations are much developed, these are less developed in the two larger fragments (no. 529), and in a smaller one of another specimen (no. 415), being most probably referable, too, to this species, these dilatations are much developed. In the

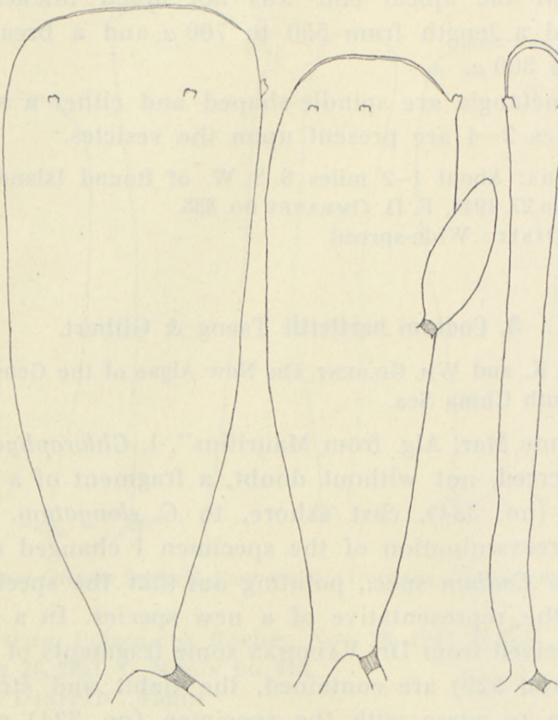


Fig. 12. *Codium bartlettii* Tseng & Gilbert. Some vesicles from the specimen no. 529. (× 75).

latter specimen the thallus has surely also before drying been complanate, as is the case with *Codium bartlettii*, while in the two larger fragments (529) I have been unable to state this, having had only dried material.

Regarding the structure of the specimens the vesicles (Fig. 12) in the small specimen (no. 415) are 700—1000 μ and their breadth from about 150—350 μ; while in the larger specimens (no. 529) their length is from 900—1200 μ, sometimes up to 1300 μ and their breadth from about 80 to 400 μ, rarely more, their size thus being a little larger than the measures given in the description of the species. The vesicles are clavate to subcylindrical, tapering below. The apical ends of the vesicles are broadly rounded, rarely a little depressed in the middle, and the walls are up to about 8 μ thick and stratified.

The gametangia are spindle-shaped, about 275 μ long and 80—100 μ broad; I have seen only a single one upon each vesicle.

All things considered, it seems to me that the Mauritian specimens show a very great likeness to *Codium bartlettii* so that their belonging to this species seems to me very probable.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, Oct. 22, 1945, G. Morin no. 529. Ilot Barkly, July 27, 1945, G. Morin no. 415.

Geogr. Distr.: Hainan Island and the Philippines.

PHAEOPHYCEAE

Dictyotales.

Fam. ***Dictyotaceæ.***

Dictyopteris Lamour.

Dictyopteris serrata (Aresch.) Børgs.

Børgesen, F., Alg. Mauritius, 1948, p. 47.

Of this species of which I formerly from Mauritius have seen only a specimen cast ashore collected by Daruty and without locality, some well preserved material in formol has been received from Dr. Vaughan in a recent collection. The species must be presumed to be a deep-sea plant, being found at a depth of 15 fathoms, from where it was brought up on fishing line. This is quite in conformity with Jadin's observation about its occurrence in Réunion.

Mauritius: One mile S. S. W. of Morne at 15 fathoms, brought up on fishing line. June 18th, 1948, F. D. Ommanney no. 837.

RHODOPHYCEAE

Nemalionales.

Fam. Helminthocladiaceae.

Liagora Lamouroux.

1. Liagora valida Harv.

Harvey, W. H., Nereis Bor.-Am., Part II, 1853, p. 138, tab. 31 A. Agardh, J., Epicrisis, p. 517. Analecta Algol., Contin. III, p. 107. Kützing, Tab. Phyc., vol. VIII, tab. 92, I. Børgesen, F., Mar. Alg. D. W. I., vol. II, 1915, p. 70, figs. 71–75, Howe, M. A., Algae in Britton and Millspaugh, The Bahama Flora, New York, 1920, p. 555.

In some collections of algae recently received from Dr. Vaughan some specimens of *Liagora* are contained which are referable to *L. valida*.

Two of the specimens (no. 756) are well prepared and in fine condition, being most probably fragments of the same plant; when examined they turned out to be male plants. As their habit is rather different from the other specimens, these being female ones, I give a short description of them here.

The specimens being without base are about 5 cm high. They are much incrusted with chalk and have a whitish colour with a red tinge with the exception of the upper young tips which are dark-red. The thicker filaments are about 1½ mm broad, tapering slowly but very little upwards; the tips are subacute. The thallus is repeatedly irregularly furcated; the angles between the branches are about a right one and the length of the internodes varies from 2 to 8 mm. The thallus is terete, subglabrous, becoming very clearly annulated towards the summits; it is very little shrivelled.

The anatomical structure is in good conformity with my description and figures quoted above.

As said above, the specimens are male plants. The large whitish semiglobose, antheridial bodies are terminally placed upon the assimilating filaments formed by the repeatedly forked, upwards tapering filaments, the apical cells being the antheridia (Fig. 13).

The shape and structure of the antheridial bodies are quite in conformity with those pictured by KÜTZING in Tab. Phycol., vol. 8, pl. 92.

Of female specimens being referable to *Liagore valida* I have had several for examination, but most of them are small, surely fragments of larger plants only. Nos. 447 and 450 are both rather alike, having a dark-red colour, only here and there more

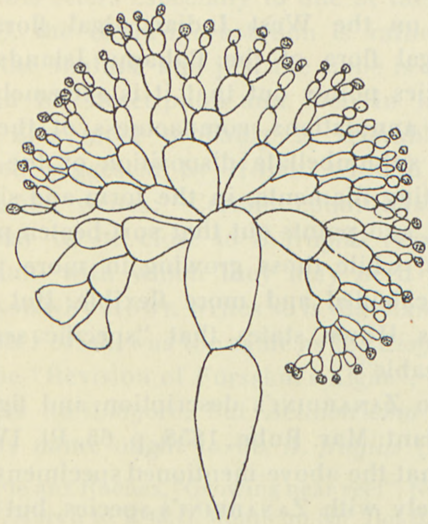


Fig. 13. *Liagora valida* Harv. An antheridial body. (× 660).

whitish. The thallus is in both specimens about ¾—1 mm thick, no. 447 having a denser ramification with shorter articulations, about 4 mm long, no. 450 being more loosely ramified with longer joints, about 5 mm long. The thallus is much shrivelled in both specimens.

Two small specimens (no. 810), most probably fragments of a larger tuft, have a whitish-red, rather shrivelled thallus.

And finally two fragments of an old plant (no. 857) have a greyish red thallus, much shrivelled and with a gritty surface.

A fine large specimen of *Liagora valida* is found in the Kew Herbarium; it is without locality except Mauritius and was collected by E. B. BLACKBURN, who according to kind information from Miss C. J. DICKINSON, the Kew Herbarium, was Chief Justice in Mauritius between 1824 and 1835.

None of the female plants had any indication of annulation of the thallus. In some of the specimens the carpogonial branch was observed; it was rather curved, much more than those found in West Indian specimens, compare my figures, 1915, figs. 72 and 75 b.

As appears from the above, the specimens I think are referable to this species have rather a variable appearance, so different that one may have a doubt as to their relationship. In this connection I want to make reference to an utterance by the well-known expert on the West Indian algal flora M. A. Howe, who in his algal flora of the Bahama Islands (1920, p. 555) about this species points out that it is extremely variable as to size and habit, annulations, compactness of the cortex, in the subparallel or subumbellate disposition of the distal branches of the assimilating filaments, in the form and size of peripheral cells and so on, and points out that surf-beaten plants form rigid brittle cushions, while those growing in more protected places are laxer, less calcified and more flexible. But in spite of all these variations Howe states that "specific segregations seem to be impracticable".

According to Zanardini's description and figures of *Liagora rugosa* Zan. (Plant. Mar. Rubr., 1858, p. 65, Pl. IV, fig. 2), it cannot be denied that the above-mentioned specimens from Mauritius agree very closely with Zanardini's species, but I have not been able to examine any authentic specimen of Zanardini's plant. Dr. Joseph De Toni has most kindly according to my wish made a search for a typical specimen but in vain. But if the small fragments, upon which I in Part III, 1, 1942, p. 30, fig. 14, based the determination, are rightly referred to Zanardini's species, then the antheridial bodies, as is seen from my figure, are quite different from those in the present plant. Until a comparative examination of female specimens of both species may bring forward some distinctive characters in their structure, the problem must wait for its solution. To base the determination upon the shape of the cells in the assimilating filaments is not an easy task as the shape of the cells varies much in the different specimens and in the younger and older parts of the thallus.

In Part III, 1, 1942, p. 37, I have referred a few small specimens to *Liagora fragilis* Zan., l. c., 1858, p. 64, Pl. V, fig. 2. Having now found *Liagora valida* in Mauritius, and after reexamination of the above-mentioned specimens referred to *L. fragilis*, I am convinced that these specimens should be referred to *Liagora valida* and that upon the whole this most probably also applies to the species of Zanardini, but to make sure an examination of Zanardini's specimens is of course necessary. As said in the description of the specimens from Mauritius, and this refers especially to one of these (no. 818, leg. Th. Mortensen), the chalk-incrustation is rather weak in the upper parts of the thallus, and just the same is also pointed out by Zanardini in his description and seen in his figure. That *Liagora fragilis* Zan. most probably is referable to *L. valida* has already been suggested by Howe, who in "The Bahama Flora", Algae, p. 555 writes: "Certain conditions of the species (*L. valida*) appear to be close to *L. fragilis* (Forssk.?) Zanard. and *L. rugosa* Zan. with which they may need further comparisons." The reason why Howe writes so is that Zanardini believed that *Fucus fragilis* Forssk. was the same as his *Liagora fragilis*. As I have stated in the "Revision of Forsskål's Algae", 1932, p. 6, *Fucus fragilis* Forssk. is no *Liagora*, but *Actinotrichia rigida* (Lamx.) Decsne or, as its name ought to be, *A. fragilis* (Forssk.) Børgs.

Mauritius: Pte aux Roches, "Growing near reef", Nov. 17, 1947 R. E. V. no. 756. Ilot Barkly, March 10, 1948, G. Morin no. 857. Ilot Barkly, "In two feet of water", April 24, 1948, G. Morin no. 810. nos. 447 and 450 without localities and dates presented by Father C. Negroles.

Geogr. Distr.: West Indies, Madagascar, Hawaii.

2. Liagora Jadinii Børgs.

Børgesen, F., Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 29, fig. 13. — *Liagora galaxauroides* Dickie, Algae of Mauritius, 1875, p. 195, according to a specimen in the Kew Herbarium.

A specimen determined as above-named by Dickie is found in the Herbarium of Kew (Fig. 13). An examination of the structure of this specimen has shown that it is the same species as that which I in 1942 described as a new species, giving it the above-mentioned name after the late Dr. Jadin, who not only has examined the flora of Mauritius personally but also published a paper on the algal flora of Mauritius and Réunion.

The reason why it seems to me justifiable to reject DIÇKIE's name, is that his very short description of this species, and this also applies to the other "new" species of *Liagora* mentioned in his paper, is so insignificant, none of the characteristic features of the species being named in his quite short diagnosis, that in reality any species of *Liagora* may be referred to it. And in my opi-

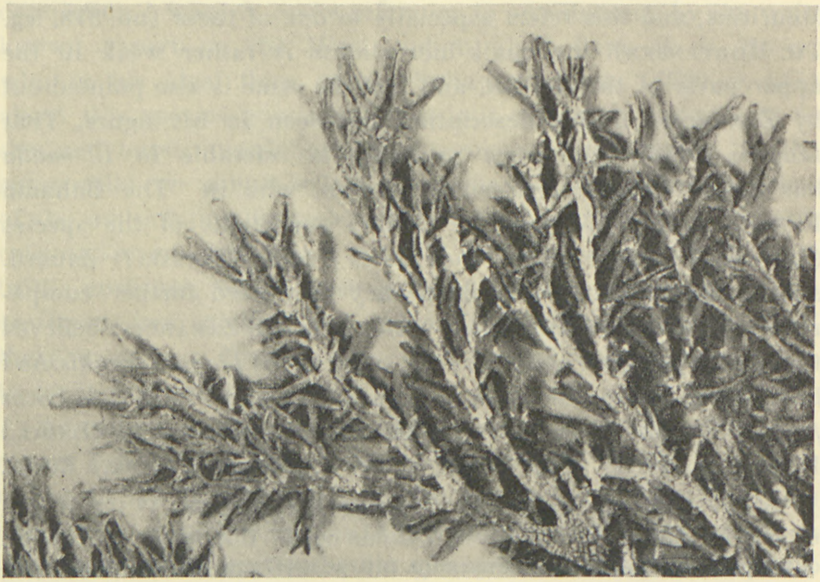


Fig. 14. *Liagora Jadinii* Børgs. Fragment of the thallus. (× 3).

nion a search to account for the specific name of "*galaxauroides*" is likewise fruitless.

In continuation of my former description derived from a single rather fragmentary specimen most probably cast ashore, I shall give some additional remarks on this characteristic and beautiful plant.

The specimen forms a much ramified, ca. 7 cm high tuft. From the basal disc several vigorous main branches issue which near the base are about $1\frac{1}{2}$ mm broad in a dried condition and somewhat shrivelled. The main branches are recognizable through the whole thallus and give out side branches with branchlets on all sides which are upwards directed, issuing at acute angles. Because of this ramification the thallus when dried gets a feather-like appearance.

The colour of the thallus is red because the long clavate apical cells of the assimilating filaments protrude above the chalk incrustation (Fig. 15 c); farther down in the older parts of the thallus; these die away, and the whitish chalk incrustation is seen.

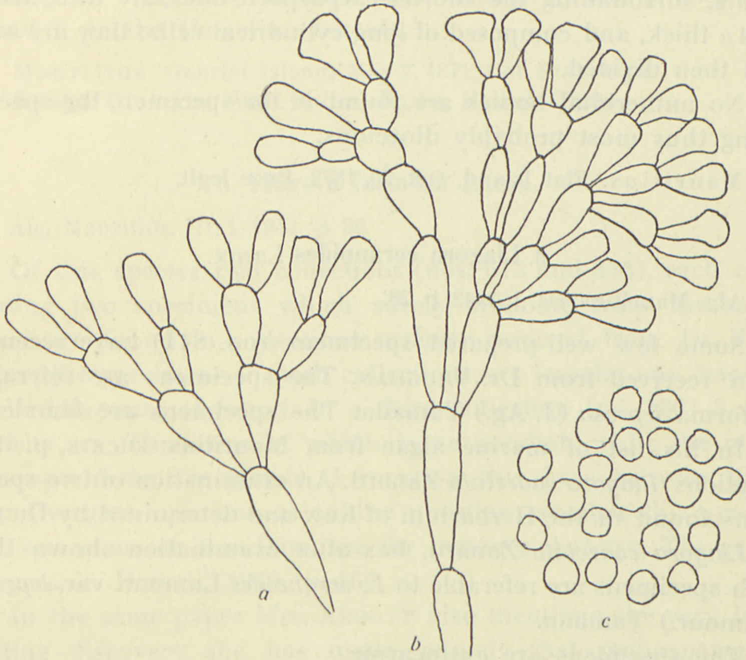


Fig. 15. *Liagora Jadinii* Børgs. *a*, *b*, assimilating filaments. *c*, apical cells of assimilating filaments seen from above. (× 1000).

The surface of the thallus is a little gritty and here and there annulated.

As to the structure of the plant the medullary tissue is composed of ramified filaments of varying thickness from about 15—40 μ. From these filaments the assimilating filaments issue; these (Figs. 15 a, b) are about 170 μ long with long cells below, shorter above, and repeatedly dichotomously divided. The apical cells are elongated clavate when young, becoming more or less broadened out when older. Fig. 15 c shows the apical tips above the chalk incrustation, occasionally they become polygonal by mutual pressure. The apical cells may reach a length of up to 25 μ and a breadth of 12 μ.

The specimen is female. I have been unable to find any carpogonial branch in the specimen, but this is pictured in my former paper, p. 30, fig. 13. The gonimoblasts are semiglobose, up to about 270 μ broad. The long sterile assimilating filaments, surrounding the shorter carposporic ones, are thin, about 3—4 μ thick, and composed of long cylindrical cells; they are now and then divided.

No antheridial bodies are found in the specimen, the species being thus most probably dioecious.

Mauritius: Flat Island, Oct. 20, 1872. Pike legit.

3. Liagora ceranoides Lamx.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 28.

Some few well-prepared specimens (no. 844) have recently been received from Dr. Vaughan. The specimens are referable to forma *leprosa* (J. Ag.) Yamada. The specimens are female.

In his list of marine algae from Mauritius Dickie, p. 195, mentions *Liagora coarctata* Zanard. An examination of two specimens found in the Herbarium of Kew and determined by Dickie as *Liagora coarctata* Zanard. has after examination shown that both specimens are referable to *L. ceranoides* Lamour. var. *leprosa* (Lamour.) Yamada.

The specimens are cystocarpic.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, March 25, 1948. G. Morin no. 844. Barkly Island, Jan. 17, 1870. Pike legit.

4. Liagora pinnata Harv.

Harvey, W. H., Nereis Bor.-Americ., II, 1853, p. 138. Agardh, J., Epicrisis, 1876, p. 517. Børgesen, F., Mar. Alg. D. W. I., 1915, p. 74, figs. 76—81. Yamada, Y., The Species of Liagora from Japan, 1938, p. 27, figs. 17—18, Pl. XI. — *Liagora obtusa* Dickie, On the Algae of Mauritius, 1875, p. 195.

Two specimens are found in the Herbarium of Kew named by Dickie *Liagora obtusa* nov. spec. Both specimens are surely referable to *L. pinnata* Harv., even if the structure is much shrivelled; but the characteristic shape of the assimilating filaments was observable. The specimens are cystocarpic; I have been unable to find any of the carpogonial branches.

The habit of the specimens agrees quite well with West Indian ones.

This species, being originally known only from the West Indies, has some few years ago been found in Japan by Yamada 1928, p. 29 and more recently Mrs. ABBOTT (1945, p. 168) has found it in the Hawaiian Islands.

Mauritius: Gabriel Island, May 2, 1871, Col. PIKE legit.
Geogr. Distrib.: West Indies, Japan, Havaii, China.

5. Liagora farinosa Lamx.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 36.

Of this species two collections (nos. 673 and 856), each containing two specimens which surely originate from the same plant are found in collections recently received from Dr. VAUGHAN; the specimens in both collections are female; any trace of antheridia was not found. In a third collection (no. 780) 3 specimens are found one of which is antheridial, while the other two specimens are female. I mention this here because there are divergent opinions as to the question whether this species is monoecious or dioecious; see for instance ABBOTT, The genus *Liagora* in Hawaii, 1945, p. 166.

In the same paper Mrs. ABBOTT also mentions the very interesting discovery she has made, namely that monosporangia develop in the apical cells of the assimilating filaments; compare her figures 14 c and d. This observation I have been able to check in material preserved in formol and seawater quite recently received from Mauritius.

The occurrence of monosporangia in this species is also of distinct interest because *Liagora farinosa* is one of the species in which occur the small peculiar endophytic bodies, as I presume they are, (compare Mar. Alg. D. W. I., 1920, pp. 455—8, fig. 421, and Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 34, fig. 17), while M. A. HOWE was of opinion that they belonged to *Liagora* itself being "monosporangial discs" of this genus (see HOWE, M. A., Observations on Monosporangial Discs in the Genus *Liagora* in Bullet. Torrey Bot. Club, 47, 1920. The fact that monosporangia develop in the above-mentioned manner in this genus, in conformity with what takes place in *Scinaia* according to SVEDELIUS, seems to me to go to show that these small peculiar bodies, as was my opinion, have no organic connection with the host plant, but are facultative endophytes.

I have not found the apical hairs issuing from the tips of the assimilating filaments in West Indian (BØRGESEN, 1915, p. 68, fig. 68a) as well as in Canarian specimens (BØRGESEN, 1927, p. 61, fig. 33a) in the specimens from Mauritius.

In his list (1875, p. 195) DICKIE mentions *Liagora pulverulenta* Ag. Two specimens in the Herbarium of Kew determined by DICKIE as *L. pulverulenta* Ag.? have after examination turned out to be *Liagora farinosa* Lamour. One of the specimens is female, the other seems to be sterile.

Then *Liagora lurida* Dickie (l. c.), of which a specimen is found in the Kew Herbarium, is likewise *Liagora farinosa*. This has previously been stated by HOWE (1920, p. 555) and later by YAMADA (1938, p. 24).[1] Of this plant, being rather deviating from the typical form, YAMADA in his paper Notes on *Liagora* (1938, in Japanese, not received from the author until Dec. 1948) gives an illustration from a specimen preserved in the British Museum, London. It shows a plant with 3—4 or even longer terminal, not ramified branches, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ mm thick, spreading out in all directions and tapering upwards to acute apices. A specimen in the Kew Herbarium determined by DICKIE as *L. lurida*? is somewhat more similar to the ordinary form. Because of its rather deviating appearance and also because the assimilating filaments are somewhat broader than those in the typical one, this form perhaps ought to be kept as a special forma *lurida* Dickie. In the material I have received from Mauritius I have not yet met with it.

And finally DICKIE in his list has described as a new species *Liagora crassa*, of which a specimen likewise is found in the Kew Herbarium; as already mentioned by HOWE (l. c.) and YA-

[1] Being unable during the War to see the specimens of *Liagora* determined by DICKIE and preserved in the Kew Herbarium I, because of the specific name of DICKIE's species and the very short and in part quite misleading diagnosis in which for instance is said: "crusta calcarea fere nulla", came to the supposition that a specimen received from Mauritius and collected by PIKE was this species; see Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 40, Pl. I. Having now been able to see the specimens in the Kew Herbarium, I find that the one I received from Mauritius, is clearly another plant; because of its poor condition it has not yet been determined.

MADA (l. c.), this species is likewise referable to *L. farinosa*. The specimen is rather fragmentary, bleached and flabby, and has most probably been cast ashore. The filaments are about ¾ mm thick, the internodes are short and the upper ramula curved. An examination of the structure shows that the assimilating filaments are short with short and very thick cells about 28 μ. But as to the possibility of considering it as a special form, more and better material is necessary.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkley, May 10th, 1948, G. MORIN no. 856. Pointe aux Sables, April 2, 1947, G. MORIN no. 673. Port Louis, "In Lagoon near Fort George", March 2, 1948, G. MORIN no. 780.

The above-mentioned specimens referred by DICKIE to *Liagora pulverulenta* and *L. lurida*, respectively, are from Cannonier's Point, May 6, 1871, and collected by PIKE, and *Liagora crassa* Dickie is from Flat Island, May 12, 1871, PIKE legit.

Galaxaura Lamouroux.

Sectio 1. ***Subverticillatae*** Chou.

(*Rhodura* Kjellm.)

1. Galaxaura mauritiana nov. spec.

Thallus ad substratum disco adfixus, ca. 5—6 cm altus, fruticosus, teres, villosus, filis assimilatoribus sparsis aut plus minus indistincte in verticillas dispositis praeditus, ramosus et articulatus.

Rami ca. 1½ mm lati, irregulariter di—trichotome divisi, internodiis 4—8 mm longis.

Medulla e filis, ca. 8—12 μ latis, irregulariter intertextis, sine aut versus exteriorem partem sparse incrustatione calcis intermixtis formata.

Tela peripherica e calce uberiore incrustata, e filis assimilatoriis duplicis generis, elongatis et curtis, composita; cellulis sustinentibus filorum plus minus bene evolutis, interdum destitutis.

Fila elongata ca. 1 mm longa, simplicia aut raro ramosa, e cellulis basalibus late oblongis, ca. 50—90 μ longis et 30—50 μ latis, dein e cellulis cylindricis ca. 20 μ latis et 38 μ longis composita.

Fila curta e cellulis binis, ternis vel quaternis formata, cellulis basalibus majoribus, oblongis ca. 40—70 μ longis et 35—45 μ latis, versus apicem cellulis sequentibus attenuatis et minoribus cellulis apicalibus subglobosis aut elongatis ca. 25 μ latis formata.

Mauritius: Cassis, Febr. 2, 1946, leg. G. Morin no. 528. Trou d'Eau Douce, March 22, 1947, R. E. V. no. 668. Pointe d'Esny, Aug. 17, 1907, R. E. V. no. 718. The specimens in the Kew Herbarium are from Flat Island, May 12, 1861. Pike legit.

Some specimens of *Galaxaura* recently received from Mauritius are referable to the section *Rhodura* Kjellm. or the *Subverticillatae*, the name Mrs. Chou (1945, p. 57) has proposed for this section. Three different gatherings are present, each containing 1—3 specimens. As to their habit they are all rather alike, having a dark reddish-brown colour. They are all irregularly furcated and the whole thallus is densely covered with assimilating filaments. Collection no. 718 contains 3 specimens; these differ somewhat from the other two by being a little slender with somewhat denser ramification and of a little darker colour than these of the two remaining collections, of which no. 528 contains a single specimen only and no. 668 two specimens. The number of specimens is of course small, for a decision of the question of their pertaining together or not, but since their anatomical structure has been found to be very alike, I think they are referable to the same species.

The thallus in the specimens is 5—7 cm high, attached to the substratum by a disc; it is evenly villous, irregularly subdichotomously divided with internodes of varying length from $\frac{1}{2}$—1 mm. The long assimilating filaments are evenly distributed over the surface of the thallus, in places with a tendency to become subverticillate. They have a length of about 1 mm or a little more and a breadth of 18—20 μ with cells about 38 μ long. The filaments in most cases are undivided; in no. 528 a good number were divided.

The supporting cells,[1] in the long as well as in the short assimilating filaments are of very variable shape (Fig. 16), sometimes irregularly polygonal, sometimes roundish, sometimes nearly wanting; the tumid basal cell is about 57—76 μ long and 46—53 μ broad. The cell above the tumid basal cell in the long assimilating filaments is a little inflated and a little shorter than the following cylindrical ones.

[1] As to the terminology compare Mrs. Chou, 1945, p. 38, fig. 1.

The short assimilating filaments (Fig. 16b, c, e, f, g, h) are dispersed among the long ones, but in a smaller number. They are composed of 2—4 cells; those with 3 cells being the commonest, but those with 4 cells are not rare, those with 2 cells rarest. In the 4-celled filaments the apical cell is subglobose about 20 μ long and broad, the subapical cell is a little broader and especially longer, the following cell yet more lengthened, the length of the whole

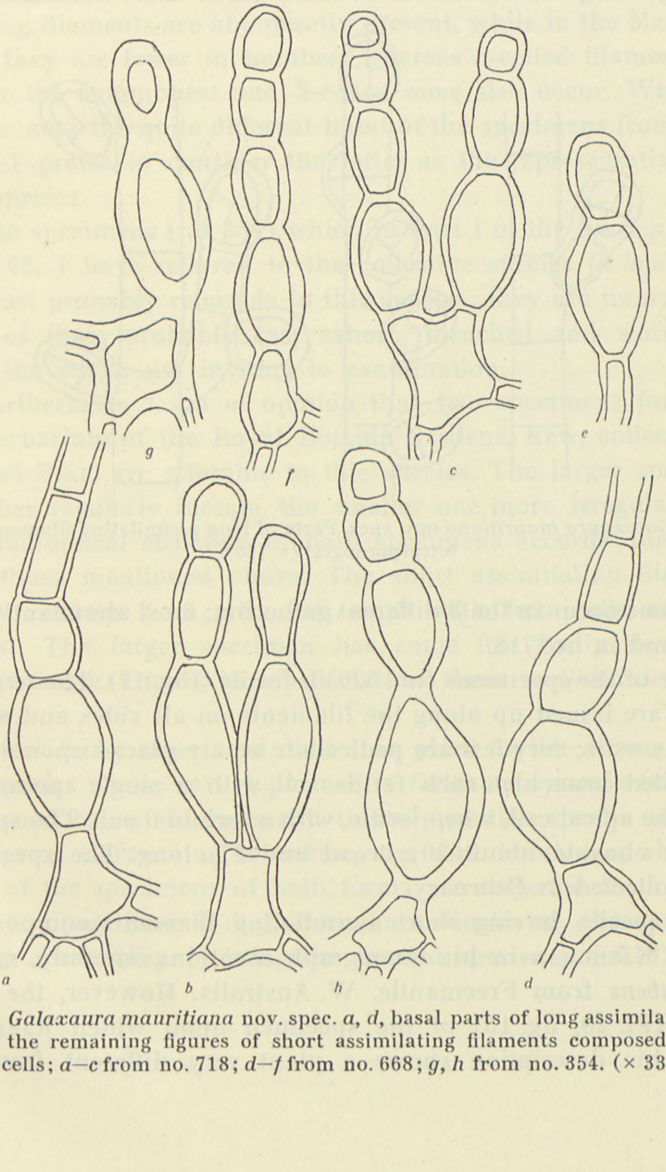


Fig. 16. *Galaxaura mauritiana* nov. spec. *a*, *d*, basal parts of long assimilating filaments; the remaining figures of short assimilating filaments composed of 2–4 cells; *a–c* from no. 718; *d–f* from no. 668; *g*, *h* from no. 354. (× 330).

filament reaching up to about 150μ. In the 3-celled short filaments the cells are in most cases much elongated, the whole filament reaching about the same length as that of the 4-celled ones. And in the case of the filaments with 2 cells only the cells become yet more lengthened, the filament reaching a length of up to 140μ. Compare for instance Fig. 16b in which the basal cell is 90μ long and the apical one 49μ.

Regarding the occurrence of the 4-celled short filaments some

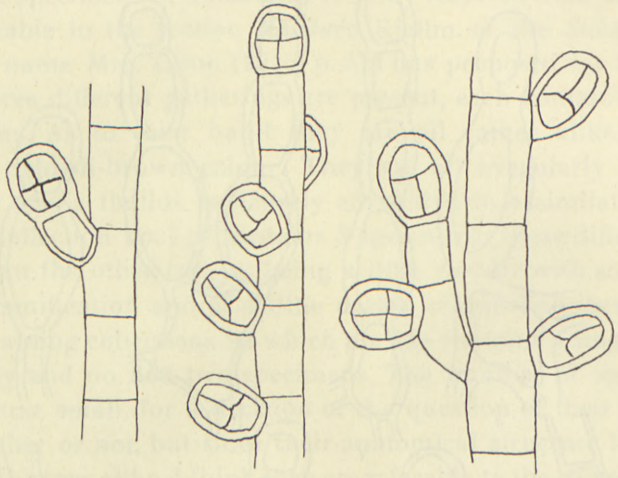


Fig. 17. *Galaxaura mauritiana* nov. spec. Parts of long assimilating filaments with tetrasporangia. (× 450).

variations occur in the 3 different gathering; most abundantly they are found in no. 718.

One of the specimens (no. 528) is fertile (Fig. 17). The tetrasporangia are issued up along the filaments on all sides and almost all are sessile; very few are pedicellate or are placed upon a short two-celled branchlet, each fertile cell with a single sporangium only; the apical cell, when fertile, with a terminal one. The sporangia are obovate, about 20μ broad and 27μ long. The specimens were collected in February.

Of species having short assimilating filaments composed of 4 cells Kjellman in his monograph mentions one only, namely *G. collabens* from Freemantle, W. Australia. However, the habit figure (Pl. 20, fig. 15) of the specimen upon which Kjellman based his description shows a plant very different from the specimens from Mauritius. We have here in the Botanical Museum a specimen of HARVEY's Alg. Austral. no. 350 from Freemantle, W. Austral., from which locality KJELLMAN's species originates. This specimen as to habit is quite like KJELLMAN's figure, showing a plant with extended branches with long internodes and more or less distant ramification, thus differing very much from the plant from Mauritius. Furthermore an examination of the Australian plant brings out that the 4-celled short assimilating filaments are abundantly present, while in the Mauritian plant they are fewer in number, whereas 3-celled filaments are by far the commonest and 2-celled ones also occur. When we further note the quite different habit of the specimens from Mauritius I prefer to consider the latter as the representative of a new species.

The specimens (no. 354) which in Part I of the *Rhodophyceae*, 1942, 46, I have referred to the collective species *G. lapidescens* are most probably referable to this species; they are unprepared, most of them probably cast ashore, bleached and worn, and upon the whole not inviting to examination.

Furthermore I am of opinion that two specimens found in the herbarium of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, collected by Colonel PIKE, are referable to this species. The larger specimen is rather regularly furcate, the smaller one more irregularly so. The anatomical structure of both specimens accords quite well with those mentioned above. The short assimilating filaments mostly contain 2—3 cells, but some with four cells are also present. The larger specimen has some few badly developed tetrasporangia. DICKIE in his list refers them to *Galaxaura lapidescens*.

I feel fairly convinced that this plant is the asexual form of a species whose sexual partner is *Galaxaura rugosa* (no. 720) mentioned below. In favour of this supposition speaks not only their great likeness as to colour, size and habit, but also that some of the specimens of both forms are collected in the same locality. Upon Plate II both forms are illustrated, the specimen figured above (Fig. 1) being the present species (no. 718).

Sectio 2. Squalidae Chou

(*Microthoë* Kjellm.).

2. Galaxaura rugosa (Solander) Lamour.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 48.

Some more material referable to this polymorphic species has recently been received from Dr. Vaughan.

Some of the specimens (no. 702) form dense bushes about 5—6 cm high; their colour is dark reddish-brown. They are repeatedly but irregularly furcate, above more or less umbellate. The upper parts of the thallus is glabrous and very clearly annulate, in a dried condition being much collapsed. Further down in the thallus, where the lime incrustation is more vigorous, the branches do not collapse; here more or less annularly arranged assimilating filaments cover the thallus rather densely. The thallus is about $1\frac{1}{4}$ mm thick.

As compared with West Indian specimens of *Galaxaura rugosa* the thallus in the plant from Mauritius is a little thicker and the annulation of the thallus perhaps somewhat more vigorous; but most different is the colour, which in West Indian specimens in most cases is a dirty greyish-green.

And when compared with a fragment of a specimen from the Philippines which Mrs. Chou (1947, p. 13, pl. IV, figs. 11—13 and pl. X, fig. 2) refers to *Galaxaura rugosa* and of which Professor W. Randolph Taylor most kindly has sent a fragment to me, its likeness to the Mauritian specimens, having likewise a vigorously annulated thallus, is very striking. As to the species of the group *Microthoë* (or *Squalidae* as Mrs. Ruth Chou proposes this group of Kjellman to be named) enumerated by Tanaka in his paper on The Japanese Galaxaura, the plant from Mauritius seem to come nearest to *G. cuculligera* Kjellm., [1] but this is densely villous below, which the plant from Mauritius is not.

[1] Mrs. Chou (1947, p. 10) having examined a great number of specimens of related forms does not adopt this species, as according to her the cucullate condition is due to external conditions; she refers her specimens to *G. squalida*.

The specimens are female. These specimens according to my view are to be considered the sexual form of *Galaxaura mauritiana* mentioned above. As stated there, I base my opinion not only upon their habit, size, and colour, which are all much the same as in *G. mauritiana*, but some of the specimens were also gathered in the same locality. The plant was "growing on sand flats exposed at low tide".

A specimen of this form (no. 702) is illustrated in Plate II, fig. 2, together with its supposed asexual partner, fig. 1.

Another specimen (no. 541) is also referable to this polymorphous species. Two fragments are found, both originating from the same plant. The thallus of this specimen is bigger and the branches broader, at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ mm, reaching a little more than 2 mm in a pressed condition. Its colour is greyish with a reddish tinge. It is clearly annulate in the younger parts of the thallus, less or not at all in the older ones. The thallus is glabrous in the young parts and in the parts below, while the middle is covered by short assimilating filaments. It is thus rather different from the above-mentioned form and most probably the sexual partner of another form or species, the asexual representative being as yet unknown.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Cannoniers, Febr. 16, 1946, R. E. V. no. 541. Pointe d'Esny, Aug. 18, 1947. R. E. V. no. 702.

Sectio 3. ***Oblongatae*** Chou.

(*Eugalaxaura* Kjellm.).

3. Galaxaura oblongata (Ellis et Sol.) Lamx.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 49.

In some collections recently received from Dr. Vaughan a few well-prepared specimens (nos. 579, 689, 827) of this species are contained. These specimens as to their habit, size, and ramification are all in good conformity with the specimens of this species I have collected at the Canary Islands and with specimens from the West Indies which the late Dr. Howe has presented to me. But they are also as to habit in good agreement with some few specimens of *Galaxaura fastigiata* Decsne which Dr. TANAKA has presented to me; this species, if it is to be kept separate from *C. oblongata* at all, was originally described upon specimens from the Philippines and is common for instance in the warmer parts of Japan according to TANAKA, The Genus *Galaxaura* from Japan, 1937, p. 157.

Professor SVEDELIUS some years ago when working at his material of *Galaxaura* from Ceylon, sent a specimen of his collection to me asking for my opinion about it, and after a comparison with specimens of *G. oblongata* in my herbarium I came to the result that it was referable to this species. Meanwhile SVEDELIUS in his important paper Critical Notes on some species of *Galaxaura* from Ceylon, 1945, p. 39 maintains *G. fastigiata* as a species, referring the above-mentioned specimen to this species.

SVEDELIUS bases his construction essentially upon anatomical characters, viz. the different way in which the lime incrustation is carried out, having examined not only his own material from Ceylon, but also the material found in the herbaria of Uppsala, Stockholm, and Lund. As to the species in question and related forms he distinguishes a "*Galaxaura fastigiata*-type" with strong calcification in the assimilating tissue only, and a "*G. oblongata*-type" with less calcification in the assimilating tissue and close to this a calcified zone of varying strength in the medulla.

An examination of the three specimens recently received from Mauritius has brought out that in two of these, nos. 519 and 827, some chalk incrustation was present also inside the peripheral layer, while in no. 689 no lime incrustation was found in the medulla, this latter specimen thus in this respect being in agreement with the *fastigiata*-type. Most regrettably any more exact statement about the external surroundings in which the specimens from Mauritius were found is not given, and as these, according to my experience, highly influence the development of the lime incrustation, it would have been of much interest to know if no. 689 was found in a locality in which the external conditions were different from those in which the other two specimens occurred. It admits of no doubt whatever that the lime incrustation is greater in specimens growing in exposed and sunny localities and less in sheltered and shaded places.[1] As, further, the extent of chalk incrustation is different in younger and older parts of the thallus, the use of the lime incrustation as a specific character may be difficult to rely on.

As said above, SVEDELIUS based his examinations upon his own collections and upon specimens found in the herbaria. SVEDELIUS collected the specimens which he referred to *G. fastigiata* only in one locality in Ceylon and describes this in the following way (l. c., p. 28): The specimens "formed hemispherical balls" .... "They were either lying loose or slightly attached to the rather soft bottom of sand and coral-mud." Such a locality for *Galaxaura oblongata* (or related forms), which is a plant growing on rocks in exposed places, must surely highly influence the habit and structure of the specimens, these most probably being detached specimens afterwards cast ashore and gathered in a sheltered place. How short or long they have stayed there, we do not know, but it cannot be doubted that the structure of the specimens and in connection with this the chalk-incrustation is gradually changed.

According to my view it is no wonder that the chalk incrustation is less here and has not entered the medulla. Otherwise SVEDELIUS bases his observations upon specimens preserved in herbaria, where in most cases no observations about the localities are found.

While TANAKA in his valuable paper (1936, p. 157) on the Japanese species of *Galaxaura* does not enter upon a comparison between *G. fastigiata* and *G. oblongata*, referring without discussion the Japanese specimens of this group to the first-mentioned species, Mrs. RUTH CHOU in her elaborate paper of 1947, p. 7, refers her large collection of specimens of this species to *G. oblongata*. Mrs. CHOU bases her thorough examination upon a very large collection originating from the Philippines and a great many localities in the Pacific and arrives at the result that the specimens in her collection are referable to *G. oblongata* in spite of the fact that the Philippine Islands are the type region of *G. fastigiata*.

But she adds that *G. oblongata* as interpreted by her "may in future turn out to be a species complex, embracing the sexual phases of more than one species or perhaps the species of a

[1] Compare what is said (p. 28 in this paper) about *Liagora valida* regarding the chalk incrustation in this species.

distinct genus or subgenus with several haplobiontic species", and she adds "that at present it is not possible to segregate them".

It is a great pity that Mrs. CHOU's and Professor SVEDELIUS's papers appeared at about the same time, so Mrs. CHOU has been unable to benefit by the observations of SVEDELIUS, when working out her large collections of *Galaxaura*.

Mauritius: Gris-Gris near Souillac, 20. June 1946, R.E.V. no. 579. Pointe aux Roches, 3 May 1947, "upon reef", R.E.V. no. 689. Ilot Barkly, 24 March, 1948, "in shallow water" R.E.V. no. 827.

Galaxaura pilifera Kjellm.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 51, fig. 23.

From Dr. VAUGHAN I have received a single but well-prepared specimen of this species of which I formerly have seen only a bleached specimen, most probably cast ashore. It forms a rather loose, roundish tuft reaching a height of about 10 cm. The ramification is repeatedly subdichotome, giving the branch-systems a marked umbellate appearance. Fig. 23 l. c. does not show this quite well. The thallus is rather soft and fragile because of the less chalk-incrustation, most of the joints being longitudinally shrivelled with the exception of the basal ones. The colour is a greyish yellow-green. The joints not shrivelled are about $1\frac{1}{4}$—$1\frac{1}{2}$ mm broad. The upper joints are rather clearly annulately constricted.

Neither in this specimen I have been able to find any assimilating filaments, which KJELLMAN alludes to not only in the specific name, but also mentions in his description and pictures. SVEDELIUS (1945, p. 46), having examined the type specimen of KJELLMAN collected by PIKE at Barkley Island, Mauritius, did not find any assimilating filaments in the specimen either. The statement of their presence in this species must therefore be presumed to be due to a mistake.

According to SVEDELIUS this species completely resembles *G. constipata* Kjellm. from Vera Cruz. I have not seen any specimens of this species. KJELLMAN himself compares it with *G. cylindrica* (Sol.) Kjellm. to which species *G. pilifera* also shows much likeness, having nearly the same ramification and colour, but the thallus of *G. cylindrica* is slender, the ramification denser and the filaments do not shrivel so much as is the case in *G. pilifera*.

Svedelius refers this species to *G. fastigiata* Decsne because of the lime incrustation being restricted to the assimilating tissue. I prefer to leave it as a separate species; when it is compared with specimens of *C. fastigiata* from Japan received from Dr. Tanaka, these are in all respects smaller, the joints about 1—1¼ mm broad, and the thallus, being strongly calcified, does not shrivel so much.

The specimen is a female one.

Mauritius: Ilot Barkley, Oct. 10, 1945, G. Morin no. 663.

Sectio 4. ***Vepreculae*** Kjellman.

Galaxaura veprecula Kjellm.

Kjellman, F. R., Floridé-Slægtet Galaxaura, p. 80. Chou, R., Pacific species of Galaxaura, II, Sexual Types, 1945, p. 16, pl. 6, figs. 1—8; pl. 12, fig. 1.

In Part III, Rhodophyceae 1, 1942 of this publication, p. 51—58, when making suggestions of the supposed mutual connection of the asexual and sexual forms of the species found in Mauritius, I inquired (l. c., p. 58) after the sexual component to the tetrasporic *Galaxaura tenera* Kjellm. already found in Mauritius (l. c., p. 52). This has now been found as a single specimen in the Herbarium of Kew, being referable to *Galaxaura veprecula* Kjellm. must be supposed to be the sexual form of *G. tenera.*

The specimen was by Dickie (1875, p. 195) determined as *G. canaliculata* Kütz.

As to the anatomical structure of the specimen, it agrees quite well with the description of Kjellman, the West Indian plant I called *G. occidentalis* (1916, p. 109), and with Mrs. Chou's description.

As far as I have seen the specimen is sterile.

Mauritius: Without locality, Aug. 1878, Pike legit (Herb. Kew).
Geogr. Distr.: Madagascar, Philippine Islands.

List of Literature.

Additions to the lists in former parts.

ABBOTT, ISABELLA, The Genus Liagora (Rhodophyceae) in Hawaii. Occasional Papers of Bernice P. Bishop Museum. Honolulu, Hawaii. Vol. XVIII, No. 10, 1945.

AGARDH, J., Novae Species Algarum, quas in itinere ad oras maris rubri collegit EDUARDUS RÜPPELL. Museum Senckenbergianum. Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiete der beschreibenden Naturgeschichte. II Bd. Frankfurt am Main, 1837.

BØRGESEN, F., Some Chlorophyceae from the Danish West Indies. Botanisk Tidsskrift, vol. 31. København, 1911.

CHOU, RUTH CHENG-YING, Pacific Species of Galaxaura I. Asexual Types. II Sexual Types. Papers from the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts and Letters, vol. XXX, 1944, published 1945; vol. XXXI, 1945, published 1947.

EUBANK, LOIS L., Hawaiian Representatives of the Genus Caulerpa. University of California Publications in Botany, vol. 18, no. 18. Berkeley and Los Angeles 1946.

GILBERT, W. J., Notes on Caulerpa from Java and the Philippines. Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts and Letters, vol. XXVII, 1941. Published 1942.

MONTAGNE, C., Plantes cellulaires. D'Urville, Dumont, J., Voyage au Pole Sud et dans l'Océanie. Botanique. Tome 1. Paris 1845.

OKAMURA, K., On the Algae from Ogasawara-jima (Bonin Islands). Botanical Magazine, Tokyo, vol. XI. Tokyo 1897.

PAPENFUSS, G., Notes on Algal Nomenclature. III. Miscellaneous Species of Chlorophyceae, Phaeophyceae and Rhodophyceae. Farlowia, I. 1944.

REINBOLD, TH., Marine Algae in JOHS. SCHMIDT, Flora of Koh Chang. Botanisk Tidsskrift, vol. 24. Copenhagen 1901.

REINKE, J., Ueber Caulerpa. Ein Beitrag zur Biologie der Meeres-Organismen. Wissenschaftliche Meeresuntersuchungen. Abteilung Kiel. Neue Folge, Bd. 5, Heft 1. Kiel 1899.

SVEDELIUS, NIELS, Critical Notes on Some Species of Galaxaura from Ceylon. Arkiv för Botanik. Bd. 32 a, no. 6. Stockholm 1945.

TANAKA, T., The Genus Galaxaura from Japan. Scientific Papers of the Institute of Algological Research of the Hokkaido Imp. Univ., Vol. 1, No. 2, 1936.

TAYLOR, WM. RANDOLPH, Notes on Algae from the Tropical Atlantic Ocean. II. Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts and Letters, Vol. XVII, Published 1933.

TSENG, C. K., Studies in the Chinese Species of *Liagora*. Bulletin of the Fan Memorial Institute of Biology. Bot. Series. X, no. 5, 1941.

TSENG, C. K. and WM. J. GILBERT, On New Algae of the Genus *Codium* from the South China Sea. Journ. of the Washington Academy of Sciences, Vol. 32, no. 10, 1942.

YAMADA, Y., Notes on *Liagora*. The Journal of Japanese Botany. Vol. XIII—XIV. Tokyo 1937—1938.

— The Marine Chlorophyceae from Ryukyu, especially from the Vicinity of Nawa. Journ. of the Faculty of Science, The Hokkaido Imperial University, Series V, vol. III. no. 2. Sapporo 1934.

INDEX OF SPECIES

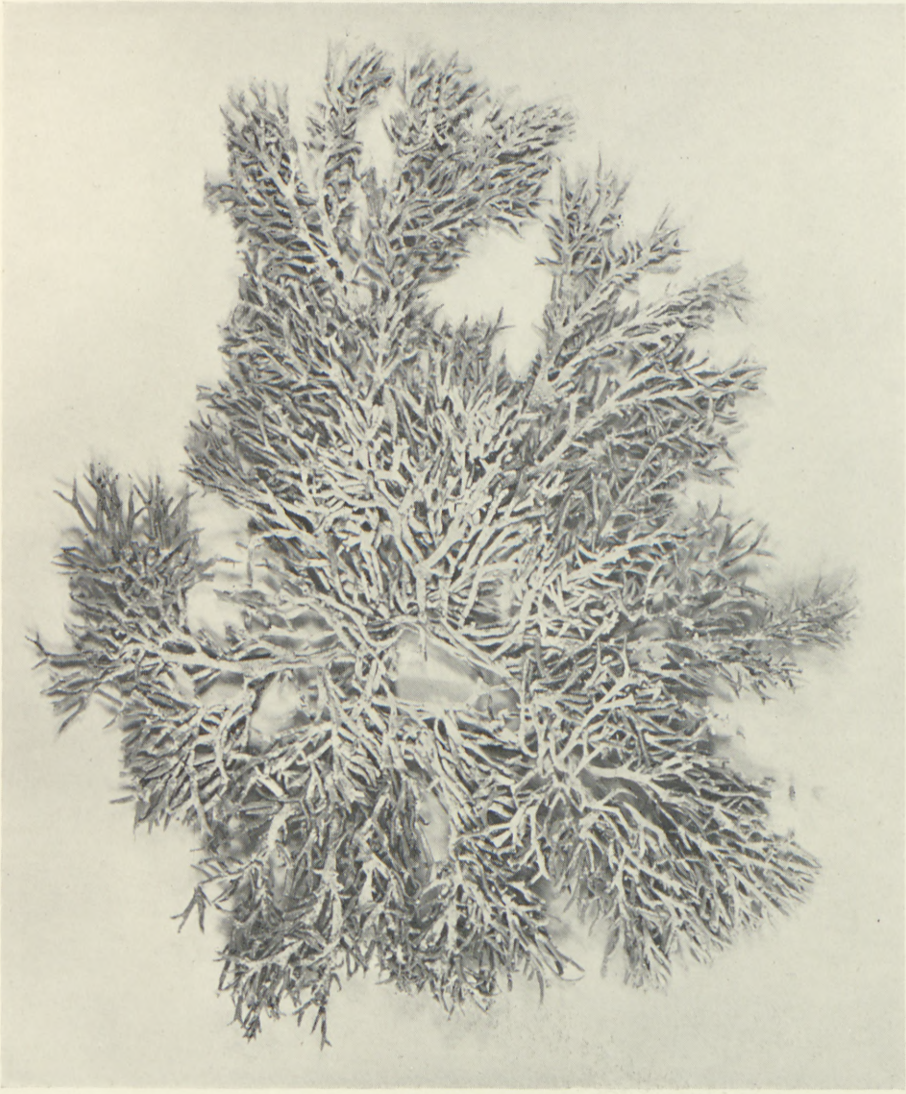
together with some essential synonyms, the latter being printed in italics.

Chlorophyceae

Phaeophyceae

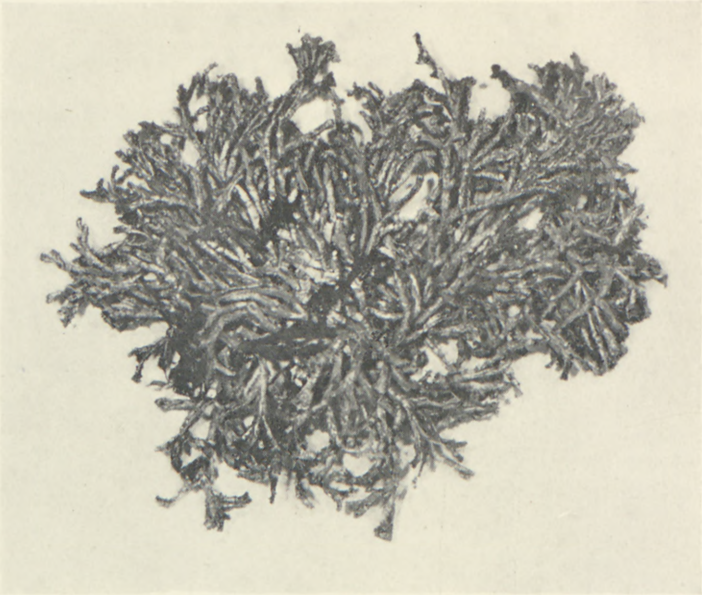
Rhodophyceae

Indleveret til selskabet den 9. marts 1949.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 6. august 1949.

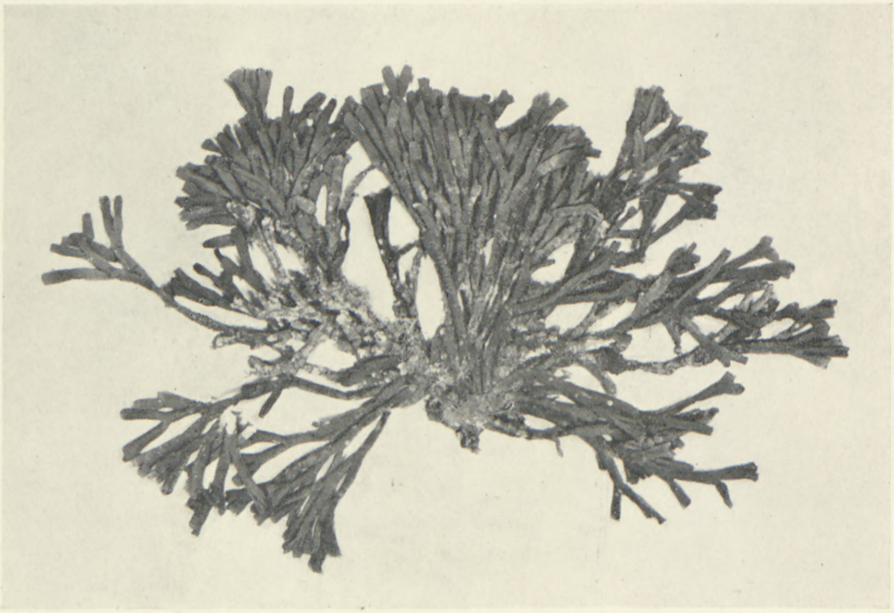


Liagora Jadinii Börgs. (× 1).

Plate II.



1. *Galaxaura mauritiana* nov. spec. (× $\frac{2}{3}$).



2. *Galaxaura rugosa* (Lol.) Lamour. The supposed sexual form of *Galaxaura mauritiana*. (× $\frac{2}{3}$).

DET KGL. DANSKE VIDENSKABERNES SELSKAB
BIOLOGISKE MEDDELELSER, BIND XXI, NR. 6

A REVISION OF THE GENUS *ICELUS (COTTIDAE)* WITH REMARKS ON THE STRUCTURE OF ITS UROGENITAL PAPILLA

BY

AD. S. JENSEN AND HELGE VOLSØE

KØBENHAVN
I KOMMISSION HOS EJNAR MUNKSGAARD
1949

Printed in Denmark
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

I.

A Revision of the Genus *Icelus*.

By AD. S. JENSEN.

In 1839 REINHARDT referred a new West Greenland fish, sent to him in 1838, to the genus *Cottus* and called it *bicornis*, because it had two cone-shaped, pointed, backward bent spines on the back of the neck. He further characterized it by the presence of four spines on the border of the preoperculum of which that in the uppermost corner is bifurcated. He adds that, like *Cottus uncinatus*, it has teeth both on the vomer and on the palatine bones[1].

In 1845 KRØYER gave a detailed description of two small cottid fishes (total length about 50 mm) which he had brought with him from Spitsbergen; he referred them to a new genus and a new species which he gave the name *Icelus hamatus*[2].

In his paper on Scandinavian *Cottoidei* LÜTKEN[3] states that *Icelus hamatus* Krøyer is common in Greenland. He entertains no doubt that REINHARDT'S *Cottus bicornis* is the same species; but as the original specimen could not possibly be found in this Museum, the name *bicornis*, although it is older, should not have priority. To this the present author[4] has given the following remarks: "With regard to this LÜTKEN is right in so far as the

[1] Overs. Kongl. Danske Vidensk. Selsk. Forhandl. 1839, pp. 9—10.

[2] Naturhist. Tidsskr. II, 1, 1845, p. 253.—According to KRØYER *Icelus* is the son of *Hypnos*, the god of sleep, and KRØYER writes (l. c. p. 261), that he chose the name in view of the indolence of the species of *Cottus*, as well as with regard to the northern habitat assigned to the god of sleep by some of the ancient authors. The specific name *hamatus* refers, I presume, to the following paragraph in KRØYER's diagnosis (l. c. p. 263): "Aculei præoperculi quatuor, quorum tres superiores hamati, summus bifurcatus." The three uppermost spines on the preoperculum are just hook-shaped.

[3] Vidensk. Medd. Naturhist. Foren. Kbhvn. 1876, p. 380.

[4] AD. S. JENSEN: The fishes of East-Greenland. Meddel. om Grønland, XXIX, 1904, p. 245.

specimen from 1838 can no longer be pointed out. But in REINHARDT's notes from the year 1841, kept at the Museum, I find mentioned still 3 specimens of *Cottus bicornis* sent him from the missionary JØRGENSEN at Julianehaab; these specimens are still kept in the Museum, and have in the course of time been relabelled *Icelus hamatus* Kr. As there is now no more room for doubt, we ought to return to REINHARDT's specific name as being the older one."

In recent time two new and surprising papers have appeared in the discussion on *Icelus*, both published by Russian scientists. SCHMIDT[1] maintains that *Icelus bicornis*, besides the typical form of REINHARDT, embraces a subspecies *beringianus* occurring in the northern Bering Sea, and he characterizes the two forms as follows (l. c. p. 6—9):

Icelus bicornis Reinh.: The anal papilla of the male is not long; to the top it is conical and bears a long and acuminate appendage so long as or a little longer than the basal part of the papilla. The plates of the lateral line do not reach the base of the caudal fin, they disappear near the end of the second dorsal.

Icelus bicornis subsp. *beringianus* m.: The dorsal part of the anal papilla of the male is long with an incision on the top and bearing on the dorsal side a short, curved appendage. The plates of the lateral line reach the base of the caudal fin.

Ten years later ANDRIASHEV[2] maintains that SCHMIDT's *beringianus* is not a subspecies of *bicornis*, but is identic with *Icelus spatula* Gilbert and Burke and refers it to this species just on the basis of the characters pointed out by SCHMIDT for *beringianus*, so that according to ANDRIASHEV (l. c. p. 275—276) the case is as follows:

Für *Icelus bicornis* ist ein gertenförmiger Fortsatz der Analpapille und eine meist unvollständige Seitenlinie charakteristisch.

Für *Icelus spatula* ist ein krallenartiger Fortsatz an der Analpapille und eine vollständige Seitenlinie charakteristisch.

In one respect ANDRIASHEV's description differs, as will be

[1] P. SCHMIDT: A revision of the genus *Icelus* Krøyer (Pisces, *Cottidae*). Ann. Mus. Zool. de l'Acad. Sci. de l'URSS, T. XXVIII, 1, 1927. — SCHMIDT moreover regards *Cottus bicornis* Reinhardt and *Icelus hamatus* Krøyer as identic (l. c. p. 6).

[2] ANATOLY P. ANDRIASHEV (Ichthyol. Laboratorium der Staatsuniversität zu Leningrad): Neue Angaben über die Systematik und geographische Verbreitung der zweihörnigen pazifischen *Icelus*-Arten. Zool. Jahrb. Bd. 69, 4. 1937.

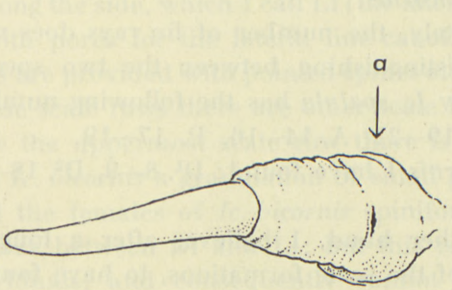
seen, from SCHMIDT's, since the lateral line in *Ic. bicornis* is said to be generally incomplete.

On the basis of these new views I have examined not only the previous East Greenland but also the West Greenland collections, to which have recently been added a great deal of new material.

A renewed revision of the East Greenland material shows that it contains only one species of males: all the males (20 specimens, of which the largest measures 65 mm) have a whip-like prolongation of the urogenital papilla[1]. In the females (more than 100 specimens) the lateral line does not reach the basis of the caudal fin; in the largest female (90 mm) the lateral line stops 4 mm from the basis of the caudal fin, and in the smaller females the lateral line ends farther anteriorly on the tail. I conclude from the above that in East Greenland only *Icelus bicornis* (Reinh.) occurs.

In West Greenland, on the other hand, both *Ic. bicornis* and *Ic. spatula* occur, according to an examination of the males. But it appears at the same time that although the males can be distinguished from each other by the shape of the prolongation of the urogenital papilla, the females of the two species cannot always be distinguished from each other by the extension of the lateral line. In the females of *Ic. spatula* the lateral line extends to the base of the caudal fin, but this may sometimes also be the case in big specimens of *Ic. bicornis* (fig. 2) (cf. ANDRIASHEV: "eine meist unvollständige Seitenlinie"). That in certain

[1] Both SCHMIDT and ANDRIASHEV call the prolongation anal papilla; it is actually a urogenital prolongation, and the anus is situated at its base as a distinct aperture.



Urogenital papilla of *Icelus bicornis* ♂, seen ventrally and magnified 7 x. The aperture off *a* is the anus.

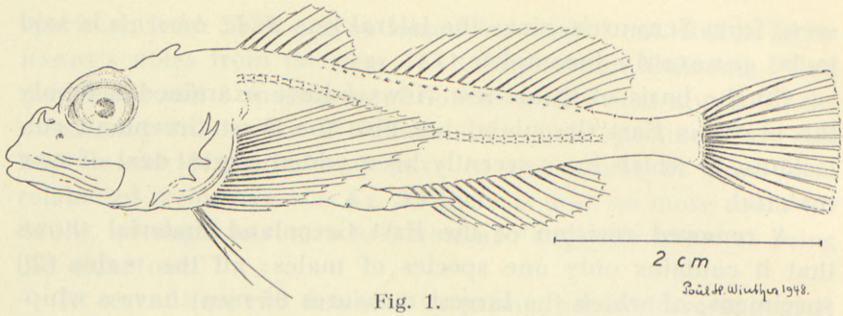


Fig. 1.

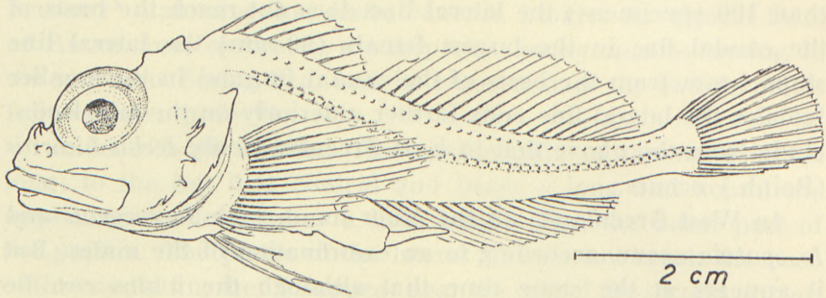


Fig. 2.

Fig. 1. *Icelus bicornis* (Reinhardt) ♂. Total length 62 mm. Southern West Greenland. The Rev. Jørgensen 1841. In this specimen the scales of the lateral line cease a good distance in front of the base of the caudal fin.

Fig. 2. *Icelus bicornis* (Reinhardt) ♂. Total length 70 mm. Baffin Bay, 50 fms. Th. Holm 1886. In this specimen the scales of the lateral line continue to the base of the caudal fin.

cases we have females of *Ic. bicornis* before us, although they have the lateral line complete, I conclude among other things from the fact that they were caught in the trawl together with males of *Ic. bicornis*.

Unfortunately, the number of fin rays does not provide any means for distinguishing between the two species. According to Andriashev *Ic. spatula* has the following number of fin rays: D^1. 8—9, D^2. 19—22, A. 14—16, P. 17—19.

In *Ic. bicornis* I have found: D^1. 8—9, D^2. 18—21, A. 14—16, P. 17—19.

On the other hand, I believe, after a long and thorough examination of the scale formations, to have found a character, by which it is possible to distinguish also between the females of the two species.

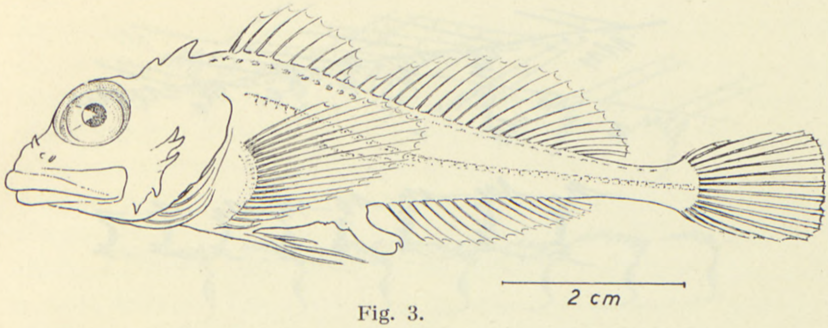


Fig. 3.

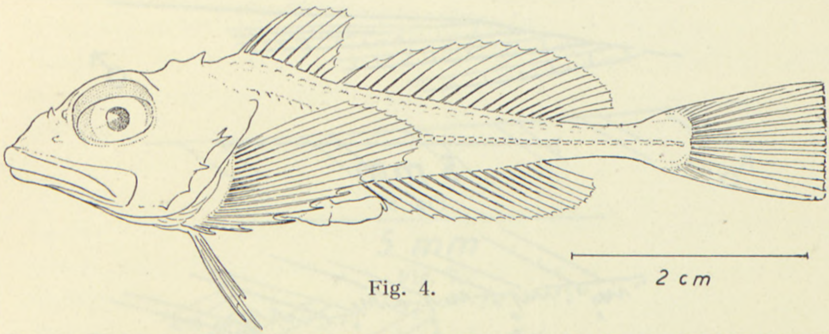


Fig. 4.

Fig. 3. *Icelus spatula* Gilbert & Burke. ♂. Total length 93 mm. Nordre Strømfjord. V. Nordmann 1911.

Fig. 4. *Icelus spatula* Gilbert & Burke. ♂. Total length 70 mm. East coast of Canada, Exeter Sound, Cumberland Island, 207 m. "Godthaab" Expedition, St. 166, 1928.

Figs. 3 and 4 show the usual feature in *Ic. spatula*, viz. that the scales of the lateral line continue to the base of the caudal fin.

As will be known the genus *Icelus* is characterized, among other things, by two very conspicuous scale rows (figs. 1—4), viz. one along the back which I shall call Dl (the dorsal line) and another along the side, which I call Ll (the lateral line), which is furnished with pores for the lateral line canal. The scales in both these rows are provided with pointed spines along their edges.

Besides these scale rows there are other scale formations. On the skin above the uppermost scale row there is both in *Icelus spatula* and in *Ic. bicornis* a granulation of small grains. Both in the males and the females of *Ic. bicornis* spiniform scales may occur in the area between Dl and Ll; but this is only the case in some individuals, and consequently cannot be used as a systematic character. I have noted, however, that there is a slight difference as regards the scales of the lateral line (i. e. Ll) in

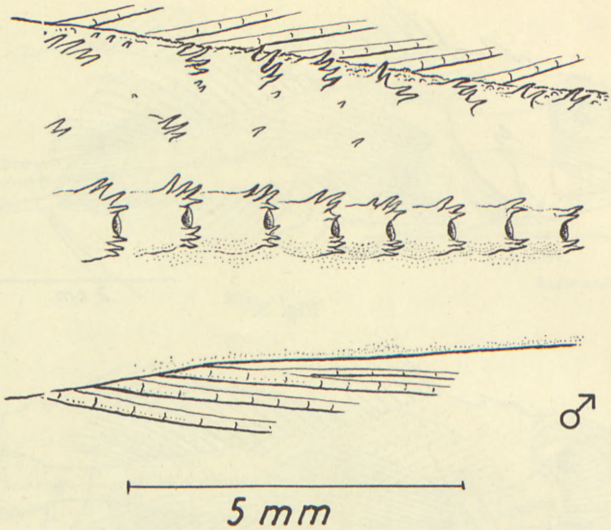


Fig. 5.

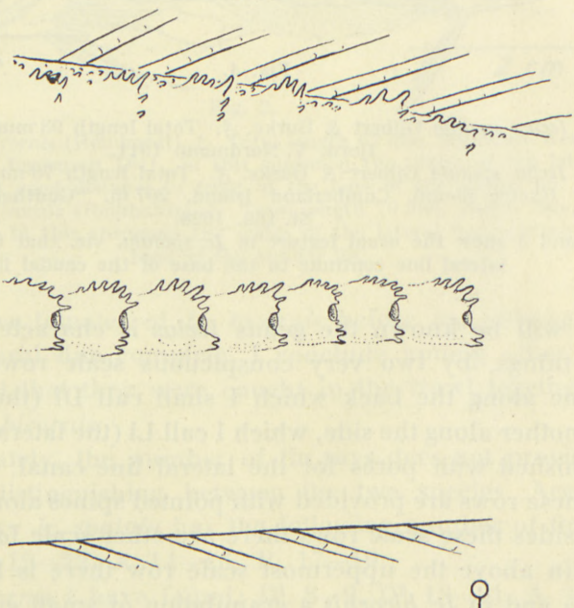


Fig. 6.

Fig. 5. *Icelus bicornis* (Reinhardt). A portion of the left side of the tail, between the dorsal and anal fins, of a male specimen. A number of lateral line scales is seen, each of these provided with spines on that part of the posterior edge which is below the pore for the lateral line. Baffin Bay, 50 fms. Th. Holm, 1886.

Fig. 6. *Icelus bicornis* (Reinhardt). In this specimen too, a female, there are spines in the corresponding place of the lateral line scales. Baffin Bay, 50 fms. Th. Holm, 1886.

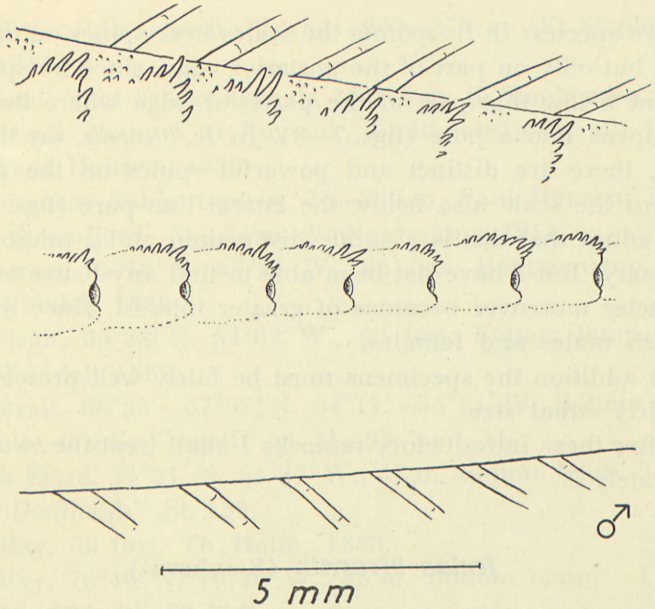


Fig. 7.

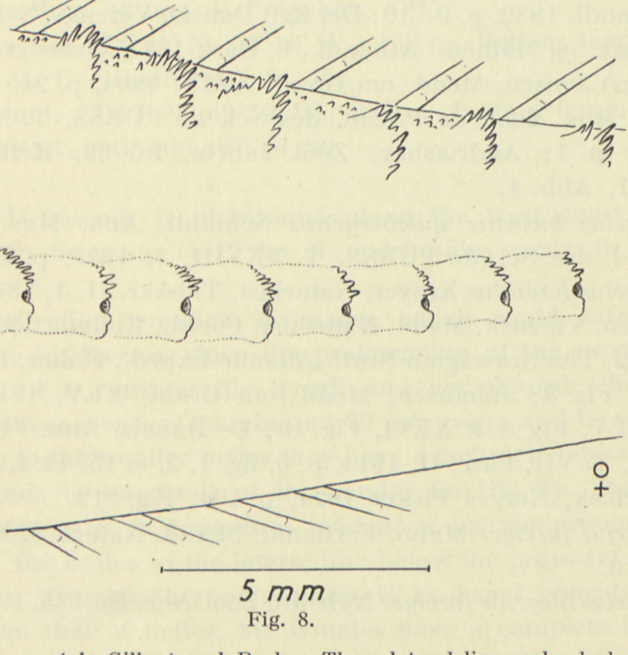


Fig. 8.

Fig. 7. *Icelus spatula* Gilbert and Burke. These lateral line scales lack spines on that part of the posterior edge of the scale which is below the pore for the lateral line. The specimen is a male. Nordre Strømfjord. V. Nordmann, 1911.
Fig. 8. *Icelus spatula* Gilbert and Burke. These lateral line scales also lack spines on that part of the posterior edge of the scale which is below the pore for the lateral line. The specimen is a female. East coast of Canada, Exeter Sound, Cumberland Island. 207 m. "Godthaab" Expedition, 1928.

the two species: In *Ic. spatula* the scales bear spines on the upper edge, but only on part of the posterior edge, since no spines are present below that part of the posterior edge where the lateral line opens into a pore (figs. 7—8). In *Ic. bicornis*, on the other hand, there are distinct and powerful spines on the posterior edge of the scale also below the lateral line pore (figs. 5—6).

I admit that this is a subtle distinction, and a microscope is necessary. But I have not been able to find any better one. This character moreover becomes of greater interest, since it applies to both males and females.

In addition the specimens must be fairly well preserved and of fairly equal size.

After these introductory remarks I shall treat the two species separately.

Icelus bicornis (Reinhardt).

Cottus bicornis Reinhardt, Overs. Kgl. Danske Vidensk. Selsk. Forhandl. 1839, p. 9—10; Det Kgl. Danske Vidensk. Selsk. Naturvidensk. og Mathem. Afhandl., 8. Deel, 1841, Oversigt p. LXXV; (*Icelus*) Jensen, Medd. om Grønl. XXIX, 1904, p. 245; Schmidt, Ann. Mus. Zool. de l'Acad. des Sci. de l'URSS, T. XXVIII, 1, 1927, p. 7; Andriashev, Zool. Jahrb., Bd. 69, Heft 4, 1937, p. 261, Abb. 4.

Icelus bicornis spitzbergensis Schmidt, Ann. Mus. Zool. de l'Acad. des Sci. de l'URSS, T. XXVIII, 1, 1927, p. 7.

Icelus hamatus Krøyer, Naturhist. Tidsskr. II, 1, 1845, p. 253; Lütken, Vidensk. Medd. Naturhist. Foren., Kbhvn., 1876, p. 380; Collett, The Norwegian North-Atlantic Exped., Fishes, 1880, p. 34, Pl. I, Fig. 8; Johansen, Medd. om Grønl. XLV, 1912, p. 654, Pl. XLV, Fig. 8 & XLVI, Fig. 10; Le Danois, Ann. l'Inst. Océanogr., T. VII, Fasc. II, 1914, p. 5, fig. 1, 2, et 15, Pl. I, fig. 3 et 4; Wollebæk, Norges Fisker 1924, p. 194, Fig. 212.

Icelus furciger Malm, Forhandl. Skand. Naturf. 9. Möte 1863, p. 410.

Icelus bicornis furciger Nybelin, Zool. Anz. Bd. 133, 1941, p. 221.

West Greenland. *Icelus bicornis* has been taken at the following localities:

Bredefjord, Julianehaab district, 200—270 m. K. Stephensen, 1912.

Kvanefjord, S. of Frederikshaab, 37—45 m. K. Stephensen, 1912.

Off Karusuk channel in Kugssuk, Godthaabsfjord, 50—100 m. Paul Hansen, 1936.

Amarkok near Sukkertoppen, 75—200 m. Paul Hansen, 1935.

Nordre Strømfjord, 51—54 m. V. Nordmann, 1911.

Davis Strait, 65°18′ N. 53°21′ W., 65 fms. Bottom temp. 1° C. Wandel, 1889.

Davis Strait, 65°22′ N. 54°02′ W., 60 fms. Bottom temp. 2° C. Wandel, 1889.

Davis Strait, 66°35′—67°57′ N. 54°17′—55°54′ W. Bottom temp. 0°8—0°9 C. "Ingolf" St. 31, 33, and 34.

Umanak Fjord, 71°21′ N. 54°27′ W., 47 m, Bottom temp. 3°96 C. "Godthaab" St. 139.

Baffin Bay, 50 fms. Th. Holm, 1886.

Baffin Bay, 76°40′ N. 76°20′ W., 85 m. Bottom temp. —1°12 C. "Godthaab" St. 114.

North Star Bay, 14 fms. P. Freuchen, 1917.

North Star Bay, 76°35′ N. 68°16′ W., 150 m. Bottom temp. —1°35 C. "Godthaab" St. 85.

Whale Sound, 77°17′ N. 69°59′ W., 930 m. Bottom temp. —0°42 C. "Godthaab" St. 90.

Thus *Ic. bicornis* is distributed along the west coast from Julianehaab district to 77°17′ lat. N. and besides occurs in Davis Strait.

The collection contains 25 males, which could safely be referred to *Ic. bicornis*, since the prolongation of the urogenital papilla is of a considerable length and awl-shaped; the two biggest of them measure 64 mm and 70 mm resp., and in contradistinction to the smaller males they have a complete lateral line, as it extends to the basis of the caudal fin (fig. 2). That the females belong to *Ic. bicornis* is evidenced by the presence of spines on the scales of the lateral line below the pores (cf. p. 10 and fig. 6). The number of females is as usual considerably greater than that of males. Six females have a complete lateral line and are larger than the other females; they are 80—130 mm long.

East Greenland. *Icelus bicornis* has been taken at the following localities:

Lindenowfjord, 40—50 m. Bertelsen, 1935.
Sermilik off Ikagtek, 44 m. Bertelsen, 1933.
Angmagssalik, 10—0 fms. Søren Jensen, 1900.
Tasiusak, 30—50 fms. Kruuse, 1902.
Uttental Sound, 9—11 m, 20—25 m, 30—90 m. Bertelsen, 1933.
Kangerdlugssuak, 10 m and 11—15 m. Degerbøl, 1932.
Cape Tobin, 57 fms. Søren Jensen, 1900.
Hurry Inlet, 50 fms. Søren Jensen, 1900.
Rosenvinge Bay, 0—20 m, 10—12 m. Alwin Pedersen, 1924—25.
Hekla Harbour, 5—10 fms. Ryder, 1891—92.
Forsblads Fjord, 90—50 fms. Søren Jensen, 1900.
Dusénfjord, 240 m. "Godthaab" 1932.
Isfjord, 55—59 m. "Godthaab" 1932.
Danmarks Harbour, about 2—40 m. Young specimens, about 30—40 mm, in the littoral region, somewhat older specimens in the Laminaria region, the large specimens in the Delesseria region. According to Johansen, 1906—08.

The present collection contains 20 males which are all referable to *Ic. bicornis* on account of the long and awl-shaped prolongation of the urogenital papilla. About 100 specimens are females, which, like the males, have an incomplete lateral line, as it ends at a shorter or longer distance in front of the basis of the caudal fin.

Altogether it can be said that in East Greenland only one species of *Icelus* occurs, viz. *Ic. bicornis*. It has, however, as shown in the list, been demonstrated in many places from 60½° to 77° lat. N. Still as far north as in the area near Danmarks Harbour it is one of the most common fishes, writes Frits Johansen, the zoologist. The largest male measures 65 mm, the largest female 90 mm. Large males and females may have spine-shaped scales between the dorsal and the median scale row.

Further distribution: The Zoological Museum of Copenhagen has *Ic. bicornis* also from the following localities: Iceland (N. of Iceland, 44 fms. 1 ♀, "Ingolf" St. 127, 1896; North Iceland, Skagestrand Bay, 114 fms. 1 ♀, Wandel 1890; East Iceland, Reyðarfjörðr, 44 fms. 1 ♀, Hørring 1898). Jan Mayen, 55 fms., 4 ♂ 4 ♀, Søren Jensen 1900. Spitsbergen, about 10 fms. 2 ♀, Krøyer 1838—39 (s. n. *Icelus hamatus*). Norway, Bergen, 1 ♂, 1904. Kara Sea, 65—100 fms., 7 ♂ 11 ♀, "Dijmphna" 1882—83.

Besides, the following particulars are given of its distribution:

Regarding its occurrence in Norway Wollebæk writes that it occurs along the entire coast. It also occurs in Bohuslän, whence Malm described it as a new species: *Ic. furciger*, in which is found a row of spines on either side of the base of the anal fin, while such spines are absent in arctic individuals; this view Collett could not adopt. Later on Nybelin has compared 12 specimens from Bohuslän with 50 from Spitsbergen and he found a considerable difference between the arctic and the Swedish specimens of *Ic. bicornis*, viz.—besides that pointed out by Malm —fewer rays in D^2, A and P in the Bohuslän specimens than in the arctic individuals. Nybelin, however, does not consider the difference sufficiently great to justify a segregation of species[1]. On the other hand, Nybelin finds it reasonable to regard the Swedish specimens as a geographical subspecies, which should bear the name *Icelus bicornis furciger* Malm. But where the limit is between the distribution of the arctic principal species and that of the boreal subspecies cannot be said at present. From northern Norway *Ic. bicornis*, according to Andriashev, continues into the Barents Sea and the Kara Sea, and according to P. Schmidt it is distributed near Spitsbergen Islands (s.n. subsp. *spitzbergensis*).

To the west *Ic. bicornis* extends from West Greenland to the east coast of Canada, where the "Godthaab" in 1928 took a male in Jones Sound on Ellesmere Island (76°08′ N. 80°53′ W.), depth 80 m, bottom temp. —1.05° C., St. 116.

[1] It is besides a matter of fact that the average number of fin rays (and vertebrae) within the same species may change according to whether it lives in boreal or arctic waters. I could give many examples of this, but shall here mention only one. The species *Triglops pingelii* occurs with 4 subspecies, whose average number of rays in D^2 and A increases gradually as we proceed from warmer to colder seas, from the Kattegat-Faroe area via Iceland to Greenland. (Cf. Ad. S. Jensen: Contributions to the Ichtyofauna of Greenland, 4, 1944, pp. 12—22 and pp. 29—30, charts 2 & 3).

On the naming of this species.

In his fundamental paper on *Icelus* ANDRIASHEV writes (pp. 275—276) on *Ic. spatula:* "Zu dieser Art könnte man die Exemplare von H. J. DRESEL aus der Davis Strait[1], von V. PIETSCHMANN von Westgrönland[2], von V. VLADYKOV aus der Hudsonbai[3] und andere rechnen. Leider ist die Form des Fortsatzes der Analpapille bei keinem von diesen Exemplaren beschrieben. Im Zoologischen Institut befindet sich ein Weibchenexemplar aus Grönland (No. 4681), das eine vollständige Seitenlinie (42 Schilder) aufweist und allen anderen Merkmalen nach von der Form *Ic. spatula* aus dem Beringmeer nicht zu unterscheiden ist. Die Frage nach der systematischen Stellung dieses Exemplars (d. h. die Frage nach der Verbreitung von *Ic. spatula* bis Grönland) kann nur im Falle des Auffindens der Männchen in diesem Gebiet geklärt werden. Sehr möglich ist es, dass bei Westgrönland beide Arten, *Ic. spatula* und *Ic. bicornis*, vorkommen, ähnlich wie es im Karischen Meer der Fall ist. Falls es sich aber erweisen sollte, dass bei Grönland bloss solche Exemplare vorkommen, die einen krallenartigen Fortsatz der Analpapille aufweisen, so muss die Benennung der pazifischen Art *Ic. spatula* in *Ic. bicornis* (Reinh.) verändert werden. Für die nordatlantische Art mit einem langen gertenförmigen Fortsatz der Analpapille müsste dann die Benennung von KRØYER *Ic. hamatus* von neuem eingeführt werden."

In view of the above I can give the following information: In the Zoological Museum of Copenhagen are kept, from the old times, eight specimens of *Cottus bicornis,* they were sent to REINHARDT from his correspondents in Greenland in the years 1840—42, at a time when he was engaged on the study of this species. Of the eight specimens only one is a male, its urogenital papilla is comparatively short, but provided with a considerable whip-formed prolongation. This male was sent to REINHARDT in 1841 by the Rev. JØRGENSEN, he has had it before him, and in his list of the Rev. JØRGENSEN's collection kept in this Museum, it is determined as *Cottus bicornis.* It must be justifiable therefore to regard this specimen, the urogenital papilla of which is figured in the present paper, note 1, p. 5 as the male type of *Icelus bicornis* (Reinhardt)[4].

[1] Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 7, 1885, p. 252; vgl. auch JORDAN u. EVERMANN, 1898, Pt. II, p. 1911.

[2] Medd. om Grønl., vol. 92, no. 3, 1932, p. 36, fig. 15.

[3] Contrib. Canad. Biol. a. Fisheries, N. S., vol. 8, Toronto 1932, p. 14.

[4] It might seem peculiar that REINHARDT did not mention the urogenital papilla conspicuous in his *Cottus bicornis.* But it should be borne in mind that his establishment of this species was published in 1839, while the male which he got from Rev. JØRGENSEN was not sent from Greenland until 1841. It is true

On the other hand, it appears that four of the females sent down at the same time, should be referred to *Ic. spatula*, as it is characterized in the present paper; a fifth female belongs to *Ic. bicornis*, and the two remaining females cannot be identified (one is poorly preserved, the other is too small).

Icelus spatula Gilbert and Burke.

Icelus spatula Gilbert and Burke, Fishes from Bering Sea and Kamchatka, Washington 1912, p. 41, fig. 3, 3a; Bulletin of the Bureau of Fisheries, Vol. XXX, 1910 (1912)[1].

Icelus spatula Andriashev, Zol. Jahrb. Bd. 69, Heft 4, 1937, p. 272, Abb. 3, Taf. 6, Fig. 6.

Icelus bicornis beringianus Schmidt, Ann. Mus. Zool. de l'Acad. des Sc. de l'URSS, T. XXVIII, 1, 1927, p. 7.

Icelus karaensis Soldatov, Ber. d. Wiss. Meeresinst. 1923, Lief. 3, Saratov, p. 31.

In the Zoological Museum of Copenhagen are kept specimens of *Ic. spatula* from the following localities in West Greenland:

Nordre Strømfjord, 33—95 m. 3 ♂, 2 ♀; V. Nordmann, 1911.
Disko Bay. 1 ♂; Traustedt, 1892.
Egedesminde. 1 ♂, 1 ♀; Traustedt, 1892.
Egedesminde and Jakobshavn. 2 ♂, 3 ♀; Traustedt, 1892.
Jakobshavn. 1 ♂; Traustedt, 1892.
Umanak, Spraglede Bay. 1 ♀; "Godthaab", 1928.

Besides, there are from the old times (1840—1842), 4 specimens, all females, which are labelled "Greenland" without further statement of locality.

The remarkable shape of the prolongation of the urogenital

that there is a note on *C. bicornis* in Vid. Selsk. Afhandl. from 1841, but it is nothing but a republication of Reinhardt's description from 1839.

[1] P. 42 Gilbert and Burke characterize *Icelus spatula* in the following way: "The species is distinguished by the form of the anal papilla in the male. This is distinctly spatular in shape, widening from base to the end of the basal segment, which is broad, rounded at tip and emarginate on the middle line, the terminal segment being extremely short, curved like a claw, springing from the dorsal (posterior) side of the basal portion and not extending beyond it." In *Icelus bicornis* the anal papilla in the male is strikingly different in shape; the basal segment is comparatively short and terminates in a long, gently tapering process, about as long as the basal portion, from the summit of which it springs.

papilla (see figs. 3—4) makes the males easily distinguishable. The females were identified by the character pointed out on p. 10, i. e. no spines on the scales of the lateral line below that part where the pore of the lateral line opens (fig. 8).

At present the species is known to occur on the west coast of Greenland from about 66° to 71° lat. N. The specimens from Nordre Strømfjord are of a considerable size; the largest male measures 91 mm, the largest female 116 mm.

The Zoological Museum of Copenhagen moreover possesses *Ic. spatula* from the east coast of Canada, as the Godthaab Expedition in 1928 took one male (fig. 4) and two females in Exeter Sound, Cumberland in Baffin Land, St. 166b (66°19′ N. 62°18′ W.); the depth was 75—200 m, the bottom temperature —1.58° C.

Furthermore, the same Museum has the species from the Kara Sea, where the "Dijmphna" Expedition in 1882—83 took 5 ♂♂ and 4 ♀♀ at depths from 65—100 fms.

According to Andriashev Russian expeditions have taken the typical *Ic. spatula* in the northern Bering Sea, in Anadyr Gulf on Kamchatka and in the Tschukchee Sea; then it goes north round Asia and into the Kara Sea[1]. According to the same author it is met with at depths from 20—130 m (generally 40—70 m) and mainly at temperatures from —0.8° C. to +2.8° C. The roe is light yellow, about 1.4 mm in diameter; a female measuring 93 mm had about 1100 ripe eggs in its ovaries.

In the Okhotsk Sea and in the northern part of the Sea of Japan three subspecies of the species occur.

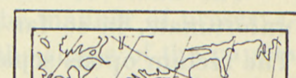
Before I finish my part of the present paper I wish to extend my cordial thanks to Commander of the Royal Navy Riis-Carstensen, the leader of the Danish Research Vessel "Godthaab"s investigations in 1928 in Davis Strait, Baffin Bay and Smith Sound. His reports on the expedition[2] in many ways have added

[1] Here *Ic. spatula* stops and does not occur again until off West Greenland and off north-eastern Canada. *Ic. bicornis* occurs in East Greenland and eastwards to Nowaja Zemlya, and throughout this area, which Andriashev (l. c. p. 261) calls "the North-Atlantic Ocean", it is the only species representing the *Icelus* genus. Besides, *Ic. bicornis* occurs in Kara Sea, and, as mentioned above, off West Greenland and north-eastern Canada.

[2] The Godthaab Expedition 1928. Report on the Expedition by Eigil Riis-Carstensen. Medd. om Grønl. Vol. 78, Nr. 1, 1931. — The Hydrographic Work and Material by Eigil Riis-Carstensen. Medd. om Grønl. Vol. 78, Nr. 3, 1936.

to our knowledge of the biologic and hydrographic conditions of these waters, from which zoologists have greatly benefited. In this place I furthermore wish to point out that Riis-Carstensen also undertook trawlings in the sounds in north-eastern Canada, and among the collections secured from these waters I found, as mentioned above, both *Icelus bicornis* and *Ic. spatula,* whereby it could be ascertained that both species of *Icelus* occur in America.

Map 1. The dotted parts show the distribution of *Icelus bicornis* in the area which stretches from East Greenland to the east right to Novaya Zemlya, and which Andriashev calls "The North Atlantic Ocean". Throughout this area this species is the only one representing the *Icelus* genus. The map is a copy of Abbildung 1 in Andriashev (l. c. p. 257), and its correctness—as mentioned in the above—has been verified in many ways by the present author.



Map 2. Distribution of *Icelus bicornis* (●) and *Icelus spatula* (▲) off western Greenland and north-eastern Canada.

II.

The Structure of the Urogenital Papilla in *Icelus*.

By HELGE VOLSØE

The possession of an "anal" papilla is a common feature in Cottid fishes. It is of different length in the different species: in some genera and species it is completely absent, in others it is barely indicated, and in still others it is small, but distinct. In a few genera it forms a large and prominent organ. It is generally better developed in the male than in the female; in some species it is absent in the female, while large in the male. It probably often undergoes some seasonal variation in size and structure, being larger during the breeding season, but this seasonal variation has been examined in few species only.

The name of "anal" papilla, which is commonly used, is unfortunate, in so far as the papilla does not include the anus. The rectum opens separately in front of the papilla. In the genus *Triglops* the papilla is large in the male and small in the female[1]. In the latter sex it contains only the urinary duct and is therefore correctly termed a urinary papilla. In the male, on the other hand, the papilla contains both the sperm duct and the urinary duct, both of which are unpaired and run independently throughout the entire length of the papilla, opening separately at its end. So the papilla of the male is a urogenital papilla.—SURBECK[2] studied the structure of the papilla in *Cottus gobio*. In this species it is only present in the male, and the entire papilla is only 3 mm long; according to SURBECK it contains only a single duct, which represents the common efferent canal for the products of the testes and the kidneys. The duct widens at the base of the papilla,

[1] AD. S. JENSEN: Contributions to the Ichthyofauna of Greenland. 4. The genus *Triglops* (Teleostei, Scleroparei — Cottidae). Spolia Zool. Mus. Hauniensis, 4, Copenhagen 1944.

[2] SURBECK, G.: Das "Copulationsorgan" von *Cottus gobio* L. Zool. Anz. 23. Jahrg., pp. 553—558, 1900.

and in this expansion are found the openings of the two vasa deferentia, of the two ureteres and of the urinary bladder. SURBECK (l. c.) called the papilla a penis, because he believed that it was used as an intromittent organ; since this function has never been proved (see below) it is better to use the neutral name: urogenital papilla.

In the arctic genera *Gymnocanthus*, *Cottunculus* and *Artediellus* (*Centridermichthys*) the males possess a large papilla, which is probably like that of *Triglops*, but the finer structure of the papilla has never been examined in these genera.

In the genus *Icelus*, finally, we find the largest and most complex papilla. The females in this genus have a small urinary papilla, much like that of the *Triglops* females (fig. 9). The males have a large urogenital papilla, which consists of two parts: a thick basal portion and a thin distal portion. ANDRIASHEV[1] used the length and shape of the papilla as an important specific and subspecific character in *Icelus*. As the senior author of the present paper found that other specific characters for separating the species were insufficient and that moreover the females could not be separated at all, he asked me to examine, whether the differences which notoriously are found in the shape of the papilla might be due to seasonal variation or to the manner of preservation. ANDRIASHEV himself remarked that the shape of the papilla is probably influenced by the preservation and the "physiological state". A histological examination soon revealed, however, that the two different shapes of the papilla could not represent two different seasonal stages. Later on this view was confirmed, when the senior author found characters in the scales, which clearly show that we have two "good" species, *Icelus bicornis* and *Ic. spatula* (see p. 6). Since, however, the finer structure of this papilla has never been described, and since the urogenital papilla of *Icelus* represents the highest development of this organ in the Cottidae we found it expedient to give a more detailed description of it here.

The papilla together with parts of the urogenital organs were excised from a male of each of the above species, were drawn (see fig. 10) and then cut in serial sections. Some of the sections

[1] ANDRIASHEV (l. c.), see p. 4.

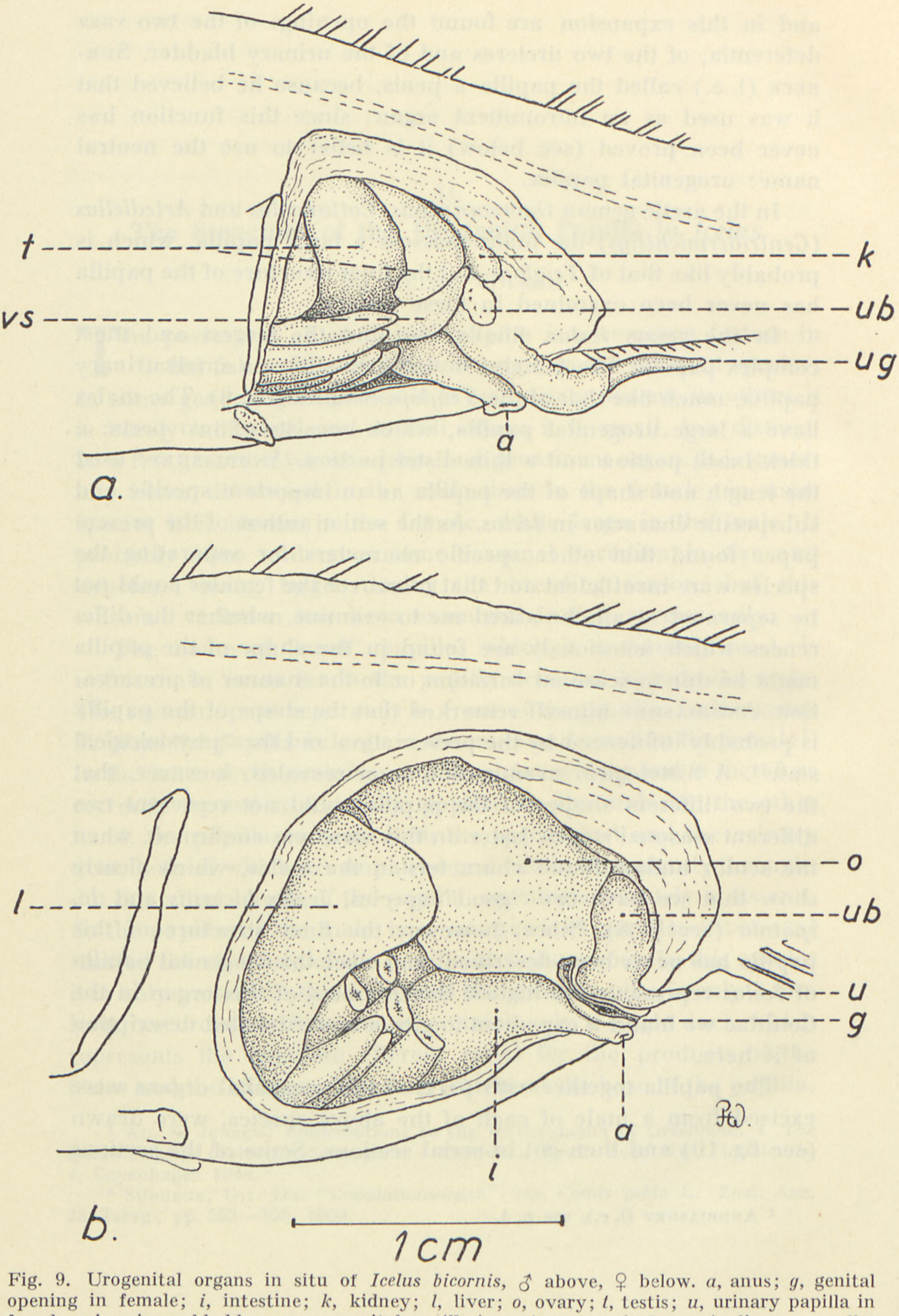


Fig. 9. Urogenital organs in situ of *Icelus bicornis*, ♂ above, ♀ below. *a*, anus; *g*, genital opening in female; *i*, intestine; *k*, kidney; *l*, liver; *o*, ovary; *t*, testis; *u*, urinary papilla in female; *ub*, urinary bladder; *ug*, urogenital papilla in male; *vs*, vesicula seminalis or ampulla.

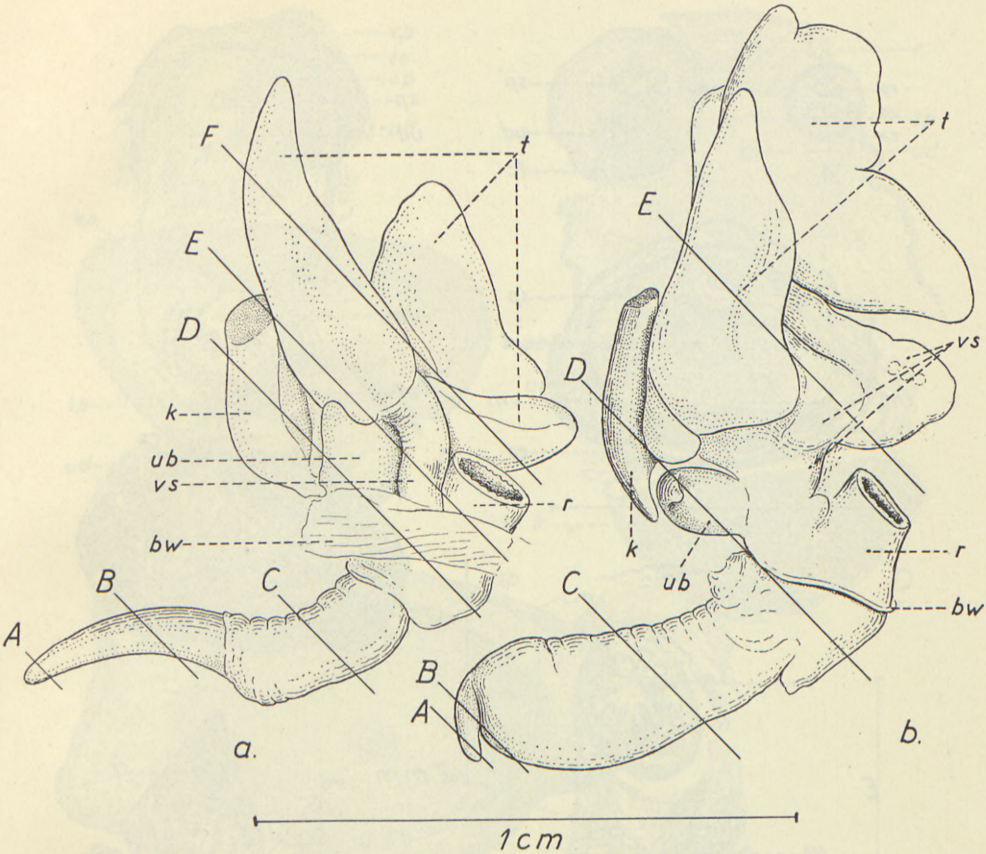


Fig. 10a & b. Isolated urogenital organs and urogenital papilla of *Icelus bicornis* (a) and *Icelus spatula* (b).—*bw*, body wall; *k*, caudal end of kidney; *r*, rectum; *ub*, urinary bladder; *vs*, vesicula seminalis or ampulla.—The thin lines marked A—F and A—E indicate the direction of the sections figured in figs. 11 and 12.

were drawn (figs. 11 and 12); the direction of these sections is indicated in fig. 10.

The urogenital papilla of *Ic. bicornis* consists of two parts: a basal, thicker part and a thinner, tapering distal part (figs. 9 and 10a). The two portions are of about equal length. The basal portion has a wrinkled surface and is apparently flexible. The distal portion is smooth and stiff. Throughout the papilla run two ducts (fig. 11A—C), a dorsal (or posterior) one, which is the urinary duct, and a ventral (or anterior) one, the sperm duct. The ducts open separately at the tip of the papilla. Both ducts have a single layer of columnar epithelial cells which are most

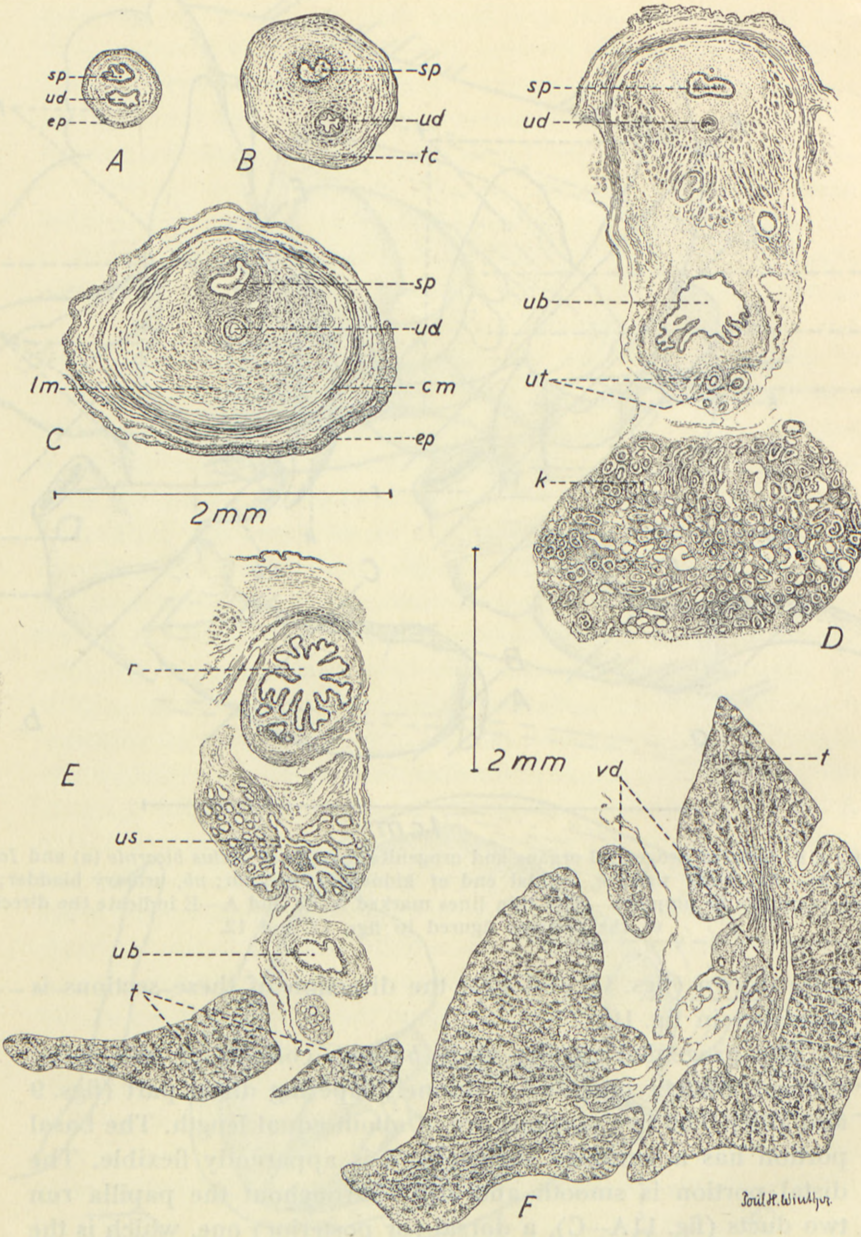


Fig. 11 A—F. Transverse sections through the urogenital papilla and the urogenital organs of *Icelus bicornis*. The organs were imbedded in paraffin and cut in serial sections of 10 μ. For explanation see fig. 12.

Fig. 12 A—E. Same of *Icelus spatula*.—The position and direction of the sections is given in fig. 10a and b. *at*, areolar tissue; *cm*, layer of circular striated muscle fibres; *ep*, epithelium; *k*, kidney; *lm*, longitudinal striated muscle fibres; *r*, rectum; *sp*, sperm duct; *t*, testis; *c*, tightwoven connective tissue; *ub*, urinary bladder; *ud*, urinary duct; *ut*, ureteres; *vs*, vesicula seminalis or ampulla.

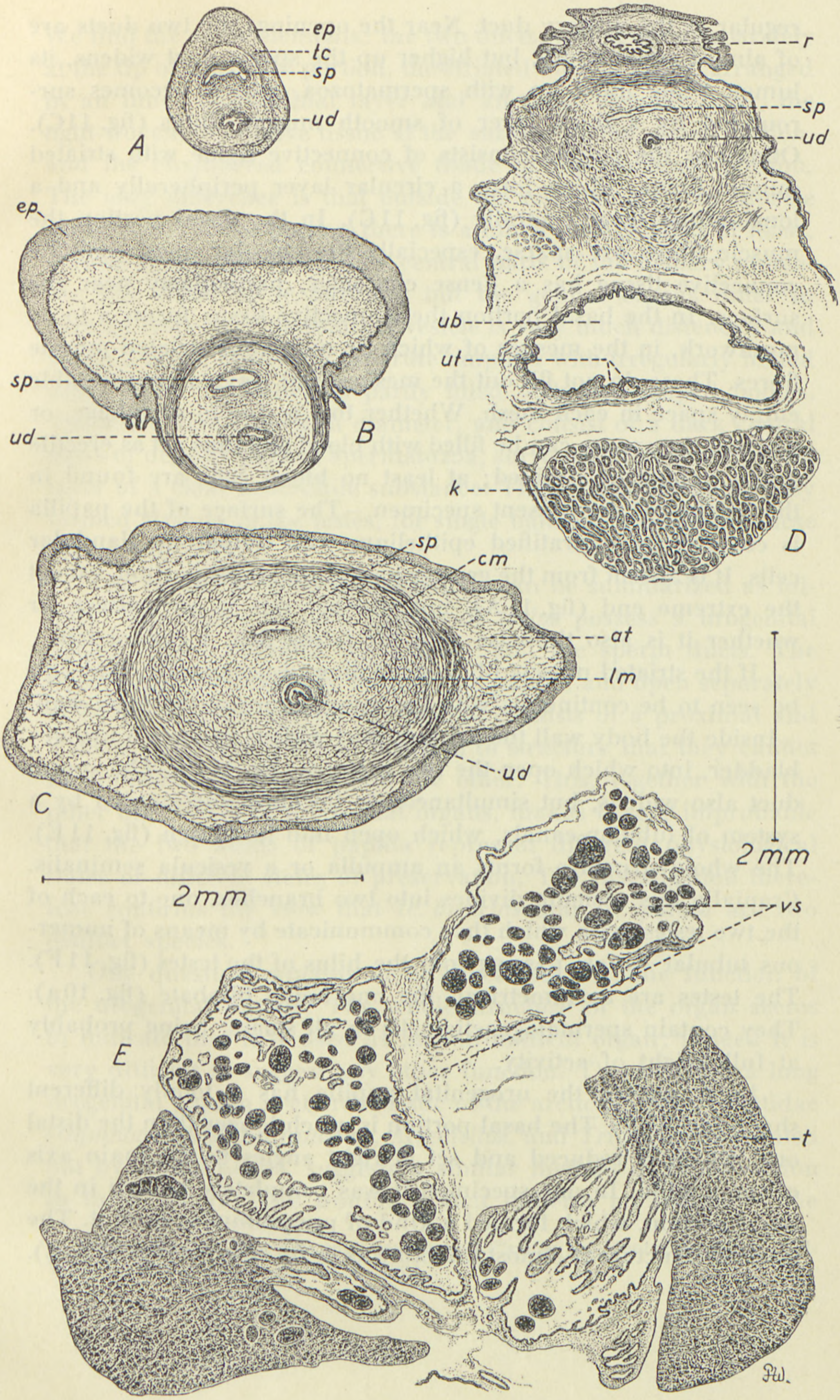


Fig. 12 A—E, see page 22.

regular in the urinary duct. Near the openings the two ducts are of almost equal width, but higher up the sperm duct widens, its lumen being filled up with spermatozoa, and it becomes surrounded by a thick layer of smooth muscle fibres (fig. 11C). Otherwise the papilla consists of connective tissue with striated muscle fibres, which form a circular layer peripherally and a longitudinal layer centrally (fig. 11C). In the distal portion the muscle fibres are sparse, especially the circular ones, and the connective tissue has a dense character, particularly near the surface. In the basal portion the connective tissue forms a loose meshwork, in the meshes of which lie numerous striated muscle fibres. These do not fill out the meshes, but leave a considerable empty space in each mesh. Whether this is due to shrinkage, or whether the spaces can be filled with blood and thus act as erectile tissue, cannot be decided; at least no blood cells are found in the meshes of the present specimen.—The surface of the papilla is covered by a stratified epithelium with numerous glandular cells. It is absent from the greater part of the distal portion, except the extreme end (fig. 11A), but whether this is an artifact, or whether it is also the case with the living fish, I cannot tell.

If the striated muscle fibres are followed proximally, they can be seen to be continuous with the musculature of the body wall. —Inside the body wall the urinary duct widens to form a urinary bladder, into which open the two ureteres (fig. 11D). The sperm duct also widens, but simultaneously becomes surrounded by a system of tubular canals, which open into its lumen (fig. 11E). The whole structure forms an ampulla or a vesicula seminalis. Cranially this vesicula divides into two branches, one to each of the two testes, with which they communicate by means of numerous tubular canals passing into the hilus of the testes (fig. 11F). The testes are asymmetrical, the one being bilobate (fig. 10a). They contain spermatogenetic cells in all stages, being probably at full height of activity.

In *Ic. spatula* the urogenital papilla has a totally different shape (fig. 10b). The basal portion is much longer than the distal one, which is reduced and set at right angles to the main axis of the papilla. In one specimen it was completely hidden in the basal portion, which formed a kind of præputium around it. The internal structure is almost the same as in *Ic. bicornis* (fig. 12A-E).

We find the same elements: the two ducts, which open separately at the tip of the distal portion, the striated muscle fibres, arranged in an inner longitudinal layer and an outer circular layer, the tight-woven connective tissue at the surface of the distal portion, and the chambered connective tissue of the proximal portion. The only difference is that outside the circular layer of muscle fibres in the basal portion there is a much thicker layer of loose, areolar tissue (fig. 12C). The central parts of the urinary system are like those of *Ic. bicornis*; but the genital organs differ in various respects. The seminal vesicle is very much distended and forms a large, anteriorly bipartite ampulla with irregularly folded inner walls. Its lumen is partly filled with ball-shaped bodies. These are about 200 μ in diameter, and consist of a dark central mass of densely packed spermatozoa, surrounded by a peripheral layer of a clear acidophile substance. These balls are apparently formed already in the testes, for single balls are seen inside these organs (fig. 12E).

The results of these investigations can be summarized as follows: The males of both species of *Icelus* possess a urogenital papilla which contains the urinary and the sperm ducts. The ducts pass independently through the papilla and open separately at its tip. In both species the papilla consists of a proximal and a distal part, which are so different in structure that they cannot be transformed the one into the other. This, together with the other differences in the sexual organs, makes it very improbable that the two kinds of papilla represent different physiological states or different states of preservation. The investigation therefore confirms the view that *Ic. bicornis* and *Ic. spatula* are two distinct species.

One question remains to be discussed, viz. the function of the urogenital papilla. The whole structure of the organ seems to indicate that it is used as an intromittent organ; indeed it is very difficult to suggest any other function. The fact that a long urogenital papilla is characteristic of the arctic genera of Cottidae (*Gymnocanthus, Cottunculus, Artediellus,* and *Triglops*), as pointed out by Ehrenbaum[1], suggests a similar method of reproduction in these genera. The trouble is that hitherto no female of the

[1] Ehrenbaum, E.: Eier und Larven von Fischen der Deutschen Bucht. III. Wiss. Meeresunters., N. F., Bd. 6, 1904.

above genera has been found to contain fecundated eggs or developing embryos. The only instance of viviparity in Cottids seems to be some old reports[1] from Finland, where female *Cottus scorpius* were found with far advanced embryos in the ovary. These observations have, however, not been confirmed by later investigators[2,3], on the contrary, it seems certain that viviparity cannot be the rule in this species. This fact does not exclude that copulation takes place and that the fecundated eggs are laid shortly after. It is, however, difficult to see how the advantage of this method of reproduction could be so great as to occasion the development of such a prominent and complex organ as the urogenital papilla in e. g. *Icelus*. For the present, however, the whole question must be left at this unsettled point, awaiting further investigations in the Arctic.

[1] Nordqvist, O.: Rötsimpans eller "Ulkens" (Cottus scorpius) och hornsimpans (C. quadricornis) fortplantning. Svensk Fiskeri Tidskr., 6. Årg., 1899.
[2] Ehrenbaum, E., l. c.
[3] Gill, Th.: The sculpin and its habits. Smiths. Misc. Coll., vol. 47, no. 1552. 1905.

Indleveret til selskabet den 24. juni 1949.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 15. oktober 1949.

Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab
Biologiske Meddelelser, bind **21**, nr. 7

Dan. Biol. Medd. **21**, no. 7 (1951)

THE RHEOLOGY OF THE CROSS STRIATED MUSCLE FIBRE

WITH PARTICULAR REFERENCE TO ISOTONIC CONDITIONS

BY

FRITZ BUCHTHAL AND E. KAISER

in Collaboration with
POUL ROSENFALCK

København
i kommission hos Ejnar Munksgaard
1951

Printed in Denmark.
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri.

CONTENTS

Preface.

Rheology is a relatively new term introduced into physics about twenty years ago and its application to physiology has been rather scarce, so that a few words of definition might be useful. It denotes that branch of physics which deals with the *deformation and flow of matter*. While the physics of the last century and the beginning of the present mainly dealt with simple rheological systems, such as the Hookean body and the Newtonian fluid, in modern rheology "the ideal elastic body and the perfect fluid are almost as systematically disregarded as they are overemphasized in classical mechanics of continua" (REINER 1949a, b). Biological structures hardly display any example of the simple type of rheological behaviour and the recent progress in the description and understanding of the complex elastic and flow properties of rubber-like substances and of plastics, i. e. substances with high particle size or molecular weight provides a basis for an application of these conceptions to biological systems as well.

The mechanical properties of skeletal muscle for many years have been a problem of special interest to physiologists and ever since WEBER and BLIX in the middle and at the end of the last century they have been considered a central problem in the understanding of the minute structural changes underlying the mechanism of contraction. In more recent times important contributions from studies on *whole muscle* have come chiefly from HILL and his collaborators. The present paper deals with properties of the *isolated* fibre at rest and during shortening (isotonic). It represents a continuation of a study previously published in this series (1942) which mainly treated the mechanical behaviour of the isolated muscle fibre recorded at constant length (isometric). We have attempted to apply some of the concepts developed in modern rheology for a description of the experimental results and the minute structural interpretation. In the last section a molecular model is analyzed and on its basis a theory of contraction is suggested as far as possible in quantitative terms. In view of the extent of the present report the authors feel it necessary to emphasize that it does not pretend to represent a review or a monograph with a complete survey of the literature on the mechanical behaviour and structure of muscle. The reader interested in the older literature is referred to A. Fick's book (1882) and to more recent reviews as for example Hill (1931), Lindhard 1931, Buchthal and Lindhard 1939, Fenn 1945, Barer 1948, the Biological Symposium on Muscle (1940), the New York Academy of Science symposium on Muscular Contraction (1947), and the articles in the Annual Reviews of Physiology of 1939 to 1951.

The authors feel that an apology is necessary for the large volume of the present paper. It is a consequence of the fact that some of the experimental material was acquired during the years of the last war wherein conditions arose which were unsuitable, indeed, at times impossible for the adequate treatment or the publication of the data. With the return of the status quo ante other aspects of the problem had meanwhile been followed up which stressed the need for further elaboration both theoretically and experimentally.

In the mathematical treatment of the results, especially those dealing with the theory (Part IV) and the description of the transient experiments (Part II), the authors wish to acknowledge the most valuable collaboration of Mr. Poul Rosenfalck, M. Sc.

In the first development of the theory Mr. Bent Fuglede, M. Sc. has rendered valuable assistance. Mr. Alexander Mauro, Ph. D., kindly read the manuscript and gave us valuable suggestions for which the authors are very grateful. Finally we wish to express our thanks to Mr. Vagn Andersen for his technical assistance in constructing the myograph used in the isotonic recording of the single fibre contractions which represented a very delicate mechanical problem.

The work has been supported by grants from the Carlsberg Foundation, the Michaelsen Foundation, and the Rockefeller Foundation.

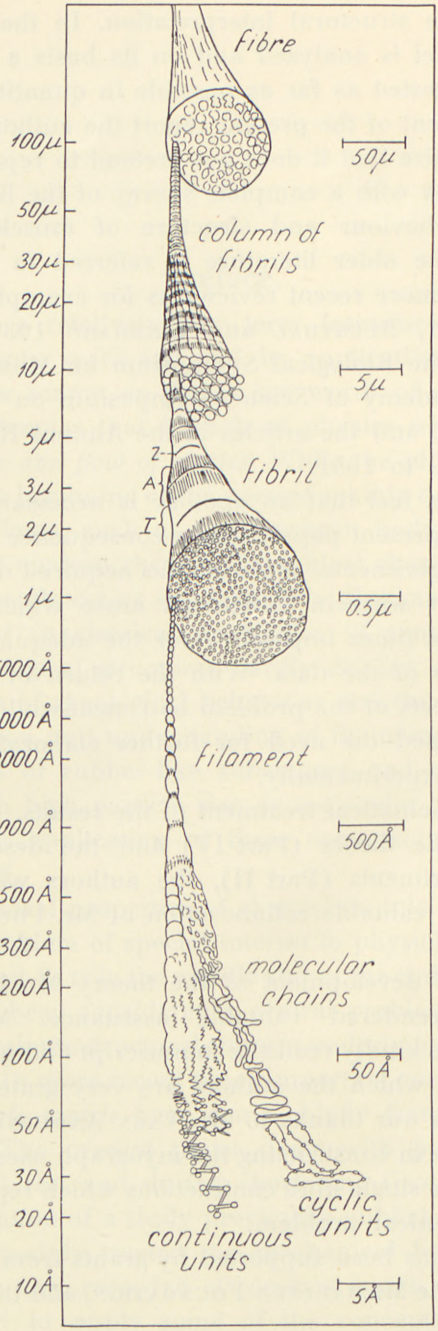


Fig. 1. Diagram of microscopical and submicroscopical fibre structure. Ordinate in μ and ångström (Å).

Introduction.

In dealing with the cross striated muscle fibre, knowledge of the minute structure and its relationship to physiological properties are the basis for understanding the process of contraction. The direct methods for the investigation of fine structure, electron microscopy and X-ray diffraction, have so far given important information. For example, electron microscopy has shown that the submicroscopic filaments apparently continue uninterrupted through the isotropic and anisotropic substance and retain their straight course both in the resting and contracted fibril (Hall *et al.* 1946). However, the contractile process does not proceed in dimensions which lie within the resolving power of the electron microscope and therefore the site of the deformations must be sought within molecular dimensions.

Decisive information was expected from X-ray diffraction analysis; but although these investigations have yielded important knowledge about the structure, especially with regard to the similarity between myosin and muscle substance and between myosin and other fibrillar proteins (keratin and fibrinogen, Astbury 1938, 1947), it has not been possible to determine the site of the mechanical deformation. X-ray diagrams of normal living, contracted, and resting muscle fibres show no significant difference in the molecular patterns, and diagrams from stretched and unstretched muscle differ only as regards the degree of orientation. It is furthermore significant that even considerable degrees of shortening, such as are obtained in irreversible contractions, are not accompanied by conspicuous disorientation.

While mechanical properties such as rubber-like elasticity and contractility can be demonstrated both on macroscopic and microscopic levels, unfortunately the direct methods mentioned above for a submicroscopic analysis with respect to the site of the deformations only tell us where they in any case do *not* occur. The negative results of X-ray diffraction, which are especially disappointing in this respect, are interpreted as being caused by a relatively strongly refractive, well orientated crystalline substance, which gives a comparatively regular diffraction pattern and which on account of its considerable rigidity takes part only to a small extent in the mechanical deformations (ASTBURY 1947). The mechanical deformations are assumed to be localized in structural elements which are in series with this inert material. The contractility must, therefore, be assumed to lie in structural elements of molecular dimensions, which have so far escaped direct analysis.

Among the various *indirect methods for the investigation of fine structure*, the mechanical methods have special advantages, since detailed information on the functional state and the concomitant properties of the minute structure can be obtained during the normal function of the muscle.

In previous investigations, carried out under *isometric* conditions, the tension was found to be the dominant factor in determining the elastic properties of muscle fibres. HILL's investigations have further shown the influence of *load* on the velocity of shortening in whole muscles. Under *isotonic* conditions, the error which occurs when one part of the muscle stretches another, is practically eliminated, and similarly the distortion of the time course of the mechanical events caused by liberation of stored elastic energy is reduced. It is thus obvious that it is advantageous to keep the load at a chosen constant level, i. e. to work under isotonic conditions (FENN 1936). Correction is thereby avoided for the influence of the variable tension on the mechanical constants. The difficulties in setting up this method of recording, which are considerably greater than in isometric recording, have so far prevented satisfactory investigations on the dynamic properties of the *single fibre* under isotonic conditions. The necessity of working on isolated fibres or small bundles of muscle fibres is illustrated by comparative investigations on large bundles or whole muscles, where the shunting connective tissue often conceals the structural changes which characterize the process of contraction. Using isolated fibres gives furthermore the advantage that transmission of temperature changes and diffusion occur with essentially higher velocity than in whole muscles.

The present paper is divided into four sections: *Part I* comprises a description of the experimental technique for the determination of static and dynamic properties in the single muscle fibres.—*Part II* gives an analysis of the length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre with respect to elastic and viscous forces and plastic deformation and with respect to the components arising from the different structural elements of the fibre as for example the sarcolemma. The elastic properties are investigated by studying the effect of sudden changes in length or tension (transient experiments), and by introducing periodic changes in load on the fibre (vibration experiments). An attempt will be made to localize the different mechanical properties of the muscle fibre to its minute structural elements and to the textural pattern in which these elements are organized. *Part III* contains an analysis of the dynamic mechanical properties during contraction using as an indicator the velocity of shortening and its changes under different external and internal conditions. In the last section of the paper, *Part IV*, an attempt is made to interpret the experimental findings by a simple *quantitative* picture of the minute structure.

Part I.

Method.

The isotonic myograph

The recording of the shortening, the shortening velocity, and the elastic properties in the single fibre required a recording system in which the forces of inertia are small as compared with the forces which the fibre itself can produce. We have tried to obtain this by an arrangement (fig. 2) in which the forces of the fibre were transferred by means of a lever (a) to a moving coil (c) suspended by a knife-edge (d), as used in an analytical balance. The excursions of lever (a) are limited by the adjustable stop screw (n) for the recording of afterload contractions. The coil was placed in a magnetic field and consisted of 15 turns of wire with a diameter of 0.12 mm and had a resistance of 4.7 ohms. At a distance of 25 mm from the axis of rotation on the lever

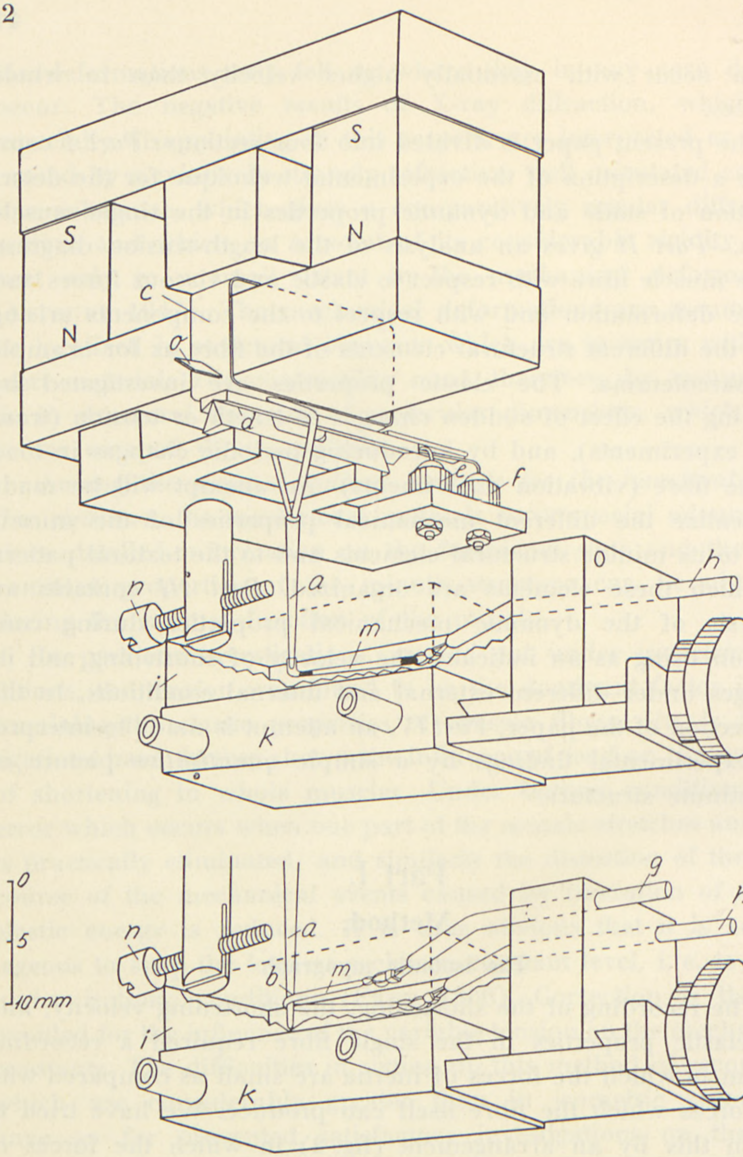


Fig. 2. *Isotonic myograph.*

a = lever in rigid connection with moving coil (c).
b = point of pull of fibre on (a).
d = knife-edge suspension for (a) and (c).
e and *f* = mercury cups leading current to (c).
g and *h* = pairs of micro-tweezers to hold the tendon ends of the fibre.
i = ringer bath.
k = chamber for cooling or heating.
l = micrometer screw for adjustment of fibre length.
m = muscle fibre, on the lower graph as a loop around (a), on the upper graph one tendon end attached to (a).
n = stop-screw for the adjustment of afterload.
o = mirror for recording of coil movements.
S–N = permanent magnet producing the magnetic field around (c).

(a) a force of 5 dynes per mA was produced by passing current through the coil. Thus, any desired load could be imposed upon the fibre by setting the current at a given level. In order to pass both direct current and alternating current independently through the coil, it was necessary that the direct current circuit and the alternating current circuit have as large a resistance as possible as

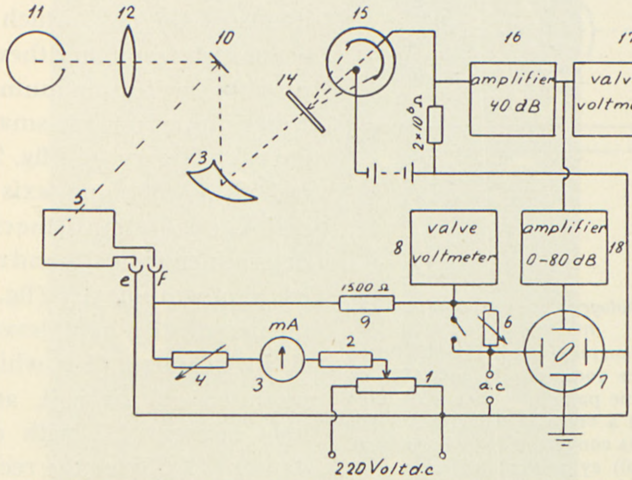


Fig. 3. *Electrical and optical circuits for the determination of elastic and viscous stiffness. Constant load* on the muscle fibre introduced as d.c. current in coil (5), varied by potentiometer (1), transmitted through resistor (2) and measured by milliamperemeter (3) led through variable resistor (4) to the terminals of coil (5). *Alternating load* derived from alternating current (a. c.) of variable frequency transmitted through resistors (6) and (9) to the coil and to the X-plates of the cathode ray oscilloscope (7) and measured by valve-voltmeter (8).
The movements of the coil are recorded photo-electrically. Mirror (1) is attached to the coil (5), reflects the image of linear light source (11) upon triangular concave mirror (13). Variations in angle of (10) change the amount of light falling on (13). Mirror (13) focusses a picture of (10) on ground glass (14) diffusing light on photo-cathode (15). The photo-current is amplified in (16) and (18), measured by valve-voltmeter (17) and connected to the Y-plates of (7).

compared with that of the coil. In this way a certain change in resistance in one of the circuits gave only a slight variation in impedance between the terminals of the coil. It has, therefore, been necessary to work with relatively high voltages in order to be able to use a resistance of 300—550 Ohms. The variation in impedance did not exceed 1 per cent at the frequencies of alternating current used. The alternating current circuit (fig. 3) consisted of a variable resistance of 150 ohms, 600 watts, which was inserted over 220 volts main voltage and was used as a potentiometer (1). The current from the arm of the potentiometer flowed via a constant resistance of 300 ohms, 100 watts (2) to the galvanometer (3) and then further through a variable resistance of 200 ohms, 50 watts (4) to the coil (5).

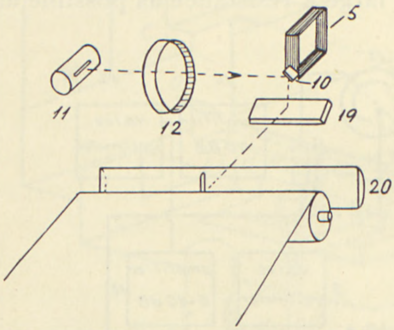


Fig. 4. *Photographic recording of coil movements.*
(10) mirror on moving coil (5). (11) linear light source focussed through (12) on photographic paper. By means of fixed mirror (19) a vertical deflection of the light spot is converted to a horizontal. (20) cylindrical lense.

In order to reduce frictional resistance against the movements of the coil, which might occur at its terminals, these were provided with platinum wire, which dipped into two small mercury containers (e, f fig. 2) placed in the rotational axis of the coil. The deflection of the coil was determined optically and recorded photographically (fig. 4) by means of the light lever consisting of mirror (10), which was mounted on the coil, and the light source (11) with a condenser (12). Since the recording system moved on a horizontal axis and hence the light spot moved vertically, it was necessary to let the light rays be reflected by the mirror (19) in order to be able to use the available recording cameras, in which the film runs in a vertical direction and where a horizontal movement of the light spot is required (fig. 4).

Dynamic elastic properties as they are revealed in vibration experiments.

Fundamental definitions.

The dynamic elastic properties of the muscle fibre were investigated by superimposing small periodic variations in load on the fibre. In previous experiments we have studied the mechanical reaction of the fibre to periodic changes in length (Buchthal 1942, Buchthal *et al.* 1944 a). In the present experiments the length alterations produced by the periodic changes in load amounted to 0.05 to 2.0 per cent of the equilibrium length (deflection measured from the mean position). When the periodic changes in load and length as they occurred during a vibration were transformed to electrical quantities and led to the X and Y plates of a cathode ray oscilloscope a Lissajous figure was ob-

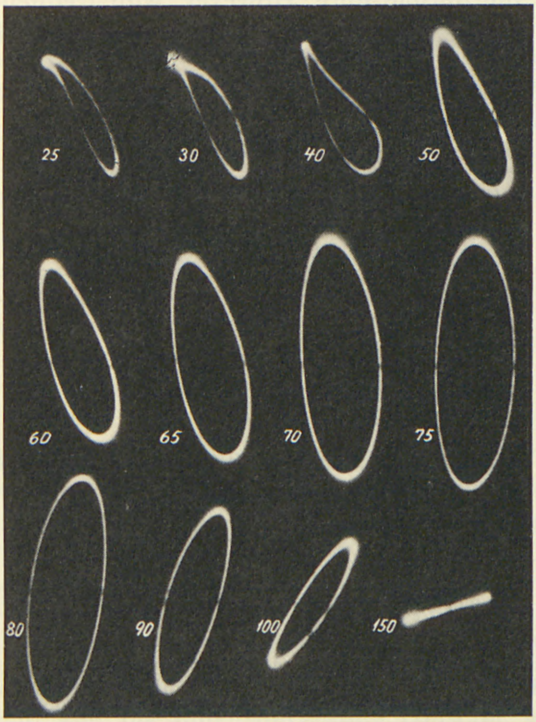


Fig. 5. Lissajous figures representing alternating amplitude (ordinates) versus force (abscissae) at different vibrational frequencies, given by the figures on the curves in c.p.s.
Constant force amplitude, approximately 80 dynes peak to peak. 0° C.

tained as shown in the examples of fig. 5. The fact that this figure was not an oblique line but resembled an ellipse indicated that the changes in length did not follow the changes in external load, i. e. there is a phase difference which corresponds to the presence of a damping in the system. Hence, the Lissajous figure illustrates the mutual relation between the enforced changes in load and the resulting changes in length. At resonance frequency special conditions occur which are dealt with below.

In a series of experiments Lissajous figures were recorded with an approximately constant amplitude of the periodic changes in load at different frequencies of vibrations (fig. 5). The figures at frequencies < 50 c.p.s. in this case are asymmetrical and, if at all, markedly distorted ellipses. The distortion is an expression of the non-linear hysteresis which characterizes the length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre. However, with frequencies around resonance (in fig. 5. 75 c.p.s.) the Lissajous figures with good

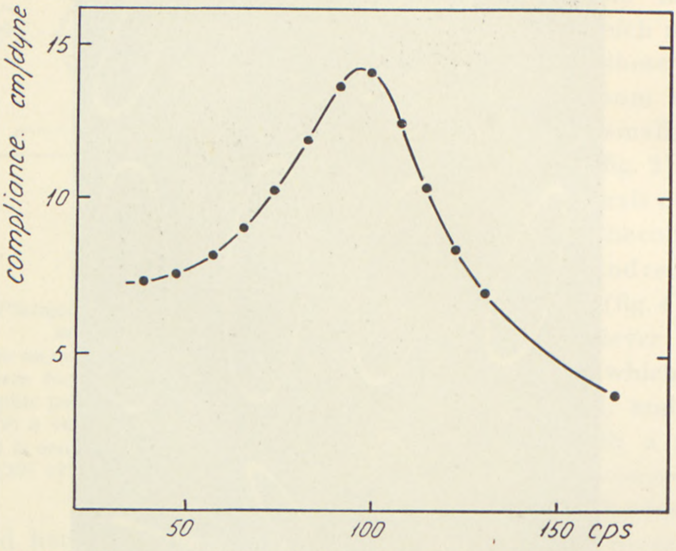


Fig. 6. *Mechanical impedance* of oscillating system + muscle fibre as a function of frequency of vibration. 0° C. Resonance defined by peak impedance = 95 c.p.s., resonance defined by 90° displacement between force and length amplitude = 100 c.p.s.
ordinate: compliance in cm $\times 10^{-5}$ per dyne
abscissa: vibrational frequency in c.p.s.

approximation are ellipses. Hence the simplest assumption is to consider the total oscillating system consisting of muscle fibre plus measuring device as a system which comprises an inertia coupled to a Voigt-element, i.e. a linear damping in parallel with a linear elastic element, moving under the influence of an external alternating force. A further illustration of the applicability of this very simple assumption is given in the experiment represented by fig. 6, which is of the same type as that represented by the ellipses of fig. 5. It shows the ratio between length amplitude and force amplitude as a function of vibrating frequency. The variation of this ratio with frequency is comparable to that which can be expected for the equivalent system mentioned above. However, the displacement in phase did not correspond to that present in the simple equivalent system (cf. p. 107).

In view of the similarities mentioned, it was appropriate to characterize the dynamic mechanical properties of the muscle fibre around resonance by means of the elastic constants of the simple equivalent system which is composed of a Voigt-element plus an inertia, i. e. the *elastic stiffness* G_{elast} and the damping (η, viscosity) or a quantity derived from η as for example the *viscous stiffness* G_{visc}.

The equivalent system moves under the influence of the periodic force

$$\sigma(t) = \sigma_0 \cos \omega t \tag{1}$$

according to the equation of motion:

$$m\ddot{\gamma} + \eta\dot{\gamma} + G\gamma = \sigma_0 \cos \omega t, \tag{2}$$

where $\gamma(t)$ denotes the deformation, $\dot{\gamma}$ the velocity, $\ddot{\gamma}$ the acceleration of the movement, m the inertia in the system, G_{elast} the elastic stiffness, and η the damping (viscosity). The stationary solution of (2) is of the type:

$$\gamma(t) = \gamma_0 \cos(\omega t - \psi), \tag{3}$$

where the integration constant γ_0 denotes the maximal amplitude of movement, and the other integration constant ψ the phase displacement between the external alternating force and the periodic movement produced by this force. By insertion of (3) and the corresponding velocity and acceleration in (2) two relations are obtained between the integration constants γ_0 and ψ and the constants m, G_{elast}, η, σ_0, and the cyclic frequency ω, which characterize the oscillating system and the alternating force:

$$(G_{\mathrm{elast}} - m\omega^2)\,\gamma_0 = \sigma_0 \cos \psi \tag{4}$$

$$\eta\,\omega\,\gamma_0 = \sigma_0 \sin \psi \tag{5}$$

From (4) and (5) we get the following expressions for the maximal amplitude (γ_0) and the phase displacement (ψ):

$$\gamma_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{(G_{\text{elast}} - m\omega^2)^2 + (\eta\omega)^2}} \tag{6}$$

$$\psi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\eta\omega}{G_{\text{elast}} - m\omega^2}\right) \qquad (o \leq \psi \leq \pi) \tag{7}$$

At *resonance,* defined as the frequency ω_0 at which the external force and the corresponding deformation show a mutual displacement in phase of $\frac{\pi}{2}$, the expression for elastic and viscous stiffness are according to (4) and (5)

$$G_{\text{elast}} = m\omega_0^2 \tag{8}$$

and

$$\eta\omega_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\gamma_0} \tag{9}$$

The quantity $\eta\omega_0$ has the dimension of a stiffness and in the following is denoted as G_{visc}, viscous stiffness.

$$G_{\text{visc}} = \omega_0 \eta = \frac{\sigma_0}{\gamma_0}. \tag{10}$$

At resonance frequency, the elastic and viscous stiffness which characterize the mechanical properties of the muscle fibre in vibration experiments, can be determined from (8) and (9). By adjusting the frequency of the oscillating system to resonance we obtain G_{elast} (8) and by measuring the corresponding maximal amplitude of movement we obtain G_{visc} (9).

As mentioned above, at resonance the Lissajous figures obtained with good approximation were ellipses. However, a systematic study of these figures gave a small but significant deviation from the shape of a pure ellipse also for these frequencies. It is seen from fig. 5 that one half of the ellipse is more flat than the other. This deviation must be considered an expression of non-linear properties and indicates that the linearly damped equivalent system can be applied only with approximation. This is also obvious from the observation that the dynamic stiffness varies with the amplitude of the alternating force, a phenomenon which will not occur in an equivalent system of the type applied and which will be dealt with in detail in a later section.

In vibration experiments in which the amplitude of the alternating force produced deformations in the muscle fibre which exceeded 2 per cent of the equilibrium length, the Lissajous figures were always so distorted that they were unsuited for a determination of dynamic stiffness.

From the elastic and viscous stiffness two other quantities can be defined which also characterize the visco-elastic properties of the muscle fibre:

1) The total stiffness of the fibre, G_{tot}:

$$G_{tot} = \sqrt{G_{elast}^2 + G_{visc}^2} \tag{11}$$

a quantity which also was determined in the former vibration experiments performed at a constant mean length of the fibre, and

2) The ratio of viscous and elastic stiffness denoted as *sr*:

$$sr = \frac{G_{visc}}{G_{elast}}. \tag{12}$$

sr denotes the tangent to the phase displacement between the alternating force acting within the fibre and the length amplitude produced by it.

Arrangement for the determination of the vibrational stiffness.

The external periodic loads were obtained by passing an alternating current via resistance (9) (1500 ohms) through the coil (fig. 3, 5). A low frequency a. c. generator was used as a source for the alternating current (0—330 cycles per sec., output impedance 2400 ohms, power output 3 watts). Since a direct photographic recording of the movements of the coil was not suited for stiffness measurements, the vibration amplitude of the fibre produced by the alternating current was transformed to electrical values.[1] For this purpose a single filament lamp (11)

[1] In recent experiments the photoelectric transmission has been replaced by a transmission which uses variations in electrical capacity, with the coil (*c* fig. 2) as movable condenser plate (Buchthal 1942).

was focussed by the lens (12) upon the mirror (10), which reflected the picture upon a triangular concave mirror (13). The image of the filament of the lamp formed a line of light, which stood parallel to the shortest side of the triangular section of the concave mirror. This line moved across the triangle, the amount of light reflected from the mirror being largest, when the light hit the neighbourhood of the base line of the triangle. The concave mirror reflected an image of the mirror on the photocell (15) and the light spot then illuminated the same area of the cathode of the vacuum photocell (15) independent of the deflection of the mirror (10). A ground glass disc (14) was placed immediately in front of the photocell. This diffused the light and compensated for inaccuracies which might have arisen from small movements of a sharp and brilliant image on the cathode of the photocell, on account of differences in sensitivity in the light sensitive layer. The alternating component of the photoelectric current was amplified approximately 100 times (16) and was led to a sensitive valve voltmeter (17) for measurement and over an amplifier to the Y-plates of the cathode ray oscilloscope (18). The deflection of the electron beam produced by the signal on the Y-plates, thus corresponded *to the instantaneous value of the amplitude of vibration* (γ). The signal for the X-axis was derived from the alternating current generator either directly or over the resistance (6) (5000—2000 ohms) dependent upon the force amplitude necessary to obtain a suitably broad Lissajous figure. This current was a measure of the *instantaneous value of the alternating force* (σ), the mean value of which was read on the valve voltmeter (8). At the resonance frequency for the oscillating system plus muscle fibre the amplitude is at its maximum when the alternating force passes its zero value and vice versa, i. e. when the phase displacement between the force and amplitude is $\frac{\pi}{2}$. This is the case when the axes of the ellipse coincide with the X- and Y-axes of the oscilloscope screen. The elastic stiffness (G_{elast}) can thus be determined from the resonance frequency:

$$G_{\text{elast}} = \omega_0^2 \cdot m = 4\,\pi^2 \cdot m \cdot \nu_0^2, \tag{13}$$

where ν_0 denotes the resonance frequency in c.p.s. $= \omega_0/2\,\pi$

and m the equivalent mass of the recording system (see equation (2) p. 17).

Fig. 7 shows the position of the ellipse at 3 different frequencies near resonance. The resonance frequency for the fibre investigated was about 74 c.p.s. The frequency range investigated lay between 20 and 200 c.p.s. corresponding to elastic

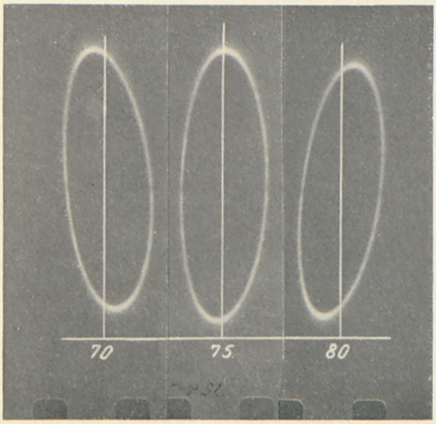


Fig. 7. Lissajous figures giving the correlation between alternating force and alternating length during the oscillation period (alternating length amplitude 2 per cent of L_0 peak to peak). The ellipse marked 75 is close to resonance (74 c.p.s.); displacement of the longitudinal axis to the right corresponds to a frequency of 6 c.p.s. *above* and displacement to the left to a frequency of 4 c.p.s. *below* resonance frequency.

stiffnesses of between 700 and 70000 dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}. The width of the ellipse was a measure of the alternating force introduced, the exact value of which was read on the valve voltmeter (8). Its height was a measure of the amplitude of movement, which was read on the valve voltmeter (17). By this the resistance component, "the viscous stiffness", was determined at resonance frequency ($\eta \cdot \omega_0$). The narrower the ellipse in proportion to its height, the less force was required for the maintenance of the oscillations, and the less the damping, i. e. the viscous stiffness.

Mounting of the muscle fibre.

The muscle fibre or small bundles of 2–10 fibres were fastened by the ends of the tendons to two small pieces of aluminium tubes or to two pairs of silver forceps (g, h, fig. 2) and kept in a chamber (i) with double walls between which solutions of different temperatures were passed. Thereby the Ringer's solution and the muscle in the silver chamber could quickly be brought to any temperature between — 3° and 30° C. The silver chamber and the forceps were mounted on a plate, which could easily be removed and placed under a binocular microscope for mounting the fibre.

When using the aluminium tubes the fibre was connected to the lever (a, fig. 2) by slipping the thin walled tube which was squeezed on the tendon over the lever. In some experiments the tendon ends were placed each in its pair of forceps (fig. 2 lower graph) and the fibre hung in a loose loop in the Ringer's solution. The loop was placed around the lever (a), which could stretch the fibre (m) with the load desired. Both pairs of forceps could be moved together backwards and forwards by means of a micrometer screw (1) and adjusted at different distances from each other. By transferring the load directly by the lever arm (a) to the fibre, it was possible to avoid the extra mass, introduced by the weight of a suspension arrangement, which could be removed. This type of suspension furthermore had the advantage that the force in the fibre was doubled and the length halved, hence the forces of inertia for a given relative change in length were halved. Comparison of the latter type of suspension with the former, where the fibre was straight, showed that the mechanical and physiological properties of the fibre were not significantly different.

Determination of the constants of the recording system.

(1) *The force in dynes* which acted on the lever (a) by the flow of a given current through the coil (c, fig. 2) could be determined statically by means of a torsion balance or dynamically by a determination of the equivalent mass of the system m,

$$m = \frac{I}{l^2}, \tag{14}$$

where I is the moment of inertia and l the length of the lever; both procedures have been used and gave, in good agreement, values of 5.0 dynes per mA. The static determination was the more accurate. In this case the error was due to small variations in the length of the lever arm and was about 2 per cent, corresponding to a displacement of the point of action of the force of 0.5 mm. In a range of length variations of 1 cm the variations of the force-strength constant did not exceed 5 per cent.

(2) *The equivalent mass* (m) was also determined in two ways. When a known alternating force, $\sigma_0 \cos \omega t$ with a known angular frequency (ω) was introduced into the oscillating system, m was found from the maximal amplitude measured (γ_0):

$$m = \frac{\sigma_0}{\gamma_0 \cdot \omega^2}. \tag{15}$$

The equivalent mass was further determined by loading the oscillating system with a known additional mass m'. When σ_0 and ω were kept constant and the amplitude of oscillation was measured *with* (γ_0') and *without* (γ_0) additional mass, we obtain:

$$m + m' = \frac{\sigma_0}{\gamma_0' \cdot \omega^2}. \tag{16}$$

From this we find

$$m = \frac{m' \cdot \gamma_0'}{\gamma_0 - \gamma_0'} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_0 = \frac{\omega^2 \cdot m' \cdot \gamma_0 \cdot \gamma_0'}{\gamma_0 - \gamma_0'}. \tag{17}$$

With both procedures the equivalent mass was found to be 0.045 g. This figure refers to the oscillating system in air. In liquids the acceleration of the liquid masses which surround the lever (a), introduced an extra mass, which was equal to about 0.010 g. The increase in equivalent mass produced by the fibre or fibre bundle did not exceed 5 per cent of the total equivalent mass. In the later experiments an improved oscillating system was used in which the equivalent mass could be reduced to 0.023 g.

(3) *Damping of the system.* In model experiments, in which the muscle fibre was replaced by a very thin spiral spring, at resonance a vertical line was obtained on the screen of the oscilloscope instead of an ellipse, which appears with the muscle. This indicated that the damping of the system itself in air was without significance for the measuring results. Using a metal

spiral spring which together with the recording system had resonance at a frequency of 100 c.p.s., the damping resistance in air was 0.1 dynes cm^{-1} sec.; i. e. the viscous stiffness was 1/300 of the elastic stiffness. When the lever of the oscillating system was immersed in Ringer's solution, a damping arose, which, however, was less than 10 per cent of that found for the muscle fibre.

The inertia of the system is of decisive importance in evaluating the velocity and amplitude of variations in length. This is illustrated by a typical example of an isotonic contraction at low load and high temperature (25° C.). Low load and high temperature were chosen in order to obtain large forces of inertia in proportion to the forces developed by the fibre. This was obtained, not only because the fibre tension was small, but also because the velocity of shortening and hence the acceleration was large. In the example examined the equilibrium length of the fibre was 0.5 cm (in the recording system 0.25 cm) and the load 150 dynes, corresponding to 0.20 P_0. With this load and at 25° C., the maximum shortening was reached within 60 msec. The shortening amounted to 0.1 cm (in the system 0.05 cm), corresponding to 20 per cent of the equilibrium length. In the first 5 msec., the fibre had reached its "maximal shortening velocity", which amounted to 5.5 cm per sec. (corresponding to 2.75 cm per sec. in the system). The relative shortening velocity was about 11 L_0 per sec. (L_0 = equilibrium length). In the present recording system, which had an equivalent mass of 0.055 g. (reduced to the point of action of the fibre), the acceleration from velocity 0 to a velocity in the recording system of 2.75 cm per sec. within the interval 5 msec. required a force of inertia of about 30 dynes in addition to the constant force of 150 dynes.

In the next 40 msec. the velocity decreased continuously from 2.75 cm per sec. to 0. This gives a force of inertia of 4 dynes. At the load used, the stiffness of the fibre was twice the resting stiffness, i. e. 8000 dynes $\times$ cm^{-1} and the force of inertia will, therefore, give a shortening of 5 μ in addition to the purely isotonic one. This corresponded to an increased shortening caused by the forces of inertia, of the fibre of 2.5 per cent of the shortening in a system without mass. This artifact decreased with increasing load, since the stiffness increases and the acceleration is reduced, because of decreasing velocity of change in length.

The ratio between the force developed by the fibre (P_0) and the force of acceleration caused by the mass of the recording system, P_s, gives a possibility to compare the recording system used here with a good system used for whole muscles. In the present example, with a fibre length of 0.5 cm, a P_0 of 750 dynes, a maximal shortening velocity of 5.5 cm per sec. (corresponding to a velocity in the recording system of 2.75 cm/sec.), and an acceleration in the system of 69 cm $\times$ sec.$^{-2}$, the relative shortening velocity was 11 L_0 per sec., and the relative acceleration 274 $L_0 \times$ sec.$^{-2}$. The force of acceleration was 4 dynes. This gives a P_s which is 0.5 per cent of P_0.

When a pair of sartorius muscles with an equilibrium length of 3 cm, a P_0 of 10^5 dynes, and a corresponding relative acceleration is considered, which in the isolated fibre was 274 $L_0 \times \mathrm{cm}^{-2}$, the true acceleration is 822 cm $\times$ sec.$^{-2}$. With an equivalent mass of 3 g the force of acceleration becomes 2466 dynes and P_s = 2.5 per cent of P_0. Recently ABBOTT and RITCHIE (1951, b) have used a recording system for whole muscle with an equivalent mass of 75 mg. With a $P_0 = 40$ g this gives a $P_s = 0.16$ per cent of P_0.

Sensitivity of the recording system to variations in length and load.

In the direct photographic recording a light lever was used which gave a magnification of 10 times. Assuming 0.1 mm on the recorded curve to be the limit of accurate reading, this corresponded to a change in length of the fibre of 0.01 mm. The stiffness of the recording system was measured to 8—10 dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, i. e. a load of 0.01 dyne could still be detected on the muscle fibre.

In the experiments the length was recorded photographically as a function of time. The velocity of the change in length corresponded to the gradient of the recorded curve employing the magnification 1 : 10 between the change of length of the fibre and the light spot on the film (recording velocity 25—100 mm per sec.). By this method we have measured the velocity of shortening and relaxation during and after contraction and the velocities of the changes in length produced by sudden variations in load at rest and during contraction.

By using a photoelectric transmission, the sensitivity was increased considerably. A change in length of only 0.5 μ could be detected; this corresponded to measurements of changes in the fibre length of 0.01 per cent of L_0. By using the photoelectric transmission the linear recording range corresponded to a movement of 1 mm of the lever, measured at the point of action of the fibre. The linearity was controlled by reading the deflection in millivolts caused by the alternating amplitude, when the oscillating light spot covered different areas of the concave mirror (13, fig. 3) corresponding to different mean positions of the lever (a, fig. 2).

The sensitivity to periodic variations in load depended upon their frequency and on the frequency characteristic of the oscillating system plus the fibre, varying with the elastic and viscous stiffness of the fibre (fig. 6). The maximal frequency at which measurements still could be taken amounted to 300 oscillations per second.

Before and after each experiment the absolute sensitivity for changes in length was determined by introducing a known length amplitude and measuring the amplified alternating current component of the photoelectric current by the valve voltmeter (17). The accuracy of this calibration depended on the accuracy with which the deflection of the light spot could be determined and its error did not exceed 5 per cent. A maximal amplitude of deflection (peak to peak) of 0.5 cm, which after amplification gives 100—150 mV, usually was used for calibration (denoted mV_5). At a magnification of 1:10, the amplitude of deflection of 0.5 cm corresponded to a movement of the fibre of 0.05 cm, i. e. the maximal deflection from the equilibrium position was 0.025 cm.

By means of the valve voltmeter (17, fig. 3) the length amplitude γ_0 was determined in cm:

$$\gamma_0 = \frac{0.025}{mV_5} \times mV_x, \tag{18}$$

where mV_x denotes the length amplitude in millivolt produced by the alternating force applied.

The maximal value of the alternating force σ_0 is expressed in dynes:

$$\sigma_0 = \mathrm{mA_{eff}} \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot 5, \tag{19}$$

where 5 gives the conversion factor from mA to dynes, and $\sqrt{2}$ the ratio between the maximal and the effective value of the current. The alternating voltage was measured by means of the valve voltmeter (8). By introducing a resistance of 1500 ohms (9, fig. 3) the current in mA was obtained by multiplying the voltage read on the valve voltmeter with $\frac{1000}{1500} = 0.667$; σ_0 then becomes:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_0 &= \mathrm{Volt_{eff}} \cdot 0.667 \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot 5 \\ &= \mathrm{Volt_{eff}} \cdot 4.7\,.\end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

The ratio between viscous and elastic stiffness (sr) is obtained by substituting the values measured for σ_0, γ_0, and ν_0 and the equivalent mass m in equations (8), (10) and (12) p. 18:

$$sr = \frac{\mathrm{Volt_{eff}}}{\mathrm{mV}_x} \times \frac{\mathrm{mV}_5 \cdot 85.5}{\nu_0^2}, \tag{21}$$

where ν_0 denotes the frequency of the periodic variations in load, measured at resonance in c.p.s.

Sources of error in mounting the fibre in the measuring device.

The fastening of the fibre in the forceps (g, h, fig. 2) introduced a slight increase in stiffness in the immediate vicinity of the point of attachment, since the possibilities for deformation here were limited. This error must be considered to be proportional to the stiffness itself; it was only of significance in the estimation of absolute values of stiffness and moduli of elasticity. This error was reduced by the choice of thin and long preparations.

When the fibre was placed in the V-shape, an error in the determination of stiffness was introduced by stretching the fibre with the lever (a, fig. 2). The deformations of the fibre were limited in the region where it touched the glass rod. Further inspection of this region showed, however, that the fibre was pressed tightly against the glass rod, so tightly that even with much larger movements than those which were used in the present experiments, it was impossible to detect any slip in the area of contact. In order to ensure that as small parts of the fibre as possible were blocked, it was desirable to use a glass rod as thin as possible without, however, damaging the fibre or blocking the propagation of the contraction. Comparisons with experiments in which the fibre was placed in a straight line by fastening it directly to the lever, showed that the V-shaped mounting did not measurably influence the viability or contractility of the fibre (see p. 22).

With regard to the free mobility of the lever it was important, especially for short fibres, that the distance between the forceps was less than 2 mm. The two halves of the fibre did not lie completely parallel, which implied that the resulting force was less than the arithmetic sum of the forces in the two halves. This could cause a difference of a few per cent between the measured and the actual stiffness. Since in these experiments fibres or fibre bundles were used which were as long as possible (large Hungarian frogs), this deviation lay below the accuracy of measurement.

The determination of the absolute value of the *elastic stiffness* was affected, as previously mentioned (p. 23), by changes in the equivalent mass of the system, which arose on account of the acceleration of liquid masses round the lever and of the mass of the fibre itself, when it was placed in the Ringer solution. Hence a slight decrease in resonance frequency should have been expected as compared with the frequency which was found when the fibre was examined in a moist chamber in air. However, an increased resonance frequency was found when the fibre was transferred from air to Ringer's solution, but only as long as the fibre was subjected to a small load. The difference amounted to up to 20 per cent in resonance frequency. The reduced stiffness which was found for the fibre in air, presumably was caused by the surface tension of the Ringer solution which adhered to the fibre and took over part of the force which the lever transferred to the fibre. Since stiffness is a function of tension, the stiffness arising from the internal tension of the fibre will be reduced. The length-tension diagram, obtained by placing a fibre bundle of 1 mm diameter alternatively in air and in Ringer's solution, showed that the surface tension at a low degree of stretch gave an additional force of about 30 dynes when the bundle was in air. This error was of no significance when the fibre was investigated in Ringer's solution. The Ringer's solution in the chamber was filled up to the same height in relation to the position of the fibre and the lever, hence the small error, which was due to the damping caused by the solution, was kept constant. By comparing the *viscous resistance* of the muscle fibre, with and without Ringer's solution, it was found that the damping introduced by the Ringer's solution was less than 10 per cent of the viscous stiffness measured.

The accuracy of measurement in the determination of elastic and viscous stiffness.

The errors, which arose from uncertainty in the determination of the constants of the oscillating system or in the absolute calibration, were constant errors for a series of measurements. The measurements in the experiments were encumbered with the following uncertainties:

1. The accuracy in the visual phase determination on the screen of the cathode ray oscilloscope was 1 degree.

2. The accuracy of the frequency standard which entered into the determination of the resonance frequency was 0.5 per cent.

3. The accuracy of determining the ratio between the amplitude of the force applied and the alternating amplitude arising from it $\left(\frac{\sigma_0}{\gamma_0}\right)$ corresponded to the errors introduced by the two valve voltmeters amounting to 2 per cent plus the uncertainty, arising from noise in the amplifier which for the smallest amplitudes applied (0.05 per cent of L_0) was 2 per cent. This gave a total uncertainty of at most 3.5 per cent.

The uncertainties (1) and (2) gave a resulting accuracy for the determination of the elastic stiffness of about 2.2 per cent when $sr = 1$, and 1 per cent when $sr = 0.5$. In addition to this there were the previously mentioned constant errors. The uncertainty in the determination of sr amounted to 3.5 per cent, excluding the error on the calibration for m, σ, γ.

Procedures used in transient experiments.

1. Introduction of a sudden change in load (isotonic transient).

An increase or decrease in load was effected by a change in the current in the coil (a) of the isotonic myograph (fig. 2). The resulting change in length of the fibre was recorded either by a direct optical method or via the photoelectric transmission described. In the latter case a relay system was used for adjusting the time intervals between release of a single sweep on the cathode ray oscilloscope and the time for the change in load. The effect of the forces of inertia on the size and time course of the change in length are discussed in the section which deals with the initial process (see p. 45).

2. Introduction of a sudden change of length (isometric transient).

The electromagnetic arrangement, which was previously used for measurements of elasticity under isometric conditions, and which produced changes in length, was employed for this purpose (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a, fig. 1). A sudden change in current in the coil of the electromagnet was introduced instead of periodic changes in length. This produced a sudden movement of the forceps, which was limited by two adjustable stops. The time necessary for the system to adjust itself to the new length depended partly upon its equivalent mass (0.4 g.) and partly upon the velocity with which the moving force in the system increased when the current passed through the coil. Within the short intervals during which the variation in length took place, it must be considered that the moving force on account of inductance in the recording system, increased linearly with time and consequently that the length varied with the third power of time (p. 57).

Recording of isometric release contractions. Release from the isometric maximum with different constant release velocities.

The elements of the experimental device are shown by the block diagram in fig. 8. The muscle fibre was placed in a chamber at 0° C. and fastened with two pairs of forceps at the tendon ends (1) and (2). The mechanical tension was transferred via the forceps (1) to the condenser myograph (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a).

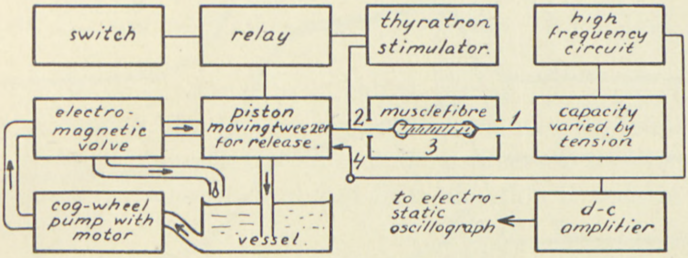


Fig. 8. Block diagram of the arrangement for recording work diagrams during release contraction. (1) and (2) pairs of micro-tweezers to hold tendon ends of fibre. (3) muscle fibre. (4) contact recording 5 mm movement of piston and tweezer (2).

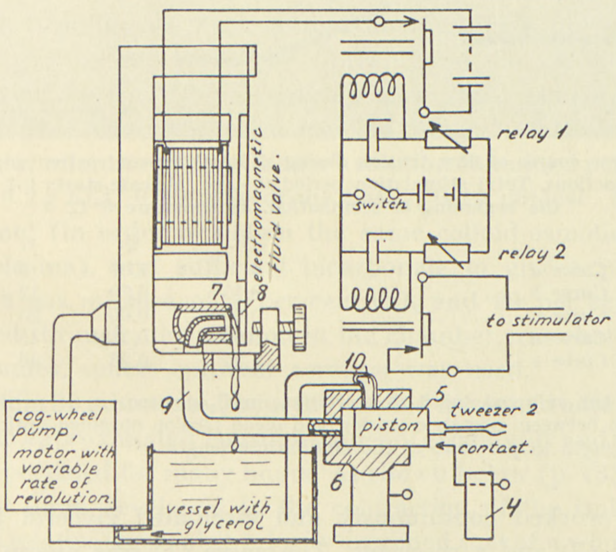


Fig. 9. *Device for operating release.*
Electromagnetic fluid valve (7) governing movement of piston (5). relays operating release (1) and stimulator (2). (4) contact marking a movement of 5 mm. (6) cylinder in which (5) moves. (8) disc to close valve (7). (9) tube connection to (5). (10) tube connection to vessel with glycerol, to prevent excessive pressure.

The variation in length was introduced via the forceps (2) through an electrically operated hydraulic transmission. The forceps (2) was connected with the piston (5) which moved in the cylinder (6). A cog-wheel pump with variable rate of re-

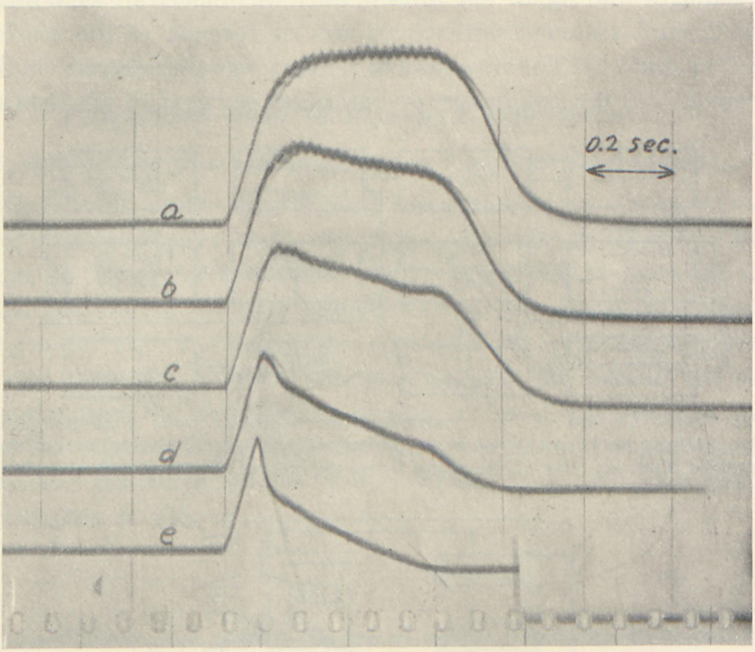


Fig. 10. Time course of fibre tension during a) isometric contraction and b–e) release contractions. Total stimulation period 0.5 sec. Release starts 0.1 sec. after the beginning of stimulation. Temperature 0° C.

	V.	Q.	x.
Curve a	0	1.00	0
Curve b	0.15	0.79	12
Curve c	0.30	0.60	23
Curve d	0.93	0.31	45
Curve e	1.27	0.23	46

V denotes the enforced speed of shortening in L_0 per sec.
Q the ratio between isometric tension and mean tension obtained during release.
x release-length in per cent of the equilibrium length.

volution worked continuously and circulated glycerol between the valve (7) and a reservoir. The valve (7) was operated electromagnetically. To close the valve (fig. 9) the relay operated a disc (8) and the liquid was pumped through the pipe (9) to the piston (5). This caused the forceps (2) to move with constant velocity. When the piston (5) had moved the forceps (2) about 1 cm, the liquid left the cylinder (6) through the tube (10). By means of a switch (see fig. 9) the current was led to relay (2). The time of contact of these relays could be independently delayed. By this means the muscle fibre could be stimulated and allowed to contract isometrically (relay 2) before the change in length was released by means of relay (1). The stimulation was continued during the whole change in length, or in other experiments for 5 seconds. For controlling the velocity, the switch (4) indicated the time, when the piston had moved 5 mm.

The work produced was calculated as the product of the mean value of the tension during the release experiment and the change in length introduced. The effect of the velocity of release on the tension produced in contraction is seen in fig. 10.

Preparation of the muscle fibre.

The experiments were carried out on single fibres or small bundles consisting of 3—20 fibres, from the semitendinosus muscle of the frog (*Rana esculenta* and *Rana temporaria*). The muscle fibre was isolated in ice-cold Ringer's solution under a binocular microscope. The Ringer's solution contained per liter 6.7 g NaCl, 0.2 g KCl, 0.2 g anhydrous $CaCl_2$, 0.2 g glucose, 3 per cent dextrane[1] (in order to obtain the same colloid-osmotic pressure as in plasma), and sufficient bicarbonate to give a pH of 7.3, when a gas mixture of 1 per cent CO_2 and 99 per cent O_2 was bubbled through; the solution in the chamber was changed every 15 minutes, unless constant aeration was used.

Within 30 minutes to 1 hour the isolated fibres had adjusted themselves to approximately constant values of excitability and shortening which persisted for many hours. As shown below (p. 133, 149) the specific force developed in the contraction of the isolated fibre and its relative shortening velocity exceeded that of a whole muscle, and it will hardly be justified to interpret possible differences as being due to "weak spots" or "invisible injuries". An injury,

[1] Dextrane kindly was supplied by A. B. Pharmacia, Stockholm.

however small, caused an essential decrease in contractility and excitability in the course of 10 minutes and these fibres obviously had to be excluded from further measurements. Also small injuries could be detected optically as an increase in opacity of the fibre.

Temperature: In the majority of the experiments the standard temperature in the Ringer's solution surrounding the muscle fibre was 0° C. To obtain constant temperature salt water of suitable temperature adjusted by means of a thermostat was passed by a circulation pump through the side walls and the bottom of the muscle chamber (k, fig. 2). In the circulation system a stop cock was inserted, whereby it was possible to shift quickly from circulating fluid of 0° C. to a desired higher temperature. By a thermocouple placed in immediate neighbourhood of the muscle fibre, the temperature of the Ringer's solution was checked continuously.

Electrical stimulation.

The fibre was stimulated by rectangular pulses, the strength, duration, and frequency of which could be varied. The duration and frequency were adjusted to give maximal reaction at the temperature in question. The strength was at least 3—5 times the threshold value and was measured by a valve voltmeter in the stimulation circuit. In experiments at 0° C. an impulse with the duration of 10 msec. usually was applied, and, in tetanic contraction, the stimulation frequency was 15—20 c.p.s.

For stimulation an electric field was produced along the length of the fibre (Ramsey and Street 1941) by leading the stimulus to two silver plates coated with silver chloride, which were placed, at right angles to the axis of the fibre, at the forceps and at the lever arm, respectively. Between these plates a homogeneous field was produced. By adjusting the stimulation to be sufficiently above the threshold value, it was possible to excite the fibre so as to get simultaneous activation of the major part of it. Even if a propagation of the impulse over the whole length of the fibre had to be taken into account, this would only take 10 msec.[1]

[1] Assuming a propagation time of 1.6 m. per sec. (20° C., Katz 1948) and a temperature coefficient $Q_{10} = 2$.

and would not be of decisive importance either for the shortening velocity or the position of the initial maximum of stiffness. In order to produce a homogeneous field along the longitudinal axis, the walls of the muscle chamber were covered with an electrically insulating paint. When the stimulation was transferred exclusively by way of the forceps, and the fibre was placed in V-shape, the conditions for obtaining maximal reaction were less well defined. Part of the experiments were performed on fibres from completely curarized muscles (d-tubocurarine chloride[1] 50—250 μg per g frog).

Determination of equilibrium length and measurement of changes in length.

The equilibrium length (L_0) of the fibre or the fibre bundle was defined in the present experiments as the length with a load of 5 dynes (appr. 0.005 P_0), and was determined directly with a microscope. The forceps were adjusted with the micrometer screw (1, fig. 2) until the recording system came into equilibrium. The position of the light spot on the recording camera (20, fig. 4) or on the triangular concave mirror (13, fig. 3) was used as an indicator and the value was read on the micrometer screw. Every change in the length of the fibre was shown by a movement of the light spot and was measured by moving the micrometer screw until the spot regained its original position. The difference between the readings of the micrometer screw at equilibrium length and the new length gave the variation in length in mm.

In order to be able to compare the experimental results from fibres or fibre bundles of different diameters in the final treatment of the material, the relative length was used instead of the length measured in cm, the equilibrium length (L_0) being used as a reference length (see p. 40). The velocity of movement was also expressed relatively, the absolute velocity measured in cm per sec. being divided by the equilibrium length of the fibre measured in cm.

[1] Tubarine, Borroughs-Wellcome Co.

Experimental procedure:

1. Determination of fibre length at rest and during contraction as a function of load and time.

At rest the length of the fibre was determined at a given load by the compensation method, i. e. through a movement of the micrometer screw (1, fig. 2) with the light spot as an indicator. During isotonic contraction the length was recorded photographically for direct analysis of the length-time dependence as shown in fig. 4.

Measurements of the force in isometric contractions were performed by supporting the fibre (n, fig. 2) at a definite length at rest. A force P_0 was transmitted by way of the lever (P_0 denoted the maximal force in isometric tetanic contraction). The supported and loaded fibre was stimulated to tetanus, and after 1—2 sec. of stimulation, when the maximum tension of contraction could be expected to have been reached, the external force was decreased until a movement of the light spot was just observed. The deviation from purely isometric conditions was less than 0.5 per cent of the equilibrium length.

2. Recording of release contractions with different loads at rest.

The experiments started by the application of the desired load at rest and measurement of the corresponding length by compensation with the micrometer screw. The fibre was then supported at this length and a load was introduced which exceeded P_0. The latter was measured by a slow reduction of the load as in isometric contraction; and the load was then reduced *during the tetanus* until the resting load was reached. The new length in contraction could be measured by compensation with the micrometer screw.

3. Determination of dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness at rest and in tetanic contraction.

Measurement of the resonance frequency (ω_0) at rest with different amplitudes of the periodically varying load was performed by varying the frequency of the alternating current generator until the axes of the Lissajous figure ("ellipse") coincided with the axes of the oscilloscope screen. The amplitude of oscillation was varied from the lowest value which permitted phase discrimination, stepwise upwards, until the periodic variations in load caused changes in length of the fibre of about 2 per cent of L_0 (peak to peak). The measurements at low amplitude were then repeated. Values for the force and length amplitude were read on the valve voltmeters (8) and (17) (fig. 3). Unless otherwise stated in the following the values of amplitude denote the deflection from the mean position. The absolute value of the smallest *amplitude of oscillation* used amounted to 1 μ which was measured with an accuracy of about 0.1 μ; the largest amplitudes used were 50 μ. The length amplitudes (γ_0) were expressed in per cent of L_0. Their absolute values were calculated by means of equation (18). Hence the length amplitude in per cent of the equilibrium length becomes:

$$\gamma_0 = \frac{2.5\,\mathrm{mV}_x}{L_0\,\mathrm{mV}_5}, \tag{22}$$

where L_0 denotes the equilibrium length measured in cm, mV_x the deflection in millivolts measured on the valve voltmeter (17, fig. 3), corresponding to a definite force amplitude, and mV_5 the deflection read in millivolts on the valve voltmeter, which corresponded to a length amplitude of the recording system of 0.05 cm (peak to peak). The relative length amplitude in the experiments varied between 0.02 and 1 per cent. At an amplitude of movement of about 3 per cent, the oscillations of the force amplitude were of the same order of magnitude as the mean tension.

The amplitudes of the oscillating force producing the length amplitudes varied between 15 and 80 dynes. In the majority of experiments the force did not exceed 50 dynes. The force acting on the fibre can be obtained by subtracting the inertial force from the external force (p. 80). In order to minimize errors in the measurement of the resonance frequency in isotonic tetanic contraction the displacement of the light spot was compensated for by moving the entire contracted fibre and the attached lever back to the initial position. This ensured that the same area of the light sensitive layer of the photo-electric cell was illuminated as at rest. ω_0 was then adjusted in the same way as described above for the resting fibre. During isometric contraction the resonance frequency was determined when P_0 was reached and the load just permitted the fibre no longer to touch the support *n* (fig. 2). Also during isotonic and isometric contraction the measurements were performed at different amplitudes of oscillation.

When measuring stiffness during tetanic contraction, the small fluctuations of length, which at high temperature (20°—24° C.) even at maximal tetanic contraction could not be avoided, caused the Lissajous figure to "jitter" and a satisfactory determination of the resonance frequency became extremely difficult. Therefore, it was necessary in these experiments to use a phase-corrected high-pass filter. In the frequency range 25—150 cycles per sec. the phase displacement of the filter introduced an error in the resonance frequency measurements of less than 1 cycle per sec. In the experiments in question the resonance frequency was measured at rest and during tetanic contraction using the same filter.

In order to investigate elastic and viscous stiffness under the same conditions, but with *different* ω_0, an additional mass (equivalent mass = 0.7 g) was placed on the lever, so that the equilibrium between the force of inertia and the elastic force was obtained at about a quarter of the resonance frequency without extra mass. In order to check on time effects during a given experiment the resonance frequencies with additional mass were determined before and after the basic measurements, i. e. determinations without additional mass.

Part II.

1) The rheology of the resting fibre.

Length-tension diagram of the resting fibre.

A length-tension diagram of the resting muscle fibre showed in agreement with previous investigations carried out under isometric conditions (Buchthal 1942), an approximately exponential increase in tension with increasing length (fig. 11). Length 100 denotes the equilibrium length (L_0), and the tension (P) is expressed in relative units (P/P_0), where P_0 corresponds to the isotonic load which causes the shortening velocity zero, i. e. the tension found at the indifference point of the length-tension diagram, the point at which the curve for the isometric maxima and the curve for the resting fibre coincide. This tension corresponds very closely to the maximal tension, developed in an

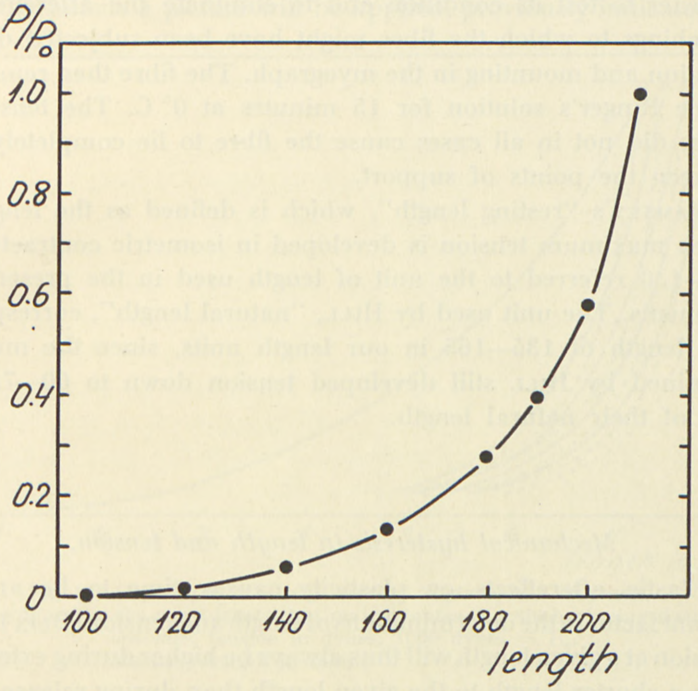


Fig. 11. Static length-tension diagram of the isolated fibre at rest. Mean curve of many experiments performed with increasing and decreasing length. 0° C.
ordinate: tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0, definition of L_0 see text p. 35.

isometric tetanic contraction (Hill 1938). The curve given in fig. 11 represents a mean value of many experiments at 0° C., each of which is a mean curve for rising and falling tension. Also in the present material *static stiffness*, i. e. the gradients of the length-tension diagram, increased proportionally to the load corresponding to the exponential increase in tension with elongation of the fibre (cf. Buchthal 1942).

Since different investigators have used different criteria for a reference length, it is necessary to define the length unit used in the present experiments and to relate it to "resting length" (Ram-

SEY and STREET 1940) and "natural length", "length in the body" (HILL 1949, e).[1] By equilibrium length (length 100) is understood the length at which the fibre develops a tension of 5 dynes corresponding to approximately 0.005 P_0. Before the equilibrium length was determined, the fibre was stimulated to 1—3 twitches in order to test its condition and to eliminate the aftereffect of stretchings to which the fibre might have been subjected during isolation and mounting in the myograph. The fibre then remained in the Ringer's solution for 15 minutes at 0° C. The tension 5 dynes did not in all cases cause the fibre to lie completely taut between the points of support.

RAMSEY's "resting length", which is defined as the length at which maximum tension is developed in isometric contraction is 120—130 referred to the unit of length used in the present experiments. The unit used by HILL, "natural length", corresponds to a length of 135—165 in our length units, since the muscles examined by HILL still developed tension down to 60—75 per cent of their natural length.

Mechanical hysteresis in length and tension,

Elastic aftereffects or plasticity causes time to be an important factor in the determinations of length and tension (BLIX 1892). Tension at a given length will thus always be higher during extension from a shorter length to the given length than during release from a longer length. Moreover, the tension will be lower the *longer the time interval* in which the muscle fibre had previously been subjected to stretching, and the higher the degree of stretching to which it had been subjected. Due to these different factors, a length-tension diagram will show *hysteresis*, the amount of which depends upon the way in which the length-tension diagram is obtained. As indicated by a number of different findings (e. g. transient experiments cf. p. 45 ff.), this hysteresis is not caused by Newtonian viscosity, i. e. a resistance arising from internal friction which increases linearly with the velocity of deformation but is explained as a "*structural viscosity*".

[1] ABBOTT (1951) uses "maximum length in the body, (resting length)" as reference.

In the following it will be shown in detail, how the muscle fibre adjusts itself with considerable retardation to changes in its state, e. g. in length, tension, or temperature. Neither a linearly acting damping, nor fluid displacements can explain this delay adequately. Therefore, in the interpretation of the following experiments a picture will be applied, previously indicated by

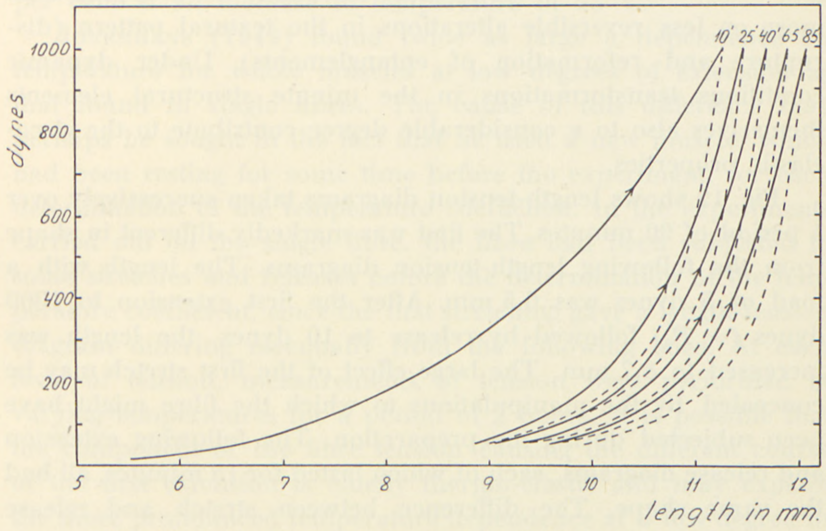


Fig. 12. *Series of successively recorded length-tension diagrams.*
0° C. The figures on the curve denote the time in minutes after the beginning of stretch.
ordinate: tension in dynes, 1000 dynes = P_0.
abscissa: length in mm.

Hill (1931) for the active fibre which corresponds with certain modifications to the conception of minute structure arrived at in rubber-like substances and in high polymers.

The fibre is assumed to consist of chains of contractile material which are entangled at random, but hold a certain degree of longitudinal orientation. The disrupture and the reformation of the entanglements will determine the delayed reaction of the fibre to external or internal mechanical alterations. This interpretation of the minute structure is supported by the fact that torsional rigidity of the isolated fibre exceeds 20—5 times that of a system of parallel chains without entanglements (Sten-Knudsen 1950). This finding demonstrates the important rôle of cross-linkages for the minute structural pattern. A change in load will imply an alteration in the minute structural pattern of the fibre. The velocity with which this proceeds depends upon the frequency for the transitions in the structure which cause these alterations; its final size depends upon the minute structural elements and the texture in which these are organized. A difference in length at the same tension obtained by extension or release under static and semidynamic conditions must essentially be interpreted as more or less reversible alterations in the textural pattern (disrupture and reformation of entanglements). Under dynamic conditions transformations in the minute structural elements themselves also to a considerable degree contribute to the viscoelastic properties.

Fig. 12 shows length-tension diagrams taken successively over a period of 90 minutes. The first was markedly different in shape from the following length-tension diagrams. The length with a load of 5 dynes was 6.5 mm. After the first extension to 1000 dynes ($= P_0$) followed by release to 10 dynes, the length was increased to 8.7 mm. The large effect of the first stretch may be concealed by the manipulations to which the fibre might have been subjected during the preparation. The following extension and release diagrams, each of which lasted for 15 minutes, all had the same shape. The difference between stretch and release amounted maximally to 0.35 mm and the elongation after a cycle was about 0.2 mm.

The difference between the first curve and the following length-tension diagrams must be due to a large alteration in the minute structural pattern of the fibre, which required about 1 hour for restitution. This alteration in structure was also reflected in the change in the elastic properties. The stiffness of the fibre *varied* more strongly with the tension after the first extension, the stiffness then being higher at maximal loads and— considerably lower at small loads.

Effect of temperature.

The *temperature* only very slightly affects the length-tension diagram of the resting fibre. The variation in tension with temperature is maximal at length 120 and the increase in tension at the same length amounted to 0.15 per cent per degree of increase in temperature (Buchthal et *al.* 1944a). The percentage variation in tension thus was less than half of the corresponding variation in absolute temperature, in contrast to rubber, for example, for which a proportionality to the absolute temperature is found. The temperature coefficient found for the resting tension of the muscle fibre corresponded to a decrease in *length* of 1 per cent at an increase in temperature of 25° C.

Josenhans (1949) found twice as large a dependence on temperature for whole muscles at low degrees of extension as that found in single fibres. The cause of this difference may perhaps be sought in the fact that he used a new muscle, which had been resting for some time before the experiment, for each determination of the temperature coefficient. In the experiments carried out on the single fibre, the fibre had been subjected to some stretches and releases before the determination of the temperature coefficient, since the first stretching gave a length-tension diagram differing essentially from the following ones. At each level of tension, measurements of tension were performed at varying temperatures for a period of 2 hours. It is possible that the component of the fibre tension causing the different course of the first extension is chiefly thermo-elastic and may explain the more pronounced temperature dependence at a low degree of stretch found by Josenhans.

An inversion of the temperature dependence from length 144 was found by Josenhans and by Wöhlisch and Grüning (1943). Since 44 per cent of stretch in a whole muscle containing fibres of different equilibrium lengths may well indicate that some of the fibres are stretched about 100 per cent, the inversion found does not disagree with the experiments on single fibres, in which the temperature coefficient was examined only up to length 180. The decreasing temperature dependence found with increasing degree of stretch does not exclude a point of inversion at higher stretch. The reversed temperature dependence may also, however, be due to the intramuscular connective tissue, which will play a more important rôle in a whole muscle than in a single fibre.

The elastic after-effect had a different temperature dependence in the muscle fibre than in rubber. As appears from the length-tension diagrams in fig. 13 the hysteresis in the fibre bundle is larger at 21° C. than at 0° C. In the example shown in fig. 13 the increase and the decrease in length took 20 minutes. The hysteresis at 21° C. amounted to 22 per cent of the maximal tension and at 0° C., to only 14 per cent. We have found the

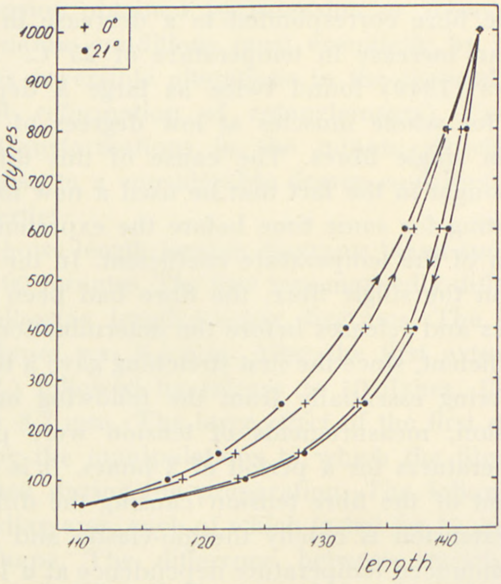


Fig. 13. Static length-tension diagrams recorded with increasing and decreasing tension. Duration of each cycle 20 minutes. First cycle 0°, second cycle 21°, and third cycle 0° C. Curve at 0° C. represents mean from the first and the third cycle. *ordinate*: tension in dynes, P_0 = appr. 1000 dynes. *abscissa*: length in per cent of L_0.

reverse to be the case for normally vulcanized rubber, the hysteresis at 25° C. being 16 per cent and at 0° C. 37 per cent of the maximal tension (L = 1200), while the hysteresis was larger—but less dependent on temperature—in undervulcanized rubber (stretched up to L = 650, 36 per cent at both 0° and 25° C.).

The hysteresis found in the length-tension diagrams of the muscle fibre may be due to permanent deformation (plasticity) and/or to elastic aftereffect. In order to decide between these two possibilities the slow adjustment to the stationary state after rapid changes in tension or length was investigated as a function of time under well defined experimental conditions. Such experiments are denoted *transient experiments* in what follows.

Transients.

1. The course of elongation following quick loading in the resting fibre (isotonic transient).

a) Initial adjustment (up to 20 msec.).

When the muscle fibre was subjected to a sudden increase in load ($\Delta P = 0.05$ to $0.5\ P_0$),[1] its length increased as a function

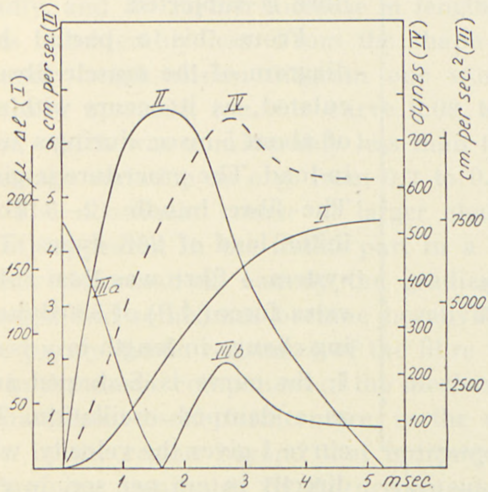


Fig. 14. Analysis of the time course of length, velocity, acceleration, and force after a sudden increase in load of 530 dynes in the resting muscle fibre. 0° C.
curve I: resulting change in length, ordinate I in μ.
curve II: velocity of change in length, ordinate II in cm per second.
curve III: positive (a) and negative (b) acceleration, ordinate III in cm per sec.^{2} or transformed to inertial force, ordinate IV in dynes.
curve IV: resulting force acting on muscle fibre itself, ordinate IV in dynes.
abscissa: time after increase in load in msec.

of time, first rapidly and then more and more slowly. The initial course was examined in a special series of experiments, in which the variation in length during the first 20 msec. was recorded through photoelectric transmission by a cathode ray oscilloscope (cf. p. 20). Since the initial course was markedly affected by the inertia of the system, the resulting effect on the tension had to be taken into account in the evaluation of the variation in length caused by the change in load.

When a force is introduced into a system having a given

[1] With regard to the size of ΔP applied to the isolated fibre compared with that examined in whole muscle, see p. 158.

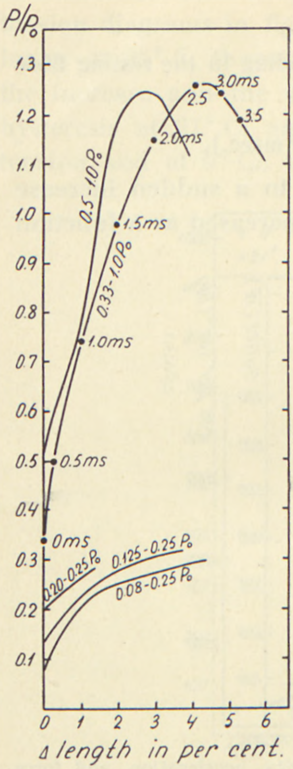


Fig. 15. *Partial length-tension diagrams.* Length as a function of load in the first 4 msec. during a sudden increase in load. Resting muscle fibre, 0° C. Different initial loads at final load 0.25 P_0 and 1.0 P_0. Initial and final value of load are denoted by the figures on the curves. The points of curve 0.33–1.0 P_0 indicate time in msec, after change in load.
ordinate: tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: elongation in per cent of L_0.

equivalent mass, elastic force, and damping resistance, a change in length is produced. From the extra load introduced, the recorded course of stretch, and the equivalent mass of the system it is possible to calculate the force of inertia, and hence the real tension to which the fibre is subjected.

From this a partial length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre can be calculated, as it occurs within an interval of about 5 msec. during a sudden change in load. The procedure is given in fig. 14. The fibre bundle (2—3 fibres) had an initial load of 266 dynes. The recording system + fibre was then subjected to an extra force (ΔP) of 530 dynes. The resulting change in length in μ is seen in curve I; the curve is S-shaped and continues as a damped oscillation. The slope of curve I gives the velocity, which is given directly in cm per sec. in curve II. The slope of the velocity curve corresponds to the acceleration, which acts on the system + fibre (curves IIIa and IIIb). Thus, knowing the acceleration and the equivalent mass of the system, the force of inertia could be determined. This was initially equal to ΔP (530 dynes). At 1.7 msec. the inertial force passed zero, the velocity simultaneously approaching its maximum. The extra force, which acted on the fibre, hence, was initially zero and increased gradually as the inertial force decreased. When the inertial force was zero, all 530 dynes thus acted on the fibre alone. After this, the velocity decreased, the inertial force reversed sign (curve IIIb) and therefore added to the external extra load so that the resulting force acting on the fibre exceeded 530 dynes. The course of the resulting force acting on the fibre as a function of time is given in curve IV. Thus, from curves IV and I the dynamic partial length-tension diagram can be plotted.

Partial length-tension diagrams for different initial loads are seen in fig. 15. It is characteristic of these diagrams that during the first increase in length up to about 1 per cent the tension increases rapidly, and for further increase in length the increase in tension was considerably less. From the shape of the static and semidynamic length-tension diagram one would expect a curvature concave upwards, i. e. for curve 0.08 to 0.25 P_0 an initial gradient, which was considerably less than the final one. A small percentage variation as e. g. from 0.2 to 0.25 P_0 gave a straight line. The non-linear course at larger changes in load ($>$ 20 per cent) appeared in the initial part in a manner suggesting a plastic deformation, namely the gradient of the resistance decreased and sometimes became negative with elongation. Thus the purely elastic resistance of the fibre was reduced. The decrease in the elastic component of the mechanical reaction of the fibre manifested itself, furthermore, in the course of the *after-oscillation* in the region beyond that indicated in curve I, fig. 14. The damping manifested by the decrement in the after-oscillation is most pronounced at high loads and large changes in length.

A further differentiation between elastic and viscous forces and plastic changes in the initial course was performed by comparing the fibre + recording system with a model which contains a known mass, elasticity, and damping. Fig. 16 shows the response (a = length, b = velocity) of the individual components as well as different combinations to a sudden change in load.

When a constant force acts on a *mass* (m), the change in length increases with the square of time and the velocity linearly with time. The effect of the force on an *elasticity* (G) causes an immediate increase in length, which in fig. 16 (a) appears as an increase in length constant with time and in fig. 16 (b) with velocity zero, apart from the instant at which the force is introduced, when the velocity is infinitely high.

If the force acts on *mass* and *elasticity* ($m + G$), the result is an oscillation with an amplitude varying between zero and twice the increase in length which the force could impose on the elasticity alone. The corresponding velocity is zero at the moment of loading and reaches

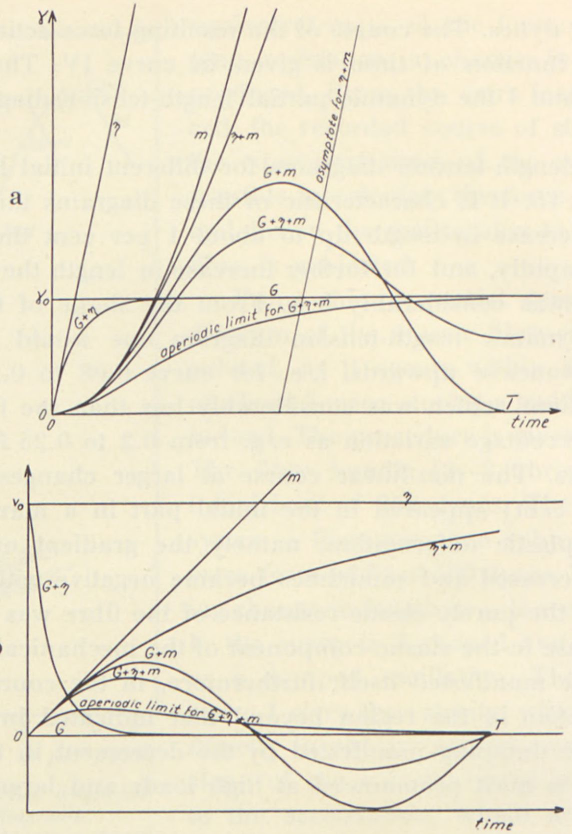


Fig. 16a and b. Course of elongation (a) and velocity (b) as a function of time in a mechanical system subjected to a sudden change in load (isotonic transient). System consisting of:
curve η: viscosity
curve m: mass
curve $m + \eta$: mass + viscosity
curve G: elasticity
curve $G + \eta$: elasticity + viscosity in parallel (Voigt-element)
curve $G + m$: elasticity + mass
curve $G + \eta + m$: Voigt-element + mass, oscillating and aperiodic course.
ordinate: (a) elongation, (b) velocity, linear scale.
abscissa: time, linear scale.
The viscosity η is adjusted so that the oscillation amplitude decreases to $\frac{1}{e}$ in the course of one oscillation period.

its maximum when the length has reached its point of inflection. At that time the velocity is $\frac{2}{\pi}$ times that which the mass alone would have.

A *damping resistance* (η) when it is acted upon by a constant force gives an increase in length which is linear with time, and a corresponding constant velocity.

When the force acts on a combination of *mass and damping resistance* ($m + \eta$), the change in length first follows that which the system would have had with mass alone, since the forces of inertia predominate as long as the velocity is low. With increasing velocity, the damping resistance increases, hence the acceleration decreases, the velocity becomes constant, and the length increases linearly with time. The velocity for this combination rises exponentially towards its maximum which is determined by the damping resistance.

If *mass, damping resistance and elasticity* ($m + \eta + G$) are combined and η and G are in parallel, an oscillating movement with decreasing amplitude is obtained. If the damping resistance exceeds a critical value, the oscillation becomes aperiodic. This is the case when $\eta^2 \geqq 4\, m\, G$, i.e. $sr \geqq 2$ (cf. p. 17).

The response of the muscle fibre to a sudden increase in load resembled the curve calculated for a combination of mass, elasticity, and viscosity. The first period of the oscillation indicated the presence of an almost aperiodically damped elasticity. However, this was followed by a small oscillation with a much smaller decrement than that corresponding to the first phase of the oscillation. At the same final load, varied between 0.25 and 1.0 P_0, it was furthermore found that the amplitude of the after-oscillation was practically independent of the size of the variation in load, although it might have been expected a priori that the amplitude of oscillation would increase with increasing ΔP. This was true as long as ΔP was $<$ 50 per cent of the final load. When ΔP exceeded 50 per cent of the final load, a considerable increase was usually seen in the decrement of the after-oscillation. Thus, in the first half period of the oscillations an increasing proportion of the energy introduced in the transient was absorbed. The ratio between the total elastic energy and the dissipated losses decreased with the amount of energy introduced. This means that viscosity with rising ΔP dominated the mechanical reaction of the fibre increasingly, and must be interpreted as being caused by a "plastic" elongation, which always occurred when the variation in load exceeded 20—25 per cent of the final load. As long as ΔP was less than half the final load, the plastic yielding was completed within the first half period of the stretch. At higher variations in load it may continue and cause a completely aperiodic course.

In the cases in which the decrement of the after-oscillations was so small that the period could be determined, the elastic component, i. e. the dynamic elastic stiffness was calculated on the basis of the simple spring-mass formula. In comparison with the magnitude of the dynamic stiffness measured during continuous vibrations of the same frequency and at stationary load the vibrational stiffness measured immediately after transient was 50—60 per cent higher. For example the experiment given in fig. 18 showed a relative stiffness calculated from the frequency of after-oscillations of 30 L_0^{-1}, while the stiffness obtained with continuous vibrations was 18—20 L_0^{-1} (0° C.). The cause of this difference is discussed on p. 104.

If instead of the initial course of length and tension (i. e. within 5 msec.) the elongation was measured which was attained 50 msec. after the transient change in load, the corresponding dynamic length-tension diagrams had an exponential course. Thus, as in static experiments, the differential quotient increased with increasing length and tension, but the gradient referred to the same tension was 3 to 5 times steeper than in static diagrams. An *increased initial* load, with the same extra load, resulted in a shorter elongation just as the gradient, i. e. the stiffness, was higher at a higher load. Table 1 shows the stiffness (expressed with P_0 as unit of tension and L_0 as unit of length) at different initial loads and variations in load. The dynamic stiffness measured

Table 1.
Dynamic stiffness in isotonic transient measured in $P_0 L_0^{-1}$ (0° C).

Initial load P/P_0	0.125	0.25	0.50	0.75
Stiffness at 2 % variation in length, time of adjustment 20 msec.	3.2 (16)	5.0 (14)	9.0 (14)	12.5 (14)
Stiffness at 5 % variation in length, time of adjustment 20 msec.	3.7 (14)	6.0 (13)	10.0 (13)	.. ..
Stiffness at 8 % variation in length, time of adjustment 20 msec.	4.5 (13)	8.25 (13)	.. ..	.. ..
Stiffness after a transient producing a variation in length of 2 %, time of adjustment 10 sec.	1.65 (9)	2.8 (9)	6.2 (10)	.. ..

The figures in brackets denote the relative stiffness (for definition see p. 59).

20 msec. after the change in load varied between 3.2 and 12.5 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ (0° C.). At the *same initial* load the stiffness increased with increasing additional load. On account of the proportionality existing between both static and dynamic stiffness and load this increase was to be expected. However, referred to the mean load (Table 4, p. 61) the increase in stiffness in transient experiments is slightly less than proportional to the load (cf. also dynamic

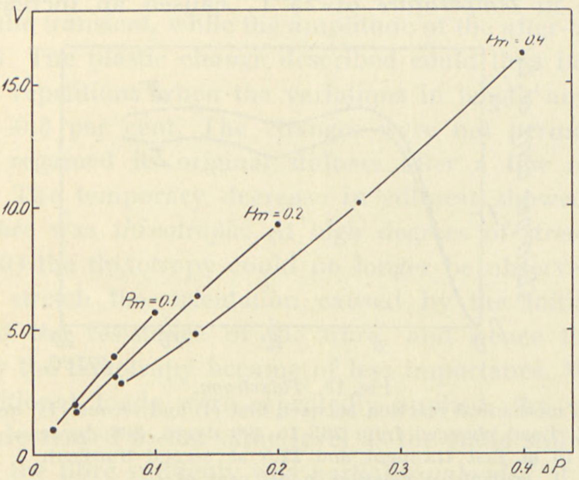


Fig. 17. *Maximum velocity of changes in length* in isotonic transients as a function of the change in load for different mean loads indicated in units of P_0 by the figures on the curves (0° C).
ordinate: maximum velocity in units of L_0 per sec.
abscissa: change in load in units of P_0.

elastic stiffness, p. 80). If the stiffness was measured from the elongation 10 sec. after the change in load, it was reduced to half. If the mean tension was taken into account (relative stiffness) the reduction was less pronounced and amounted to approximately 40 per cent (see also Table 4).

The *maximal velocity of the change in length* produced by different transient loadings as a function of the additional load is given in fig. 17. These curves are taken from a series of experiments in which we have varied both the initial load and the ratio between the additional and the final load. For a given mean load (P_m) the maximum velocity varied linearly with the transient load applied. The difference in slope at different values of P_m was due to the non-linear course of the length-tension diagram. With the additional load equal to the initial load, the maximum velocity of elongation was attained on an average at a time at which the elongation was 37 per cent of the elongation at the start of the after-oscillations. This value was independent of the initial load. From these experiments it is seen that the tension changes with a decreasing gradient when the stretch is increased (cf. partial length-tension diagrams fig. 15).

A rise in *temperature* of 25° C. caused an increase in the

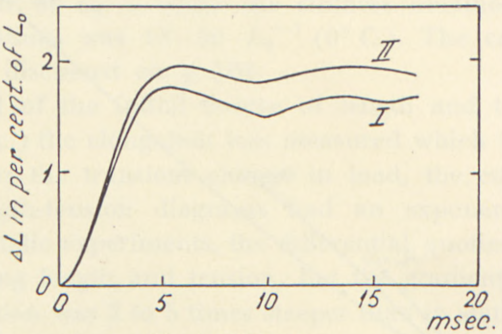


Fig. 18. *Thixotropy.*
Difference in mechanical reaction between first (I) and second (II) quick increase in load 0° C. Load changed from 285 to 400 dynes, 800 dynes = P_0; relative stiffness[1] = 19 at first transient and 22.5 at second transient.
ordinate: elongation in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time after increase in load in msec.

initial change in length of 30 to 50 per cent as compared with that found at 0° C. In the range examined, the effect of the temperature did not vary appreciably with changes in the additional load and the initial load.

Thixotropy.

The plasticity or thixotropy which must be assumed in order to explain the mechanical reaction of the fibre in the dynamic phase of the transient experiment, was also obvious from the softening effect which repeated transients had within the same level of load. At an initial load of e. g. 0.25 P_0 and an additional load of 0.04 P_0 an increase of 0.24 per cent of the fibre length (0° C.) was observed at the first loading. The initial elongation increased with repeated loadings and at the fourth transient amounted to 0.38 per cent of the equilibrium length. Relative stiffness[1] calculated from the first transient was 52.0 and from

[1] Relative stiffness $= \dfrac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{load} + \text{stiffness-tension}}$ (cf. p. 59).

the fourth 33.0. A comparison of the present example with the one illustrated in fig. 18 shows the highest values of the relative stiffness, when the transient amplitude was small (cf. amplitude dependence of vibrational stiffness, p. 84 and stiffness measured by the period of after-oscillations p. 50). Apart from the increase in length amplitude, repeated loadings simultaneously caused an increase in the velocity of elongation in the initial phase of the transient, while the amplitude of the after-oscillations decreased. The plastic change described could thus be obtained by a few repetitions when the variations in length amounted to only 0.2—0.3 per cent. The changes were not permanent and the fibre regained its original stiffness after a few minutes of recovery. The temporary decrease in stiffness showed that the resting fibre was *thixotropic*. At high degrees of stretch (above length 170) the thixotropy could no longer be observed. In this range of stretch the orientation caused by the initial tension dominated the resistance of the fibre, and hence the change caused by the thixotropy became of less importance. When very high additional loads were repeatedly applied, the stiffness of the fibre decreased to the same level as the static stiffness.

When the fibre suddenly was partially *unloaded*, it shortened with about the same initial velocity as that which was measured during elongation between the same loads. At release, however, the high velocity was maintained over a variation in length which exceeded that observed during quick loading by about 50 per cent.

b) Prolonged creep (> 20 msec.).

At 20 msec. after transient there was still some distortion owing to the inertial force of the recording system. 50 msec. after the change in load this distortion (damped oscillation) had mainly disappeared and a smooth variation of length was obtained as a function of time.

Fig. 19 shows the effect of a change in load as a function of time. The units of the abscissa vary from curve to curve in the ratio 1:10. Curve I thus gives the course between 0 and 0.1 sec., curve II between 0 and 1 sec. and curve III between 0 and 10 sec. In the experiment shown the variation in load amounted to 50 dynes. In spite of the three different axes, the shape of the

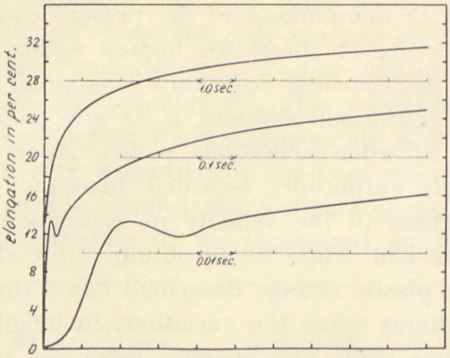


Fig. 19. Adjustment after a sudden change in load of 50 dynes, initial load 17 dynes. (P_0 = 1000 dynes), 0° C.

ordinate: elongation in per cent of L_0.

abscissa: curve I time in units of 0.01 sec.
curve II - - - - 0.1 sec.
curve III - - - - 1.0 sec.

The irregularity in the initial part of the curves between 0 and 50 msec. is due to the damped oscillation caused by the inertia of the recording system plus muscle fibre.

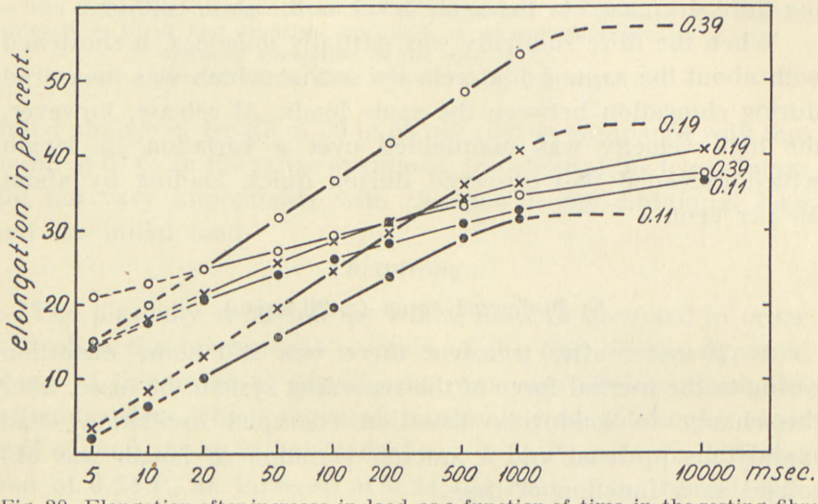


Fig. 20. Elongation after increase in load as a function of time in the resting fibre and during isotonic tetanic contraction, 0° C.

Different initial and additional loads. The figures on the curve denote the additional load in units of P_0. The initial load was $\frac{1}{3}$ of the additional load.

Thick lines: tetanic contraction.

thin lines: resting fibre.

ordinate: elongation in per cent of L_0.

abscissa: time after increase in load in msec., logarithmic scale.

curves was very nearly the same and this makes it natural to express the variation in length as a function of the logarithm of time. Fig. 20 gives for similar experiments the elongation in per cent of L_0 as a function of the logarithm of time, and it is seen that over a long range of time (2—3 decades) the lengths vary approximately linearly. In the example shown in the figure, the recording was finished after 10 sec. Other experiments with an observation time of more than 15 minutes showed that the elongation continued to be approximately proportional to the logarithm of time. The change in length can, therefore, be written in the form:

$$L(t) = L(1) + C_l \log t$$

$$\text{i. e.} \qquad v = \frac{C_l}{t}, \tag{23}$$

where $L(1)$ denotes the length of the fibre at the time 1.

Table 2.

Changes in length and C_l in the resting muscle fibre as a function of time at different additional loads (0° and 25° C.).

Temp. °C.	$\frac{\Delta P}{P_0}$	ΔL at 0.02 sec.	ΔL at 0.14 sec.	ΔL at 1.0 sec.	C_l in per cent of the equilibrium length
0	0.05	10.0	17.65	25.0	4.00
25	0.05	20.5	25.85	30.6	2.91
0	0.10	17.3	25.45	33.5	4.21
25	0.10	20.6	26.00	31.35	2.80
0	0.20	22.0	31.45	40.6	4.77
25	0.20	27.8	35.7	43.1	4.19
0	0.50	26.6	33.35	40.0	3.52
25	0.50	38.0	40.75	43.8	1.46

$\Delta P = P_2 - P_1$, where P_1 is the initial and P_2 the final load. For increasing load $P_2 = 4\,P_1$ and for decreasing load $P_2 = \frac{1}{4}\,P_1$. The constants found are mean values for positive and negative values of $\Delta P/P_0$. The variations in length and C_l are expressed in per cent of the equilibrium length.

Table 2 gives values for the constant C_l which is the velocity at time 1 sec., for different additional loads at 0° C. and 25° C. As a function of $\Delta P/P_0$ C_l has a maximum between 0.1 and 0.5 at 0° C., and decreases rapidly with rising *temperature*. This fall in C_l is apparently paradoxical, since a higher velocity would have been expected at higher temperature. The higher velocity is actually seen, but only in the initial course. As the total variation in length at a given variation in load is practically independent of temperature, the slow variation in length becomes less at high temperature and hence the reduction in velocity during the prolonged creep becomes comprehensible.

2. The course of stress-relaxation following sudden changes in length in the resting fibre (isometric transient).

a) Initial course, up to 1.5 msec.; development of tension.

When the fibre was stretched suddenly, the tension rose and reached its maximum when the extension was completed. Hereafter the tension fell off, first rapidly and then with decreasing velocity, but always approaching a final tension higher than the initial one. After 10 msec., according to the initial load, at 0° C. the decrease in tension amounted to 30 to 70 per cent of the maximal increase in tension. There was no significant difference in the relative course of stress-relaxation after quick stretches of 7 and 13 per cent of L_0.

By analogy with experiments with sudden changes in load an attempt was made to characterize the initial course by a dynamic partial length-tension diagram. Since the sudden change

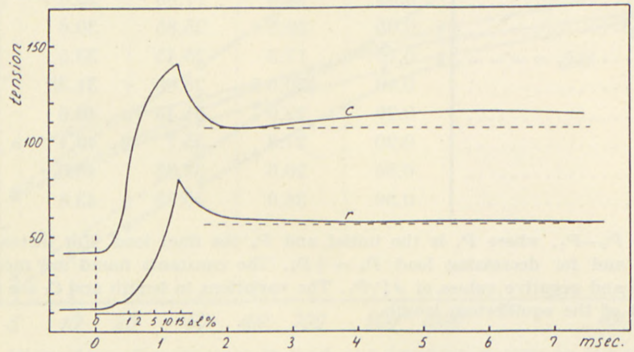


Fig. 21. Time course of tension during and after a quick increase in length of 13 per cent of L_0. 0° C.
r = in the resting fibre.
c = during isometric tetanic contraction.
ordinate: tension in arbitrary units, P_0 = 100 units.
abscissa (*below*): time after start of the increase in length in msec.
small scale above: elongation in per cent of L_0.

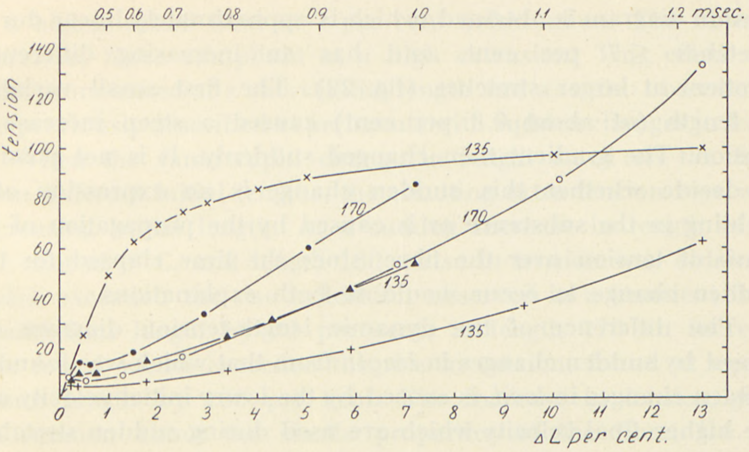


Fig. 22. *Partial length-tension diagrams* obtained from the initial course of isometric transients at rest and during contraction. 0° C. Duration of increase in length approximately 1 msec. The length is assumed to increase with t^3 (see text).

● ——— ● ——— ● ——— }
▲ ——— ▲ ——— ▲ ——— } resting fibre.
○ ——— ○ ——— ○ ——— }
+ ——— + ——— + ——— }

× ——— × ——— × ——— isometric tetanic contraction.

The figures on the curves denote the initial length in per cent of L_0.
ordinate: tension in arbitrary units, $P_0 = 75$ units.
abscissa: (below) elongation in per cent of L_0.
(above) time after the start of the increase in length in msec.
With regard to differences in the gradients of the length tension diagrams in curves with the same initial and different final length, see text (p. 58).

in length was introduced by means of an electromagnetic system, it proceeded with increasing velocity owing to inductance and inertia. However, considering that the electrical time constant of the moving system was approximately 10 msec., the moving force acting on the system within the first msec. could be assumed to increase linearly with time. Since the force exerted by the fibre did not exceed 1 per cent of the inertial forces, the motion governing the change in length will be practically that of a mass m subjected to a force increasing linearly with time. The velocity thus rose with the square and the change in length with the third power of time. The elongation in per cent, which was obtained during stretch, is given in fig. 21 by a scale above the abscissa.

If the change in length determined in this way is plotted against the corresponding values for tension, a dynamic length-tension diagram is obtained, which is approximately linear during stretches ≤ 7 per cent, and has an increasing differential quotient at larger stretches (fig. 22). The first small variation in length (of about 0.3 per cent) caused a steep increase in tension. The gradient then changed suddenly. It is not possible to decide whether this sudden change is an expression of a yielding in the substance or is caused by the propagation of the wave of tension over the fibre, since the time elapsed for this sudden change to occur would fit both explanations.

The difference of the dynamic length-tension diagram obtained by sudden changes in *length* from that which was found at sudden changes in *load*, is caused by the lower initial velocity and the higher final velocity which are used during sudden stretches. The difference demonstrates how the shape of the length-tension diagram is affected by the velocity with which the stretch proceeds.

If the *sudden stretch* was increased from 7 to 13 per cent of L_0, the extra tension increased 15 per cent at moderate degrees of stretch ($L = 135$). At larger initial length ($L = 170$) the increase amounted to 50 per cent. The increase in tension caused by the elongation thus increased less than proportionally to the elongation, although the reverse would be expected according to the generally assumed length-tension diagram. It must, however, be considered that the length-tension diagrams obtained by an extension to 7 and 13 per cent did not coincide in the first part of the change of length, as would be expected. The previously mentioned change in slope occurred at a sudden elongation of 13 per cent at an earlier time and at a lower tension than in the curve for 7 per cent elongation, while the curves as a whole are similar. The different positions of the hump both in time, tension, and length in spite of the same initial tension and stiffness indicate a yielding in the substance. Furthermore, it is remarkable that the slope of the length-tension diagram despite the same initial length and load was steeper when the variation in length was 7 per cent, than when it was 13 per cent. This variation of the tension with the amount of stretch is an expression of the previously described *thixotropy*. The curves in fig. 22 represent a mean value for 4—5 repeated elongations taken at 20 sec. intervals. With the larger, repeated deformation (13 per cent) the thixotropy of the fibre will exert its influence to a higher extent than at 7 per cent deformation. The fibre is, therefore, more compliant at a high extension. This effect was most pronounced at a short initial length and was also observed in the previously described experiments with sudden changes in load.

When the same rapid change in length acted on the fibre from different initial lengths, the resulting extra tension rose with increasing initial length. At a sudden increase in length of 13 per cent at 0° C. and length 130 a rise in tension was obtained, which exceeded the rise in tension observed in a transient from equilibrium length by 30 per cent; at length 170 an increase was found which exceeded the rise in tension, found at equilibrium length by 100 per cent. The increase in tension gives information about the elastic properties of the fibre, i. e. its stiffness, during relatively large and non-periodic changes in length.

Table 3 gives the stiffness after an isometric transient, 1 to 100 msec. after the change in length and at an elongation of 7 and 13 per cent of the equilibrium length. The stiffness increased with the load and decreased with the size of the variation in length and with the time which had elapsed after the change in length.

TABLE 3.
Stiffness in the isometric transients in $P_0 L_0^{-1}$.

Time after change in length in msec.	Change in length as percentage of equilibrium length	Initial load in units of P_0	0	0.025	0.045	0.200
		Initial length in units of $L_0 = 100$	100	125	135	170
1	7	..	..	..	7.9	12.0
1	13	..	..	..	4.8	10.0
20	13	..	1,6	3.3	4.3	6.2
100	13	..	1.3	3.0	..	5.8
10.000	13	..	(0.7)	(2.3)	..	(5.1)

The figures in brackets are extrapolated.

In order to compare the values of stiffness found by the different procedures, it is convenient to express the stiffness per unit tension (Table 4) in the following way:

$$\varkappa = \frac{G}{\left(\frac{P_m + P_{st}}{P_0}\right)} \tag{24}$$

The stiffness (G) is defined as $\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta L}$ and measured in units of $P_0 L_0^{-1}$, P_m denotes $\frac{\text{initial } P + \text{final } P}{2}$, and P_{st} denotes the stiffness-tension (see p. 84). The advantage of introducing this *relative stiffness* is that its value is practically independent of the load. It appears from Table 4 that the stiffness referred to the same load, shows good agreement in the isometric and isotonic transient experiments. In both cases the relative stiffness decreased with increasing amplitude and increasing time of adjustment. The values of stiffness from isotonic transient given in Table 1 represent mean values from experiments of the same type as given in Table 4. In each experiment the stiffness was obtained as a mean from quick loading and unloading. When comparing the values of stiffness in the two tables it should be remembered that stiffness in Table 1 is given as a function of the initial tension. In Table 4 the stiffness is referred to the mean tension as defined above. Since the course of the variation in length with time is approximately symmetric in transient loading and unloading, the mean tension represents a reasonable parameter for reference when stiffnesses are compared which are obtained under different conditions.

The $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ measured in vibration experiments, at a maximal amplitude of 2 per cent L_0 (peak to peak), is larger than the corresponding value obtained from isotonic transients, but less than the values found in isometric transient experiments at 7 per cent change in length. Considering that individual variations must occur in these 3 different series of investigations, it appears justifiable to conclude that the relative stiffness at the same load, the same amplitude of change in length, and the same velocity does not display significant differences in isometric transient, isotonic transient, and vibration experiments. Table 4 furthermore shows that the relative value of the dynamic stiffness is 3—4 times higher than the static stiffness, which was measured from the gradient of the length-tension diagram with a recording time of 30 minutes (15 minutes rising and 15 minutes falling tension). If this time interval is extended, still lower values are obtained for the static stiffness. At load zero the static modulus of elasticity at 0° C. is 0.5—0.6 × 10^6 dynes × cm^{-2}. The cause of the difference in stiffness at different times of adjustment will be further discussed in connection with the spectra of retardation times (p. 74, 105).

Temperature dependence.

The additional tension (ΔP) produced by a sudden increase in length varied with the temperature. At equilibrium length ΔP decreased 40 per cent, when the temperature rose from 0° to 20° C. At an initial length 130, the additional tension decreased by 15 per cent with a rise in the temperature of 20° C., and at lengths of about 170 the variation in additional tension caused by the temperature was within the limits of experimental accuracy. The

Table 4.

Relative stiffness expressed as $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{mean tension}^1 + \text{stiffness-tension}^2}$ in units of L_0^{-1} (0° C).

	Change in length in % of equilibrium length	Time in msec. after change in length or load					
		1	10	20	100	10000	10^6
Relative stiffness from isotonic transient	2	..	..	14.7	..	8.9	..
	5	..	..	13.7	..	..	..
	8	..	..	12.5	..	..	..
Relative stiffness from isometric transient	7	22.8	..	..	..	..	..
	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	12	12.5	..	11.5	10.8	(10.0)[3]	..
Relative stiffness[4] from vibration experiments	2	..	18—20	..	..	..	..
	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Relative stiffness[5], static	..	..	..	..	..	..	4.1
	..	..	..	..	..	..	..

[1] mean tension $= \frac{\text{initial } P + \text{final } P}{2}$

[2] stiffness-tension = 0.05 P_0.

[3] extrapolated.

[4] average of 25 experiments on 25 fibres measured in vibration experiments. Frequency 50 c.p.s. corresponding to 10 msec. after transient loading. Amplitude of vibration, peak to peak, 2 per cent.

[5] from gradients of the length-tension diagram, recording time 30 minutes.

same dependence on temperature was found for the stiffness determined in vibration experiments.

On the other hand, a comparison of the influence of temperature on the tension obtained in static and dynamic experiments showed considerable difference. In static experiments (p. 42), the tension *increased* according to the degree of stretch between 0 and 0.15 per cent per degree C. of increasing temperature (static stiffness practically unchanged). However, the alternating tension for a given vibrational amplitude *decreased* with increasing temperature, the variation being ten times higher than that of the static stiffness. In both cases the dependence on temperature is small at high degrees of stretch. The difference between the temperature dependence found in static and dynamic experiments is not surprising, since the former is determined by forces which are in equilibrium, while in dynamic experiments it is determined predominantly by the forces which cause the rearrangement of the structure, i. e. the forces which cause a deformation velocity.

Quick release.

A sudden *decrease in length* caused a reduced tension in the fibre. If the decrease in length was < 1.5 per cent of the equilibrium length, a course of tension was obtained at release of the same type as during extension, but which in agreement with the non-linear course of the length-tension diagram, had a smaller

TABLE 5.

Isometric transient

length	temp. °C	ΔL in % of L_0	$\log \frac{dP/P_0}{dt}$ at 10 msec.	$\log \frac{dP/P_0}{dt}$ at 32 msec.	$\log \frac{dP/P_0}{dt}$ at 100 msec.	Increase in tension in units of P_0 at				
						0 msec.	1 msec.	10 msec.	32 msec.	100 msec.
100	0	12	2.82	2.20	1.70	0.550	0.31	0.21	0.18	0.15
100	25	12	2.40	1.76	1.40	0.330	0.19	0.12	0.10	0.10
125	0	12	2.96	1.45	1.65	0.74	0.50	0.41	0.38	0.36
125	25	12	2.70	1.04	1.65	0.60	0.36	0.27	0.25	0.22
170	0	12	2.70	2.31	1.96	1.00	0.82	0.75	0.72	0.70
170	25	12	2.58	2.23	2.00	1.11	0.89	0.82	0.79	0.75

Velocity of change in tension in arbitrary units.

amplitude. If the decrease in length exceeded 1.5 to 2 per cent of L_0, zero tension was reached, and the fibre began to display a positive tension only after 20 to 50 msec. had elapsed after the moment of quick release. Obviously, when the amplitude of release exceeded a value which caused the tension to decrease to zero, the curves obtained were not suitable for an analysis of the course of tension.

b. Course of stress-relaxation within 100 msec. after length alteration.

Just as the length increased with time on a sudden increase in load, the tension decreased with time after a sudden increase in length. This variation proceeded rapidly immediately after the change in length (p. 56), and then with decreasing velocity. If the tension is plotted as a function of the logarithm of time, an approximately rectilinear course is obtained 1 msec. after the end of the stretch corresponding to the equation:

$$P(t) = P(1) - C_p \log t, \qquad (25)$$

where $P(1)$ represents the tension at time 1 (see fig. 23 and Table 5).

The increase in tension at low and moderate degrees of stretch was higher at 0° C. than at 20° C. At high degrees of stretch, however, the increase in tension was highest at 20° C.

The temperature dependence of the course of stress-relaxation is

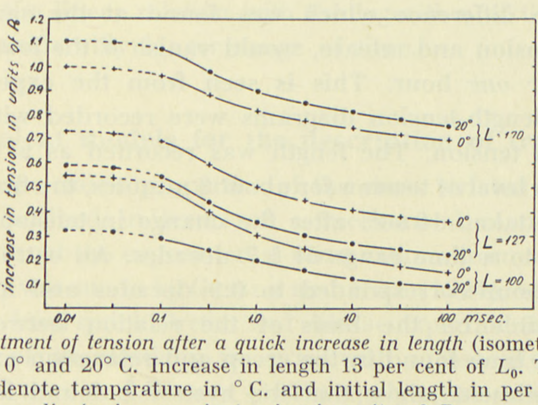


Fig. 23. *Adjustment of tension after a quick increase in length* (isometric transient). Resting fibre, 0° and 20° C. Increase in length 13 per cent of L_0. The figures on the curves denote temperature in ° C. and initial length in per cent of L_0.
ordinate: increase in tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: time after increase in length in msec.

seen from the values of the velocity of change in tension in Table 5. At length 100 an increase in temperature of 25° C. caused a decrease in stress-relaxation velocity of 33 per cent (measured 32 msec. after quick stretch). In whole muscle using quick stretches of the same order of magnitude as those applied here, Hill (1950) did not find any measurable variation of the course of stress-relaxation with temperature.

The formulas deduced for creep and stress-relaxation in isotonic and isometric transient indicate that the adjustment to a new state proceeds with about the same velocity, independent of whether the experiments are carried out at constant length or at constant tension.

The ratio between the increase in tension and in elongation (stiffness) is, as previously stated, identical after about 20 msec. in the experiments performed under isotonic and under isometric conditions (Table 4). At equilibrium length and at moderate degrees of stretch, the stiffness observed in both isotonic and isometric transients decreased with rising temperature (30—35 per cent per 20° C.). Creep and relaxation velocity had a similar temperature coefficient as well, the velocity of the change in length or tension after a transient decreasing approximately 30 per cent, when the temperature was increased from 0° to 25° C.

The transient experiments enable us to evaluate the type of the hysteresis occurring during the recording of the length-tension diagrams. This hysteresis was present regardless of whether the diagrams were recorded with rapid or very slow variations in length. The difference which was found at the same tension during extension and release, would vanish if the load was kept constant for *one* hour. This is seen from the experiments in which the length-tension diagrams were recorded with stepwise variation in tension. The length was recorded as a function of time at each level of tension for about 8 minutes, the first measurement being taken 10 sec. after the change in tension, thus corresponding to a time range of 1.7 decades. An extrapolation in time to 1 hour corresponded to 0.9 decades and appeared to be permissible on the basis of the relation between length-tension and time found in the creep and relaxation experiments. These experiments show that the hysteresis found in the static length-tension diagrams, including the very first extension (fig. 12) is not due to plasticity, but to the delayed elasticity which manifested itself by the fact that over a wide range of time the fibre adjusts itself to variations in length and tension, approximately linearly with the logarithm of time. Only at extreme loads ($> 0.5\, P_0$ or length 170) did the fibre show irreversible changes in length, which, when repeated length-tension diagrams were recorded, amounted to 4 per cent per length-tension diagram (recording-time 15 min. each, maximum tension $= P_0$). The apparently plastic phase (thixotropy), which was found during the rapid change in length, cannot be seen in the static length-tension diagram.

To summarize, it can be concluded from the transient experiments that the mechanical properties of the fibre during the rapid phase of stretch indicate the presence of thixotropy, which appears partly as plasticity during elongation, and partly as decreasing stiffness during repeated stretches (fig. 18). This effect was most pronounced at low loads. The transient experiments showed furthermore that the length or tension adjust themselves approximately linearly with the logarithm of time. In isotonic experiments the change in length at rest was practically linear over a range from 20 to 10 000 msec., and in isometric experiments the change in tension was linear from 1 msec. up to at least 100 msec. Experiments with constant length thus give information about a time interval after transient, which escaped measurement in the isotonic experiments. Although in the present experiments only changes in length which occurred within 100 msec. were included, the linear relation with the logarithm of time extended over a considerably longer range of time.

Equivalent models for the description of transients.

The visco-elastic properties of the cross striated muscle fibre can be described in terms of a mechanical model. The first attempt to treat the experimental observations from whole muscle in this way was made by Gasser and Hill (1924), who described the results from quick stretch and release experiments by a model consisting of an elasticity in series with a viscosity (Maxwell-element). Levin and Wyman (1927) applying stretch and release with constant velocity demonstrated that this equivalent model was unsuitable and suggested a system composed of three elements, a pure elasticity in series with a damped elasticity. The latter consists of a pure elasticity in parallel with a viscosity (VOIGT-element). However, this simple analogue cannot adequately describe the mechanical reaction of the isolated muscle fibre in the transient experiments. Therefore, it was necessary to develop a more complicated model[1] of the same type as used in high polymer physics. There are a number of different possibilities available for the description of the visco-elastic behaviour, but as pointed out by ALFREY and DOTY (1947) they are all *mathematically equivalent*.

An isotonic transient applied to a visco-elastic material is most conveniently described in terms of the *Voigt-model*, while an isometric transient is described most easily by the *Maxwell-model* (ALFREY, 1948). However, KUHN *et al.* (1947 a, 1947b) have applied the Maxwell-model for the description of the effect of isotonic transients in caoutchouc. GROSS (1947, 1948) has derived the general transformation formulas connecting these two models.

The Voigt-model.

A Voigt-model consists of Voigt-elements (retarded elasticities), which are coupled in series. This series can contain an element which has "degenerated" to a pure elasticity (fig. 24). The single Voigt-element is characterized by a modulus of elasticity $\frac{1}{J_i}$ and a retardation time τ_i. The reaction of the Voigt-element to a change in load $\sigma(t)$ is determined by the equation of motion:

$$\frac{1}{J_i}\gamma_i + \frac{1}{J_i}\tau_i\frac{d\gamma_i}{dt} = \sigma(t), \tag{26}$$

where $\gamma_i\,(t)$ is the deformation.

The response of the element to a sudden change in load σ therefore is:

$$\gamma_i(t) = \sigma J_i\left\{1 - e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_i}}\right\}. \tag{27}$$

[1] JORDAN (1939) has suggested a complex mechanical system for the description of plastic properties of smooth muscle.

A discrete series of Voigt-elements, which contains a pure elasticity $\frac{1}{J_0}$ reacts to a *sudden constant change in load* according to the expression:

$$\gamma(t) = \sigma\left[J_0 + \sum_i J_i\left(1 - e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_i}}\right)\right]. \qquad (28)$$

A continuous distribution of Voigt-elements plus a pure elasticity $\frac{1}{J_0}$ reacts according to the expression:

$$\gamma(t) = \sigma\left[J_0 + \int_0^\infty J(\tau)\left(1 - e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}}\right)d\tau\right], \qquad (29)$$

where $J(\tau)$ is the distribution function for the retardation times. The final elongation becomes:

$$\gamma_\infty = \sigma\left[J_0 + \int_0^\infty J(\tau)\,d\tau\right]. \qquad (30)$$

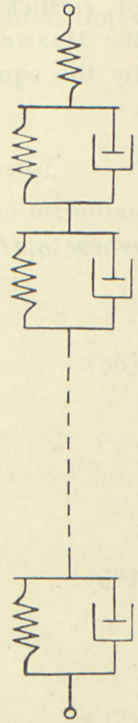


Fig. 24. *Voigt-model* (Kelvin model) see text.

Equation (30) expresses the linear relationship between static length and tension in the Voigt-model. The static length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre is approximately exponential, and this non-linearity will cause variations in the Voigt-model used here dependent upon the initial and the final state of length and tension. Thus, unless the deformation is small, J_0 and $J(\tau)$ will depend on both the initial and the final state of the fibre. This behaviour is illustrated in a later section which deals with the application of Voigt-models to the effect of isotonic transients (p. 72).

The Maxwell-model.

A Maxwell-model consists of Maxwell-elements (an elasticity in series with a viscosity) which are coupled in parallel. One of these elements can "degenerate" so that it consists only of an elasticity (fig. 25). This will prevent the model from flowing infinitely under an external load.

The single Maxwell-element is characterized by a modulus of elasticity G_i and a relaxation time τ_i. The response of the Maxwell-element to a change in length $\gamma(t)$ is determined by the equation of motion:

$$\frac{\sigma_i(t)}{G_i \tau_i} + \frac{1}{G_i}\frac{d\sigma_i}{dt} = \frac{d\gamma}{dt}, \qquad (31)$$

where $\sigma_i(t)$ is the tension.

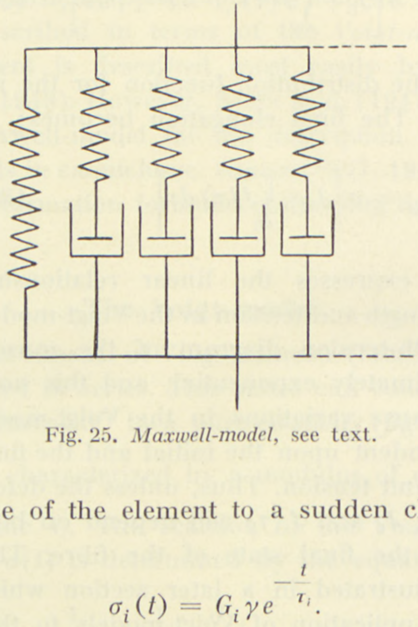


Fig. 25. *Maxwell-model*, see text.

The response of the element to a sudden change in length γ is therefore:

$$\sigma_i(t) = G_i \gamma e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_i}}. \qquad (32)$$

This expresses the stress-relaxation. Hence, for a discrete set of parallel coupled Maxwell-elements containing a pure elasticity G_0 the stress-relaxation after a sudden change in length will be:

$$\sigma(t) = \gamma\left(G_0 + \sum_i G_i e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_i}}\right). \qquad (33)$$

For a continuous set of Maxwell-elements we shall obtain:

$$\sigma(t) = \gamma\left(G_0 + \int_0^\infty G(\tau)\, e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}}\, d\tau\right), \tag{34}$$

where $G(\tau)$ is the distribution function for the relaxation times (non-normalized).

Transformation from Voigt-model to Maxwell-model.

Gross (1947, 1948) has derived the transformation-formulas connecting J_0 and $J(\tau)$ in the Voigt-model with G_0 and $G(\tau)$ in the Maxwell-model. These are in our terminology:

$$G(\tau) = \frac{J(\tau)}{\left[J_0 + \int_0^\infty \frac{J\left(\frac{1}{s}\right)}{s\left(s - \frac{1}{\tau}\right)}\, ds\right]^2 + (\pi\tau J(\tau))^2} \tag{35}$$

$$G_0 = \frac{1}{J_0 + \int_0^\infty J(\tau)\, d\tau} \tag{36}$$

and

$$J(\tau) = \frac{G(\tau)}{\left[G_0 + \int_0^\infty G(\tau)\, dt - \int_0^\infty \frac{G\left(\frac{1}{s}\right)}{s\left(s - \frac{1}{\tau}\right)}\, ds\right]^2 + (\pi\tau G(\tau))^2} \tag{37}$$

$$J_0 = \frac{1}{G_0 + \int_0^\infty G(\tau)\, d\tau}. \tag{38}$$

Application of a Voigt-model to the transient experiments.

When applying the Voigt-model and the Maxwell-model to the muscle fibre the purpose is to determine their parameters in such a way that the theoretical $\gamma(t)$ and $\sigma(t)$ from isotonic and isometric transients agree as well as possible with the experimental findings.

In practice the changes in load or in length do not take place suddenly but occur within a certain time interval. This causes the initial course of creep and relaxation to be slightly different from those corresponding to ideal transients, but can be taken into account by correcting for the way in which the changes in load and length occur experimentally.

A. Isotonic transient.

In a series of experiments in which the change in load always was $+3$ or $-\frac{3}{4}$ times the initial load, creep curves (fig. 20 and Table 2) were recorded at rest and during tetanic contraction.

As already mentioned these curves were characterized by an approximate linearity with log t. This gives a possibility for obtaining an approximate expression for the distribution function $J(\tau)$ defined in (29).

From (29) we obtain:

$$\frac{d\gamma}{d\log t} = \sigma \int_0^\infty J(\tau) \cdot \frac{t}{\tau} e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}} d\tau; \tag{39}$$

putting

$$J(\tau) = \frac{c}{\tau} \tag{40}$$

(39) gives

$$\frac{d\gamma}{d\log t} = \sigma c, \tag{41}$$

i. e. the elongation is linear with log t.

The expression (40) for the distribution function has, however, like all expressions giving a linearity with log t, the property that the final elongation γ_∞ becomes infinite

$$\gamma_\infty = \sigma \left[J_0 + \int_0^\infty \frac{c}{\tau} d\tau \right]; \tag{42}$$

(40) can, however, easily be modified to give both a practically linear course with log t over a suitably long time interval, and a finite final elongation. The following expression can be chosen:

$$J(\tau) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{c}{\tau} & \text{for} \quad \tau_1 \leqq \tau \leqq \tau_2 \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad \tau < \tau_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \tau > \tau_2 \end{cases} \tag{43}$$

in which it is assumed that

$$\frac{\tau_2}{\tau_1} \gg 1. \tag{44}$$

With this expression (39) gives

$$\frac{d\gamma}{d \log t} = \sigma c \left[e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_2}} - e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_1}} \right]. \tag{45}$$

From this it can be seen that for

$$\tau_1 \ll t \ll \tau_2 \tag{46}$$

$\left(\text{e.g. } 3\,\tau_1 < t < \dfrac{\tau_2}{10}\right)$ the elongation varies practically linearly with log t.

By substituting (43) in (29) the following expression for $\gamma(t)$ is obtained:

$$\gamma(t) = \gamma_0 + (\gamma_\infty\ \gamma_0) \left[1 - \frac{-Ei\left(-\dfrac{t}{\tau_2}\right) + Ei\left(-\dfrac{t}{\tau_1}\right)}{\log \dfrac{\tau_2}{\tau_1}} \right], \tag{47}$$

where Ei denotes the integral logarithm, and

$$\gamma_0 = \sigma J_0$$

and

$$\gamma_\infty = \sigma \left[J_0 + c \log \frac{\tau_2}{\tau_1} \right] \tag{48}$$

denote the initial and the final elongation.

From the equations given above it must be expected that expression (43) for the distribution function $J(\tau)$ and the corresponding expression (47) deduced from it for the elongation $\gamma(t)$, will give a satisfactory approximation to the experimental course of elongation.

The spectrum of retardation times.

We shall now determine τ_1 and τ_2 for the different experimental curves and then compare the spectrum of retardation times (i. e. the distribution functions) for transient at rest at 0° C., for transient at rest at 25° C., and for transient during tetanic contraction at 0° C.

It is assumed that the elongation $\gamma_0 = \sigma \cdot J_0$ caused by the series elasticity J_0 is only very small (comp. vibration experiments). In the following calculations we shall assume that γ_0 amounts to 5 per cent of the final elongation γ_∞:

$$\gamma_0 = 0.05\,\gamma_\infty\,. \tag{49}$$

Substituting (49) in (47), τ_1 and τ_2 are then determined for the different courses of elongation in such a way that the theoretical elongation given by (47) is the same at $t = 20$ msec. and $t = 1$ sec. as the experimentally determined elongation. The results of these calculations are collected in Table 6.

Table 6.

Boundary values for the spectrum of retardation times.

	$\frac{\Delta P}{P_0}$	τ_1 msec.	τ_2 msec.
Rest 0° C.	0—0.2	0.1	10^5
	0.4—0.5	0.01	3×10^4
Rest 25° C.	0—0.2	0.01	3×10^4
	0.5	10^{-4}	10^4
Contraction 0° C	0.1—0.2	10	2000
	0.4	3	2000

The table shows a distinct difference in the spectrum of retardation times under the three different conditions. In fig. 26 $L(\log\tau)$, which is defined from the normalized distribution function $j(\tau) = \dfrac{J(\tau)}{\int_0^\infty J(\tau)\,d\tau}$ as:

$$L(\log\tau)\,d\log\tau = j(\tau)\,d\tau,$$

i. e.

$$L(\log\tau) = \tau\cdot j(\tau) \tag{50}$$

is given as a function of $\log\tau$.

From Table 6 and diagram fig. 26 it can be seen that the distribution function at 25° C. includes contributions from retardation times shorter than those found at 0° C. Differences in the contributions from long retardation times could not be demonstrated with our technique. *Contraction*, which was only investigated at 0° C., showed a reduction in the contribution from both short and long retardation times. Table 6 further-

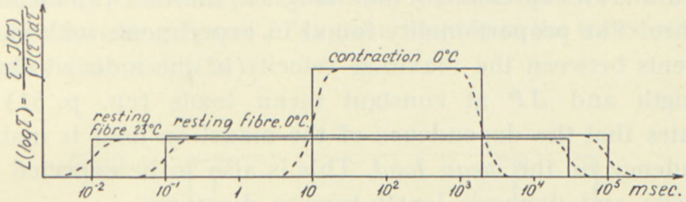


Fig. 26. *Spectrum of retardation times.*
ordinate: normalized distribution function of retardation times multiplied by the retardation time.
abscissa: retardation times in msec., logarithmic scale.
Note that the largest range of retardation times is present in the resting fibre at 25° C. The range is narrowed and displaced to longer durations at 0° C. and narrowed further during contraction. The stippled lines indicate the correction to the distribution which must be expected around the boundaries of the spectrum.

more shows a variation in the distribution function with load (cf. p. 67), the relative contribution of short retardation times increasing with increasing load and variation in load ΔP.

Apart from these changes in the boundary values of the spectrum of retardation times which were determined from the relative course of adjustment $\frac{\gamma(t)}{\gamma_\infty}$ alone, the constant c in the expression for the distribution function (43) also changes with the mechanical state of the fibre. These changes are obtained from the *absolute* values of the deformation $\gamma(t)$ and given in the following table:

Table 7.
Constant c in units of $L_0 \times P_0^{-1}$

ΔP in units of P_0.	resting fibre		contraction 0° C
	0° C	25° C	
0.11	0.30	0.26	0.61
0.19	0.18	0.18	0.47
0.39	0.077	0.054	0.24

Together with the variations in the width of the spectrum of retardation times, the variation of the constant c with variations in ΔP and also with the mean load (on account of the constant ratio between ΔP and initial load in the experiments in question) expresses the dependence of the stiffness of the fibre on the load. Moreover, the difference in c at various temperatures and with contraction together with the accompanying changes in the width of the spectrum is an expression of the changes in stiffness with the state of the fibre. The proportionality found in experiments with isotonic transients between the maximal velocity of the induced changes in length and ΔP at constant mean loads (cp. p. 51) also indicates that the dependence of the model on load is mainly a dependence on the *mean load*. This is also to be expected from the static and dynamic length-tension diagrams.

It is assumed in the above calculations that the changes in load were sudden. In the experiments the changes in tension proceeded within a certain time and it can be assumed that the tension increased linearly within 2 msec. Calculations carried out to determine the effect of the linear increase of tension on the course of elongation showed that the distorting effect was negligible after about 5 msec. This distortion, therefore, cannot affect the curves used for the above calculations, since these refer to times > 20 msec.

Finally it might be emphasized that the application of a Voigt-model to a description of mechanical properties of the muscle fibre does not pretend to give a direct image of the minute structure, but seems to be a suitable way of illustrating with good approximation different and rather complex experimental findings. The structural basis of this equivalent model is represented by the general picture of minute structure as indicated on p. 42. Thus, it does not comprise quantitative assumptions with respect to the correlation between minute structural processes and their external manifestations as does e.g. the model conception developed for the visco-elastic behaviour of rubber by Tobolsky and Eyring (1943, see also Part IV, p. 229 of this paper).

B. Isometric transient.

Fig. 23 shows the course of stress-relaxation at 0° C. and 20° C. after a sudden change in length from different initial lengths.

The curves are approximately linear with $\log t$ for $t > 1$ msec., but the linearity is not as pronounced as is the case in isotonic creep. We shall now investigate how well the isometric curves agree with those to be expected from the Voigt-model (43) used for the description of the isotonic transients.

According to the Maxwell-model the decrease in tension $\sigma(t)$ after a sudden change in length is given by (34). The distribution function $G(\tau)$ and the pure elasticity G_0 to be used here are obtained by inserting J_0 and $J(\tau)$ given by (43) in the transformation formulas (35) and (36):

$$G(\tau) = \frac{\frac{1}{c}}{\tau\left[\left[\frac{1}{19}\log\frac{\tau_2}{\tau_1} + \log\frac{\frac{1}{\tau_1}-\frac{1}{\tau}}{\frac{1}{\tau}-\frac{1}{\tau_2}}\right]^2 + \pi^2\right]} \tag{51}$$

$$\text{for} \quad \tau_1 \leqq \tau \leqq \tau_2$$

$$G(\tau) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \tau < \tau_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \tau > \tau_2.$$

$$G_0 = \frac{1}{\frac{20}{19} c \log\frac{\tau_2}{\tau_1}}.$$

Just as $L(\log\tau) = \dfrac{\tau \cdot J(\tau)}{\int_0^\infty J(\tau)\,d\tau}$ was convenient for the description of the distribution of retardation times,

$$K(\log\tau) = \frac{\tau G(\tau)}{\int_0^\infty G(\tau)\,d\tau} \tag{52}$$

is convenient for the description of the distribution of relaxation times. Fig. 27 shows $K(\log\tau)$ with $G(\tau)$ given in (51). For the ratio $\frac{\tau_2}{\tau_1}$ the value 10^6 is applied (cf. Table 6). It is seen from fig. 27 that about half the relaxation times are $< 10\,\tau_1$, i. e. according to Table 6 < 0.1—1 msec.

The course of stress-relaxation corresponding to $G(\tau)$ and G_0 given in (51) is very similar to the experimental, but the experimentally found ratios between the final and the initial increase in tension are appreciably higher than those expected theoretically. This is due to the fact that the change in length is produced within a finite interval of time (about 1 msec.) during which an essential relaxation can take place.

In caoutchouc KUHN *et al.* (1947 a) have described the course

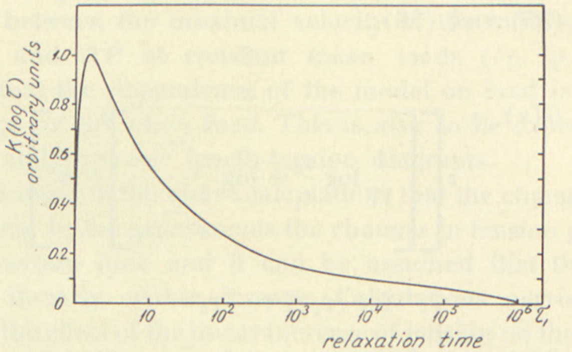


Fig. 27. *Distribution of relaxation times* in the Maxwell-model, which is equivalent to the Voigt-model for the resting fibre at 0° C., the distribution function of which is given in fig. 26.
ordinate: normalized distribution function multiplied by the relaxation time.
abscissa: relaxation time in units of τ_1.

of adjustment after an isotonic transient by means of a Maxwell-model. Over a long interval of time the elongation in this material varied linearly with $\log t$ (10^{-2} sec. $< t < 10^4$ sec.) (BRENSCHEDE 1943). Assuming an initial elongation zero, KUHN on this basis found a distribution function which in the terminology used in the present paper is:

$$G(\tau) = \frac{\frac{1}{c}}{\tau} \cdot \frac{1}{\left[\log\left(\frac{\tau}{\tau_0} - 1\right)^2 + \pi^2\right]} \quad \text{for} \quad \tau > \tau_0 \tag{53}$$

$$G(\tau) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \tau < \tau_0. \tag{54}$$

Transformation of this expression to

$$G(\tau) = \frac{\frac{1}{c}}{\tau} \cdot \frac{1}{\left[\log \frac{\frac{1}{\tau_0} - \frac{1}{\tau}}{\frac{1}{\tau}}\right]^2 + \pi^2} \quad \text{for} \quad \tau > \tau_0 \tag{55}$$

shows by comparison with (35) and (51) that the Maxwell-model applied by KUHN corresponds to a Voigt-model of the same type as that used here for the description of the mechanical properties of the muscle fibre. According to (51) and (55) the boundaries in KUHN's spectrum of retardation times are

$$\tau_1 = \tau_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \tau_2 = \infty. \tag{56}$$

Furthermore, according to (35), (51), and (55):

$$J_0 = 0. \tag{57}$$

The upper limit $\tau_2 = \infty$ indicates that KUHN's model flows ad infinitum.

2) Vibration experiments, resting and contracted fibre.

Transient experiments gave information about the transition from a dynamic to a static state by determining the velocity and degree of adjustment to a sudden change in length or tension. In this way the influence of the non-linear component on the total elastic reaction in the minute structure of the muscle fibre was studied. The procedure in these experiments, however, limited the range of measurements to processes which had a duration of more than 2 msec.

Further information about the mechanical properties of the fibre was obtained in vibration experiments.

These were previously performed by subjecting the fibre to a periodic change in *length* and measuring the change in tension produced (BUCHTHAL and KAISER, 1944). In experiments of this type it is important not to use too large an amplitude of vibration, since this may alter the mechanical reaction of the fibre during contraction. The effect of a periodic length amplitude of 2 per cent (4 per cent peak to peak) on the tension developed during a single contraction can be seen in fig. 28, where it can be compared with the development of tension during a contraction without superposition of periodic vibrations. The mean tension *with* superimposed vibrations is only about 70 per cent of the mean tension in a twitch without vibrations. Curve II c shows how the fibre again approaches the original tension-time relation when

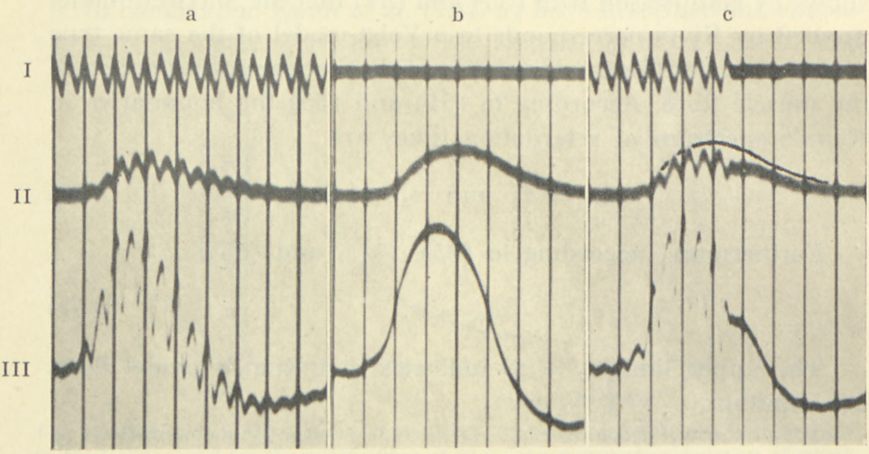


Fig. 28. *Isometric twitch with and without vibrations*, 15° C.
curve I: length alteration, amplitude peak to peak 4 per cent of L_0, 100 c.p.s.
curve II: tension in twitch as a function of time recorded with d. c. amplification and condenser myograph.
curve III: as II, but recorded with a. c. amplifier. (a) course of tension with and (b) without superimposed vibrations. Note that the vibrations stop in (c) after the maximum in tension. In curve II the upper contour of curve b for comparison is projected on curve c.

the vibrations are stopped during the contraction. At amplitudes of below 1 per cent, a decrease in the tension developed during contraction could no longer be observed.

In the present experiments a periodic alternating force acted on the fibre, and force and elongation were measured simultaneously. Lissajous figures such as those described in Part I were hereby obtained. An analysis of such a figure enables the determination of dynamic length-tension diagrams within a period of oscillation, which for the frequencies used was 10—30 msec.

Construction of dynamic length-tension diagrams. For a classically damped system the Lissajous figures produced by simultaneous values of force and amplitude are ellipses (comp. equations

(1) and (3) p. 17). However, the Lissajous figures obtained in vibration experiments, as fig. 7 shows, are not ideal ellipses, but more flattened in one half period than in the other. This deviation can be understood from the dynamic length-tension diagrams and the hysteresis which they show during

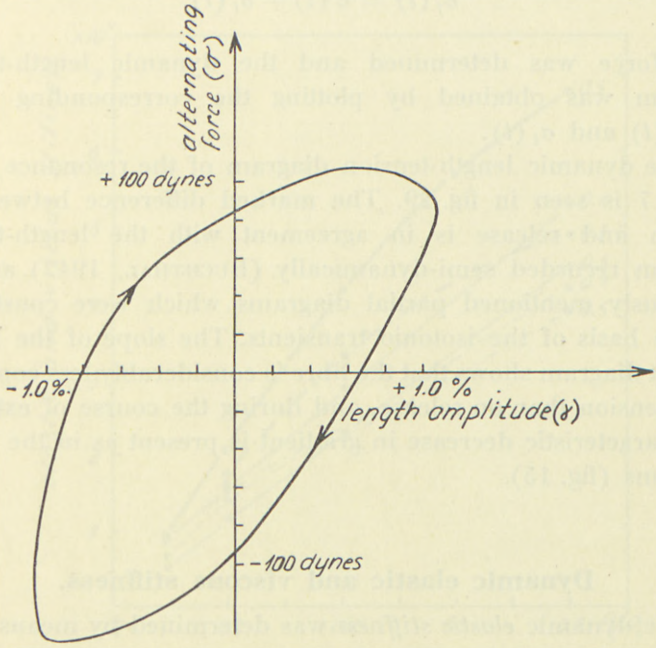


Fig. 29. *Dynamic length-tension diagram from vibrational experiments.* 0° C.
ordinate: change in tension in dynes.
abscissa: change in length in per cent of L_0.
The area described by the curve corresponds to the energy absorbed per oscillation period.

extension and release, and the Lissajous figures can be used to construct these length-tension diagrams. On account of the double differentiation of photographically recorded curves this can be only an approximate determination of the length-tension relation. However, the principal difference in the course of length produced by increasing and decreasing tension will appear with sufficient significance.

The external force $\sigma = \sigma_0 \cos \omega t$ varies sinusoidally with a known frequency. This enables us to plot the time on the x-axis and then to find the variation in length with time. By differentiating twice, the acceleration of the movement ($\ddot{\gamma}(t)$) is obtained. Multiplication with the equivalent mass m finally gives the inertial force $\sigma_i(t)$. The force acting on the fibre σ_f is the difference between the external force and the inertial force:

$$\sigma_f(t) = \sigma(t) - \sigma_i(t). \tag{58}$$

This force was determined and the dynamic length-tension diagram was obtained by plotting the corresponding values for $\gamma(t)$ and $\sigma_i(t)$.

The dynamic length-tension diagram of the resonance ellipse in fig. 7 is seen in fig. 29. The marked difference between extension and release is in agreement with the length-tension diagram recorded semi-dynamically (Buchthal, 1942) and the previously mentioned partial diagrams which were constructed on the basis of the isotonic transients. The slope of the length-tension diagram shows that the fibre is considerably less compliant on extension than on release, and during the course of extension the characteristic decrease in gradient is present as in the partial diagrams (fig. 15).

Dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness.

The dynamic *elastic stiffness* was determined by means of the resonance frequency arising from the elasticity of the fibre plus the mass of the system (cf. p. 18). The *viscous stiffness* was determined by the ratio between the alternating force acting on the fibre plus the recording system and the resulting maximal amplitude of vibrations. In the evaluation of the results obtained by this procedure it is necessary to examine to what extent resonance frequency and damping are unique standards, suitable for a complete characterization of elastic properties. In order to be able to define changes in the mechanical properties of the fibre, produced, e. g. by tension or temperature, it is necessary that the resulting changes in stiffness and viscosity are large compared with the change in these quantities which might result because of the necessary change in measuring frequency required by the experimental technique, i. e. the adjustment to a new resonance frequency when the stiffness and viscosity parameters vary. For example during transition from rest to contraction under isotonic conditions the resonance frequency at a given load rises from 40 to 56 vibrations per sec., with a corresponding increase in elastic stiffness of 100 per cent. If the measuring frequency applied to the resting fibre was increased from 40 to 56

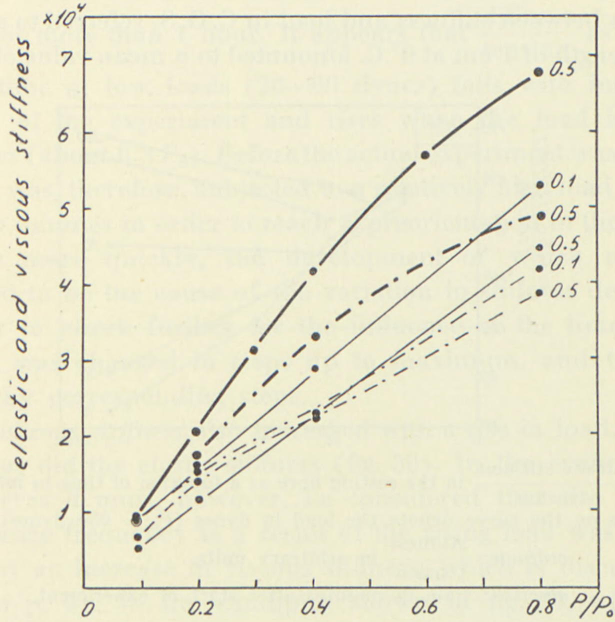


Fig. 30. Elastic stiffness (full lines) and viscous stiffness (stippled lines) in dynes$\times$cm^{-1} as a function of load ($1\ P_0 \times L_0^{-1} = 2800$ dynes$\times$cm^{-1}).
fibre at rest: thin lines.
contraction: thick lines.
The figures on the curves denote the vibrational amplitudes in per cent of the equilibrium length of the fibre (deflection measured from the mean position). 0° C.
ordinate: elastic and viscous stiffness in dynes$\times$cm^{-1}.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

vibrations per second, an increase in stiffness of only 0 to 10 per cent was found, so that at least 90 per cent of the increase in stiffness observed during contraction must be considered an expression of a change in elastic stiffness due to the contracted state. Thus, the frequency dependence of the elastic stiffness in the range of frequencies examined can be considered to have a second order significance.

Resting fibre.

The elastic stiffness increased in the fibre at rest approximately linearly with the load (fig. 30). At a load of 0.3 P_0 and an amplitude of the periodic changes in load corresponding to a length amplitude of 1 per cent of the equilibrium length (= 2 per cent peak to peak), the ratio between stiffness and load in C. G. S. referred to an equilibrium length of 1 cm at 0° C. amounted to a mean value of 18—20.

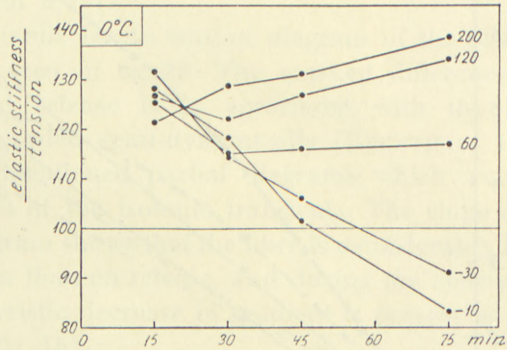


Fig. 31. $\frac{\text{Elastic stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ in the resting fibre as a function of time in minutes. The figures on the curve denote the load in dynes (P_0 = 650 dynes). 0° C.

ordinate: $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ in arbitrary units.

abscissa: time in minutes after start of experiment.

This value was independent of the cross section of the fibre within wide limits, the cross section in the present material varying between 0.05 and 0.5 mm in diameter, according to whether single fibres or small bundles of fibres had been examined. The results of these experiments, in which the load was varied and the change in stiffness measured, agree with the stiffness-tension relationship found in previous experiments, in which the changes in tension produced by periodic changes in length were used as a measure of stiffness (Buchthal 1942, Buchthal and Kaiser 1944). The variation of stiffness with load makes it an advantage to work at constant load when estimating changes in elasticity produced by factors other than the tension. When measuring at constant length, the tension varying with time will cause a concomitant change in stiffness. However, even if measured at a constant load, the alterations in the texture of the fibre will bring about a variation in the stiffness with time when the fibre is exposed to different loads over a long time interval. This is illustrated in fig. 31 by experiments in which stiffness and tension in the resting fibre at constant temperature (0° C.) were measured at changing levels of load during an interval of more than 1 hour. It appears that $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ as a function of time at low loads (20—60 dynes) falls with increasing duration of the experiment and rises when the load is above 200 dynes (about $0.3\,P_0$). Before the actual experiment was started, the fibre was, therefore, subjected to a relatively high load ($0.8\,P_0$) for a few minutes in order to reach a preorientation in the minute structure more quickly, the development of which must be presumed to be the cause of the variation in stiffness described. In order to check further for the influence of the time factor, the load was changed in steps up to maximum, and then decreased by corresponding steps.

The *viscous stiffness* also increased with a rise in load, but not linearly as did the elastic stiffness (fig. 30). In the evaluation of these curves it must, however, be considered that the increase in resonance frequency as a result of the rising load was accompanied by an increase in viscous stiffness, which is discussed in detail on p. 91. In the examples shown in fig. 30, which represents a mean curve for a series of 10 experiments, the viscous stiffness is of the same order of magnitude as the elastic. However, other experimental series, which were carried out under the same conditions, but at different times of the year showed remarkable uniformity for a given set of measurements, but a considerable variation in the ratio of viscous to elastic stiffness between the different groups. In a later section an attempt is made to correlate these variations with other properties of the fibre.

When viscous stiffness is expressed in terms of *viscosity*, the basic initial viscosity at equilibrium length of the fibre amounted to approximately 5×10^5 centipoise in the range of frequencies applied in the present experiments (25—150 c.p.s.). The viscosity of the structural elements exceeded that of the protoplasm of the fibre (29 centipoise) by 10^4. The latter was determined by measuring the migration velocity of an oil drop introduced into the muscle fibre (RIESER 1949). Thus at the most, 0.01 per cent of the viscous stiffness may be caused by the sarcoplasm.

Dynamic stiffness as compared with static stiffness.

The dynamic stiffness of the muscle fibre always exceeded the static stiffness (BUCHTHAL 1942). With the vibrational frequencies employed in the present investigation the ratio $G_{dyn}:G_{stat}$ at the same load in different fibres varied between 3:1 and 5:1. With increasing load the ratio decreased slightly. As mentioned above, both static and dynamic stiffness increased linearly with load, the slope of the stiffness-tension diagram being three times steeper in dynamic than in static experiments. As the dynamic stiffness at tension zero exceeded the static 5 times, the ratio between the stiffness-tension[1] in dynamic and static experiments is $\frac{5}{3} = 1.7$. The *dynamic elasticity modulus* amounted with the resting fibre at equilibrium length at 0° C. to 2.5×10^6 dynes per cm^2. The vibrational amplitude applied was 1 per cent of L_0 and the frequency approximately 30 c.p.s.

The dependence of stiffness on the amplitude of vibration.

In addition to the load, there is a factor affecting the elastic and viscous stiffness which so far has not been considered. As long as an elastic body follows Hooke's law, the variations in length and tension are proportional $\left(\frac{\Delta\,\text{tension}}{\Delta\,\text{length}} = \text{constant}\right)$, i. e. a variation in the amplitude of the periodic changes in load used for stiffness measurements does not affect the result. In a body with a non-linear length-tension diagram, the stiffness will vary with the amplitude of the changes in load. From the dynamic length-tension diagram determined from the ratio between stiffness and tension, variations in stiffness of less than 1 per cent could be expected for the amplitudes of load used in the present experiments. A more detailed discussion of the influence of the exponential dynamic length-tension diagram on

[1] Stiffness-tension denotes the distance on the tension axis obtained by extrapolation of the stiffness-tension diagram to zero stiffness.

the dependence of stiffness on amplitude is found on p. 292. The experimentally found dependence of the stiffness on amplitude was, however, considerably larger than would have been expected on the basis of the non-linearity of the length-tension

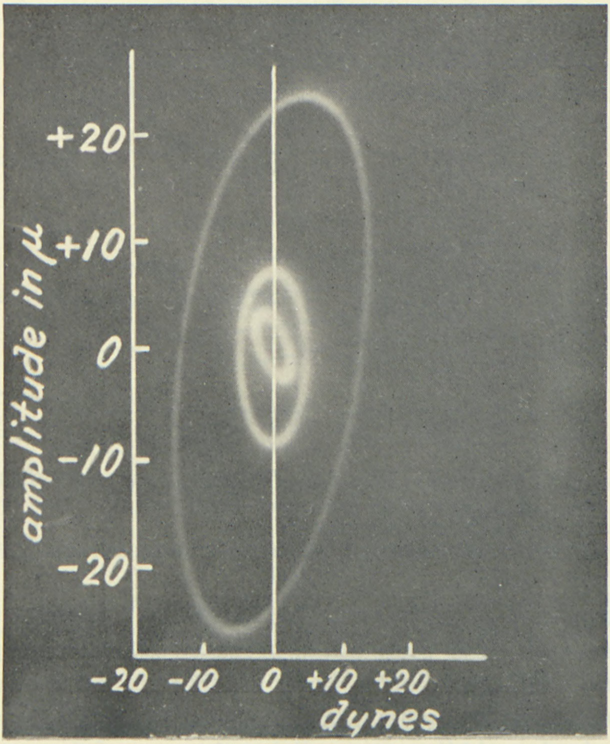


Fig. 32. Three Lissajous figures showing the relation between alternating force and alternating length at the same mean load and vibrational frequency, but three different alternating loads. 0° C.
ordinate: vibrational length amplitude in μ, measured as deflection from the mean position.
abscissa: applied alternating force in dynes.
The position of the intermediate ellipse indicates resonance, the smallest ellipse, corresponding to a decrease in amplitude, indicates an increase in stiffness and the largest ellipse (increase in amplitude) corresponds to a lower stiffness.

diagram. In the first experiments this deviation was assumed to be due to the recording system. In these experiments the electromagnetic coil was supported by pivots in which the frictional forces could vary with the amplitude of vibrations. Therefore, this recording device was replaced by a system with a knife-edge suspension, and control experiments in which the muscle fibre was replaced by a very thin steel spring showed no measurable variation in resonance frequency with variation in vibrational amplitude within the range of frequency and amplitude used in the present experiments (cf. p. 23). Even when this system was used in which a lack of linearity due to possible play in the bearings of the recording system was eliminated, the muscle fibre showed a considerable variation of stiffness with the size

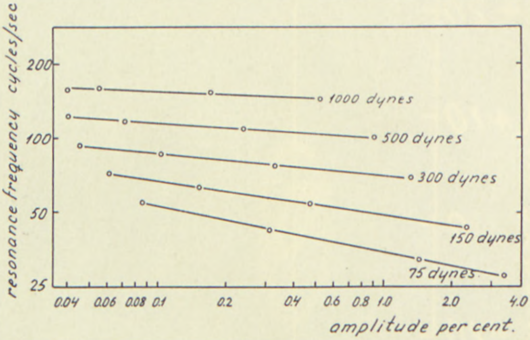


Fig. 33. Resonance frequency as a function of the alternating length amplitude. The figures on the curves denote the mean load in dynes (P_0 = 800 dynes). 0° C.
ordinate: resonance frequency in c.p.s.
abscissa: length amplitude in per cent of L_0 (peak to peak).

of the amplitude of vibrations. Fig. 32 shows 3 Lissajous figures which represent the correlation between alternating load and alternating amplitude for a fibre at different alternating loads (same measuring frequency and same initial load). The axes of the curve in the middle are parallel to the axes of the oscilloscope screen and indicate the presence of resonance at the frequency and amplitude in question. The deviation of the axes of the smallest ellipse (sloping to the left) and the largest ellipse (sloping to the right) shows that the resonance frequency of these ellipses was displaced to a higher and a lower value respectively. An example of the variation in the resonance frequency and hence of the elastic stiffness with the amplitude of vibrations is given in fig. 33. The logarithm of the resonance frequency varies linearly with the logarithm of the vibrational amplitude in such a way that the stiffness falls with increasing amplitude. This fall was relatively more pronounced the lower the load. Even a doubling of an amplitude of only 0.1 per cent of the equilibrium length caused recognizable changes in stiffness. In the example shown in fig. 33, the decrease in stiffness was 20 per cent at a load of 150 dynes and a variation in amplitude from 0.15 to 0.30 per cent of L_0. The dependence on amplitude of the elastic stiffness at different loads can be seen in fig. 34. Independent of the load

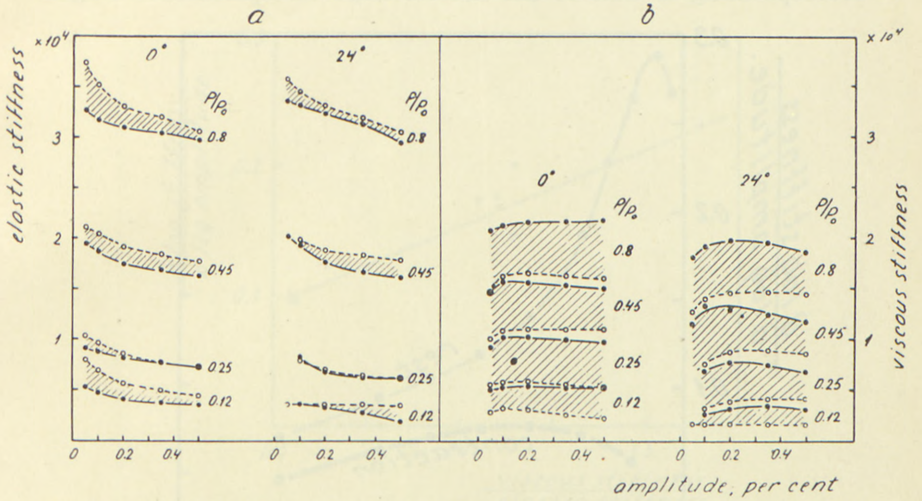


Fig. 34. Dynamic stiffnesses as a function of the alternating length amplitude at 0° and 24° C.
a) elastic stiffness, dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes × cm^{-1}).
b) viscous stiffness, dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes × cm^{-1}).
stippled lines: experiments with 16 times increased equivalent mass.
abscissa: alternating length amplitude in per cent of L_0, deflection measured from the mean position.
ordinate: elastic and viscous stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1}.

the absolute changes in stiffness are approximately of the same order of magnitude. This indicates that the relative variation of stiffness with amplitude decreased with increasing stiffness, and, on account of the stiffness-load relationship, also with increasing load.

For all the muscle fibres investigated, the influence of the vibrational amplitude, expressed by $\frac{d(\log \text{stiffness})}{d(\log \text{amplitude})}$ as a function of the load is shown in fig. 35. At a load of 0—0.1 P_0 the variation with amplitude was at maximum and decreased rapidly with increasing load. At 0.8 P_0 it amounted to only one fourth of the maximum.

In *rubber* we have found an amplitude dependence which was less than in the muscle fibre. In the unloaded state $\frac{d(\text{log stiffness})}{d(\text{log amplitude})}$ in undervulcanized rubber was 0.20 and in vulcanized rubber 0.14. At a load which produced an orientation corresponding to that of the muscle fibre at equilibrium length

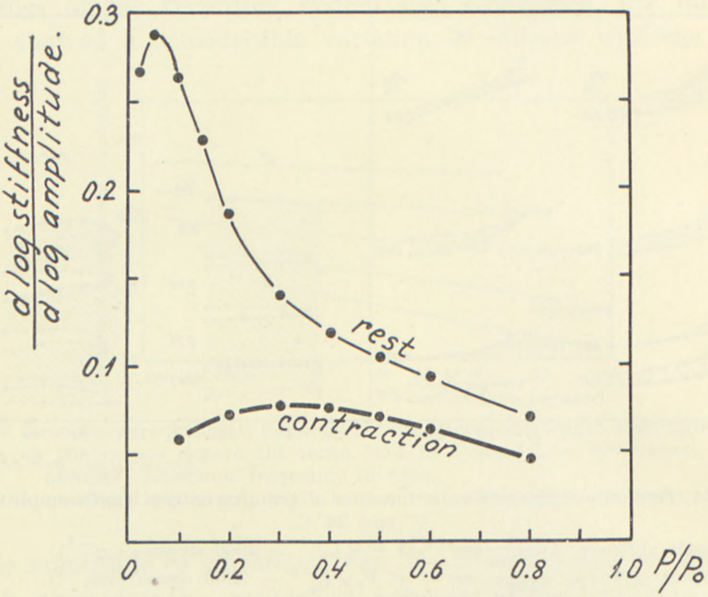


Fig. 35. Amplitude dependence of elastic stiffness as a function of load in the resting fibre and during isotonic tetanic contraction.

ordinate: $\frac{d\,(\text{log stiffness}}{d\,(\text{log amplitude})}$.

abscissa: load in units of P_0.

0° C., mean curve of all experiments.

($L = 300$ in rubber) the quotient decreased to one tenth of its value in the unloaded state.

The variation in viscous stiffness with a variation in vibrational amplitude had a course differing from that of the elastic stiffness, and showed a maximum in the amplitude range 0.1 to 0.4 per cent of L_0 (fig. 34b).

As previously mentioned, the ratio of viscous to elastic stiffness (sr) varied in different experiments. The varying ratio could not be related to variations in the elastic stiffness measured per unit of load, since this value showed only slight variations in the different series of experiments. A relation to the size of the amplitude dependence was, however, found. Different experimental series referred to the same load (0.3 P_0) showed that the viscous stiffness was higher in the presence of a large amplitude dependence than when the amplitude dependence was small (fig. 36).

In order to obtain a quantitative expression of the interaction

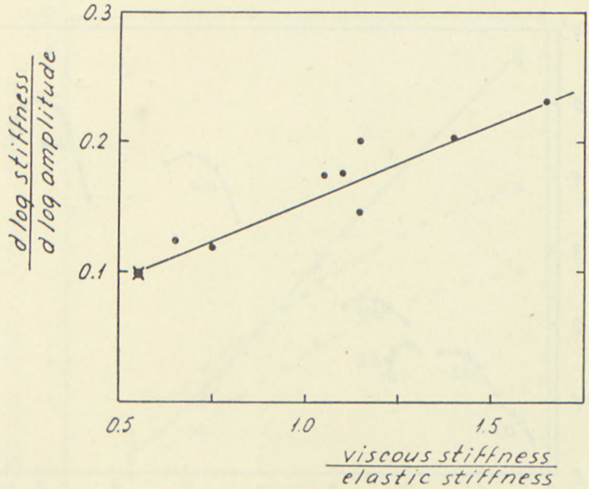


Fig. 36. Amplitude dependence of elastic stiffness plotted versus *sr* $\left(\frac{\text{viscous stiffness}}{\text{elastic stiffness}}\right)$, 0° C.

ordinate: $\frac{d\,(\text{log stiffness})}{d\,(\text{log amplitude})}$.

abscissa: $\frac{\text{viscous stiffness}}{\text{elastic stiffness}}$.

of the viscous and elastic forces, the viscous stiffness is plotted versus the elastic (fig. 37). A variation in the amplitude from 0.1 to 1 per cent of L_0 at the different loads produced a parabolic curve with the axis of symmetry parallel to the axis of the viscous stiffness. On increasing the load from 0.1 to 0.8 P_0 both elastic and viscous stiffness increased. The elastic stiffness decreased with increasing amplitude, which is indicated in the curves by the direction of the arrow. The maximum in these curves is caused by the changes in viscous stiffness with vibrational amplitude.

Both increasing vibrational amplitude and increasing frequency caused a rise in the velocity of length variations. The maximal deformation velocity which was attained within a period of vibration is denoted as *velocity amplitude* ($\omega_0 \times \gamma_0$). In the example shown in fig. 33 illustrating the amplitude dependence of the elastic stiffness, the velocity amplitude varied between 0.25 and 6.0 L_0 per second.

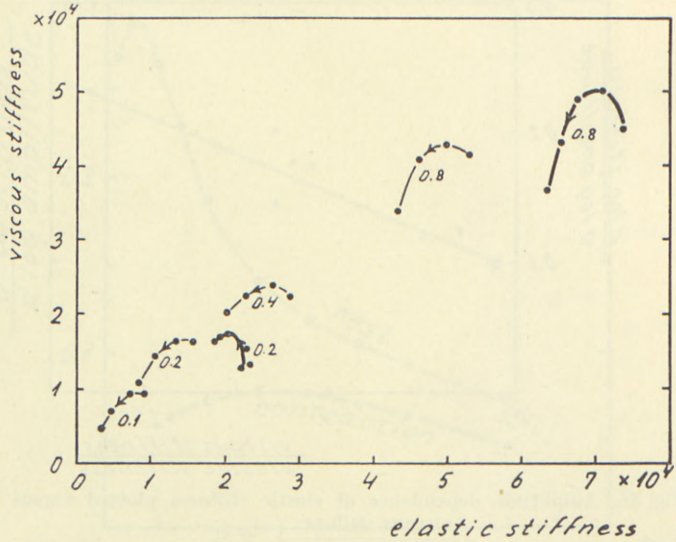


Fig. 37. Viscous stiffness plotted versus elastic stiffness. The figures on the curves denote the different levels of load in P_0.
Thin lines: resting fibre; thick lines: tetanically contracted fibre. The connected points denote in the direction of the arrow amplitudes of 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1.0 and during contraction also 2.0 per cent of L_0, deflection measured from the mean position. 0° C.
ordinate: viscous stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 3500 dynes × cm^{-1}).
abscissa: elastic stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 3500 dynes × cm^{-1}).

The *total stiffness* of the fibre (its "mechanical impedance"), defined as the Pythagorean sum of elastic and viscous stiffness $\left(\sqrt{G_{\text{elast}}^2 + G_{\text{visc}}^2}\right)$, had a maximum at a low amplitude in the range of 0.2—0.4 per cent of L_0. In a special series of experiments, in which the fibre was subjected to forced changes in length with constant mean length (corresponding to former "isometric" experiments, Buchthal and Kaiser 1944), a similar decrease was found in the total stiffness with increasing amplitude. The range of amplitudes examined in these experiments was 0.5—2 per cent of L_0.

In the introduction to the present section it has been pointed out that the frequency of vibration may influence the results of the measurements. In order to investigate this effect further, a series of experiments was performed in which the equivalent mass of the recording system was increased by the introduction of an additional mass. This caused a reduction in the resonance frequency

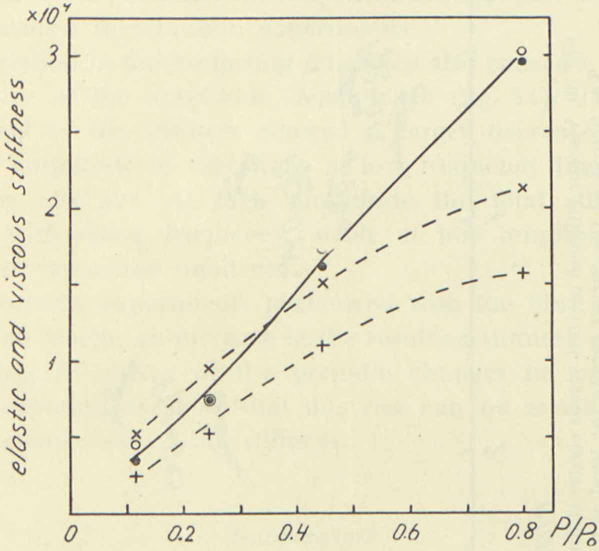


Fig. 38. Elastic (————————) and viscous (— — — —) stiffness as a function of load without (● ×) and with (○ +) 15 times additional equivalent mass. Vibrational amplitude 0.50 per cent of L_0, deflection measured from the mean position. 0° C.

ordinate: stiffnes in dynes$\times$cm^{-1} ($1\ P_0 \times L_0^{-1} = 2000$ dynes$\times$cm^{-1}).
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

to approximately one fourth. The mean curve for these experiments showed that the elastic stiffness at a vibrational amplitude of 1 per cent of L_0 was not affected measurably (fig. 38). The viscous stiffness, however, decreased 16 per cent on the average, when the frequency was halved. This indicates that part of the increase in viscous stiffness, apparently caused by the load, is due to the change in resonance frequency. The total stiffness decreased approximately 5 per cent at load ca. 0.5 P_0, when the frequency of the vibrations was halved in the frequency range of 100 to 25 c.p.s. This frequency dependence corresponds to the variations in the stiffness found

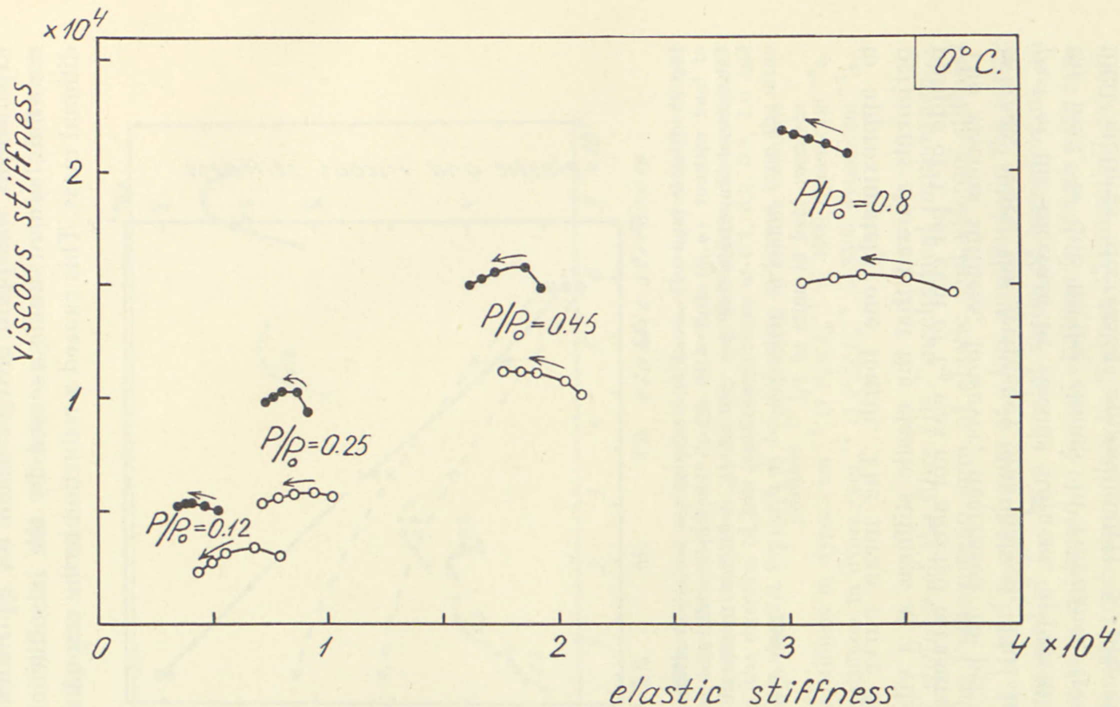


Fig. 39. Viscous stiffness plotted versus elastic stiffness at 0° C. in the resting fibre.
The figures on the curves denote the level of the mean load in units of P_0.
The connected points denote different vibrational amplitudes in the direction of the arrow: 0.05, 0.1, 0.2, 0.35, 0.5 per cent of the equilibrium length (measured as deflection from the mean position). • without and ○ with 15 times additional equivalent mass.

ordinate: viscous stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes × cm^{-1}).

abscissa: elastic stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes × cm^{-1}).

when it was measured at different times after a sudden change in length or load. A doubling of the time interval, elapsing after the change in load gave an increase in "softness" of 4 to 5 per cent (Table 4, isotonic transient). Thus, agreement can be expected between the distribution function for retardation times, calculated on the basis of transient experiments (fig. 26, p. 73) and the small dependence on frequency found when the stiffness was measured in vibration experiments.

A variation in the *measuring frequency* also caused a variation in the size of the amplitude dependence (fig. 34). The elastic component of the stiffness showed a larger decrease with increasing amplitude of vibrations at low frequency than at high frequency (fig. 39). At high amplitude the total stiffness increased with rising frequency, while at low amplitude it decreased or remained unaltered.

In previous experiments performed with the fibre at a constant mean length, an increase in the resulting stiffness was found with rising frequency of the periodic changes in length. The present experiments show that this rise can be ascribed to the viscous component of the stiffness.

Temperature.

Both the viscous and the elastic stiffness fell with rising temperature (fig. 40). This variation proceeded continuously with variation in temperature, but since the temperature range examined was naturally limited to 0°—25° C. and the variations in stiffness were relatively small, it cannot be decided whether this dependence follows a linear or e. g. a logarithmic function. At rest the *elastic stiffness* decreased by approximately 1 per cent per degree C. at low and moderate loads. At high loads no measurable changes in stiffness were observed, even for a maximal variation in temperature (25° C.). The *viscous stiffness* decreased appreciably more with rising temperature, i. e. 2 per cent per degree C. at a low load and 1 per cent at a high load. Viscous stiffness versus elastic stiffness at high and at low temperature is plotted in fig. 43. At a high load the increase in stiffness with falling temperature was caused exclusively by the viscous component.

The *elastic* stiffness versus amplitude relationship was not appreciably influenced by temperature in the range of 0° to 25° C. (fig. 34). The *viscous* stiffness versus amplitude relationship, however, changed with temperature such that the maxima were shifted to higher values of the amplitude with increasing temperature.

In earlier experiments in which the stiffness was determined

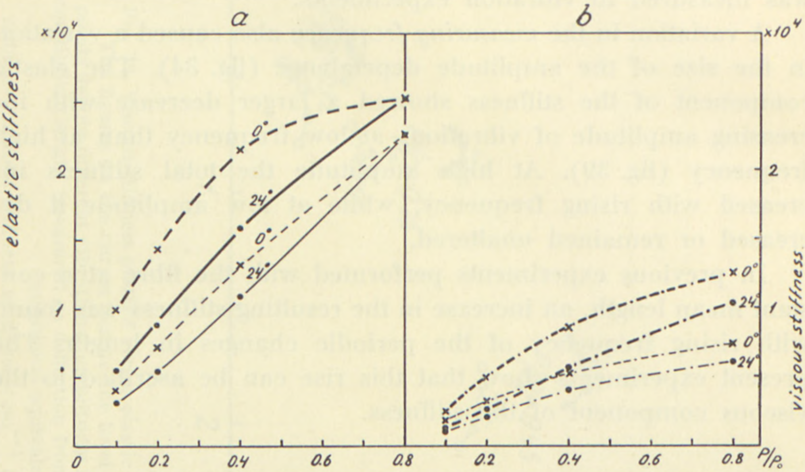


Fig. 40. Dynamic stiffnesses at rest (thin lines) and during contraction (thick lines) at 0° and 24° C. as a function of load.

ordinate: a) elastic stiffness in dynes$\times$cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes$\times$cm^{-1}).
b) viscous stiffness in dynes$\times$cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 2000 dynes$\times$cm^{-1}).

abscissa: load in units of P_0.

Vibrational amplitude 1 per cent of L_0, deflection measured from the mean position.

at constant length no significant variation in stiffness with temperature was found in the resting fibre (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a). The relatively small changes in stiffness caused by the change in temperature were not observable with the low sensitivity used in these experiments, i. e. the sensitivity of the recording system was adjusted so that the amplifiers would not overload for the response of the system up to load P_0. Thus, in the region of small initial loads the sensitivity was too low. At a high degree of stretch, where the accuracy of the measurement was sufficiently high, the temperature dependence of the total stiffness, in agreement with the present experiments, was not significant and, therefore, was not observed.

The effect of hypotonic and hypertonic solutions on elastic and viscous stiffness.

When isotonic Ringer's solution was replaced by a 50 per cent hypotonic solution, no significant change was found in the viscous and elastic stiffness of the fibre. The average increase in the muscle fibre diameter in these experiments amounted to 30 per cent. 100 per cent hypertonic Ringer's solution, however, caused a doubling of both the elastic and the viscous stiffness. The decrease in diameter averaged 12 per cent and occurred in the course of few minutes.

Example: equilibrium length of fibre 6 mm. Load: 0.3 P_0.

concentration of Ringer in m. equivalents per l.	elastic stiffness 10^4 dynes$\times$cm^{-1}	viscous stiffness 10^4 dynes$\times$cm^{-1}	diameter in per cent
250	3.34	2.68	100
125	3.30	2.70	133
500	8.10	7.50	89

The effect of hypertonic Ringer's solution was reversible and at the end of the experiment the fibre was often still excitable. An increase in the water content of the fibre, obtained by placing it in hypotonic environment, did not affect the structural elements which are responsible for the elastic and viscous stiffness, and these elements must be assumed to be maximally hydrated. As a decrease in the water content increased the stiffness of the structure, this must indicate that part of the structural water acts as "softening agent" in the same way as plasticisers in high polymers.

Elastic and viscous stiffness in isotonic tetanic contraction.

In the range of loads investigated the elastic stiffness in isotonic tetanic contraction was higher than that at rest. This was also the case at 1.0 P_0, where the tension at rest and in contraction coincided, i. e. where no more extra tension could be developed by contraction. At 0° C. and with a vibrational amplitude of 0.5 per cent of L_0, the increase in stiffness during contraction amounted to 50—100 per cent with its maximum at 0.3 to 0.4 P_0 (fig. 30). In fig. 41 stiffness and tension at rest and in contraction are given as a function of the degree of stretch. In this series, determinations of stiffness, tension, and length in *isotonic* and *isometric* contraction were carried out alternately on the same fibre. The stiffness varied steeply in the range of length below equilibrium

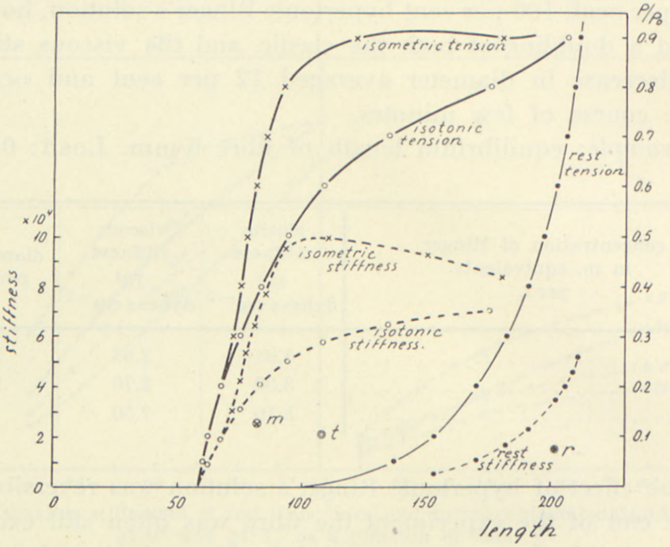


Fig. 41. Tension (P/P_0) and dynamic stiffnesses as a function of length. 0° C.
Full lines: tension.
Dashed lines: elastic stiffness.
$\odot_r$ viscous stiffness at 0.6 P_0 at rest.
$\otimes_m$ viscous stiffness at 0.6 P_0 during tetanic isometric contraction.
$\circledcirc_t$ viscous stiffness at 0.6 P_0 during tetanic isotonic contraction.
left ordinate: stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} ($1\ P_0 \times L_0^{-1} = 2500$ dynes × cm^{-1}).
right ordinate: tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.

length. Corresponding to the higher tension reached in the curve for the isometric maxima, the dynamic stiffness determined in isometric contraction, referred to the *same length*, was 50 to 100 per cent higher than that found in isotonic contraction. However, when referred to the *same tension*, the stiffness was highest when the length of contraction was least, i. e. in isometric contractions ($L_{rest} > 100$) or in stop ("anschlag") contractions ($L_{rest} < 100$). The difference between isotonic and "isometric" stiffness at the same tension was proportional to the difference in length during contraction. For a decrease in length of 2.5 per cent an increase in elastic stiffness of 1 per cent was measured in "isometric" contraction as compared with isotonic contraction at the same tension. This means that in isotonic contraction the variation of stiffness with load can be described by a family of curves, where each curve

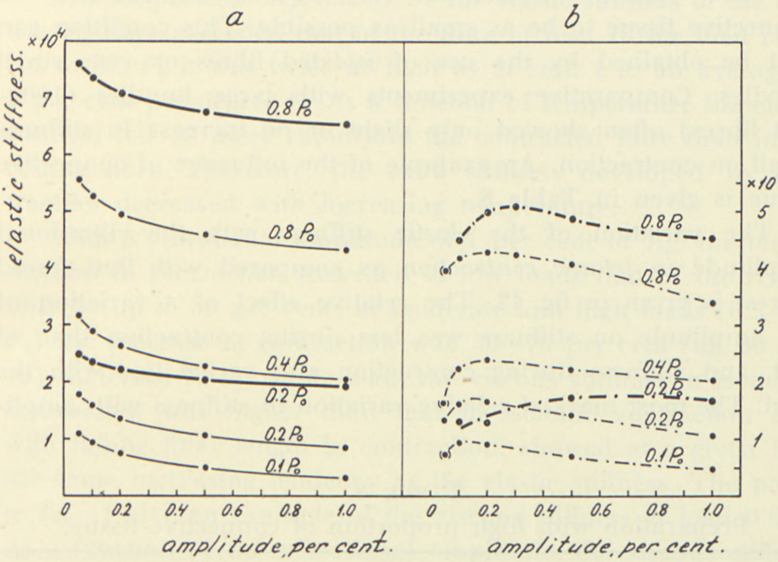


Fig. 42. Dynamic stiffnesses as a function of vibrational amplitude at rest (thin lines) and during contraction (thick lines). The figures on the curves denote the load in units of P_0. 0° C.

a) elastic stiffness (left ordinate) in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, 0° C, (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 3600 dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}).

b) viscous stiffness (right ordinate) in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, 0° C, (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 3600 dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}).

abscissa: alternating length amplitude in per cent of L_0, measured as deflection from the mean position.

represents the stiffness-load relation for a certain initial length. A similar dependence was also found under isometric conditions (Buchthal and Kaiser 1944). The length dependence of the stiffness-load relation is not necessarily an expression of a variation in the intensity of the contraction process, since the increase in cross section and the shortening in itself must be expected to give increased stiffness. The stiffness during tetanic contraction is determined exclusively by the length and tension of the fibre, regardless of whether the contraction was an isometric, an isotonic, a stretch or a release contraction. Even after complete relaxation after a tetanic contraction the stiffness was still found to be higher than before contraction. This increase practically disappeared within 0.5 to 1 minute at 0° C.

In order to be able to measure an increase in stiffness of the order found, it is necessary for the shunting effect of the connective tissue to be as small as possible. This condition can best be obtained by the use of isolated fibres or very small bundles. Comparative experiments with large bundles (100—150 fibres) often showed only slight or no increase in stiffness at all on contraction. An example of the influence of connective tissue is given in Table 8.

The variation of the elastic stiffness with the vibrational amplitude *in tetanic contraction* as compared with that found at rest is given in fig. 42. The relative effect of a variation of the amplitude on stiffness was less during contraction than at rest, and stiffness during contraction also varied less with the load. The most marked relative variation in stiffness with ampli-

Table 8.
Preparation with high proportion of connective tissue.

Initial length in per cent of L_0	load in dynes	state	resonance frequency c. p. s.	shortening in per cent of L_0	change in stiffness in per cent
100	64	contraction	64	18	. .
118	64	rest	63.5	. .	—4
100	64	contraction	64.5	18	. .
118	64	rest	69	. .	. .
122	120	rest	91	. .	. .
104	120	contraction	85	18	—11
104	120	contraction	87.5	22	. .
126	120	rest	91.5	. .	. .
116	300	contraction	128	19	. .
136	300	rest	128	. .	0
116	300	contraction	128	19	. .

equilibrium length = 5 mm. Referred to L_0 = 1 cm, $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ = 50—60, i. e. 2.5—3 times the value found in the isolated fibre or in a small bundle.

tude was seen at moderate loads. At low loads (0.1 P_0) the amplitude dependence of the stiffness in contraction was only $\frac{1}{5}$, at load 0.25 P_0 $\frac{1}{2}$, and at loads exceeding 0.5 P_0 $\frac{2}{3}$ of that found at rest (fig. 42). The fact that contraction stiffness decreased less with amplitude than stiffness at rest implies that the increment in stiffness due to contraction increases with increasing amplitude.

The temperature dependence of the elastic stiffness of the contracted fibre exceeded that of the fibre at rest. In the load range 0.1 to 0.5 P_0 it was twice as high as at rest, i. e. an average of 2 per cent per degree C. As a function of temperature the elastic stiffness fell off more rapidly in the contracted fibre than in the resting fibre. Therefore, the extra stiffness developed by contraction decreased with increasing temperature.

With a vibrational amplitude of 1 per cent of L_0, *the viscous stiffness in contraction* exceeded at low loads that of the resting fibre by up to 30 per cent; at moderate and high loads (0.3—0.8 P_0) the increase in contraction was 30—70 per cent (fig. 30 and 42). Referred to the same load, the viscous stiffness in isometric contraction was higher than that in isotonic contraction and, with falling final length in contraction, showed at a given load the same increasing tendency as the elastic stiffness. The points in fig. 41 give an example of the viscous stiffness at load 0.6 P_0. As a function of the vibrational amplitude, the viscous stiffness during contraction only increased very slightly with the load in the range of amplitude 0.1 to 0.5 per cent of L_0 (fig. 42).

The *temperature dependence* of the viscous stiffness in contraction displayed the same behaviour as the elastic stiffness, viz. it fell off faster with temperature than in the resting fibre. In the range of load 0.1 to 0.5 P_0 the temperature coefficient of viscous stiffness amounted on the average to 2.2 per cent per degree C. (fig. 40). In contrast to the elastic stiffness, the temperature dependence of the viscous stiffness only decreased slightly with a rising load (up to 0.8 P_0). In earlier experiments with isometric contractions a considerable temperature dependence was also found for the total stiffness.

The plot of simultaneous values of viscous and elastic stiffness shows that the increase in total stiffness during an isotonic *tetanic contraction* is caused predominantly by the elastic component (fig. 37). It is also seen that a variation in the vibrational amplitude gave parabolic curves for each load for contraction as well, but in contraction the variation in viscous stiffness was relatively larger at low amplitudes (see also fig. 42b). The rising part of the curve is therefore more clearly defined.

Fig. 43 shows viscous stiffness plotted versus elastic stiffness in another series of experiments. This series also showed that the increase in stiffness during contraction at a low load was chiefly

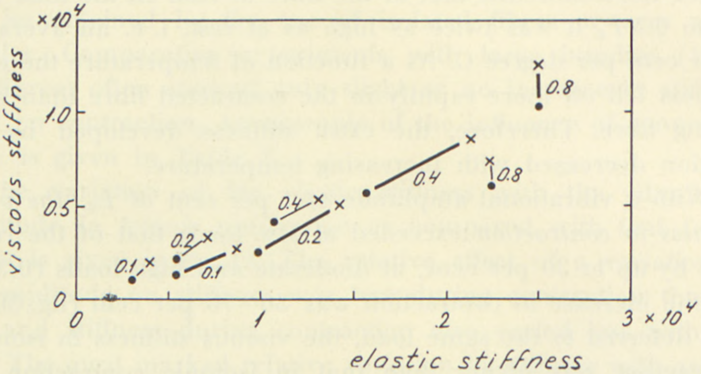


Fig. 43. Viscous stiffness plotted versus elastic stiffness at rest (thin lines) and during contraction (thick lines). The figures on the curves denote the load in units of P_0.

× = 0° C., • = 24° C.

ordinate: viscous stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 1000 dynes × cm^{-1}).
abscissa: elastic stiffness in dynes × cm^{-1} (1 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ = 1000 dynes × cm^{-1}).
Vibrational amplitude 1 per cent of L_0, measured as deflection from the mean position.

due to the elastic component, while the viscous component dominated the increase at a high load. The change in stiffness during contraction caused by the temperature (2 per cent per degree) was up to 0.4 P_0 caused mainly by an increase in elastic stiffness, and at a high load (0.8 P_0) by the viscous component.

The values given for the increase of stiffness during contraction are valid for non-fatigued fibres only. With increasing degree of *fatigue* the increase in stiffness fell, and especially at low vibrational amplitudes a *decrease* in stiffness of 10—30 per cent, accompanying the reduced shortening, could be measured in the fatigued fibre.

We have performed preliminary experiments in order to determine the course of stiffness under isotonic conditions *during* *the transition from rest to contraction.* An alternating force was introduced on the fibre and the resulting amplitude was recorded, in addition to the course of shortening. In these experiments the stiffness was found to be maximal about 0.1 second after the elapse of the latent period. This agrees with the findings in transient experiments during contraction (p. 163) and with earlier vibration experiments under isometric conditions (Buchthal and Kaiser 1944). However, the procedure previously applied for the determination of stiffness had the limitation that the changes in the phase angle were not known, hence it was not possible to differentiate between viscous and elastic stiffness. In addition, knowledge of the change of their mutual relation during the development of shortening was inadequate and consequently the time of the exact position of the maximum could not be ascertained with any great accuracy in these experiments.

Elastic and viscous stiffness in threads of actomyosin.

In a series of experiments we have investigated elastic and viscous stiffness in actomyosin threads. The preparation of the actomyosin was described in a previous paper (Buchthal *et al.* 1949). In these threads the stiffness increased with the load, but the dependence was not linear, as was the case in the muscle fibre (fig. 44a). The increase in stiffness for both elastic and viscous stiffness was relatively largest at small loads. With a constant load the elastic stiffness also increased with time in the actomyosin threads and the increase amounted to about 10 per cent within 15—20 minutes. The viscous stiffness, however, tended to decline.

The viscous stiffness was about one fifth of the elastic. A variation in stiffness with the amplitude of vibration was also found in actomyosin threads (fig. 44b), but this variation *was only 10—20 per cent* of that found in the resting muscle fibre, and was independent of the load. $\frac{d(\log \text{stiffness})}{d(\log \text{amplitude})}$ for actomyosin threads had a mean value of 0.025 (cf. p. 88). The dependence on amplitude in actomyosin threads was of the same order of magnitude as that found in normally vulcanized rubber. Both the elastic and viscous stiffness fell by about 1 per cent per degree C. with

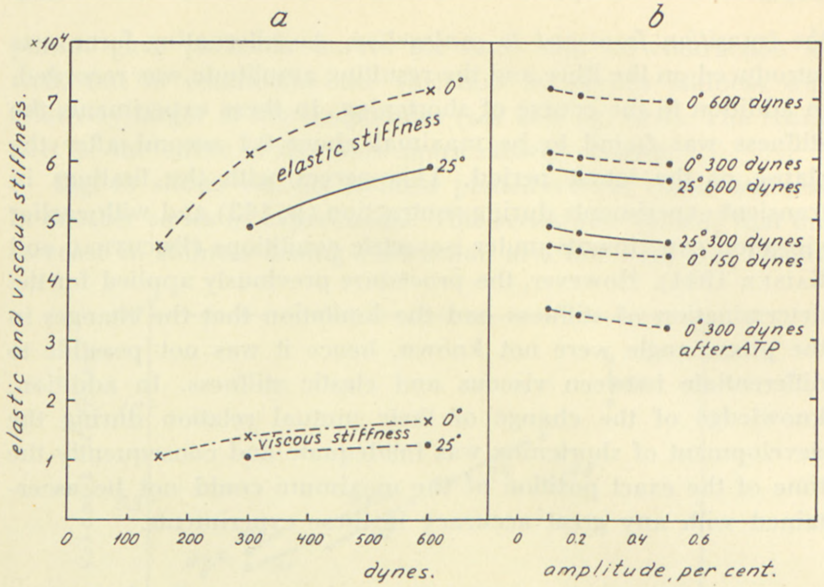


Fig. 44. Elastic and viscous stiffness in an actomyosin thread (a) at 0° and 25° C. as a function of load in dynes. (b) elastic stiffness in an actomyosin thread at 0° and 25° C. with different loads (dynes) as a function of vibrational amplitude (in per cent of the equilibrium length). The lowest curve shows the reduced stiffness and its increased amplitude dependence after treatment with Na-adenosine triphosphate(3×10^{-6} mol/ml).
ordinate: stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}.
left abscissa: load in dynes.
right abscissa: alternating length amplitude in per cent of L_0, deflection measured from the mean position.

falling temperature. In contrast to the findings in muscle the temperature dependence of elastic and viscous stiffness was identical. In agreement with earlier experiments we also found in this series that adenosine triphosphate (ATP, 3×10^{-6} mol/ml) caused a decrease in stiffness of almost 50 per cent.[1] The relative decrease was the same for both elastic and viscous stiffness. After treatment with ATP the stiffness of the actomyosin threads was independent of changes in temperature (0°—25° C.), but a larger variation was found with varying amplitude of vibration.

[1] Obviously this deviates from the behaviour of the living muscle fibre during contraction, e. g. released by application of ATP. According to Szent-Györgyi (1949) and Varga (1950) glycerol extracted muscles displayed a mechanical reaction after application of ATP which in several respects resembles that of the living muscle fibre. However, in recent experiments we found the decrease in stiffness after application of ATP in glycerol extracted muscle fibres as well (Buchthal and Knappeis).

Dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness as an expression of minute structure.

In the interpretation of the structural viscosity a general picture has been indicated of the minute structure of the muscle fibre (p. 41). Its mechanical reaction is considered to be the result of the properties of the minute structural elements themselves and of the texture in which they are organized. The mechanical changes which occur in the elements are transmitted along the molecular architecture which constitutes the fibrillar system. While the changes in these elements will occur fast and dominate the dynamic properties, the adjustment of the texture will take time. As the alignment of the texture is far from complete (see X-ray diffraction and birefringence) a considerable portion of the minute structural elements can be assumed *not* to be under tension. These elements therefore cannot attack the points of entanglement in the texture and do not contribute to the resulting stiffness. In terms of the model of the texture with entanglements of minute structural elements given in fig. 90, this means that the stiffness of the substance is determined by the stiffness between the points of entanglement of the texture, which is again dependent on the stiffness of the contractile elements themselves. The latter can, however, only exert its influence when the chains are aligned by loading. It must thus be assumed that with an increasing load more and more chains are caused to take up part of the load and then contribute to the external stiffness. Simultaneously the elements which were previously orientated on account of the increased stretch, give a further contribution to the stiffness as well, because of their intrinsic nonlinear properties.

The result of these interactions between the texture and contractile chains is that (1) the stiffness increases with increasing load and (2) the stiffness decreases with increasing vibrational amplitude. The cause of this amplitude dependence of stiffness is a delay in the adjustment of the textural pattern and corresponds to the previously mentioned *thixotropy* (see p. 53). With increasing velocity of deformation the number of disrupted points of entanglement per second will increase. Assuming that the reformation of points of entanglements varies proportionally to the number of latent possibilities for entanglements, under stationary conditions the ratio of latent and real points of entanglements will vary proportionally to the velocity-amplitude $(\omega_0 \times \gamma_0)$. Therefore, the number of points of entanglement will decrease with increasing velocity-amplitude which implies a corresponding decrease in stiffness.

Apart from thixotropy another factor will be of importance which is treated quantitatively in a later section (see p. 295). Owing to the delay in the adjustment of the texture the *number of minute structural elements* which are under tension, will vary *within* a period of oscillation. Therefore, the stiffness of the fibre is maximal during only part of the period of vibration and this part decreases with increasing vibrational amplitude. That a delay in the adjustment of the texture is an essential factor for the amplitude dependence of stiffness, is also indicated by the finding that high values of *sr*[1] are associated with a high degree of amplitude dependence.

As previously described (p. 50), an increased vibrational stiffness was found in transient experiments 20 msec. after the change in load, as compared with the vibrational stiffness at approximately the same frequency when the same tension had been allowed to act for a few seconds. The cause of this difference is similar to that described above, in that immediately after the change in load a greater number of elements are under tension than during stationary load, as the texture has not yet reached its stationary adjustment.

The resulting external stiffness is affected by a variability in the points of entanglement of the textural pattern. In the same way as for other high polymers, it can also be assumed for muscle fibres that some of the points of entanglement disappear while others are reformed by chance as a result of thermal agitation. This fluctuation in the points of entanglement gives the stiffness a viscous character. A change in load will thus initially cause a tendency towards a new level of orientation, which, however, can only develop gradually as the pattern adjusts itself. The rise in the dynamic stiffness with falling temperature expresses the longer time taken for regrouping in the texture with falling

[1] $sr = \dfrac{\text{viscous stiffness}}{\text{elastic stiffness}}$.

temperature. This adjustment is not only restricted to the points of entanglement, but must also be assumed to occur within the chains themselves. The fact that the dynamic stiffness is 3 to 5 times higher than the static, indicates that the adjustment is incomplete within a vibrational period. In dynamic experiments the deformation caused by the vibrations is therefore determined mainly by the events in the minute structural elements themselves, while in static experiments it is essentially influenced by the orientation of the texture.

The increase in stiffness accompanying a decrease in the water content of the fibre can be interpreted as being due to the increased number of points of entanglement in the texture which occur when the distance between the minute structural elements is reduced.

Dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness rose in isotonic *tetanic contraction*. This rise is attributed to the interaction of the following factors:

(1) The stiffness of the contractile chains themselves is gradually increased by contraction.
(2) The quick shortening in previously slack chains aligns a considerable number of chains which thereby contribute to stiffness.
(3) The increased alignment accompanying contraction will cause an increased probability for the formation of new points of entanglement.

These changes are reflected in part in the spectrum of retardation times by a reduction in the density of very short and very long times. If we investigate stiffness by the deformations produced by vibrations of high frequency (i. e. frequencies corresponding to the shortest retardation times) these are not represented during contraction and, therefore, we here find a higher stiffness. Measuring at a low frequency (i. e. frequencies corresponding to the longest retardation times) the deformation during contraction will include *all* the retardation times represented, while at rest there still will be low retardation times which cannot participate in the deformation. Therefore, we can have the peculiarity that static (= semidynamic) stiffness may decrease during contraction (BUCHTHAL 1942).

The essential reduction of the amplitude dependence of the vibrational stiffness in contraction can be explained by the improved alignment of the structure in the activated fibre. Thereby the prerequisite for a significant change of stiffness with amplitude (slack chains) is no longer present.

In dynamic experiments the increase in stiffness during contraction is dominated by an increase in elastic stiffness at a low load, while the viscous component apparently dominates at a high load. It should, however, be remembered that viscous stiffness varies with the vibrational frequency to a higher degree than the elastic stiffness (cf. p. 91). With higher load the resonance frequency increases and the increase in frequency can account for the differences in behaviour of the viscous stiffness found at high and at low loads.

We have so far considered the dynamic stiffness at the isotonic maximum, i. e. under approximately stationary conditions, which are characterized by a definite dependence between stiffness and load. *On transition from rest to contraction, special conditions apply.* The relative stiffness $\left(\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}\right)$, which at rest is independent of the tension and the change of which must be considered an expression of an essential alteration in the structure of the fibre caused by contraction, increased initially rapidly and had its maximum before the tension reached its maximal value. Among the factors which must be assumed to be the cause of the change in stiffness on contraction, the maximum must be referred to those mentioned in (2). The rapid shortening of the slack, long chains gives a contribution to the stiffness at the beginning of the contraction (see p. 163). As the shortening in the active substance gradually proceeds, the internal forces will increase up to a certain value. Then the pattern will "give", thereby partly compensating the initial rise in stiffness. In addition, the fact that the influence of changes in the vibrational amplitude is considerably less during contraction than at rest, must be interpreted as indicating that the number of slack chains is reduced during contraction, thereby causing a greater number of chains to participate more equally in bearing the load within the period of deformation. The change in the diffraction spectrum likewise indicates the better alignment of minute structural elements caused by contraction (Buchthal and Knappeis 1940).

In a later section, an attempt is made to give an approximately quantitative treatment of the mechanical effect of inter- and intramolecular rearrangements.

Voigt-model and vibration experiments.

In the definitions on p. 18 of dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness as measured in vibration experiments we used for the description of the mechanical reaction of the muscle fibre a *single Voigt-element* (a retarded elasticity) but emphasized that this model is only of approximate validity and can only be used for suitably high frequencies ($>$ 50 c.p.s.) and amplitudes $<$ about 2 per cent of the equilibrium length of the fibre. In the interpretation of the isotonic transient experiments a *Voigt-model* was applied, i. e. a *series* of Voigt-*elements* with different retardation times.

The Voigt-model is characterized by the distribution function $J(\tau)$ and the series elasticity $\frac{1}{J_0}$ (comp. p. 67). Interpreted in terms of the minute structure $J(\tau)$ and J_0 describe the delayed and instantaneous adjustment of the fibre structure to a transient change in load or length. According to the picture of the fibre structure indicated above, the cause of this delay is the finite velocity with which entanglements in the texture are broken and reformed. An infinitesimal range in the distribution function around a fixed retardation time can be considered a Voigt-*element* and corresponds to changes in the fibre structure which proceed with a delay corresponding to this retardation time.

When applying the Voigt-model derived from the course of adjustment in isotonic transients to vibration experiments it must be kept in mind that the distribution function $J(\tau)$ (43) was determined from the prolonged creep alone, i. e. from changes in length occurring more than 20 msec. after the transient change in load. Therefore, the part of the spectrum of retardation times lying appreciably below 20 msec. is rather poorly determined. Furthermore, the deformations in the prolonged creep experiments used to determine the spectra of retardation times were large, up to 30—50 per cent of the equilibrium length of the fibre, so that they are of quite another order of magnitude than the small deformations in the vibration experiments. The vibrational frequencies were 25—150 c.p.s. corresponding to periods of 7—40 msec. Consequently, they partly go down to times within the poorly determined section of the spectrum of retardation times.

When a Voigt-model is subjected to an external alternating force: $\sigma(t) = \sigma_0 \cos \omega t$, the stationary motion of the system will, just as for the single Voigt-element, be of the type: $\gamma(t) = \gamma_0 \cos(\omega t - \varphi)$.

Therefore, dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness for a Voigt-*model* in forced vibrations can be defined as the elastic and viscous stiffness for the Voigt-*element* which when acted on by the same alternating force performs the same movement as the Voigt-*model*. While for a Voigt-element the elastic stiffness is independent of the frequency and the viscous stiffness is proportional to the frequency, both stiffnesses for the Voigt-*model* depend on frequency and the viscous stiffness is not simply proportional to the frequency. The ratio $\frac{\gamma_0}{\sigma_0}$ between the deformation amplitude and the external force amplitude which acts on the system, varied experimentally with the frequency in approximately the same way as it does for a single Voigt-element. However, the phase did not vary in the expected manner. If a Voigt-*model* is applied the experimental changes in phase can be appropriately described as well. For a Voigt-model with the distribution function $J(\tau)$ and the series elasticity $\frac{1}{J_0}$ it is found (cp. e. g. ALFREY 1948, p. 189 ff.):

$$G_{\text{elast}}(\omega) = \frac{J_0 + \int_0^\infty \frac{J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}}{\left(J_0 + \int_0^\infty \frac{J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}\right)^2 + \left(\int_0^\infty \frac{\omega\tau J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}\right)^2} \tag{59}$$

and

$$G_{\text{visc}}(\omega) = \frac{\int_0^\infty \frac{\omega\tau J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}}{\left(J_0 + \int_0^\infty \frac{J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}\right)^2 + \left(\int_0^\infty \frac{\omega\tau J(\tau)\,d\tau}{1+(\omega\tau)^2}\right)^2} \tag{60}$$

If the Voigt-model is coupled with an inertia m, the resonance frequency ω_0, i. e. the frequency at which the phase displacement between the external alternating force and the deformation caused by it is $\frac{\pi}{2}$, is determined by:

$$m\omega_0^2 = G_{\text{elast}}(\omega_0). \tag{61}$$

Therefore, the stiffnesses measured depend upon the measuring frequency, which is influenced by the inertia m.

By introducing the distribution function (43) and the different boundary values τ_1 and τ_2 (Table 6) in the formulas (59) and (60) we obtain elastic and viscous stiffness as a function of the frequency. Fig. 45 shows these quantities and the total stiffness (cf. p. 90) for the Voigt-models corresponding to the resting fibre and to the tetanically contracted fibre at 0° C. The curves for the Voigt-model which corresponds to the resting fibre at 25° C. are very similar to those for the model of the resting fibre at 0° C. While for the Voigt-model corresponding to the resting fibre elastic, viscous, and total stiffness increase with frequency in the frequency range of interest for the vibration experi-

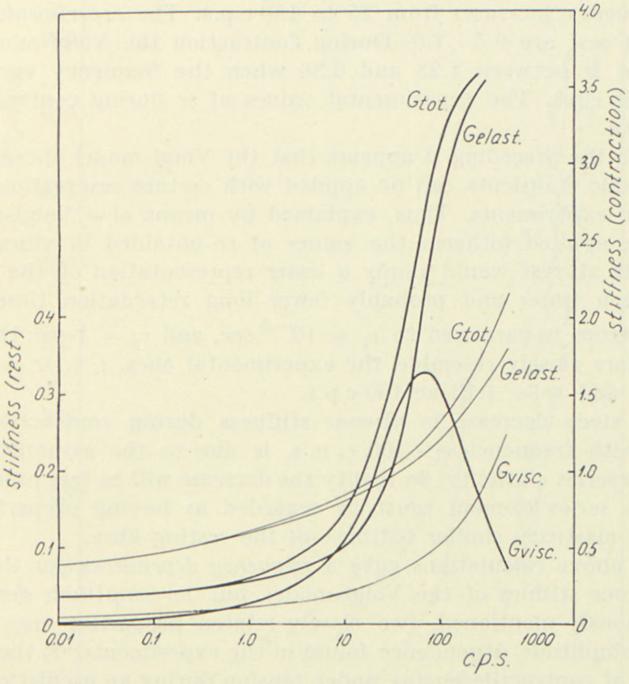


Fig. 45. Elastic, viscous, and total stiffness as a function of vibrational frequency in the Voigt-model developed from isotonic transients (cf. fig. 26 0° C.).
Thick lines: model corresponding to contraction, right ordinate.
Thin lines: model corresponding to resting fibre, left ordinate.
ordinate: stiffness in units of c^{-1} (cf. equation 43).
abscissa: frequency in c.p.s.

ments (25—150 c.p.s.), conditions are more complicated for the Voigt-model corresponding to the tetanically contracted fibre (comp. fig. 45). Here elastic and total stiffness increase with frequency, while viscous stiffness first increases to reach a maximal value at about 70 c.p.s. and then decreases.

In experiments on the resting fibre in which the resonance frequency was varied by altering the equivalent mass of the recording system (cp. p. 91) a reduction of the frequency by a factor 4 caused a slight *in*crease in the elastic stiffness (at most 10 per cent) and a *de*crease in the viscous stiffness by 50—25 per cent according to the tension on the fibre. In the Voigt-model given in fig. 45 a reduction in frequency to one fourth in the frequency range 25—150 c.p.s. results in a *de*crease in elastic stiffness of 20 per cent and viscous stiffness *de*creases 45 per cent.

"Stiffness ratio", $sr = \frac{G_{\text{visc}}(\omega)}{G_{\text{elast}}(\omega)}$ *calculated* for the Voigt-model corresponding to the resting fibre varies between 0.32 and 0.49 when the frequency increases from 25 to 150 c.p.s. The *experimental* values for *sr* at rest are 0.5—1.0. During contraction the Voigt-model gives values of *sr* between 1.28 and 0.38 when the frequency varies from 25 to 150 c.p.s. The experimental values of *sr* during contraction are 1.0 to 0.4.

From the preceding it appears that the Voigt-model obtained from the isotonic transients can be applied with certain reservations to the vibration experiments. Thus, explained by means of a Voigt-model of the type applied hitherto the values of *sr* obtained in vibration experiments at rest would imply a lesser representation of the shortest retardation times and probably fewer long retardation times. When the spectrum is narrowed to $\tau_1 = 10^{-3}$ sec. and $\tau_2 = 1$ sec. the values for *sr* more closely resemble the experimental ones, i. e. $sr = 0.64$ at 25 c.p.s. and $sr = 1.13$ at 150 c.p.s.

The steep decrease in viscous stiffness during contraction which occurs with frequencies $>$ 100 c. p. s. is due to the assumption of a Hookean series elasticity. In reality the decrease will be less pronounced, since the series element must be regarded as having properties of a retarded elasticity similar to those of the resting fibre.

The above calculations gave a *frequency dependence* for the elastic and viscous stiffnes of the Voigt-model, but *no amplitude dependence.* As previously mentioned, two closely related properties may account for the amplitude dependence found in the experiments: 1) the varying number of contractile chains under tension during an oscillation period and 2) the delayed adjustment caused by thixotropy (cf. p. 52). The former possibility is treated in detail in Appendix II.

3) The significance of the sarcolemma for the length-tension diagram of the resting muscle fibre.

In the evaluation of the length-tension diagram and transient experiments in the resting fibre, it is essential to know whether the mechanical properties investigated are localized in *potentially active,* i. e. contractile substance, or in passive elements. Passive substance constitutes part of the fibre content and the surrounding sarcolemma.[1] The question of the part played by the sarcolemma in the length-tension diagram has been disputed.

[1] Histological investigations indicate that the sarcolemma consists of two layers, a plasma membrane and an outer layer of reticular fibres (Long 1947 and Sitaramayya 1951). The reticulum has been demonstrated in electron micrographs (Draper and Hodge 1949, Rozsa *et al.* 1951). In the following we denote by sarcolemma both structures.

According to Ramsey and Street (1940, 1947) the tension in the resting fibre is considered to be caused exclusively by the sarcolemma. Hence, the length-tension diagram of the contractile

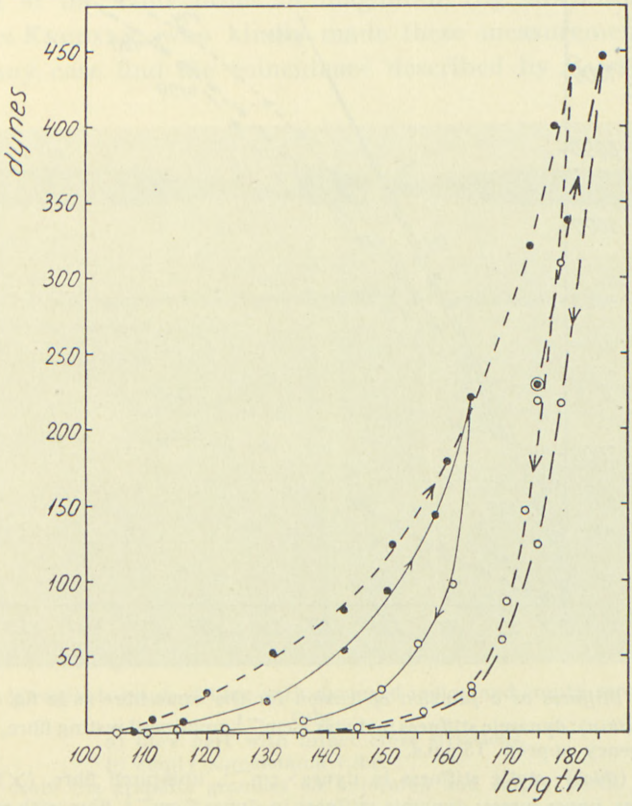


Fig. 46a. *Length-tension diagram* recorded with increasing (●) and decreasing (O) length in an uninjured isolated fibre (full lines) and in the same fibre with empty sarcolemma tube (broken lines). In the latter the increase and decrease was performed twice; 0° C., fibre diameter at equilibrium length (L_0) 160 μ, L_0 = 0.8 cm (Sten-Knudsen).
ordinate: load in dynes.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.

substance can only be represented by the course of the extra tension as a function of the length of the fibre, with the exception of the length at maximal shortening, where the sarcolemma tube can limit the shortening which is accompanied by an increase in the cross section of the fibre. Ramsey and Street support their hypothesis with experiments which showed that the tension developed by the intact fibre practically coincided with the

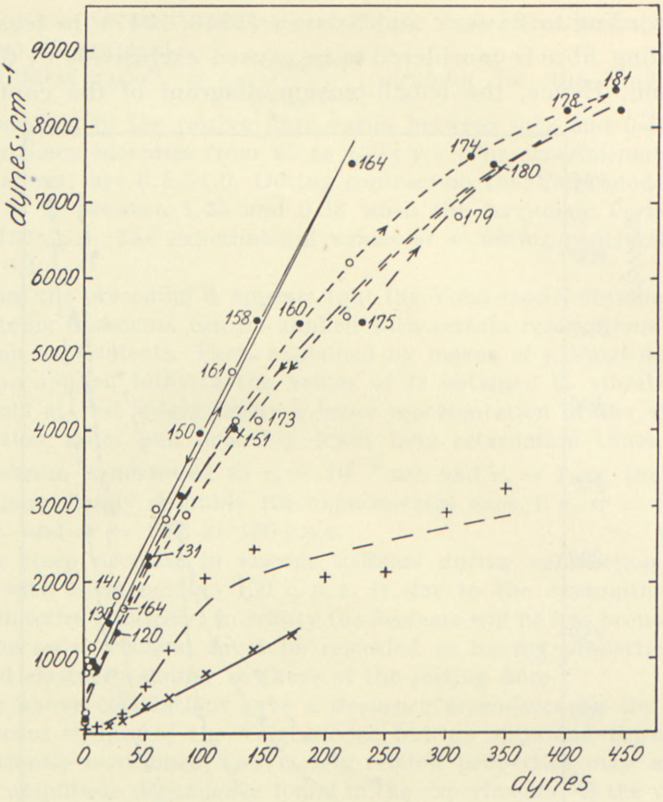


Fig. 46b. *Stiffness as a function of tension* for the same fibre as in fig. 46a. 0° C. *Full lines* (*thin*): dynamic stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, uninjured resting fibre, vibration frequency approx. 15 c.p.s.

full lines (*thick*): static stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, uninjured fibre. ($\times$).

broken lines, upper curves: dynamic stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, fibre with empty sarcolemma tube.

broken lines, lower curves: static stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}, fibre with empty sarcolemma tube. (+).

The figures on the curves denote the length in per cent of L_0.

● increasing length, ○ decreasing length.

(Sten-Knudsen)

ordinate: stiffness in dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}.

abscissa: load in dynes.

tension which was developed at the same length by a sarcolemma tube alone, emptied of the fibrillar contents. In a previous paper it has been pointed out (Buchthal 1942) that this coincidence is surprising on account of the elongation of 50 to 70 per cent, which was measured for the sarcolemma tube after retraction of the fibre content (cf. Bairati 1937).

A comparison of the length-tension diagram of an intact fibre with that of the same fibre after lesion, showed, in agreement with Ramsey and Street (1940, 1947), that the tension in both cases is of the same order of magnitude (fig. 46a). However, Dr. Sten-Knudsen, who kindly made these measurements, did not in any case find the coincidence described by Ramsey and

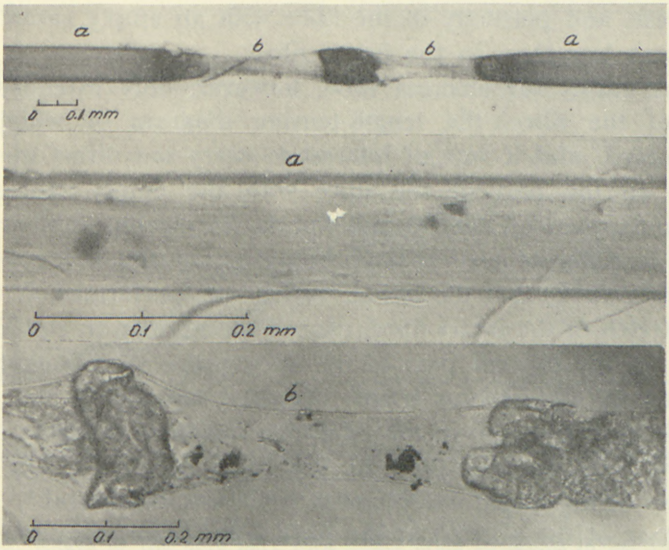


Fig. 47. Microphotograph of fibre with damaged region and empty sarcolemma tube.
a) fibre part with intact cross striations.
b) empty sarcolemma tube.
Note the graphite granules on uninjured and empty parts.

Street. A considerable difference was seen especially at the first extension, when the lesion (which was produced by local compression) and the retraction of the fibre content occurred at low degrees of stretch. It can be seen that the tension here at the same length was considerably higher, probably as a result of shrinkage of the sarcolemma at the retracted region; and only after repeated stretches could reproducible values be obtained for the length-tension diagram of the injured fibre.

After retraction of the fibre content, the diameter of the sarcolemma tube decreased to about 60 per cent of the original diameter, while the length was only increased by about 40 to 50 per cent (fig. 47). Hence the volume enclosed by the sarcolemma tube was diminished by about half. The decrease in volume became more marked with increasing degree of stretch (fig. 49). Since this reduction in volume did not result in a corresponding increase in those parts of the fibre to which the fibre content had retracted, it must be assumed that part of the water left the fibre, either as a result of pressure or changed osmotic activity within the fibre. After the first extension had been completed, hysteresis and plasticity in the fibre with an empty sarcolemma tube was less than in the intact fibre.

The empty sarcolemma tube, however, only extended over part of the fibre, the length-tension diagram of which was determined, and it was of interest to carry out direct measurements on the part of the fibre with the empty sarcolemma tube in comparison with its intact parts. By placing small graphite grains on different parts of the fibre before injuring it, it was found (Casella 1951) that the lesion, which was performed at 40 per cent stretch of the intact fibre, caused an increase in equilibrium length of the injured part of on an average 46 per cent. This increase in equilibrium length occurred equally in the empty sarcolemma tube and in the adjoining region of the fibre, which showed only disintegration of the cross striations. The static stiffness of the empty sarcolemma tube was considerably higher than that of the portion of the fibre with *intact* cross striations. Measuring the change in length by the distance between two groups of graphite grains placed on the sarcolemma tube and the intact fibre section, it was found that the length of the sarcolemma tube increased on an average 2.4 times less than that of the fibre section with intact cross striations. This indicates that the relative static stiffness is 1.65 times higher than in the intact fibre, referred to the same tension and to the equilibrium length of the sarcolemma in the intact fibre. Fig. 48 shows, for 8 fibres, the relative length of the empty sarcolemma tube with its new equilibrium length as unit length plotted versus the relative length in an intact fibre section.

The maximal length of the sarcolemma tube reached before rupturing was on the average 135. Considering that the previously mentioned elongation caused by the injury, amounted to $0.46 \pm 0.03\, L_0$, the ordinate value 100 in fig. 48 corresponds to length 146 (referred to the length of the sarcolemma at the equilibrium length of the intact fibre). The breaking length of 135 thus becomes 197 (135 × 1.46).

In contrast to the increased static stiffness, the *dynamic stiffness* determined in vibration experiments (10—12 c.p.s) and compared at the same tension decreased when the fibre was injured (fig. 46b). Up to length 140—150 the decrease in stiffness

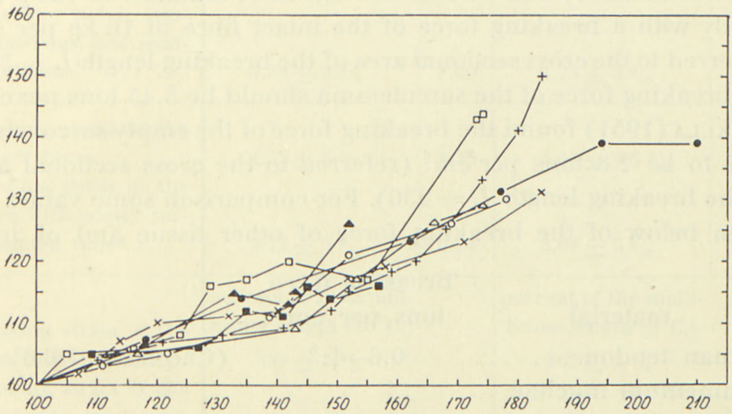


Fig. 48. Length of the empty sarcolemma tube plotted versus the length of the fibre region with intact cross striations during stretch. Tensile force identical in intact and empty regions (second stretch). The different signatures indicate experiments on different fibres (20° C.). (Casella 1951).
ordinate: length of the sarcolemma tube in per cent of its L_0
abscissa: length of the fibre part with intact cross striations in per cent of L_0 of the intact fibre.

was slight, but since only part of the fibre had been transformed to the emptied state, an appreciable decrease in dynamic stiffness must have occurred in the injured part of the fibre. At longer initial length the decrease was considerably more pronounced and the linear dependence between stiffness and tension, characteristic of the intact fibre, could no longer be observed. At a load of 100 dynes the dynamic stiffness of the fibre before injury was 5 times higher than the static. After injury the static stiffness rose simultaneously with the dynamic stiffness and, referred to the same tension, the difference now was only a factor of 2. This must mean that the elasticity of the injured fibre is less influenced by viscosity than the mechanical reaction of the intact fibre.

The mean values of breaking length and breaking stress for intact fibres and fibres with empty sarcolemma sheaths, and values for the maximal specific tension developed in isometric tetanic contraction are given in Table 9 (Casella 1951).[1]

Both the sarcolemma of the intact fibre and the empty sarlemma tube must have a considerable strength. Reckoning with a thickness of the sarcolemma wall of 0.1 μ (Barer 1948, Jones and Barer 1948) and with an average fibre diameter of 125 μ and finally with a breaking force of the intact fibre of 16 kg per cm^2 (referred to the cross sectional area of the breaking length $L = 300$) the breaking force of the sarcolemma should be 5.45 tons per cm^2. Casella (1951) found the breaking force of the empty sarcolemma tube to be 2.8 tons per cm^2 (referred to the cross sectional area at the breaking length $L = 230$). For comparison some values are given below of the breaking force of other tissue and of iron:

material	Breaking force tons per cm^2	
Human tendon	0.6—1.3	(Cronkite 1936)
Ligamentum muchae (cattle)	0.012—0.042	(Wöhlisch *et al.* 1927)
Cast iron	1.2	
Steel...................	6—7	

Casella (1951) has shown that the breaking length and breaking stress in the fibre with an empty sarcolemma tube was considerably lower than in the intact fibre. The fact that the sarcolemma in the intact fibre did not break before a relatively long length was reached, is probably due to the extra deformation arising in the cross section of the empty sarcolemma tube on stretching and not by accidental "weak spots". The decrease in the diameter of the empty sarcolemma tube on stretching was more pronounced than that occurring in the intact fibre or on stretching a rubber tube. A stretching of the intact fibre or of a thin-walled rubber tube of 40 per cent is accompanied by a decrease in diameter of 15 per cent. A corresponding stretch of the empty sarcolemma tube caused a decrease in diameter of 60 to 85 per cent. Assuming a constant volume of the sarco-

[1] Walter (1944–1947) determined the breaking stress of whole muscle (frog's gastrocnemius) to 4–9 kg per cm^2 (20° C). Since this value is of the same order of magnitude as the breaking stress of the isolated fibre, the intramuscular connective tissue can only be of minor importance.

Table 9.
Breaking stress and breaking strain (Casella 1951).

	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm^2 20° C.	Units of P_0 20° C.	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm^2 0° C.	Units of P_0 0° C.
Maximal tetanic tension, isolated fibre from anterior tibial, gastrocnemius, and semitendinosus	$3.29 \pm 3\,\%$	1.00	$2.75 \pm 3\,\%$	1.00
Breaking stress of the intact fibre.........	$4.35 \pm 5\,\%$	1.35	$5.51 \pm 4.5\,\%$	2.00
Breaking stress of the fibre with empty sarcolemma tube*	$2.72 \pm 7\,\%$	0.84	$3.64 \pm 5\,\%$	1.33
	per cent of the equilibrium length (20°C.)		per cent of the equilibrium length (0°C.)	
Breaking strain of the intact fibre.........	$339 \pm 5\,\%$		$302 \pm 5\,\%$	
Breaking strain of the fibre with empty sarcolemma tube	$200 \pm 1.5\,\%$		$229 \pm 2\,\%$	

* Referred to the area of the intact fibre at equilibrium length.

lemma during the stretch, this considerable decrease in diameter must be accompanied by a corresponding increase in the thickness of the sarcolemma wall.

When the fibre content had retracted after injury, the diameter decreased, and at equilibrium length the diameter of the empty sarcolemma tube was only 55 per cent of the diameter of the intact fibre. The fibre content must therefore have been subjected to a radial pressure arising from tangential elastic forces in the sarcolemma tube. At equilibrium length of the *fibre*, this pressure must have caused an elongation and orientation of the fibrils in the fibre in such a way that they react as if they were acted upon by an external longitudinal force. At the equilibrium length of the sarcolemma tube ($L = 146$) the tangential force will give rise to a hydrostatic pressure inside the tube, whose components along the longitudinal axis of the fibre will act to counteract an externally applied load. Thus, when the longitudinal tension arising intrinsically in the sarcolemma is just compensated by the longitudinal force arising from the intrinsic tangential elastic forces in the sarcolemma, then the net-contribution with respect to the external longitudinal force becomes zero. This must be assumed to occur at a length slightly longer than the equilibrium length of the sarcolemma. Only at a length longer than the latter can the sarcolemma give a positive contribution to the total fibre tension. At equilibrium length of the fibre, there must be equilibrium between the three factors giving rise to an external longitudinal force, i. e. the longitudinal force of the fibrils, the longitudinal force of the sarcolemma, and the tangential force of the sarcolemma. It is impossible to decide with certainty whether the equilibrium length measured for the empty sarcolemma tube (146 compared with 100 for the fibre) and the corresponding diameter (55 per cent of that of the intact fibre) is actually the equilibrium length of the sarcolemma in the intact fibre. The occurrence of an irreversible plastic change in the texture of the sarcolemma on retraction of the fibre contents cannot be excluded.

The marked transverse contraction on stretching showed that, in addition to the tangential force caused by the smaller equilibrium diameter of the sarcolemma as compared with that of the fibre, a tangential force also arose as a result of the stretch. This, however, was not very large. The length-tension diagram of the empty sarcolemma tube did not differ significantly from that of the sarcolemma tube filled with disorganized fibre substance. In this portion the diameter was equal to that of the intact fibre. Thus, an only insignificant work of deformation accompanies the reduction in the cross section. Since the deformation itself is relatively large, the resistance of the sarcolemma to the tangential deformations must have been slight. As regards the efficiency of the fibre this flexibility in the sarcolemma implies that unnecessary work of deformation is minimized during the changing cross section, which accompanies the shortening of the muscle fibre.

The experiments on the empty sarcolemma tube reported here, do not confirm the hypothesis of Ramsey and Street (1940, 1941) that the sarcolemma alone is responsible for the tension of the fibre at rest. There are two possible interpretations of the present experiments. One interpretation is that the sarcolemma tube, as already mentioned, is so much altered in its structural properties that it is not justifiable to draw any conclusions with regard to the properties of the sarcolemma in the intact fibre. The other possibility is that the contribution of the sarcolemma tube to the total tension of the muscle fibre at rest is of minor importance. The latter alternative is illustrated by the re-

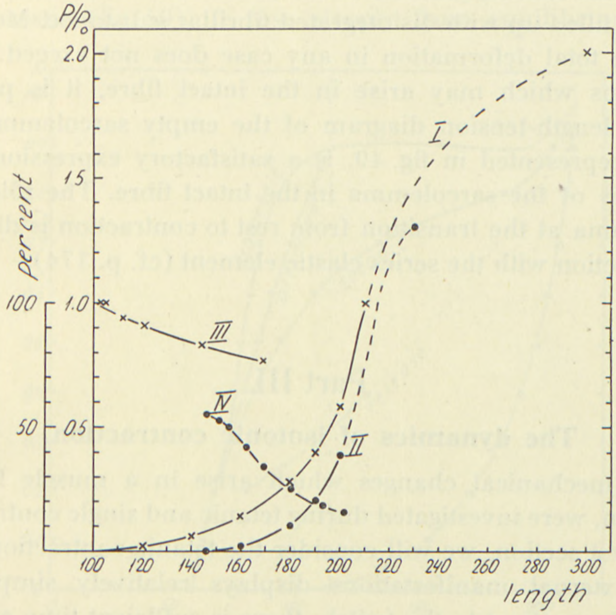


Fig. 49. Tension and diameter as a function of length in the uninjured muscle fibre and its empty sarcolemma tube.

curve I: length-tension diagram of uninjured resting fibre, interpolated to the breaking point.
curve II: length-tension diagram of the empty sarcolemma tube from tension zero to the breaking point.
curve III: diameter of uninjured fibre as a function of length.
curve IV: diameter of empty sarcolemma tube as a function of length.
left ordinate: diameter in per cent of the diameter of the uninjured fibre at equilibrium length.
right ordinate: load in units of P_0.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.
(Casella 1951).

construction of the length-tension diagram of the sarcolemma (fig. 49). This is based on the following experimental findings: (1) the equilibrium length of the empty sarcolemma tube on an average was 46 per cent above that of the intact fibre; (2) the static stiffness of the empty sarcolemma tube was 1.65 times that of the intact fibre section, referred to the same load. The curves in fig. 49 show that the sarcolemma only gives a positive contribution to the total tension of the fibre at rest, above a length of 150. At shorter lengths its contribution to the tension is zero or negative.[1]

The deformation of the cross section in the empty sarcolemma tube has no significant effect on the length-tension diagram as compared with the length-tension relation in a sarcolemma tube which is filled up with disintegrated fibrillar substance. Moreover, since the total deformation in any case does not exceed the deformations which may arise in the intact fibre, it is probable that the length-tension diagram of the empty sarcolemma tube, as it is represented in fig. 49, is a satisfactory expression of the properties of the sarcolemma in the intact fibre. The rôle of the sarcolemma at the transition from rest to contraction is discussed in connection with the series elastic element (cf. p. 174).

Part III

The dynamics of isotonic contraction.

The mechanical changes which arise in a muscle fibre on activation, were investigated during tetanic and single contractions. In the first section, we will consider the tetanic contraction which in its external manifestations displays relatively simple properties. In contrast to the twitch, there is sufficient time available for a mechanical adjustment of the substance to the changes caused by the contraction process. As mentioned in the Introduction, in the present material stress is laid on an analysis of the mechanical properties under isotonic conditions. This gives the important advantage that pure elasticities which are in series with the contractile components do not change their lengths and hence do not exert a varying influence on the length of the fibre during transition to an active state.

[1] The findings in the present experiments, divergent from those of RAMSEY and STREET (1940), cannot be explained on the basis of differences in the length-tension diagrams of the non-injured fibre. If the slope of Ramsey's length-tension diagrams had been much flatter than the slope in the diagrams of our intact fibres, the tension obtained at the natural length of the empty sarcolemma tube would only be of minor importance as initial tension. However, at this length ($L = 146$) in RAMSEY's experiments the fibre tension amounted to 8 and 25 per cent of the maximal tension developed in contraction (1940, figs. 3 and 4), as compared with a fibre tension of 10 per cent in the present experiments.

Tetanic contraction.

Curve of isotonic maxima.

The maximal shortening obtained for a given load in isotonic tetanic contraction is called an *isotonic maximum*. The curve of isotonic maxima as a function of load displayed an S-shaped characteristic (fig. 50). It rose steeply from equilibrium length

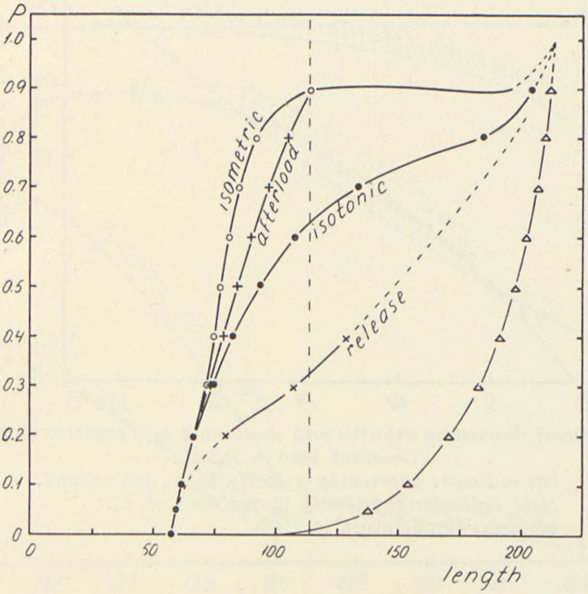


Fig. 50. Length-tension diagram of the isolated fibre at rest, during isometric tetanic contraction, isotonic contraction, afterload contraction, and during release contraction to the same tension as at rest. 0° C. Vertical broken line indicates the position of the stop in afterload contractions.
ordinate: tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.

during contraction (length 50—60) and the shortening (difference between length at rest and during contraction at the same load) was maximal at 0.4 P_0, amounting to about 100 per cent of L_0 at 0° C. At 0.75 P_0, the S-shaped curve had its point of inflexion, and the contraction curve then gradually approached the resting curve.

The shortening in tetanic contraction increased with rising *temperature*. The temperature range examined was naturally limited to temperatures between —2° and + 26° C. Fig. 51 shows the shortening as a function of the temperature during tetanic contraction at low load (0.1 P_0). The shortenings given are mean values obtained by continuous cyclical changes in temperature from —2° to +26° C. The cyclical measurements show that the shortening during rising temperature was less than the corresponding shortening during falling temperature. This hysteresis

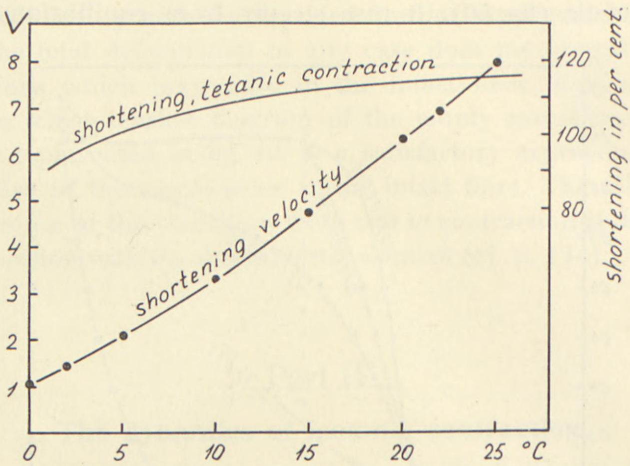


Fig. 51. Maximal shortening velocity and shortening as a function of temperature. Constant load = 0.3 P_0.
left ordinate: shortening velocity in L_0 per second.
right ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: temperature in °C.

was not due to incomplete equilibration of temperature between the Ringer's solution and the muscle fibre. It must be caused by a slow adjustment of temperature-dependent equilibria in the structure. In other experiments we have examined the effect of two extreme temperatures, 0° and 26° C., and waited until temperature equilibrium was obtained at the different loads examined. On each fibre, at least three experiments were carried out, one at 0° C., one at 26° C., and repetition of the experiment at 0° C. Only experiments which showed agreement in the two series carried out at 0° C., were included in the material. The curves in fig. 52 show an example of the shortening at 0° C. and at 26° C. as a function of the load. The curve at 0° C. is a mean value of the first and last series. At low loads, the shortening at 26° C. was about 25 per cent higher than the shortening at 0° C.

The difference increased with rising load, the shortening at 0° C. decreasing rapidly with the load. This decrease in shortening may be more or less pronounced as can be seen by comparing the present example with the mean curve in fig. 57.

Compared with the temperature dependence of the length of the resting fibre (maximally 1 per cent per 25° C.), the temperature dependence of the active fibre was 25 times larger at the load at which the shortening at 0° C. was at its maximum (fig. 52).

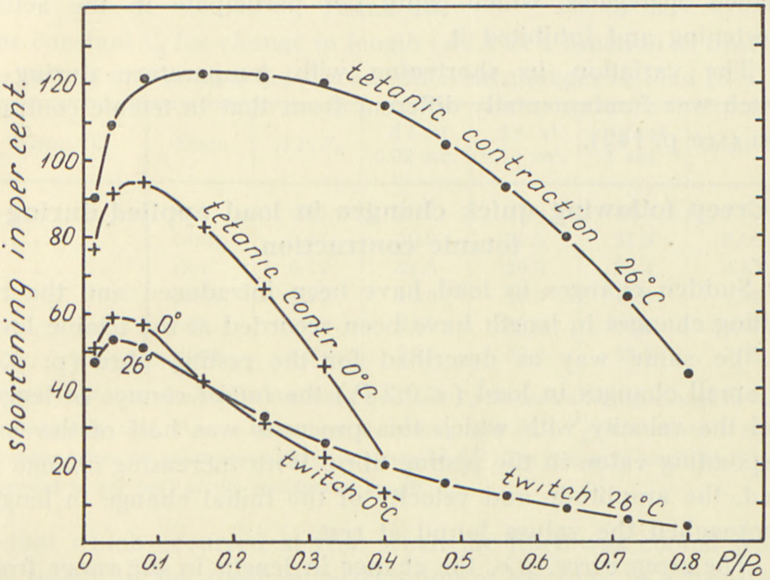


Fig. 52. Maximal shortening in an isotonic twitch and tetanus as a function of load. 0° C. and 26° C.
ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

While increasing load caused decreasing temperature dependence at rest, the reverse was true during contraction.

If extrapolation is performed on the curve for the data at 0° C. a value for P_0 would be obtained which would seem to indicate that it was $\frac{1}{2}$ P_0 at 26° C. However, the small difference in P_0 obtained in isometric contraction shows that extrapolation is not permissible in this region. In fact the curve for 0° C. must intersect the abscissa (fig. 52) at higher values than indicated by an extrapolation. The tension rose only 1 per cent per degree rise in temperature, the average value of isometric tension at 0° C. being

$2.75 \pm 0.095 \times 10^6$ dynes per cm^2 and at 20° C. $3.27 \pm 0.100 \times 10^6$ dynes per cm^2 (temperature coefficient $9.8 \times 10^{-3} \pm 2.4 \times 10^{-3}$, CASELLA 1951[1]). The relatively small change in P_0 accompanying a change in temperature, as compared with the rapid decrease of the shortening with decreasing temperature indicated that the shortening tended to be inhibited at low temperature and high load. It must be assumed that these conditions offered good possibilities for "crystallizations", i. e. that the contractile substance formed aggregates, which could not participate in the active shortening and inhibited it.

The variation in shortening with temperature during a twitch was fundamentally different from that in tetanic contraction (see p. 142).

Creep following quick changes in load applied during tetanic contraction.

Sudden changes in load have been introduced and the resulting changes in length have been recorded at the tetanic level in the same way as described for the resting fibre (p. 45). At small changes in load ($< 0.2\ P_0$) the *initial change in* length and the velocity with which this proceeds was half of the corresponding value in the resting fibre. With increasing change in load, the amplitude and velocity of the initial change in length approached the values found at rest.

The creep curve, i. e. the change in length in the range from 20 to 1000 msec., had an approximately linear course as a function of the logarithm of time (fig. 20). The creep velocity was about twice that found at rest. At large changes in load ($> 0.4\ P_0$) the final change in length was larger and at small changes in load ($< 0.1\ P_0$) less than at rest, and at changes in load of between $0.1\ P_0$ and $0.4\ P_0$ the creep curves for rest and contraction intersect.

The almost linear course of the change in length as a function of the logarithm of time justifies characterizing the curve by means of a constant C_l, as in the resting curve (cf. p. 55). C_l is considerably higher in contraction than at rest, and the difference which is largest at high loads is at least 50 per cent.

[1] From experiments of RAMSEY and STREET, BULL (1945) calculated a temperature coefficient for the isometric tension of $8.4 \times 10^{-3} \pm 3.6 \times 10^{-3}$.

However, during contraction the change in length approached rapidly a limiting value after a few seconds; this did not occur at rest.[1]

Table 10 shows that at 0° C. the creep velocity was higher in the contracted than in the resting fibre while contraction reduced the initial velocity and the amplitude of the change in length. The difference between rest and contraction corresponds

TABLE 10.

The constant C_l for change in length (ΔL) as a function of time in the resting and contracted fibre at different changes in load (0° C.).

Temp. °C	State	$\Delta P/P_0$	ΔL at 0.02 sec.	ΔL at 0.14 sec.	ΔL at 1 sec.	C_l in %
0	rest	0.11	20.4	27.0	32.6	3.67
0	contr.	0.11	10.0	21.5	31.3	6.06
0	rest	0.19	21.5	29.9	36.4	4.87
0	contr.	0.19	13.0	26.9	40.9	7.19
0	rest	0.39	24.6	30.0	34.6	3.00
0	contr.	0.39	24.9	39.0	53.5	7.12

$\Delta P = P_2 - P_1$ where P_1 is the initial load and P_2 the load after the change in load. For increasing load, $P_2 = 4\,P_1$ and for decreasing load $P_2 = \frac{P_1}{4}$. The constants found are mean values for positive and negative values of $\frac{\Delta P}{P_0}$. The change in length and C_l are expressed in per cent of the equilibrium length.

to that which occurred at rest, when the fibre was cooled from 25° to 0°. In the mechanical reaction of the fibre to a transient change in load the resistance is increasingly dominated by viscous forces as the temperature falls and even more so when the fibre is thrown into the contracted state.

The transient course recorded here showed good agreement with the measurements of dynamic and static stiffness. The smaller initial change in length, which was found at a given change in load, as compared with rest indicates that the *dynamic stiffness* rises during contraction. The higher creep velocity as

[1] Similar to HILL's estimate of the elastic energy liberated by sudden release of contracted whole muscle (1950 b) we have calculated this quantity for the isolated fibre. At release from 0.5 P_0 during the first 20 msec. an energy corresponding to 0.03 $P_0 \times L_0$ was transmitted to the recording system. Later on (interval 20 to 200 msec.) the energy rose to 0.05 $P_0 \times L_0$ and increased approximately linearly with the logarithm of time (fig. 20). The continuous way in which the elastic energy is liberated in the isolated fibre indicates that it will hardly be possible to distinguish between purely elastic and retarded components.

compared with rest, and the larger final change in length on contraction especially at high load, indicate that the fibre is considerably more fluid and has a smaller *static stiffness* on contraction than at rest. The elongation reached *shortly* (2—10 msec.) after a change in load corresponds to the high values for the dynamic stiffness, which were found in vibration experiments, with frequencies of about 200 to 50 c.p.s. The elongation after a *longer* interval (20—200 msec.) corresponds to the lower values for stiffness found at frequencies of about 10 to 2 c.p.s.

As already mentioned in the discussion of transient experiments on the resting fibre, creep during contraction can be described by means of a Voigt-model. Fig. 26 gives the distribution of the retardation times calculated on the basis of the experimentally determined course of elongation at rest and on contraction. The spectrum of the retardation times during contraction had a smaller representation of short retardation times and the long times, found at rest, were completely missing on contraction. The high dynamic stiffness found during contraction,

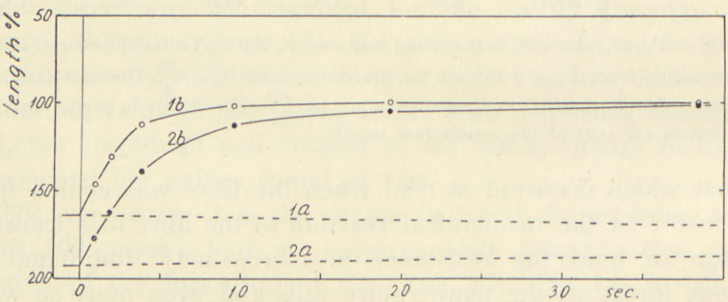


Fig. 53. Adjustment of length at 0.1 P_0 as a function of time after a short decrease (curve 1a and 1b) or a short increase (curve 2a and 2b) in load. a: rest, b: isotonic tetanic contraction. 0° C. See fig. 54.

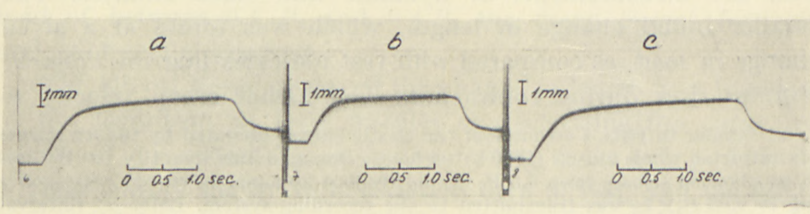


Fig. 54. Adjustment of length in isotonic tetanic contraction at constant load (0.1 P_0). Curves a and c after a preceding increase, curve b after a preceding decrease in load. L_0 = 4 mm. 0° C.
Duration of the stimulation is indicated by the broader line of the myogram.

as compared with rest, is interpreted as an expression of the smaller representation of shorter retardation times, and the more rapid approach to a stationary state after a transient must be interpreted as an expression of the absence of long retardation times which are replaced by the more numerous retardation times of intermediate size.

Thus, the change in the retardation time spectrum on contraction can illustrate the observation that a contraction is able to extinguish the influence of mechanical effects, to which the fibre has been subjected at rest. An adjustment towards equilibrium, which on contraction was reached within 3 seconds, required about 1 minute at the same load at rest. Fig. 53 shows the course of adjustment at rest (curves 1 a and 2 a) and during contraction (curves 1 b and 2 b), the latter obtained from the curves in fig. 54. The change in the length of the fibre at rest (fig. 53, curve 2 a) was produced by a transient application of an additional load. The difference in length at the same tension was retained at rest during a relatively long period, i. e. it was reduced to about 60 per cent in 3 seconds. A tetanic contraction lasting 3 seconds reduced the difference in length to only 10 per cent.

The curves for the isotonic and isometric maxima.

It was natural to assume that the curve for the isotonic maxima in the length-tension diagram would coincide with the curve for the isometric maxima. However, this was only the case from load 0 to 0.2 P_0, i. e. at a length at which an "isometric" contraction was initiated about 30 per cent below the equilibrium length of the isolated fibre. Obviously, this was no true isometric contraction, the fibre shortening without tension until it was straightened out. The range of length from equilibrium to the shortest length obtained in contraction corresponds to a stop ("anschlag") contraction. After the fibre had taken up the slack, the contraction then proceeded isometrically. The tension for the same length was less during stop contraction than in the corresponding isometric contraction (Reichel 1936, 1938), and therefore it is not surprising that the "isometric" contraction at low tension coincided with the isotonic. If, at the beginning of the contraction, the fibre had been kept slightly compressed in the longitudinal direction to a length below the equilibrium length, higher values of tension should have been expected for the fibre actually under isometric conditions. From load $0.2\,P_0$, the tension in isometric contraction for the same length was up to 50 per cent higher than the tension in isotonic contraction. The difference was largest in the range about length 100.

In order to be able to make a comparison as described above, it is of course necessary, both for isometric and isotonic contraction, to wait until complete equilibrium is obtained, i. e. constant tension or constant length. In isotonic contraction, the presence of possibly undamped inactive series elasticities in the muscle fibre are without significance for the course of adjustment, since the elasticities retain a constant length, on account of the constant load. On the other hand, these series elasticities will influence the development of tension in isometric contraction, since the contractile elements, in spite of external isometry of the fibre, must work against a certain velocity of elongation of the inactive series elements during the rise in tension. The shortening velocity which arises in the active elements in compensation of the lengthening of the inactive elements causes the resulting tension to be lower than the truly isometric tension would be (cf. force-velocity relation p. 148, 177). A series elastic element, therefore, can cause differences in the course of adjustment, in isotonic and isometric contraction, but it cannot explain the higher stationary value of tension, which was found in isometric contraction.

Before the difference in the length-tension dependence found for the isotonic and isometric maxima could be considered as real, it was necessary to ensure that the difference was really due to a peculiarity in the behaviour of the contractile substance. In order to exclude the possibility of *fatigue and plastic elongation*, which could have exerted its influence in different ways in isotonic and isometric contraction three special series of experiments were carried out:

Three successive curves were recorded from the same fibre in the sequence, isotonic, isometric, and isotonic. A comparison between the two isotonic curves permits an evaluation of the presence of possible fatigue and plastic yielding as compared with the intermediate isometric curve. Experiments on fibres in which the first and the last curves recorded for the isotonic maxima coincided, still showed the considerable difference in length-tension dependence between isotonic and isometric contraction.

This difference was also seen in other experiments, in which isotonic shortening and isometric tension were recorded alternately for each length at rest; an isotonic control measurement at moderate load ($0.3\,P_0$) was performed at regular intervals, in order to control the possible occurrence of fatigue or plastic elongation. As a further control of the possible influence of fatigue, which could be expected to be especially marked after isotonic contraction, where the initial length even at moderate load approached 200, we carried out a series of experiments with continuous repetition of a cycle of alternating isotonic and isometric contractions. Comparing values of equal tension in isotonic and isometric contraction, the corresponding differences in length could be determined. The fibre was brought to isometric contraction at a low initial length, and an isotonic contraction was then initiated at the same tension as that reached in the isometric contraction, etc.

By all these procedures the same result was obtained, that is the curve for the isotonic maxima lies considerably below the curve for the isometric maxima (fig. 50), and this difference is not due to incomplete adjustment, fatigue, or plastic elongation.

The area which lies between the curve for the isometric and the curve for the isotonic maxima, can be examined by means of stop-contractions, or, as we have done, by means of afterload contractions (v. Kries (1880), Sulzer (1930), Hill (1938), and Reichel (1936, 1938)). The first phase of an afterload contraction proceeds isometrically up to the point at which the tension developed by the fibre is sufficiently high to overcome the external load. The fibre then shortens isotonically against the external load.

In afterload contractions the length of the muscle was limited by means of a stop (n, fig. 2) to, for example, length 115. The load required at rest to stretch the muscle to this stop was denoted P_r. At loads $< P_r$ the muscle fibre worked isotonically, since it had not reached the stop. At loads $P > P_r$, the muscle was stretched to the stop and the tension rose isometrically from

P_r to P. The fibre then shortened under the load P. When the fibre worked at loads varying between P_r and P_0, a curve for the *maxima of the afterload contractions* was obtained, the end-points of which were the isotonic point at load P_r and the corresponding isometric point at load P_0 at the length determined by the stop, i. e. 115. For each fibre length determined by the position of the stop there was an afterload curve connecting the isometric maximum with a point on the curve of the isotonic maxima at a considerably lower length and tension. Thus, it can be seen that for different stop lengths, i. e. for different values of P_r, there will be described a family of afterload curves starting from the isometric maximum and sloping downwards to the left (fig. 50) terminating on the curve of the isotonic maxima. The curves for the maxima of the afterload contractions are approximately linear. Afterload contractions with isometric and isotonic contractions as limiting cases thus allow in a well defined way a combination of the latter conditions and show that there is a continuous transition in length and tension between isotonic and isometric contraction.

In evaluation of the difference found between the curves for the isotonic and isometric maxima it was important to establish whether factors other than the resting length and tension determined the length reached during maximal tetanic contraction. During the recording of the curves for the isotonic and isometric maxima we have, therefore, inserted *release contractions* at different resting lengths. The fibre was stimulated at a given initial length under isometric conditions until tension P_0 was reached. Then the fibre was released during continuous stimulation to the same tension which it had at rest. The resulting stabilized shortening was considerably less than an isotonic shortening, at loads above 0.1 P_0 (Buchthal 1942).

In agreement with our findings for isotonic and release contractions Reichel (1936), using whole muscles, has shown that from the same resting length smaller or larger shortenings are obtained at the same tension, according to whether the contraction proceeds isometrically-isotonically (afterload) or isotonically-isometrically (stop).

Texture and elastic locking.

From the *same* initial length and tension, different values are thus obtained for the final length attained in contraction, according to the length-time or tension-time course, which the fibre has undergone during the contraction. The explanation of the differences in the length-tension diagrams under different conditions is to be found in the previously described elastic locking (Buchthal 1942). However, on the basis of the present experiments the textural pattern is assumed to be the site of the locking in the structure and not—as previously assumed—the minute structural elements themselves.

The random cross-linking of chains establish the condition that part of the contractile substance will not be under load in the fibre at rest (slack). *Upon activation* the fibre changes in two ways: (1) the minute structural elements begin to shorten, and (2) the stiffness will increase. The increased stiffness is an expression of an alteration of the minute structural pattern produced by changes in its elements. Part of the resulting increase in stiffness is localized to the minute structural elements themselves and part to the texture in which they are organized. The quick shortening which will occur in the chains not under tension will cause a continuously increasing fraction of the structure to participate in bearing the load, thereby producing an increased stiffness. Finally, because of the better alignment in the structure, the probability of new points of entanglement to be formed will increase. Both factors contribute to the rise in stiffness. The more rigid textural pattern will be formed relatively soon during the development of shortening and will limit the latter. Thus, in order to shorten appreciably, it is necessary for the fibre to be able to contract considerably before the pattern is finally established. In isotonic contraction a fibre with a load of 0.7 P_0 (fig. 50) will shorten from length 200 to length 140. A corresponding tension in isometric contraction is reached at length 85. The reason for the smaller shortening under isotonic conditions is the more rigid textural pattern which arises during shortening. This limits the shortening to length 140. The even smaller shortening observed in release contraction as compared with that obtained in isotonic contraction at the same tension, can be explained by the relatively long time allowed for the isometric contraction to persist before release. The rigid texture characteristic of the contracted state in release contraction becomes established at the high initial length, while during an isotonic contraction this happens when the fibre is in the process of attaining a smaller length. The textural pattern which is established during an isometric contraction may be partially broken and then reformed at a longer length under the influence of vibrations with > 2 per cent length amplitude. Thereby the extra tension is reduced. This yielding in the texture was seen in the experiments illustrated by fig. 28 when high frequency vibrations (100 c.p.s.) were applied and also during development of the isometric tension when low frequency vibrations were imposed on the fibre (5—10 c.p.s., Buchthal *et al.* 1944a). Therefore, in vibration experiments it will be advisable to apply as low a vibrational amplitude as possible.

The experiments hitherto described all showed that the stationary tension for the same length obtained in contraction depended on the previous experimental treatment both as regards tension and length at rest and during contraction (cf. Blix 1895a and b). For the same length the highest tension was obtained in isometric contraction.

In isotonic contraction the tension was lower and the afterload contractions which contained both an isometric and an isotonic phase lay in between. In release contraction, defined as release during stimulation from isometric contraction to the same tension as at rest, the tension of contraction for the same length was even lower than in isotonic contraction.

Comparison between length and tension in maximal contraction of the single fibre and whole muscle.

Shortening in a whole muscle varies considerably with the equilibrium length of its fibres, and with the geometric arrangement of the fibres in relation to the direction of pull of the muscle. The shortest relative length which could be reached during contraction did not differ appreciably from that obtained in the single fibre.

Table 10.

Maximum force developed in contraction of whole muscle and isolated fibre.
(Calculated from experiments made by Casella (1951)).

Maximal tetanic tension	number of muscles	mean weight mg.	L_0 cm.	20° C.				0° C.			
				force/g.	$P_0 \times L_0/M$ (2)	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm.² (3)	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm.² (1)	force/g.	$P_0 \times L_0/M$ (2)	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm.² (3)	$\times 10^6$ dynes/cm.² (1)
Whole semitendinosus (ventral head)......	10	39.5	1.81	1275	2320	2.28 ± 3.3 %	1.48 ± 5 %	940	1695	1.66 ± 3.8 %	1.09 ± 6 %
Whole anterior tibial (medial head)	10	50.5	2.07	2210	4480	4.40 ± 2.5 %	2.50 ± 4 %	1500	3180	3.12 ± 3.9 %	1.71 ± 5 %
Isolated fibre from semitendinosus, anterior tibial, and gastrocnemius	38	—	0.8			3.29 ± 3 %				2.75 ± 3 %	

(1) Tension determined at length 110—120.
(2) L_0 = equilibrium length, M = mass of the muscle, P_0 maximum force in g.
(3) Calculated from (2) as $P_0 \times L_0/M \times 981$.

As regards the *specific tension* Casella (1951) in this laboratory has carried out a systematic comparison between the maximal tension developed in the fibre and in the respective muscle (Table 10). As seen from the table force × length per g. weight ($P_0 \times L_0/M$, Hill 1950 b) for the semitendinosus was of the same order of magnitude as Hill found for frog and toad sartorius. $P_0 \times L_0/M$ for the anterior tibial muscle is considerably greater, a finding which can be understood when considering the bipennate fibre arrangement of this muscle, whereby the length of the muscle no longer represents a measure of the length of the fibres. With $P_0 \times L_0/M$ as a basis for calculation the specific force developed in a whole muscle as compared with that of the isolated fibre is approximately 40 per cent lower. In the case of the isolated fibre, measurements of the cross sectional area could be performed with sufficient accuracy and, therefore, the force was determined directly per cross sectional unit. In the table values are also given for the specific tension of whole muscle calculated on the basis of a direct measurement of cross section. These values were about 35 per cent lower than those arrived at by calculating specific force from $P_0 \times L_0/M$. This difference is obviously caused by deviations from a cylindrical shape which was not taken into account when measurements were made of the maximal diameter only.

The difference between the specific tension in the single fibre and the whole muscle (calculated from $P_0 \times L_0/M$) is so large that it cannot be explained merely on the basis of the different equilibrium lengths of the different fibres and the subsequent differences in degree of stretch. Moreover, the small spread found for the mean values of the tension excludes the possibility that the difference could be due to an accidentally higher activity in some of the single fibres examined. Neither can variations in the cross sectional area in that part of the muscle (ab. $\frac{1}{2}$) where the fibres can move freely during stretch without hindrance from the tendon sheath, account for the difference. This part of the muscle is approximately cylindrical. The cause of the difference must mainly be the fact that only part of the cross sectional area of the muscle consists of active substance. Although the fibres are plastic, they are not tightly packed, and the interspaces are filled with connective tissue, blood-vessels and lymphvessels, nerves, and tissue fluid. A comparison between the *specific birefringence* of the single fibre and the whole muscle can give a measure of the amount of active substance. The mean value for the birefringence of the isolated fibre was $2.01 \pm 0.048 \times 10^{-3}$ (Buchthal and Knappeis 1938)[1] and for large bundles from semi-tendinosus muscles consisting of 100—200 fibres 1.41×10^{-3} with a minimum value of 1.23×10^{-3} and a maximum value of 1.65×10^{-3}. The specific birefringence was thus 30 per cent less in large cylindrical bundles than in the isolated fibre, indicating a correspondingly smaller amount of active substance. The difference found by measurements of birefringence was twice as large as the values found by Boyle and Conway (1941) for the volume of the intercellular space by studying the distribution of inulin (13 per cent). This discrepancy must be assumed to be an indication that part of the inactive substance in muscle cannot take up inulin.

These experiments show that the considerable difference in P_0 per unit area for whole muscle and single fibres can be explained chiefly by the contribution of the inactive substance to the cross section. The passive substance reduces the specific P_0 for whole muscle in two ways: 1) by contributing as an important factor to the cross sectional area and 2) by part of it acting as series elasticity to the fibres. In spite of external isometry, contraction of the fibres may thus be accompanied by a shortening. Owing to this shortening the fibres cannot develop their maximal force (see elastic locking p. 131).

The higher specific tension which apparently was found in an anterior tibial muscle as compared with the semitendinosus muscle, in spite of the fact that the single fibres in both muscles developed the same maximal tension during contraction, was doubtless due to the difference in the geometric arrangement of the fibres. The physiological cross section in the anterior tibial is larger than the anatomical, while in the semitendinosus this difference is considerably less. It is, therefore, more appropriate to compare the single fibre and whole muscle in the case of a semitendinosus than in that of an anterior tibial.

When the fibre is stimulated at equilibrium length, it can

[1] Regarding the correction for difference in diameters see Höncke (1947) and Knappeis (1948).

shorten without tension to about 60 per cent of the equilibrium length. This shortening apparently is less than that found by Hill (1949 e) for whole muscles, which is reported in his papers to be 40 per cent of the "natural length". The difference, however, presumably lies only in the definition of the length unit used. "Natural length" corresponds to length 135—165 in our length units, and in these units the shortening found by Hill therefore corresponds to a length of contraction of 54—66. Ramsey and Street (1940) found a reversible shortening down to a length of 60 to 70 per cent at the "resting length". At larger shortening they found irreversibility (δ state). In the present experiments we have obtained reversible shortenings amounting to a maximum of 50 per cent at the equilibrium length, which corresponded to a shortening to length 40 in Ramsey's units. We have not found a δ state (for a critical evaluation of the δ state see Buchthal 1942 and Hill 1949 e).

A considerable difference was found between single fibres and small bundles on the one hand, and whole muscles on the other with regard to the shortest initial length at which a contraction could be initiated. If a whole muscle was placed so that the distance between the tendon ends was about half of the natural length of the muscle, the latent period, which initially was long (approximately half of the duration of the shortening period) decreased successively at repeated twitches and values were obtained equal to those found in the straightened muscle (Hill 1949 e). This is interpreted as a disappearance of slack, i. e. an adjustment of the fibres to a shorter length than the muscle originally had in the unloaded state. This experiment cannot be performed on the single fibre. When the fibre contracts from a tensionless state it straightens after the cessation of stimulation almost as quickly as a fibre under load. In the length range 100—200 no significant shortening of the latent period was found in the single fibre with increasing load.

The fundamental difference between whole muscle and the fibre lies in the fact that the former can be "compressed" and obtain lengths below 100 without curling or folding to any considerable extent. In the presence of many parallel fibres a curling is improbable, since during shortening it would make necessary a larger amount of work of deformation than is the case when the fibres can be compressed. In the single fibre a decrease of the distance between the ends of the fibre to a length below the equilibrium length will cause curling without real shortening in the minute structure. A comparison can be made with the deformation which would occur on compressing a rubber stopper, and the curling which arises when a thin rubber fibre cut from the same stopper is compressed. The finding of a constant duration of the latent period in the isolated fibre independent of the degree of stretch between lengths 100 and 200 indicates that slack in a fibre is never complete, i. e. there are always a number of elements which are straightened out. On the other hand, in a whole muscle, in which there is a possibility for "compression", there can occur complete slack which manifests itself by an increase in the latent period.

As previously mentioned, the intrinsic resistance developing in the muscle texture during contraction decreases with decreasing initial length (cf. elastic locking p. 131, 155). Therefore, it seems natural to assume that in a muscle which has been "compressed" at rest, the intrinsic forces developing at the transition from rest to contraction will be less than in a muscle which contracts from equilibrium length. Since whole muscle in its resting state is compressible to length below equilibrium length the elastic aligning forces will be less than in a fibre. Therefore better conditions will exist in the whole muscle for the hysteresis in the texture and in the connective tissue to maintain the muscle tensionless in a shortened state.

The course of stress-relaxation when quick changes in length are applied to the tetanically contracted fibre.

When a tetanically contracted fibre was suddenly stretched, the change in tension as a function of time proceeded differently than at rest, both during the rise in tension and during the adjustment. While the tension in the resting fibre following a quick stretch increased with rising gradient, the increase in tension following a quick stretch applied during contraction had an S-shaped course (fig. 21). The increase in length applied was approximately 13 per cent of the equilibrium length and its final value was reached within 1.2 msec. The difference in the initial course of tension at rest and during contraction can be clearly seen when the increase in tension is plotted as a function of the elongation (fig. 22). At rest half of the additional tension is reached after 1 msec., at 8.5 per cent elongation. During contraction half of the additional tension was reached after 0.5 msec., at an elongation of less than 1 per cent. Referred to the same length the increase in transient tension was larger than at rest if the extra tension in contraction was low, while the reverse was true when the extra tension was high.

The course of the *initial* part of the increase in tension was always steeper during contraction than at rest, corresponding to the higher dynamic stiffness during contraction which was found when the stiffness was determined with vibrations of small amplitude. The finding of a smaller total rise in the tension during high tensions of contraction than at rest indicates the occurrence of a sudden yielding when the extension had reached a certain critical amplitude (comp. the S-shaped tension-time diagram, fig. 21 and the length-tension diagram with falling gradient, fig. 22).

When the stretch transient had attained its final value, tension first began to fall quickly and then more slowly. After about 1 msec. the tension reached a minimum value and then rose towards a new maximum within the next 5 msec. This secondary rise in tension was not due to an incomplete tetanic contraction and was most pronounced when extra tension was high. A possible explanation of this course is that part of the contractile elements are inactivated by the sudden change in length (yielding) and thus contract again under the influence of the continuous stimulation.

During *quick release* the initial course of the tension was equal to that found in the resting fibre and the secondary rise in tension characteristic of quick stretch was not observed. At release amplitudes of more than 2 per cent of L_0, the tension fell to zero.

The effect of the frequency of stimulation and of a limited number of successive stimuli.

The contractions in the experiments described above were maximal tetanic contractions. The strength of the stimuli was 3—7 times the threshold value, at a stimulation frequency of 25 per sec. and an impulse duration of 10 msec. at 0° C. As is well known, the size of the shortening at maximal stimulation varies with the number of stimulations per second and with the total number of impulses (duration of stimulation). Fig. 55 shows the maximal shortening as a function of the frequency of stimulation from a twitch to a tetanic contraction produced by a stimulation frequency of 30 per sec. which gave optimal shortening. Even at an impulse frequency of 1 per sec. at 0° C. a shortening could be obtained which was halfway between the peak of shortening in a twitch (50 per cent of L_0 at 0.3 P_0) and the maximal shortening in a tetanic contraction (90 per cent of L_0 at 0.3 P_0). In previous experiments performed under isometric conditions an extra tension halfway between that developed in a twitch and in a

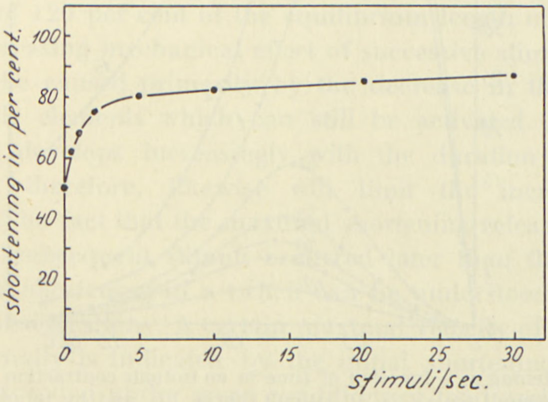


Fig. 55. Shortening as a function of stimulation frequency. Constant load 0.3 P_0. Duration of the single stimulus 5 msec. 0° C.
ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: number of stimuli per second, 0 indicates single stimulus.

tetanic contraction was reached at a frequency of 12 impulses per sec. (20° C., Buchthal 1942) and in mammalian fibres at a frequency of 40—45 impulses per sec. (37° C., Höncke 1947). The fact that half of the difference between twitch and tetanic con-

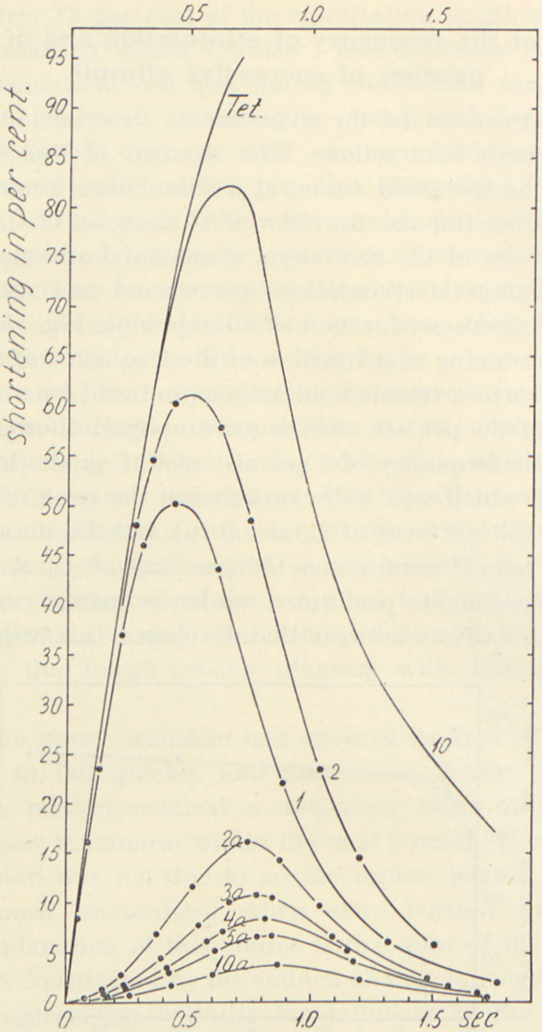


Fig. 56. Shortening as a function of time in an isotonic contraction, by 1 stimulus (curve 1), 2 stimuli (curve 2), 10 stimuli (curve 10), and by tetanic stimulation (curve Tet), distance between stimuli 30 msec. Curves 2a–5a give the net increase in shortening caused by the second to the fifth stimulus, curve 10a the net increase for the tenth stimulus. Load 0.2 P_0. 0° C.
ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time in seconds (0 corresponds to the end of the latency period).

traction was reached at considerably higher frequencies, when the contraction occurred at high temperatures, must be due to the large temperature dependence of the relaxation.

In experiments with *constant* stimulation frequency of 30 per sec. the influence of the duration of stimulation was investigated. It was varied from single stimuli to tetanic stimulation lasting 16 sec. Fig. 56 shows the effect of 1 stimulus (curve 1), 2 stimuli (curve 2), 10 stimuli (curve 10), and tetanic stimulation (curve Tet) as a function of time in seconds at 0° C. Zero marks the end of the latent period. The increment in shortening produced by each successive stimulus is given for the range 2—10 stimulations in curves 2a—10a. Curve 4a, for example, shows the difference in shortening as a function of time obtained by 3 and 4 stimuli. Note that the stimuli are always separated by 30 msec. in time. The zero point for these curves is referred to the time for the preceding stimulus. The effect of the single stimulus decreased with increasing number of preceding stimuli. The peak of shortening for 2—10 stimuli was 0.3 to 0.4 seconds later than for the twitch, i. e. 60 to 100 per cent later than the time for the maximum of shortening in a twitch.

Stimulation of longer duration caused a further shortening. A single stimulus at load 0.2 P_0 and 0° C. thus produced a shortening of 50 per cent, and a 4 sec. tetanic stimulation, a shortening of 120 per cent of the equilibrium length of the fibre.

The decreasing mechanical effect of successive stimuli is considered to be caused primarily by the decrease in the number of contractile elements which can still be activated. Moreover, the locking develops increasingly with the duration of stimulation and, therefore, likewise will limit the increment in shortening. The fact that the maximal shortening released by the second and subsequent stimuli occurred later than the time of the maximal shortening in a twitch can be understood from the following considerations: A certain maximal velocity of activation which externally is indicated by the initial shortening velocity, cannot be exceeded under given conditions of load and temperature. Upon release of a subsequent stimulus (for example the second stimulus) "the stimulation factor" will already be present and the energy liberated by the second stimulus will only be able to exert its influence gradually as the effect of the first stimulus no longer maintains maximal shortening velocity. The effect of the stimulus 2 will thus be delayed in relation to the time at which it is released and can be "stored" until the mechanical conditions for its use are present. In a later section experiments are described indicating that a transient change in the mechanical conditions can cause storing of the effect of stimulation as well (cf. p. 161).

In addition to its effect on the shortening, the duration of the stimulation also affects the course of relaxation, an effect which is already known from experiments on whole muscles (Hartree and Hill 1921) and its effect on single fibres is described in a later section (p. 183).

Isotonic twich.

Isotonic shortening during a twitch at 0° C., expressed in per cent of the equilibrium length, is given as a function of the load in fig. 57. With increasing load the maximum in shortening decreased more rapidly than in tetanic contraction. At a low load and 0° C. the shortening in a twitch amounted to up to 60 per cent of the equilibrium length, and to 50—80 per cent of the

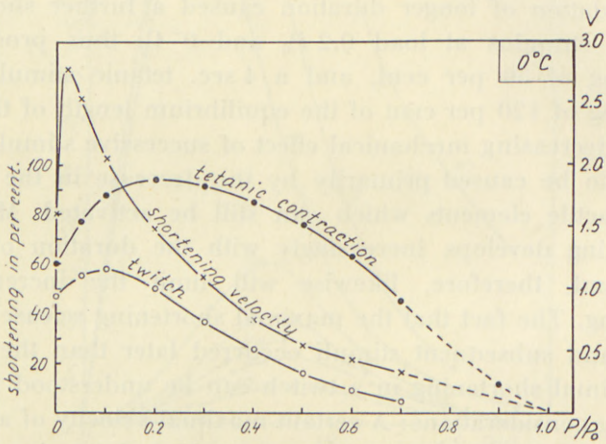


Fig. 57. Maximum shortening and shortening velocity in tetanic contraction and in a twitch as a function of load. 0° C.
left ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
right ordinate: maximal shortening velocity in L_0 per second.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

shortening in tetanic contraction. At a load of 0.5 P_0 the shortening fell to 20—40 per cent of the tetanic shortening.

Early investigations (cit. Evans 1947) on whole muscles under isometric conditions showed a decrease in the extra tension in a twitch with rising *temperature*, while the extra tension in tetanic contraction increased. Under isotonic conditions an increasing shortening was found with rising temperature in these experiments, both in tetanic contraction and in the twitch. However, this increasing shortening in the twitch has been assumed to be caused by inertial forces in the recording system.

In the present experiments on single fibres and small bundles of fibres the inertia of the recording system was so small that it did not cause any appreciable distortion of the shortening or the shortening velocity, despite the relatively small forces concerned.

In the isolated fibre the shortening in a twitch varied considerably less with the *temperature* than the shortening in tetanic contraction. Fig. 52 and fig. 60 show the shortening as a function of load at 0° and 24° or 26° C. in both cases. Dependent upon the load the temperature coefficient of the shortening in the twitch may be either positive or negative in the same fibre. At a low load the shortening always increased with decreasing temperature. In tetanic contraction increasing shortening was found with increasing temperature over the whole range of loads.

The difference found in temperature dependence in the twitch and the tetanic contraction is due to the fact that a stationary value for the shortening is not obtained in the twitch. The high temperature dependence of the relaxation velocity can partly explain the paradoxical difference in temperature de-

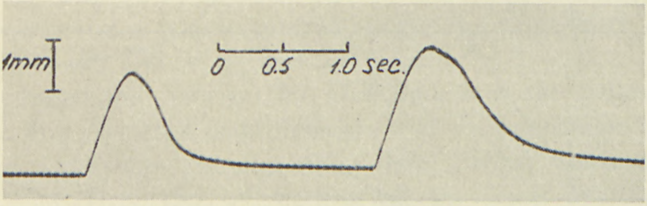


Fig. 58. Two twitches released with an interval of 2.2 seconds. Constant strength of stimulus. 0° C., 0.15 P_0, L_0 = 5 mm. Curarised fibre. Note the enhancement of shortening and duration of the second contraction.

pendence between the twitch and the tetanic contraction. In a later section a correlation will be discussed between the size of the shortening in a twitch and a tetanic contraction and the velocities of shortening and relaxation (see p. 188).

In addition to load and temperature, the shortening in a twitch is affected by a preceding contraction (Hartree and Hill 1921 for whole muscles and Ramsey and Street 1941 for single fibres, isometric conditions). The isotonic twitch showed increased shortening for a subsequent twitch, i. e. the first, second, and third twitch showed a gradual increase in the peak of shortening (fig. 58). This effect was most pronounced at a low load, when the velocity of relaxation had low values. The increased shortening was characterized by an increase in the velocity of shortening, a reduced velocity of relaxation, and an increased duration of contraction.

Shortening as a function of time.

Apart from the maximum shortening as a function of the external conditions as discussed above, the mechanical response of the fibre is characterized by the *time course* of the shortening or the tension. In an isotonic *twitch* the shortening rose almost linearly during the first three quarters of the change in length (fig. 59), and at 0° C. the maximal shortening was reached 0.4 to 0.7 seconds after the end of the latent period. The time for

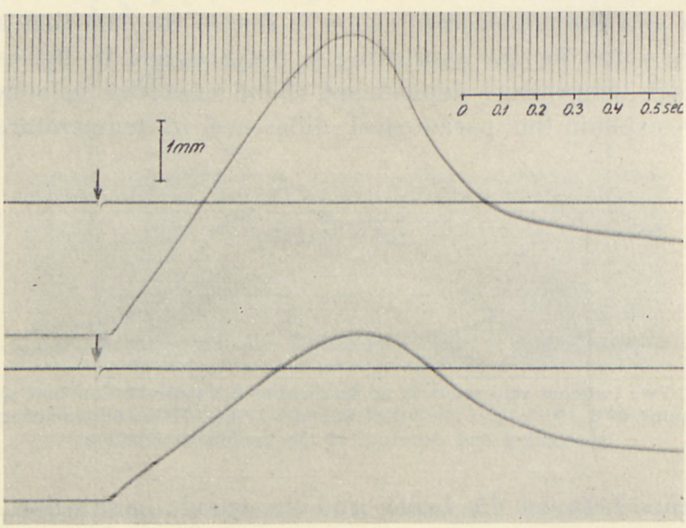


Fig. 59. Isotonic twitches with a load of 60 dynes (upper curve) and 120 dynes (lower curve). Shortening 56 per cent (upper curve) and 30 per cent (lower curve). P_0 = 800 dynes, L_0 = 9 mm. Maximum shortening 0.65 sec. after the end of the latency period. Stimulus at arrow. 0° C.

the maximal shortening varied up to 30 per cent with the load. At low and high loads the maximum occurred earlier than at intermediate loads of 0.3 to 0.5 P_0 (fig. 60 and fig. 61). At 0° C. the whole contraction lasted 1 to 1.5 sec. In tetanic contraction at the same temperature half of the maximum shortening was reached 0.1 to 1 sec. after the end of the latent period, depending on the size of the load. Fig. 60 shows the course of shortening

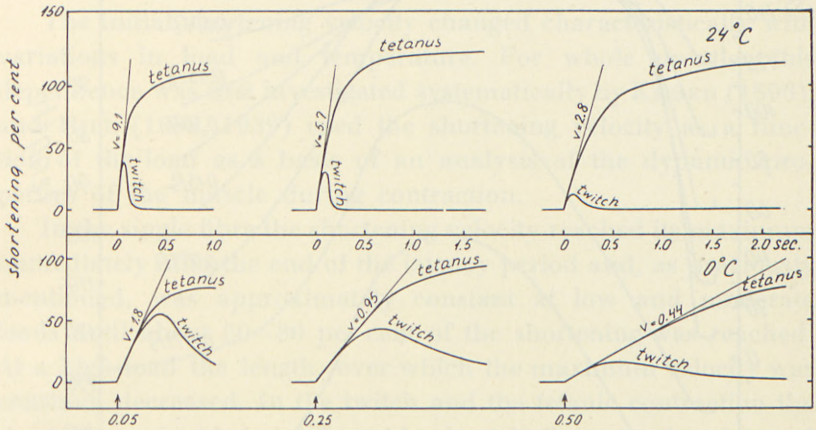


Fig. 60. Course of shortening in isotonic twitches and tetanic contractions. Upper curves 24° C., lower curves 0° C. The values of the maximal shortening velocity (V) are given on each curve. The figures at the arrows denote the different loads, 0.05, 0.25 and 0.50 P_0.
ordinate: shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time in seconds.

in a twitch and a tetanic contraction for the same fibre at three different loads and at 0° and 24° C.

A comparison between the *time course* of the twitch under *isotonic* and *isometric* conditions showed, in agreement with the findings for whole muscles (Fick 1871, 1882, Schenck 1895, Fenn 1936, Hill 1949 d), that at all the loads examined the peak of tension was obtained before the peak of the shortening. In the single fibre this time difference on an average amounted to 200 msec. (0° C.). An example of the course of the tension and the shortening for the same fibre is given in fig. 61. The fibre was stimulated at different initial loads, alternately under isotonic and isometric conditions. It is seen from the figure that the shortening still proceeds during part of the relaxation phase of the isometric twitch. An analysis of the cause for this time difference based on the shortening velocity and of its dependence on the load is attempted in a later section (see p. 172).

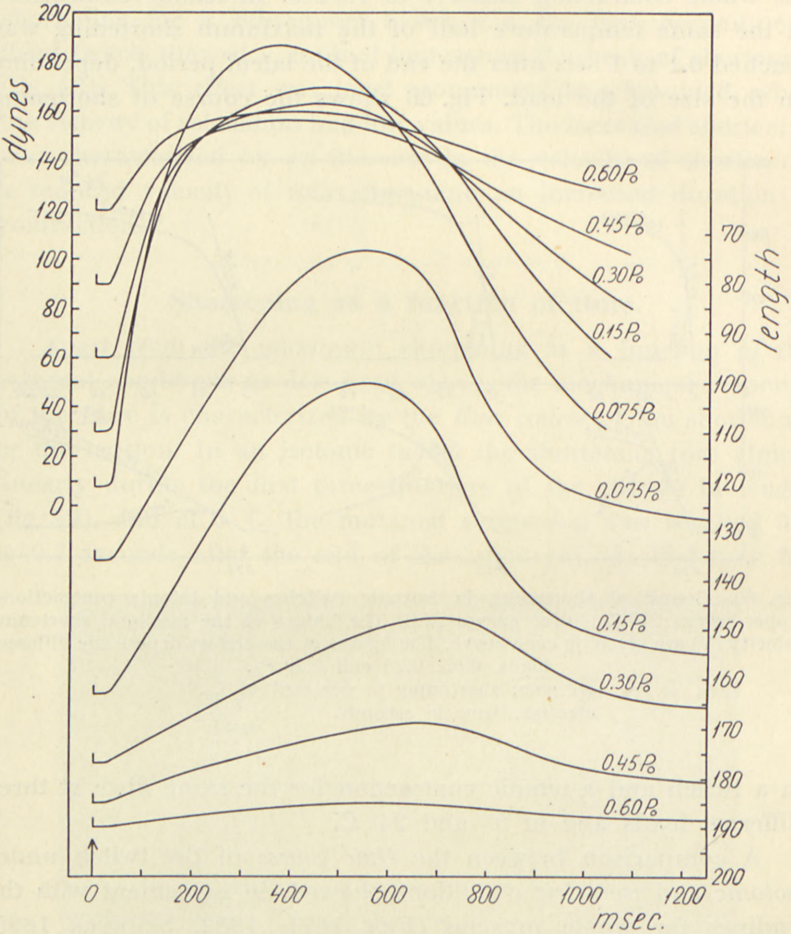


Fig. 61. *Isotonic and isometric twitches* alternatively recorded from the same muscle fibre.

The five lower curves represent length in isotonic contraction and the five upper curves tension in isometric contraction as a function of time. The figures on the lower curves denote the isotonic load and those on the upper curves the initial tension both in units of P_0. 0° C.

left ordinate: isometric tension in dynes, 200 dynes = P_0.
right ordinate: length in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time after stimulus in msec.

The shortening velocity.

Since the absolute velocity with which a fibre shortens depends on its length, the relative velocity (V) is used as a measure of the development of the shortening:

$$V = \frac{\text{shortening velocity in cm./sec.}}{\text{equilibrium length in cm.}}.$$

The initial shortening velocity changed characteristically with variations in load and temperature. For whole muscles this dependence was first investigated systematically by KAISER (1896), and HILL (1938, 1939) used the shortening velocity as a function of the load as a basis of an analysis of the dynamic properties of the muscle during contraction.

In the single fibre the shortening velocity reached its maximum immediately after the end of the latency period and, as previously mentioned, was approximately constant at low and moderate loads until about 60—80 per cent of the shortening was reached. At a high load the length, over which the maximum velocity was constant, decreased. In the twitch and the tetanic contraction the shortening coincided at different loads at 0° C. over a time interval of 0.2 sec. after the end of the latent period. Fig. 62 shows an example of the maximal shortening velocity at different loads during alternating twitch and tetanic contraction. The frequency of stimulation in a frequency range of 0.5 to 60 stimuli per sec. did not affect the initial velocity of shortening, provided the stimulation was always maximal.

The abrupt development of shortening has been considered to indicate that at the end of the latent period the contractile mechanism is already fully active (HILL 1949d, ABBOTT and RITCHIE 1951b). However, the fact that the shortening velocity quickly attains its maximal value, in our interpretation can only indicate that the *rate* and not the degree of activation quickly attains a maximum. The steep beginning of shortening must actually be considered the result of an interaction between shortening caused by contraction and elongation caused by the *latency relaxation*[1] (SANDOW 1944, ABBOTT and RITCHIE 1951a).

[1] The existence of a latency relaxation in the isolated fibre has recently been demonstrated by MAURO (1951).

The resulting course of shortening is delayed by this initial elongation. Thereby, using a sensitivity which allows to record the peak tension of the twitch, the course of shortening appears very abrupt.

In the initial phase of the shortening, especially at a high load,

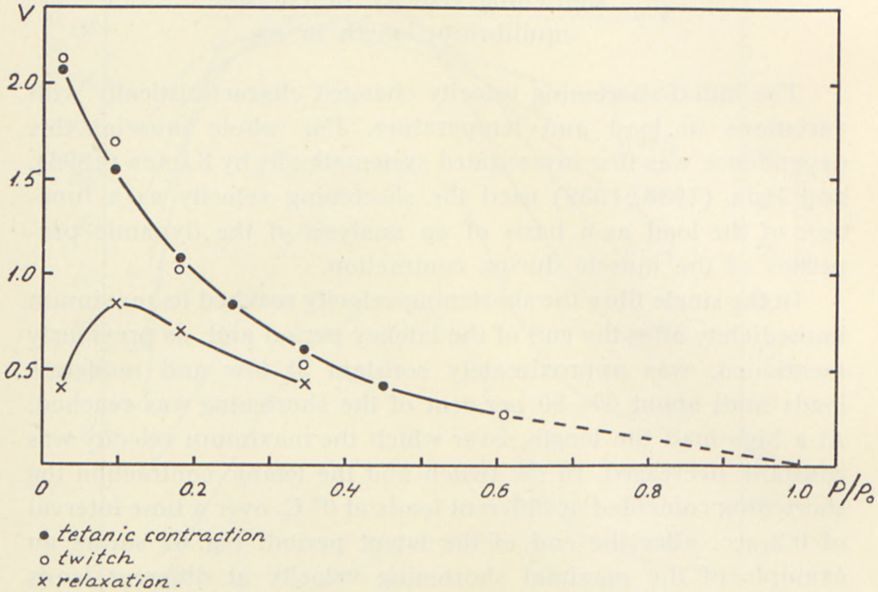


Fig. 62. Maximal *shortening velocity* in isotonic twitches and tetanic contractions and maximum relaxation velocity in tetanic contractions as a function of load. 0° C.
ordinate: velocity in L_0 per second.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

a maximal velocity may occur at the beginning of the shortening, which exceeded the later constant velocity. This deviation was not caused by the inertia of the recording system, since it extended over an interval which was at least 10 times longer than the oscillation period for the recording system plus fibre.

As a function of the load, the shortening velocity in the fibre decreased with increasing load and the course of the curve in the range 0.03—1.0 P_0 was of the same type as that described by Hill (1938) for whole muscles. However, at loads below 0.03 P_0, the course of the force-velocity relation for the fibre differed from that found in whole muscles, since the curve had a maximum at 0.02 P_0 (Table 11). The lower velocity, which occur-

TABLE 11.
Force-velocity relation.

Load mA	Load dynes	Load in units of P_0	Relative V
2.0	9.0	0.007	2.53
5.0	22.5	0.017	2.92
20.0	90.0	0.067	2.41
60.0	270.0	0.200	1.62
100.0	450.0	0.333	1.03
150.0	675.0	0.500	0.63
200.0	900.0	0.667	0.41

P_0 = 300 mA total (each fibre half = 150 mA) = 1350 dynes (2 fibres) 1 mA = 4.5 dynes.

Equilibrium length of the 2 fibres = 6 mm; effective L_0 in the apparatus = $\frac{6}{2}$ = 3 mm.

red at loads near the equilibrium length, is probably caused by the incomplete alignment in the fibrillar structure and corresponds to the lesser shortening, which was found during contractions from equilibrium length as compared with, for example, contraction occurring at lengths 110—120. In experiments on whole muscles great difficulty will be encountered in the analysis of correspondingly low loads. The longer equilibrium length of the whole muscle causes higher absolute velocities and hence larger inertial forces than in the single fibre, and these may distort the initial course of the curve. In the first phase of the movement the retarded reaction of the recording system will cause a summing up of elastic energy which is later released. Thereby the system will be accelerated to a velocity which exceeds the natural shortening velocity. In addition, the inhomogeneous internal state of tension in the muscle, due to the different equilibrium lengths of the fibres and the connective tissue, will conceal the initial decrease in velocity. However, the decrease found in the single fibre at low loads makes it doubtful whether it is justified to extrapolate the velocity in force-velocity diagrams for whole muscles to load zero (HILL 1938, 1939, RALSTON *et al.* 1947, 1949).

The relative velocities found in the single fibre or in small bundles from the semitendinosus muscle at loads above 0.03 P_0 are considerably higher than those found for the corresponding whole muscle (fig. 63). This is true both of semitendinosus and sartorius muscles from the same animal, examined with the same system as that used for experiments on the single fibre. The force-velocity diagrams found in these experiments for sartorius muscle showed agreement with those found by Hill (1938, 1939) for the same muscle. The cause of the difference

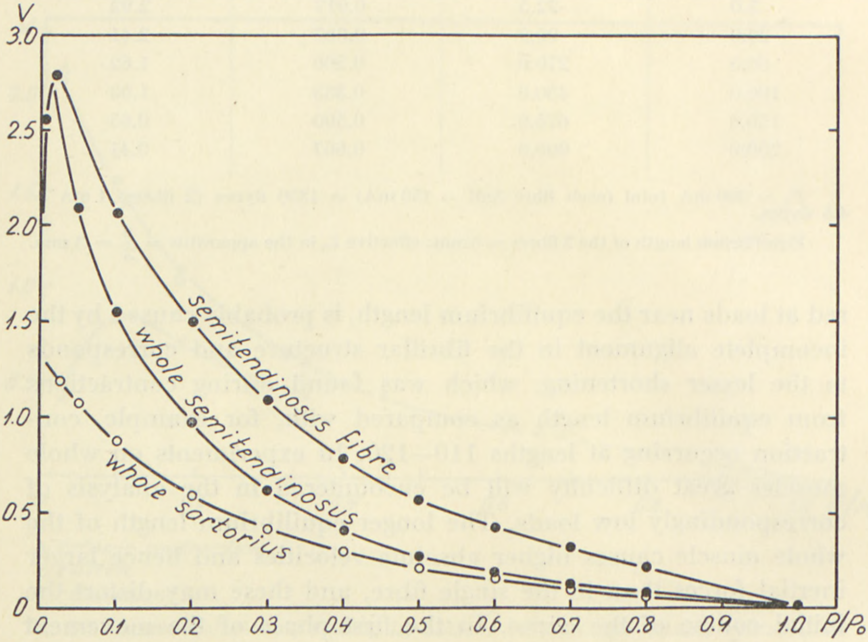


Fig. 63. Maximal shortening velocity in a whole muscle (sartorius, semitendinosus) and the isolated fibre of the same semitendinosus. Average of 10 muscles. 0° C. *ordinate:* shortening velocity in L_0 per second. *abscissa:* load in units of P_0.

between fibre and whole muscle lies presumably in the distribution of the different fibre lengths and in the resulting non-uniform state of stretch of different fibres in a whole muscle. This is accounted for quantitatively in a later section (Appendix III., p. 298).

Shortening velocity during different external mechanical working conditions for the muscle fibre.

Since the tension developed in contraction for a given length to a large extent depends on the mechanical conditions under which the contraction proceeds, it was of interest to investigate whether the relative shortening velocity is likewise affected by mechanical factors other than the load. We have, therefore, compared the shortening velocity in isotonic contraction with 1) the velocity during afterload contractions, 2) the shortening velocity which occurs when the fibre is allowed to shorten

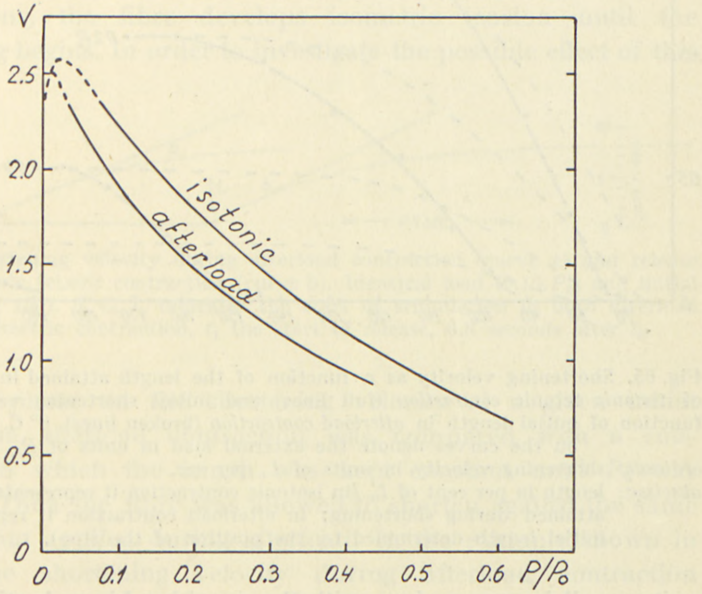


Fig. 64. Force-velocity relation during afterload from length 114 (L_0 = 100) and in isotonic contraction. Isolated fibres, 0° C.
ordinate: shortening velocity in L_0 per second.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

from its isometric tetanic maximum against a given load, and 3) the shortening velocity following a sudden change in load applied during a twitch.

1) *Shortening velocity as a function of load during afterload and isotonic contraction* is shown in fig. 64. During afterload the velocity is always lower than under isotonic conditions. In the load range between 0.1 and 0.5 P_0 the difference between afterload and isotonic contraction was about 20 per cent in the example shown in fig. 64, and may amount to a maximum of 30 per cent. The difference between the shortening velocities under these two conditions, though statistically significant, is

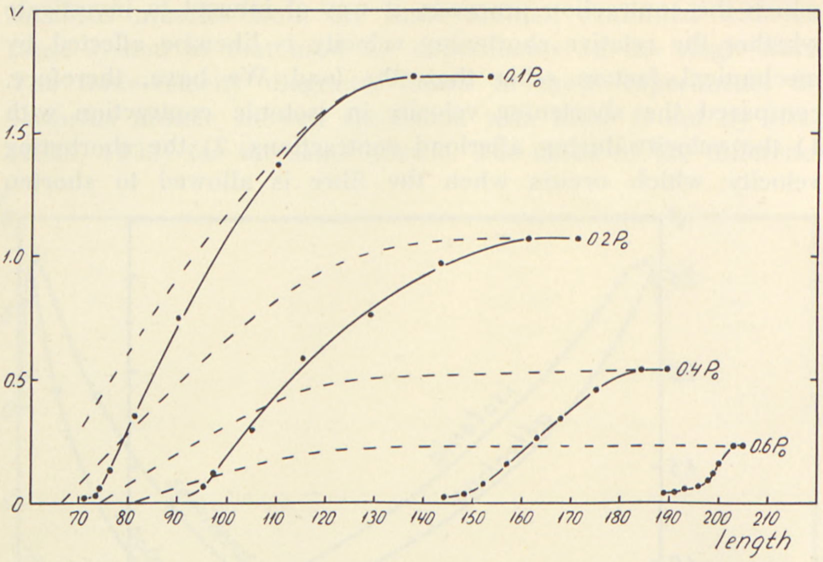


Fig. 65. Shortening velocity as a function of the length attained in the course of *isotonic* tetanic *contraction* (full lines) and initial shortening velocity as a function of initial length in *afterload contraction* (broken lines). 0° C. The figures on the curves denote the external load in units of P_0.
ordinate: shortening velocity in units of L_0 per sec.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0 (in isotonic contraction it represents the length attained during shortening; in afterload contraction it represents the initial length determined by the position of the stop).

quite small in comparison with the considerable reduction found in the change in length during afterload contraction as compared with isotonic.

Shortening velocity as a function of shortening in isotonic contractions at four different loads is seen in fig. 65. The dashed lines represent the initial shortening velocity in afterload contractions at the same load as a function of the initial length. In view of the finding that the force-velocity relation is valid during the major part of the course of shortening (see below), it seems justified to compare the initial velocity in afterload contractions with the velocity at the same length and load in isotonic contraction. Referred to the same length and load, the velocity in isotonic contraction is less than the velocity in afterload contraction, while the reverse is the case of the initial velocities.

2) *The shortening velocity during release from isometric tetanic contraction.*

The difference found in the shortening velocity during isotonic contraction and afterload contractions may be caused by the differences of the initial length at rest in these conditions or by the different initial phase of contraction where, during afterload contractions, the fibre develops isometric tension until the shortening begins. In order to investigate the possible effect of this

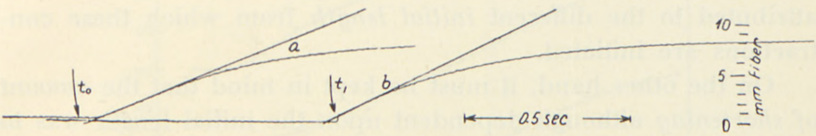


Fig. 66. Shortening velocity during afterload contraction (curve a) and release from isometric tetanic contraction (curve b). Identical load (0.15 P_0) and initial length (L = 150). 0° C. t_0 indicates the start of stimulation in both afterload and isometric contraction, t_1 the start of release, 0.8 seconds after t_0.

isometric phase on the shortening velocity at a given initial length, the afterload contraction was compared with a contraction in which the length was kept constant until P_0 was reached. Then the fibre was allowed to shorten against the same load as that applied during afterload. In the example shown in fig. 66 the shortening velocity during afterload contraction (curve a) at load 0.15 P_0 and 0° C. amounted to 1.25 L_0/sec. On release from the isometric tetanic maximum under the same load the velocity was 1.37 L_0/sec. This velocity was determined over an interval of 0.15 sec. after the elastic hump, which occurred when the fibre was released from isometric contraction. The change in length, corresponding to the hump which amounted to 4.5 per cent of the equilibrium length of the fibre at rest (L_0) was probably not entirely completed during this interval of time. Assuming that the hump was caused by a series elasticity of the same dynamic properties as the resting fibre, it would give an increase in the shortening velocity of 0.08 L_0 per sec.[1] The

[1] The ratio between the initial change in length and the change in length which occurred between 20 and 140 msec. amounted to about 0.2 at large variations in length at rest (see transient experiments, Table 2). Therefore, at an initial change in length of 4.5 per cent the change in length between 20 and 140 msec. is about 0.9 per cent. This corresponds to a mean velocity of $\frac{0.009\, L_0}{0.12\,\text{sec.}} = 0.075\, L_0/\text{sec.}$

shortening velocity in the active elements therefore is $0.08\,L_0$ per sec. less than the directly measured velocity, i. e. 1.29. Thus, the corrected shortening velocity was approximately of the same order of magnitude during afterload and during release from isometric contraction. Therefore, the results of these experiments indicated that the isometric phase in an afterload contraction can scarcely be responsible for the lower velocity of shortening found under these conditions as compared with isotonic contraction, and, moreover, the difference in velocity must be attributed to the different *initial length* from which these contractions are initiated.

On the other hand, it must be kept in mind that the *amount of shortening* although dependent upon the initial length was to a large extent a function of the isometric phase which preceded the shortening (cf. p. 130). *The change in the mechanical working conditions of the fibre, which at the same load caused large changes in the stabilized length of contraction, thus gave only small or no changes in the initial relative shortening velocity of the fibre.* The cause of this difference must be sought in the previously described "elastic locking" of the contractile substance. It gives rise to different stabilized lengths in contraction initiated under different conditions, but it does not affect the shortening velocity until a certain deformation in the structural pattern of the fibre has taken place, i. e. after a certain shortening has been reached.

In order to obtain some idea of the size and course of the internal tension which arises in the structure during "locking" the progressive shortening during development of an isotonic tetanic contraction is treated from the following point of view:

During the development of an isotonic tetanic contraction the shortening velocity decreases. This decrease may be caused by an internal resistance against the shortening which arises by the elastic "locking". During the *isotonic* contraction the initial length is determined by the load (i. e. the length-tension diagram of the resting fibre). By the introduction of an *afterload* (cf. p. 129) it is possible at a given load by means of the adjustment of the stop-screw (fig. 2, n) to vary the initial length between the length at rest and the length during isometric contraction at the same load. Thus, the initial shortening velocity could be examined at the same load as a function of the initial length. In the very first phase of contraction the elastic locking is assumed still to be of subordinate importance and the external load therefore corresponds to the load acting on the contractile elements. Hence, the initial shortening velocity in afterload contractions represents the "*pure*" *velocity* which arises for a given external load. Referred to the *same length and load* the shortening velocity

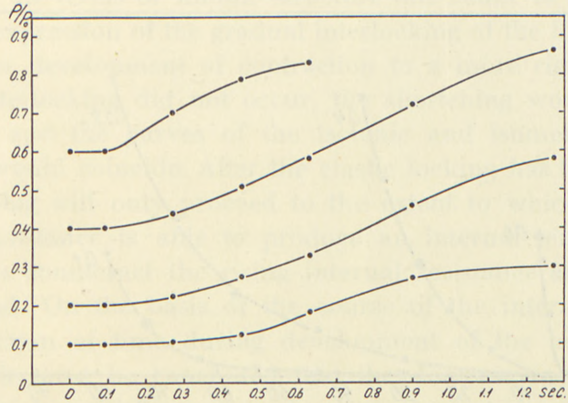


Fig. 67. *Internal tension* as a function of time during development of the isotonic tetanic shortening calculated from the data in fig. 65. 0° C. Different external loads (0.1 to 0.6 P_0). *ordinate:* internal tension in units of P_0. *abscissa:* time in seconds.

in isotonic contraction decreases with increasing shortening as compared with the "pure" velocity (fig. 65). This difference in velocity is attributed mainly to the internal mechanical resistance which arises by the change in the texture (elastic locking). In the example given in fig. 65 we see that an isotonic contraction was released at load 0.2 P_0 from length 171 and had an initial velocity of 1.14 L_0 per sec. When shortening had proceeded for about 0.8 sec. to length 108, the velocity had decreased to 0.39 L_0 per sec. At the same load and at length 108 the initial shortening velocity in an afterload contraction was 0.79 L_0 per sec. In an afterload contraction a velocity of 0.39 L_0 per sec. was obtained at twice the load, viz 0.4 P_0. Supposing that the relation between shortening velocity, load, and length is not essentially changed by a duration of the contraction of 0.8 sec., the difference in shortening velocity indicates an internal resistance developed during shortening of the order of magnitude of 0.2 P_0.

The assumption that the force-velocity relation remains unaltered by the duration of contraction is supported by the experiments illustrated in fig. 66.

Fig. 67 shows the internal tension in the contractile elements as a function of time estimated on the basis of the difference between shortening velocity in isotonic contraction and the initial

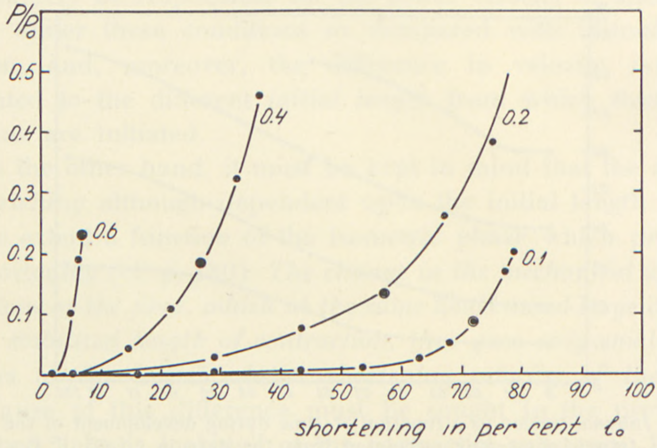


Fig. 68. Calculated *internal resistance* against shortening during the development of an isotonic tetanic contraction as a function of the shortening. 0° C. External load 0.1, 0.2, 0.4, and 0.6 P_0.
◉ indicates the internal tension after a shortening of 0.63 second.
ordinate: internal resistance in units of P_0.
abscissa: external shortening in per cent of L_0.

velocity in afterload contraction. The internal structural resistance, i. e. the tension in the contractile elements minus the external tension, as a function of shortening is given in fig. 68. The specially marked points denote the size of the internal resistance at different initial loads at a given time (0.63 sec.) after the start of shortening. In spite of the decrease in shortening the resistance is higher at high loads than at low loads. For example, at load 0.4 P_0 it is twice that of load 0.1 P_0. This difference indicates an increased tendency to locking with increasing load, produced by the decreasing cross-section of the fibre and tighter packing of the minute structural elements on the one hand and a longer time necessary to give a certain shortening on the other.

At 0° C. the internal resistance arising during isotonic tetanic shortening 0.5 sec. after the start of stimulation corresponds to one third of the initial load. As the maximum of shortening in a twitch occurs approximately 0.5 sec. after the stimulus, the upper limit of the internal resistance counteracting shortening in a twitch will not exceed 30 per cent of the initial load.

In an equivalent system the internal resistance developed during contraction is described by a shunt of elastic and viscous elements. In terms of minute structure this shunt is considered to be an expression of the gradual interlocking of the fibre texture during the development of contraction to a more rigid pattern. If this interlocking did not occur, the shortening would not be inhibited and the curves of the isotonic and isometric tetanic maxima would coincide. After the elastic locking has taken place a shortening will only proceed to the extent to which the contractile substance is able to produce an internal tension large enough to counteract the rising internal resistance and the external load. On the basis of the course of the internal tension as a function of time during development of the tetanic contraction, it must be concluded that the decrease in shortening velocity is due chiefly to this shunting element.

The resistance from a shunting element, which is developed during contraction could also be demonstrated under isometric conditions (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a, fig. 4). In these experiments a periodic vibration (amplitude 1 per cent of L_0) was superimposed on a stationary tetanic isometric contraction (20° C.). The stiffness was determined by measuring the resulting periodic changes in tension. Immediately after the maximal tension had been reached in tetanic contraction, the stiffness still increased. It was found to be at maximum 0.4 sec. after the tension had reached P_0. The lower stiffness which initially was observed at the maximum in tension of the isometric tetanus was interpreted as being caused by a yielding in the textural pattern produced by the altered state of loading during contraction. Due to the low vibrational frequency the initial increase in stiffness which is discussed in detail in a later section (cf. p. 163, 189) did not manifest itself in these recordings.

In the preceding section the mechanical reaction of the fibre under constant external load has been analysed in the hope that the load on the contractile elements would be equal to the external load. The results of these experiments, however, show that this is *not* the case and that the load in the contractile elements varies despite external isotonic conditions. In the experimental series to be described here, we have introduced changes in load during a twitch in order to obtain further information about the extent to which the relation found between load and velocity is generally valid.

3) *The shortening velocity following a transient change in load during a twitch.*

Experiments, corresponding to those performed by GASSER and HILL (1924) and HILL (1949 d) on whole muscle under *isometric* conditions, were carried out during *isotonic* contraction of the single fibre by introducing sudden changes in load at different times during the course of the contraction. The quick loads applied to single fibres in these transient experiments (0.1—0.8 P_0) were less than those used in experiments on whole muscles (HILL 1949 d). In whole muscle at the end of the latent period the changes in load resulting from the transient change in length, were of the order of magnitude of P_0.

The mechanical reaction of the fibre during a change in load can be interpreted as consisting of a rapid elastic change in length, superimposed on a change in the shortening velocity. This change in velocity appears to correspond closely to the change which could be expected according to the known relation between load and shortening velocity.

Fig. 69 shows a twitch at load 0.20 P_0 (0° C., curve 1) and at load 0.40 P_0 (curve 3). Curve 2 shows the effect of a sudden increase in load of 0.2 P_0, lasting 0.12 sec., introduced 0.15 sec. after the end of the latent period. During the 0.12 sec. the load was thus the same as that in curve 3, after which it continues as in curve 1 at 0.2 P_0. The change in load could be introduced at different times between the end of the latent period and the end of the relaxation by means of an adjustable system of switches (HELMHOLTZ pendulum). Between every other contraction *with* change in load, a contraction was recorded with constant load, corresponding to curves 1 and 3; hence, the mechanical reaction of the fibre with and without change in load was carefully controlled in this way. Data from a series of experiments of the

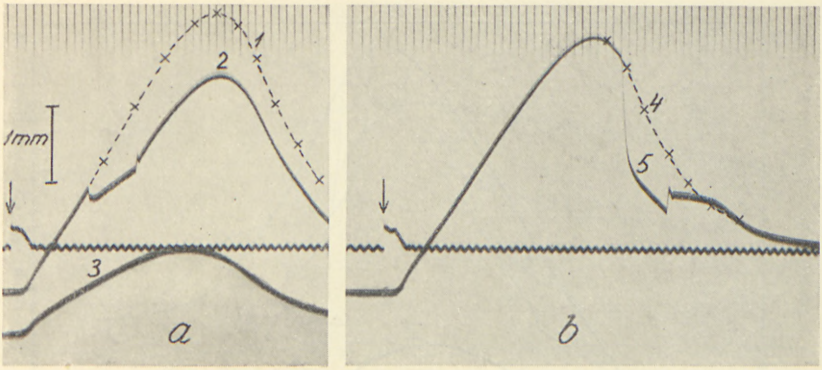


Fig. 69. *Transient change in load applied during an isotonic twitch.*
curve 1 and 4: twitches at load 0.2 P_0, projected on curves 2 and 5.
curve 3: twitch at load 0.4 P_0.
curve 2 shows the effect of a sudden increase in load of 0.2 P_0, introduced 0.15 sec. after the end of the latency period and lasting for 0.12 seconds (a).
curve 5 shows the effect of the same increase in load (0.2 P_0) introduced when shortening is maximal (b).
L_0 = 13.5 mm. 0° C. Distance between time marks 20 msec. Stimulus at ↓.

type described are given in fig. 70. The increase in load of 0.2 P_0 was introduced at different times during a twitch (0° C.) which began and ended at load 0.2 P_0. Curve I represents the shortening at 0.2 P_0, curve II, the shortening at 0.4 P_0, and curve III, the difference between the curves for 0.2 and 0.4 P_0.

The effect of the change in load introduced from 0.15 sec. to 1 sec. after the end of the stimulus, is seen in curves a—k. In curves a—d the quick loading causes a rapid change in length of about 1 per cent of the equilibrium length; this is superimposed by a damped oscillation, and it can be seen that this part of the change in length has elastic character. The fibre then began to shorten again with a velocity nearly equal to that which would have occurred at the same time if the contraction had been introduced with a load of 0.4 P_0. When the fibre was released again after 0.12 sec., it shortened at first elastically and then with the same velocity which it would have had at the constant load 0.2 P_0 at the same time after stimulation (curves a—c). Shortly before the shortening reached its maximum, the mechanical reaction to quick load became essentially different from that occurring during the shortening phase. The change in length was 5—6 times larger and no longer of an elastic character. Only during

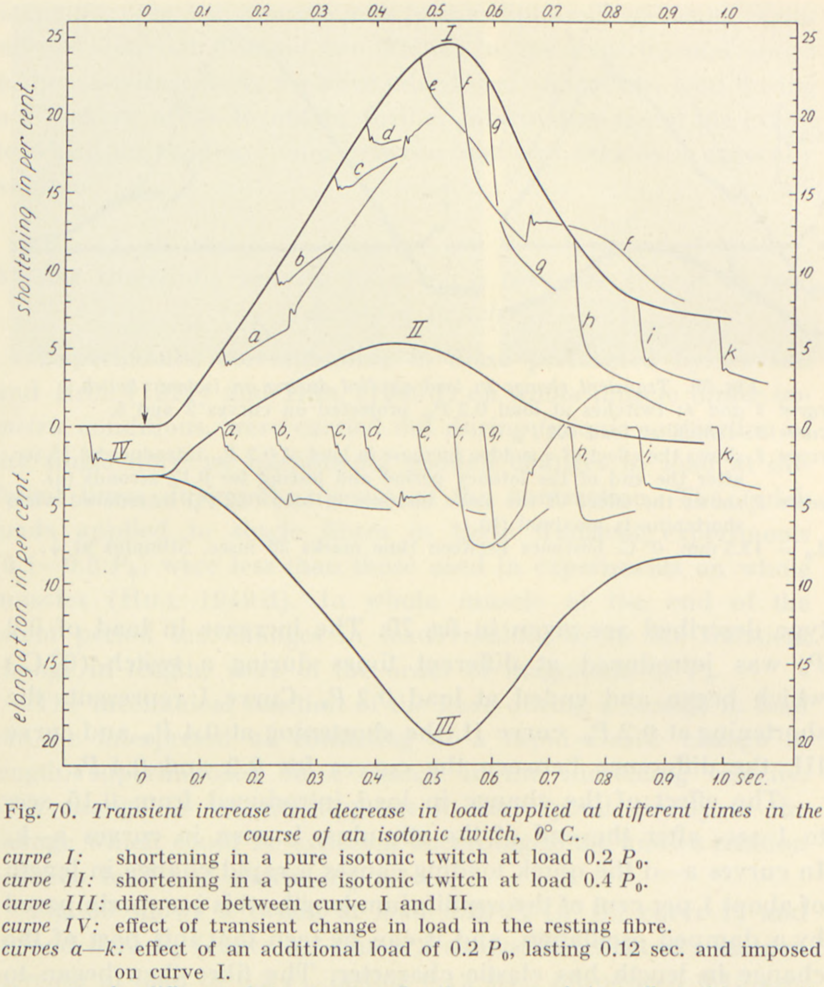


Fig. 70. *Transient increase and decrease in load applied at different times in the course of an isotonic twitch, 0° C.*

curve I: shortening in a pure isotonic twitch at load 0.2 P_0.
curve II: shortening in a pure isotonic twitch at load 0.4 P_0.
curve III: difference between curve I and II.
curve IV: effect of transient change in load in the resting fibre.
curves a—k: effect of an additional load of 0.2 P_0, lasting 0.12 sec. and imposed on curve I.
curves a_1—k_1: difference between curve I and curves a—k (net effect of transient).
ordinate: shortening and elongation in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time after stimulus in seconds.

the following relaxation could the effect of the elasticity again be demonstrated, as can be seen from curve f, fig. 70, and from fig. 69. The course of length after the unloading, in this case intersects curve I. This indicates that after quick loading, introduced at the maximum of shortening, a shortening could be attained during the subsequent quick unloading exceeding that which would be possible at a constant load. The forced elon-

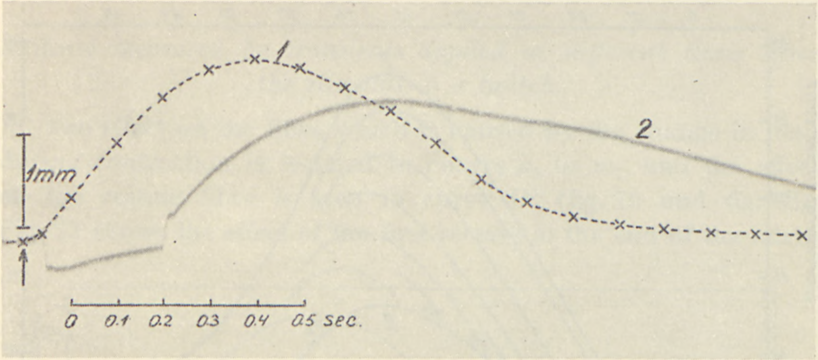


Fig. 71. *Effect of transient additional load on time course of isotonic twitch, 0° C.* ("storing").
curve 1: isotonic twitch, load 0.2 P_0 projected upon curve 2.
curve 2: isotonic twitch, initial load 0.2 P_0; 0.04 second after the end of the latency period an additional load of 0.6 P_0 is introduced for 0.26 sec.

gation thus caused an extra-shortening instead of a lasting elongation.

The example shown in fig. 71 shows clearly how transient loading and unloading of 0.6 P_0 can cause a displacement in the time course of the shortening. At a time when the relaxation in the twitch is complete (load 0.2 P_0 curve 1), a considerable displacement of the shortening can be seen as a consequence of a transient quick load (curve 2) introduced immediately after the end of the latent period for about 0.25 sec. After 0.75 sec. curve 1 and curve 2 intersect. It may be emphasized that after the transient loading the load in curve 2 was identical with that in curve 1, and it is seen that the transient prolonged the effect of the stimulus considerably.

The increase in duration in the *isometric* twitch, which could be caused by an increased initial degree of stretch corresponds to the effect of an increase in load described here. The fact that this cannot always be observed may be due to different reactions in the series element described later (see p. 172).

The constant relation between load and shortening velocity, regardless of the change in load introduced at rest or at different times during the shortening, was also obvious from experiments with quick unloading. In the experiments shown in fig. 72, the initial load was 0.34 P_0, which was released to 0.17 P_0

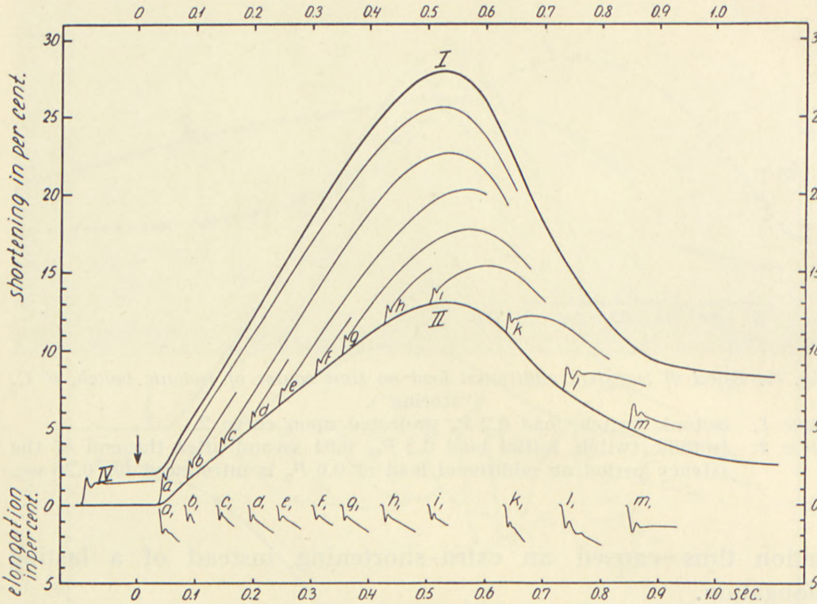


Fig. 72. Effect of a transient decrease in load applied at different times after the stimulus during the course of shortening in an isotonic twitch, 0° C.

curve I: pure isotonic twitch, load 0.17 P_0.
curve II: pure isotonic twitch, load 0.34 P_0.
curve IV: effect of a transient decrease in load from 0.34 to 0.17 P_0 in the resting fibre.
curves a—m: effect of a transient decrease in load from 0.34 to 0.17 P_0 during the twitch.
curves a_1—m_1: difference between curves a—m and curve II (= net effect of transients a—m).
ordinate: shortening and elongation in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time after stimulus in seconds.

and the contraction continued against a load of 0.17 P_0. Here the initial shortening had a pronounced elastic component regardless of the time during the contraction at which the release was introduced. Nearly up to the maximum in shortening the slow change in length following the initial one corresponded exactly to the velocity which would arise at the same *constant* load. At the maximum of shortening and during the first part of relaxation, the fibre continued to shorten and in contrast to the findings with a quick *increase in load* it could only be made to coincide with the curve for constant load by a parallel displacement to an earlier phase of the contraction.

Stiffness measured by transients applied at different times after the stimulus in a twitch.

The effect on the fibre which is caused by the change in load during contraction is isolated in curves a_1 to m_1, and the effect on the resting fibre is seen in curve IV (fig. 70 and fig. 72). Fig. 72 shows the effect of the first release at the end of the latent

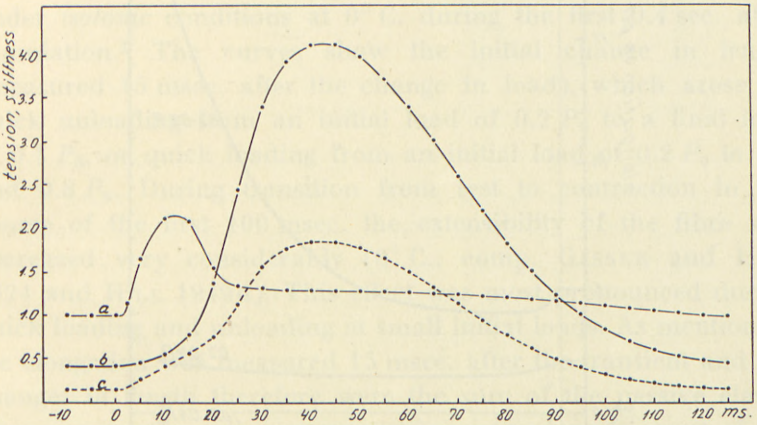


Fig. 73. Initial increase in stiffness in isometric contraction.
b = tension in an isometric twitch (15° C.).
c = vibrational stiffness, frequency 100 c.p.s.
$a = \frac{G}{P + P_{st}}$, where P_{st} = stiffness-tension, for definition see p. 84.
ordinate: tension, stiffness, and relative stiffness in arbitrary units.
abscissa: time in msec.

period (curve a_1). Here the change in length is of the same order of magnitude as at rest, but from the superimposed oscillation, the period of which is reduced and the damping increased, it can be seen that the state of the fibre has changed. The course of the curve indicates that the increase in stiffness began to develop in the latter part of the transient. In curves b_1 to i_1 the initial change in length was reduced to about half the value at rest. In curve k_1 the amplitude of the initial change in length increased again, and the velocity of the slow change in length rose (the velocity of relaxation was compensated for). The oscillation period in the damped oscillation was still unchanged, although the initial change in length in the transient manifested itself at this time only by *large* changes in length. The initial change in length in curve l_1 was the same as that in curve k_1, but the period of oscillation was larger and corresponded approximately to the value found at rest. Shortly afterwards, as

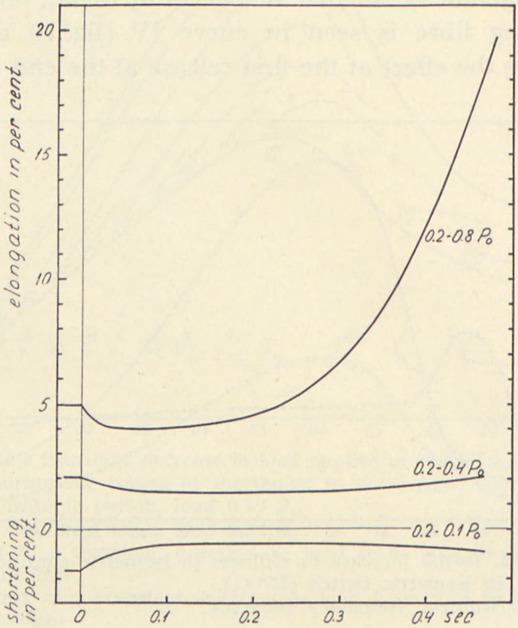


Fig. 74. *Initial* net increase and net decrease in length caused by different transient variations in load applied at different times in the initial phase of contraction (0° C.). The figures on the curves indicate the variations in load in units of P_0. Variations in length measured 15 msec. after introduction of change in load (not corrected for the alterations in shortening velocity produced by the change in load occurring within these 15 msec.).
ordinate: elongation and shortening in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time after stimulus in seconds.

indicated by m_1, the stiffness for both large and small changes in length displayed the same value as that at rest.

The early maximum in stiffness found in these experiments could also be observed in experiments with the fibre under "*isometric*" conditions (Buchthal and Kaiser 1944). In these experiments periodic vibrations of 100 c.p.s. with an amplitude of 1 per cent of the equilibrium length (20° C.) were superimposed on the fibre. The stiffness was measured by recording the resulting periodic changes in tension at rest, during a twitch, and a tetanic contraction. Fig. 73 shows the course of the tension, the stiffness and $\frac{\text{stiffness}}{\text{tension}}$ during a twitch of a muscle fibre from the semitendinosus muscle. While the tension during the first 20 msec. rose approximately exponentially, the stiffness increased linearly and the *ratio* between stiffness and tension had a maximum 10—15 msec. after the stimulus (15° C.).

Fig. 74 gives a survey of the resulting change in length obtained under *isotonic* conditions at 0° C. during the first 0.4 sec. after stimulation.[1] The curves show the initial change in length (measured 15 msec. after the change in load), which arose on quick unloading from an initial load of 0.2 P_0 to a final load of 0.1 P_0, or quick loading from an initial load of 0.2 P_0 to 0.4 and 0.8 P_0. During transition from rest to contraction in the course of the first 100 msec. the extensibility of the fibre was decreased very considerably (0° C., comp. Gasser and Hill 1924 and Hill 1949d). This effect was most pronounced during quick loading and unloading at small initial loads. As mentioned, the elongation was measured 15 msec. after the transient and the changes in length therefore were the sum of the passive elastic changes and the active ones, which occurred on account of the variation in the shortening velocity caused by the different load. The latter change in length amounted to 0.4—0.5 per cent of L_0 within 15 msec. and the passive change in length was therefore 0.4—0.5 per cent of L_0 less than the values measured after 15 msec. The time for the appearance of the maximal stiffness (corrected in this way) and the value of the corresponding shortening in per cent of the maximal shortening at load P_1 (initial load) are given in Table 12. The time taken for the propagation of the contraction over the fibre is of secondary importance in this connection (see p. 34).

After the maximum in stiffness was passed, the extensibility increased again and at the maximum of shortening reached or exceeded that of the resting fibre. Also, in experiments in which the stiffness was measured by periodic vibrations, the stiffness in the later course of a twitch was seen to attain values lower than those at rest.

[1] The sensitivity employed in the present experiments would not permit the recording of a latency relaxation (Sandow 1944, 1947, see p. 147).

Table 12.

The time for the occurrence of the maximum in stiffness.

P_1	P_2	time for the occurrence of maximal stiffness in msec.	shortening in per cent of maximal shortening
0.20	0.10	250	50
0.20	0.40	200	35
0.20	0.80	70	14
0.40	0.20	300	69
0.07	0.26	250	75

P_1 denotes the initial load and P_2 the load after transient.

On account of a "give" in the structure, the higher the quick load, the earlier the minimum in extensibility was passed during contraction. Thus, the relative increase in stiffness during transition from rest to contraction, measured at the time for maximal stiffness, was lowest at high loads. The stiffness was higher during quick *unloading* than during quick loading.

Length-tension diagram for the passive series element, calculated and measured.

By means of the corrected initial "transient" change in length, caused by the quick load, it is possible to determine points on a *dynamic length-tension diagram* for the passive component of the structure during contraction and at rest. This is of special interest in connection with the interaction between the series elasticity and the contractile elements, described by Hill (1949d). Fig. 75 gives values for elongation and shortening in per cent of the equilibrium length, when the load was increased or decreased suddenly from initial load 0.2 P_0 (curve 1). The change in load was introduced 100 msec. after the stimulus, and the change in length measured was corrected for the effect of the shortening velocity due to contraction. The values given in curves 1 and 2 are final values measured 15 msec. after the transient. Curve 2 shows the dynamic shortening or elongation in the resting fibre recorded under the same conditions as curve 1 which represents values for the contracted fibre. From the ratio between increase in tension and increase in length it can be seen that the stiffness $\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta L}\right)$ during contraction was higher at small loads than at high loads, in contrast to the findings at rest. This is reflected in the fact that curve 1 (contraction) is concave towards the abscissa, while curve 2 (rest) is convex. However, at all loads the stiffness during contraction was higher than the

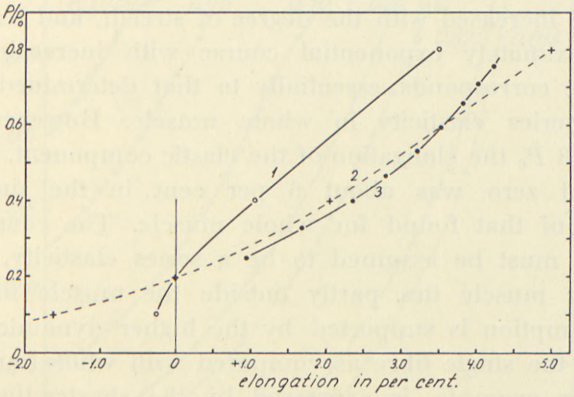


Fig. 75. *Dynamic length-tension diagrams of the series elastic element in a muscle fibre*, 0° C.

curve 1: determined from transient changes in load introduced 0.1 sec. after the stimulus during an isotonic twitch, initial load 0.2 P_0 (compare fig. 74; but in the present example values were corrected for the change in shortening velocity caused by the change in load occurring within 15 msec.).

curve 2: obtained as 1, on resting fibre.

curve 3: calculated from the course of isometric tension and the force-velocity relation, initial load 0.2 P_0.

ordinate: tension in units of P_0.

abscissa: elongation in per cent of L_0.

stiffness at rest. The points of curve 1 and 2 in fig. 75 correspond to the end points of the *partial* length-tension diagrams illustrated in fig. 15.

To summarize, the experiments with transient changes in load applied during an isotonic contraction showed that:

1) the relation between shortening velocity and load was valid when the load was changed suddenly during contraction;

2) the stiffness was maximal at an early stage in the course of shortening (70—300 msec. after the stimulus at 0° C.);

3) the stiffness in the passive series elements was larger during contraction than at rest, and, contrary to the behaviour

at rest, the stiffness during contraction was highest at low loads.

According to Hill (1949d), a *length-tension diagram for the passive series elasticity* can be calculated from the course of the tension in isometric contraction and the force-velocity relation. A length-tension diagram calculated on this basis for the isolated fibre at initial load 0.2 P_0 is given in curve 3, fig. 75. The gradient of tension increased with the degree of stretch, and tension had an approximately exponential course with increasing length. The curve corresponds essentially to that determined by Hill for the series elasticity in whole muscle. However, with a load of 0.8 P_0 the elongation of the elastic component, measured from load zero, was about 6 per cent in the single fibre, i. e. half of that found for whole muscle. The cause of this difference must be assumed to be a series elasticity, which in the whole muscle lies partly outside the muscle fibre itself. This assumption is supported by the higher dynamic modulus found in the single fibre as compared with whole muscle, and which, for example, is expressed by the shorter time (30 per cent) necessary for the isometric maximum to be reached in the single fibre.

Fig. 76 shows calculated length-tension diagrams for the passive series elasticity in the single fibre at different initial loads, obtained from the isotonic and isometric contractions shown in fig. 61. The curves for the different initial loads cannot be made to coincide by a simple displacement in length, which indicates that the gradient for the same tension is different for the different curves. The single points on the curves are separated by a distance corresponding to 10 msec., and it can be seen that the gradient in the length-tension diagram is steepest when the tension rises quickly as a function of time. If, e. g., the length-tension course in the range 0.45—0.6 P_0 (fig. 61) is compared for initial loads of 0.015 and 0.45 P_0, an elongation of 0.55 and 1.30 per cent of the equilibrium length is obtained respectively. This elongation is reached for an initial load of 0.015 P_0 in 27 msec. and for an initial load of 0.45 P_0 in 62 msec. In the curve which started with an initial load of 0.45 P_0 the change in length thus was 0.75 per cent larger and the time interval required for this increase in length was 35 msec. By comparing the increase in length and the increase in time a relative velocity of elongation of 0.21 L_0 per sec. was obtained.

A systematic investigation in the same fibre of the gradient at the same load, but at different *velocities of rise in tension*, showed

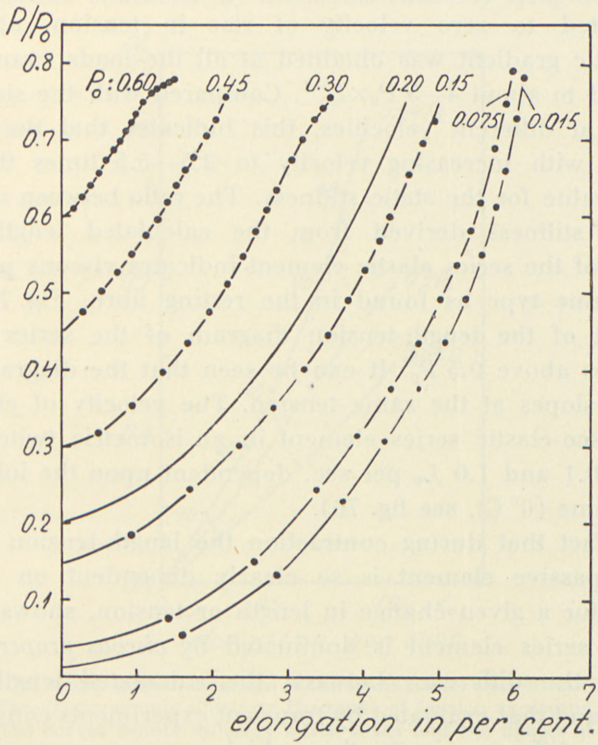


Fig. 76. *Length-tension diagrams of the series elasticity in a muscle fibre*, calculated from the course of tension in isometric twitches and the force-velocity relation. 0° C.
The figures on the curves denote the different initial loads in units of P_0 (curve for 0.2 P_0 interpolated).
ordinate: tension in units of P_0.
abscissa: calculated elongation in per cent of L_0.

that the gradient varied approximately linearly with the velocity of rise in tension. For example, at a load of 0.5 P_0, the following values were obtained for the velocity of rise in tension and the stiffness $\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta L}\right)$:

Velocity of rise in tension in P_0 per sec.	2.2	3.7	4.3	5.9
Length-tension gradient in $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$	10.6	16.3	18.0	23.5

If the gradients for the different length-tension diagrams were extrapolated to zero velocity of rise in tension, about the same static gradient was obtained at all the loads examined; it amounted to about 4—5 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$. Compared with the size of the gradient at different velocities, this indicates that the stiffness increases with increasing velocity to 2.5—5.5 times the extrapolated value for the static stiffness. The ratio between static and dynamic stiffness derived from the calculated length-tension diagram of the series elastic element indicates viscous properties of the same type as found in the resting fibre. Fig. 77 shows *that* part of the length-tension diagram of the series element which lies above 0.5 P_0. It can be seen that the diagrams have different slopes at the same tension. The velocity of elongation of the visco-elastic series element in an isometric twitch varied between 0.1 and 1.0 L_0 per sec. dependent upon the initial load and on time (0° C., see fig. 76).

The fact that during contraction the length-tension diagram for the passive element is so clearly dependent on *the time* elapsing for a given change in length or tension, shows that the assumed series element is dominated by *viscous properties.* The cause of the difference between the calculated length-tension diagram and that evaluated by transient experiments consequently lies in the difference in the time which is necessary to obtain the data of length and tension. In the diagram measured from transients a given change in length was reached within 10 msec., in the calculated diagram the same change was developed within about 200 msec. (curve 1 and 3, fig. 75). Although the mechanical properties of the series element thus have a predominantly viscous character within the range so far mentioned (up to 300 msec. at 0° C.), the level during a tetanic contraction shows that the elongation of the series element approaches a limiting value. The series element, therefore, essentially can be described by a Voigt-element (or better a series of Voigt-elements), i. e. a viscosity which dominates during quick transients shunted by an elasticity which limits the change in length.

The findings of Hill (1949 d) on whole muscles of a satisfactory agreement between the calculated length-tension diagram and a diagram obtained at quick release during isometric contraction, can probably be explained by the partial concealment of the viscous character by the series elasticity lying outside the

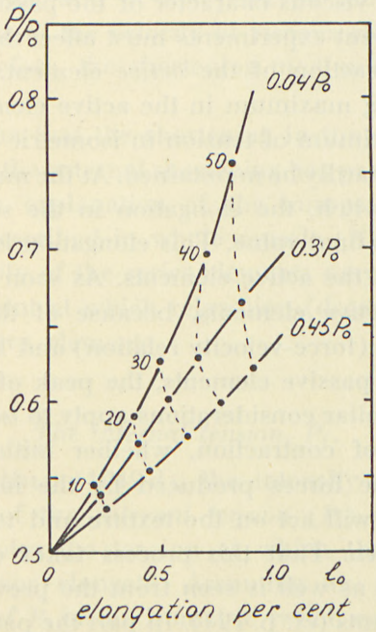


Fig. 77. Partial length-tension diagrams of the series elastic element during isometric twitches. The diagrams only illustrate the range of tension exceeding 0.5 P_0. The figures on the curves denote different initial loads and the figures at the broken lines denote time in msec. after the tension 0.5 P_0 has been passed. (0° C).
Mean velocity of rise in tension:
curve 0.04 P_0 = 5.1 P_0 per sec.
curve 0.30 P_0 = 3.3 P_0 per sec.
curve 0.45 P_0 = 2.4 P_0 per sec.
ordinate: instantaneous load in units of P_0.
abscissa: elongation in per cent of L_0.

fibres. Hill (1950 b) considers the series element in whole muscle to be an undamped elasticity and does not assume viscous properties to be of importance in the range of the velocities examined.

The analysis of the length-tension diagram of the series element in the single fibre gives, in the same way as Hill (1949 d) has shown for whole muscles, an explanation for the difference in the time course between a contraction under isometric and one under isotonic conditions, i. e. it helps to understand the fact that the shortening maximum in a twitch occurred at a later point in time than the peak of tension in an isometric twitch.

The markedly viscous character of the passive series element found in the present experiments must affect the views regarding the mechanical reaction of the *active* element. The assumption that the shortening maximum in the active elements coincides in time with the maximum of tension in isometric contraction (Hill 1949 d) thus can hardly be maintained. At the maximum of tension in an isometric twitch, the elongation in the series element has not yet reached its final value. This elongation is compensated for by a shortening in the active elements. As soon as the shortening velocity in the active elements, because of the relatively high tension, decreases (force-velocity relation) and becomes less than the velocity of the passive elements, the peak of the external tension is passed. Similar considerations apply to *isotonic contraction.*

At the onset of contraction, whether initiated isometrically or isotonically, the forces produced by the increase in tension or the shortening will act on the texture and tend to reorganize the textural pattern. That this process takes considerable time during contraction as well is seen from the previously mentioned transient experiments (cf. p. 124). In part the pattern of the texture will behave as a series element to the contractile substance. Its adjustment which proceeds during shortening will effect that even at constant load and at the maximum of shortening the contracting elements still shorten, counteracting the viscous lengthening of the series element. Thus, although the external shortening velocity is zero, this implies that the internal shortening velocity in the active elements is equal to the velocity of elongation in the passive series element.

Hence, the explanation of the *displacement in time of the maximum of tension and shortening* in a twitch, according to the above, is as follows: At the peak of the isometric tension and at the peak of the isotonic shortening the velocity of the viscous elongation in the passive elements is equal to the shortening velocity in the active elements. During the isometric twitch the tension rises rapidly and the viscous series element, which still can be stretched considerably, elongates rapidly. The velocity of shortening in the active elements is therefore compensated at an early stage by the velocity of elongation in the series element, and an early maximum is obtained. During the isotonic twitch, in which the series element is under an approximately *constant load*, the velocity of elongation is low and at the peak of shortening the compensating influence of the velocity of viscous elongation is of less importance. Therefore, the shortening maximum is displaced to a later time.

The assumption that the shortening in the active elements is not maximal until the external shortening has passed its maximum, may serve as an explanation of the humps in the course of relaxation, also described in whole muscle (HARTREE and HILL 1921). The viscosity of the series elements may cause this hump to occur at the point at which relaxation (desactivation) actually begins in the active elements.

The internal tension, P_i.

According to HILL (1949 d), the intensity of activity is defined by means of the *internal tension* (P_i) in the contractile elements. P_i denotes the tension at which the active elements neither shorten nor elongate. Assuming an undamped series elasticity, values of P_i in the isometric twitch can be determined by the maximum of tension, and in the isotonic twitch, by the maximum of shortening. However, the viscous character of the series element makes it difficult to determine P_i in this way, since the active elements must still be assumed to shorten at the maximum of tension or shortening.

If P_i is determined as a function of time from the maximum of the shortening, then ambiguous values are obtained, i. e. a high and a low value. The shortening maximum at low and high loads was earlier than at intermediate loads (see e. g. fig. 61). If the viscous elongation in the passive series elements is taken into consideration, unambiguous values may be expected for P_i at different loads, and the different positions of the shortening maximum as a function of load in the isotonic twitch can be understood. Assuming that relaxation sets in later when the load is high, it would follow that the shortening maximum also occurs at a later time with a rising load. This assumption is supported by the observation illustrated in fig. 71, where it is seen that a sudden rise in load in the first phase of an otherwise isotonic twitch caused a considerable delay in the time for the appearance of the relaxation. However, the yielding of the series element will influence the occurrence of the peak of shortening with time in the opposite direction. Hence, the low shortening velocity at a high load is compensated earlier by the velocity of elongation of the passive elements, and the shortening maximum in an isotonic twitch at a high load occurs earlier than at an intermediate load. The time required for the shortening maximum to develop in a twitch thus increases with increasing initial load until the velocity of elongation of the passive elements begins to exert its influence and causes this time to be decreased. Since, as mentioned, the load itself affects the time at which the maximum of shortening occurs, it must be assumed that the relative course of the internal tension as a function of time also varies at a high and at a low load.

Viscous properties of the series elastic element have been shown to account for differences in the gradients of its length-tension diagram which exist at a given load. Moreover, the shape of the computed length-tension diagrams of the visco-elastic series element gives information as to the rôle of the sarcolemma for the mechanical properties of the resting fibre. The fact that the *initial* gradient of the length-tension diagram of the series element increases considerably with load indicates the existence of an interdependence between external stress and orientation of the series element at the moment of stimulation. An increase in load from 0.03 to 0.6 P_0 is associated with an increase of the initial gradient of five times (fig. 76). This increase in orientation requires that external work is invested in the structure which represents the series element at rest. Obviously, this conclusion is incompatible with the assumption that the fibrillar substance does not contribute to the length-tension diagram of the fibre at rest (cf. the discussion of the rôle of the sarcolemma p. 110).

At the onset of contraction the stiffness of the visco-elastic series element amounts to approximately 15 $P_0 \times L_0^{-1}$ and increases during the further development of contraction to about twice this value, i. e. the stiffness is of the same order of magnitude as that found in dynamic experiments on the transition from rest to contraction. Hence, the stiffness in the visco-elastic series element in the range of loads investigated (up to 0.5 P_0) represents the essential part of the total stiffness which develops during contraction, and at the transition from rest to contraction the stiffness which can arise from the sarcolemma will only be of secondary importance.

Thus, from the discussion above it can be seen that the visco-elastic series element whose presence was demonstrated under isometric conditions, exerts its influence under isotonic conditions as well. It can explain the variation with load in the time required to obtain peak shortening. As long as the value for the lengthening velocity of this element is unknown, it is impossible to determine P_i by the shortening maximum in the isotonic twitch.

The initial shortening velocity as a function of temperature.

The initial shortening velocity depends chiefly on two factors: 1) load, discussed previously, and 2) temperature. The velocity increases with rising temperature. In experiments in which, for each temperature, sufficient time was allowed for complete thermal equilibrium as well as structural changes brought about

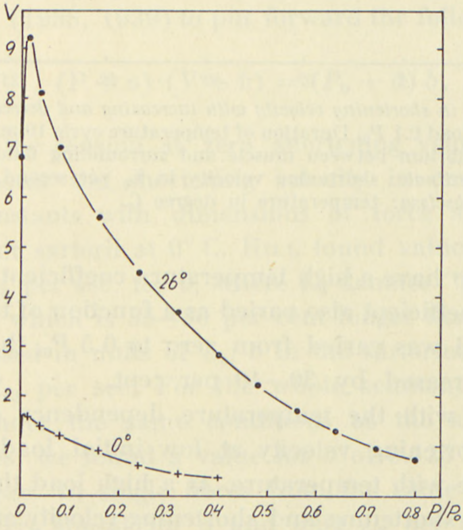


Fig. 78. Force-velocity relation at 26° and 0° C., isolated fibre. *ordinate:* maximum shortening velocity in L_0 per second. *abscissa:* load in units of P_0.

by temperature variation, an increase in the velocity of shortening of 4 to 8 times was found for a difference in temperature of 26 degrees. If the initial velocity as a function of temperature is examined for a series of fibres, one finds a family of curves which converges at some upper temperature (26° C.). This permits the conclusion that the spread of temperature coefficients is not random but a systematic property inherent in the physiological mechanism of different fibres, i. e. fibres with a low initial

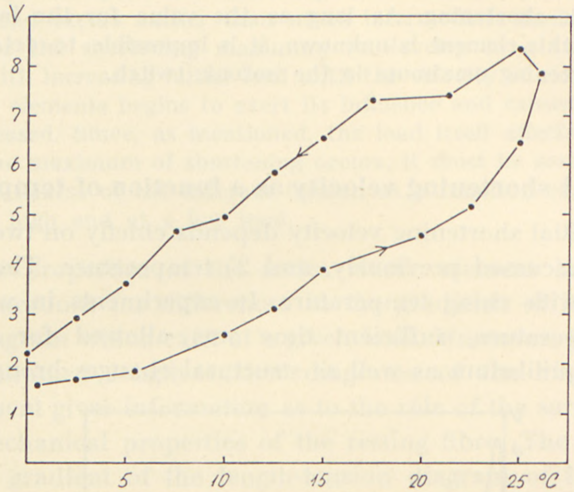


Fig. 79. *Hysteresis in shortening velocity with increasing and decreasing temperature*, isotonic twitches, load 0.1 P_0. Duration of temperature cycle 10 minutes. Regarding temperature equilibrium between muscle and surrounding fluid see text.
ordinate: shortening velocity in L_0 per second.
abscissa: temperature in degree C.

velocity tend to have a high temperature coefficient (fig. 78). The temperature coefficient also varied as a function of the initial load. When the load was varied from zero to 0.5 P_0, the temperature coefficient increased by 30—40 per cent.

Compared with the temperature dependence of shortening, the initial shortening velocity at low initial loads varied considerably more with temperature. At a high load the temperature coefficients for shortening and shortening velocity are of the same order of magnitude.

Measurement of the shortening velocity during continuously rising and continuously falling temperature showed, at the same temperature, higher velocity of shortening during falling than during rising temperature. This difference might amount to half of the total variation in velocity in the range 0° to 25° C.

A series of experiments carried out with temperatures rising from 0° to 25° C. within 5 minutes and falling back to 0° within the next 5 minutes showed a hysteresis which could not be explained on the basis of an incomplete temperature equilibrium between the Ringer's solution and the fibre, since the time for thermal equilibrium of the fibre did not exceed 1 second (fig. 79). The cause of the hysteresis must be sought in a delay in the temperature-dependent adjustment in the minute structure. A hysteresis in the adjustment of the structure caused by variations in the temperature is well known from plastics. A similar hysteresis was also found in the muscle fibre in measurements of the membrane potential (Buchthal and Lindhard 1936).

Hill's equation.

The fact that the variation in the initial shortening velocity with the load represents one of the best reproducible expressions for the dynamic properties of the muscle during contraction, has led Hill (1938, 1939) to put forward the following equation:

$$(P + a)\cdot(V + b) = (P_0 + a)\, b, \tag{62}$$

where P_0 is the tension at zero shortening velocity and P the load. V denotes the shortening velocity in cm per sec. and a and b constants with dimensions of force and velocity respectively. For sartorii at 0° C. Hill found values of 0.25 P_0 for a and 0.33 L_0' per sec. for b, where L_0' denotes "natural" length, i. e. a length which is 35—50 per cent longer than the L_0 of the fibre. Expressed in units of L_0, b in the sartorius, therefore, becomes 0.45 L_0 per sec. For the whole semitendinosus muscle, examined under the same conditions as the single fibre and small bundles, we found a value for a of 0.125 P_0 and for b of 0.38 L_0 per sec. In single fibres from the same muscles values of 0.30 P_0 were found for a and 0.92 L_0 per sec. for b. The values for a and b in isotonic contraction were about twice as large as the constants measured for the same fibre during afterload contraction. Three experimental series of this type thus gave:

$$\frac{\text{a (isotonic)}}{\text{a (afterload)}} = 1.87 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\text{b (isotonic)}}{\text{b (afterload)}} = 1.93.$$

In a whole muscle, in which the length during contraction under isotonic conditions is limited by the shunting connective tissue or by a small number of fibres, which on account of a small equilibrium length are maximally loaded, the rest of the fibres work under afterload. Hence, it cannot be expected that afterload conditions for the whole muscle will give a similar difference in the constants of the equation as that found in the single fibre.

For whole sartorius muscles HILL (1938) found that the value of a corresponds to the heat of shortening. If the same were true for semitendinosus, a transformation of the values found for a in whole muscle and single fibre to g/cm^2 by means of the values for P_0 listed in Table 10 would give a heat of shortening in the single fibre which is four times that in whole muscle, i. e. for the fibre $a = 841$ g/cm^2 and for whole muscle $a = 213$ g/cm^2 (0°C). Even when the value of a for whole muscle is corrected for the 30 per cent passive substance, we still have so large a difference between a in the fibre and in the muscle that it is incompatible with the assumption of a as shortening heat.

On account of the different values found for the constant a in isotonic and afterload contractions one might expect that the heat of shortening in the fibre during isotonic contraction would be nearly twice as large as that during afterload. Hence, in the case of the single fibre the constant a can hardly be considered to correspond to the heat of shortening, but can only be interpreted as an arbitrary constant in the empirical relation between load and velocity.

The constants *a* and *b* in the single fibre and in whole muscle.

The difference in the mechanical reaction between the single fibre and the corresponding muscle may be due to the factors: (1) different equilibrium lengths of the single fibres in the muscle, causing different degrees of stretch, and (2) shunting connective tissue. In the semitendinosus muscle, in which the fibres run from tendon to tendon, the shunting connective tissue can be assumed to act only slightly as a limiting factor for the shortening velocity. However, a difference in length between the different fibres was found.

We have examined the distribution of the fibre lengths in a semitendinosus muscle. For this purpose the muscle was fixed at its natural length. 15 per cent nitric acid (Romeis 1928) was used for fixation and was allowed to act for 2—3 hours. The muscle was then washed in water and the single fibres with their

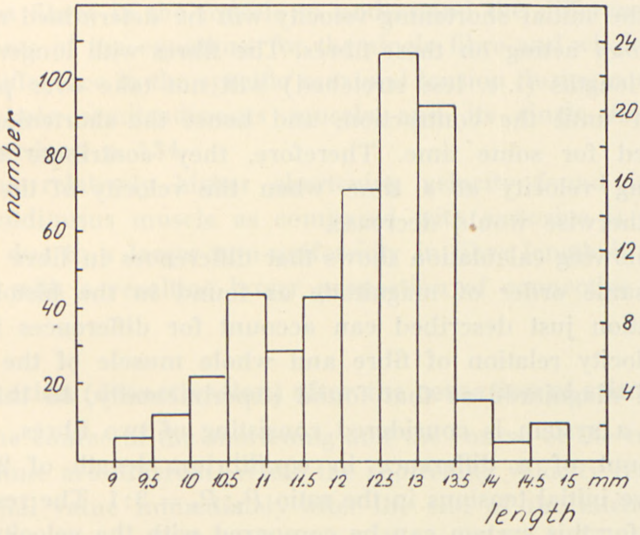


Fig. 80. Distribution of fibre lengths in the semitendinosus, Rana temporaria.
left ordinate: number of fibres in the different ranges of length.
right ordinate: number of fibres in per cent.
abscissa: length in mm.

corresponding tendon ends could easily be isolated. The number of fibres in the muscle examined was 515, of which a length determination could be carried out on 458. The length varied between 9 and 15 mm with a mean value of 12.25 mm and a standard deviation of 1.14 mm (fig. 80). According to this distribution, the average difference in length for two fibres selected at random was 1.25 mm, corresponding to a difference in length of 10 per cent. There is a 30 per cent probability of a difference in length of $>$ 2 mm, corresponding to more than 15 per cent of L_0.

The resulting inhomogeneous state of stretch can explain the difference between the force-velocity curve for single fibre and whole muscle. It follows from the approximately constant tension in the curve for the isometric maxima over a large range of lengths that a non-uniformity in stretch will hardly affect P_0. At load P_0 the shortening velocity is zero and the diagrams for fibre and muscle coincide, just as the curves have the same starting point when the shortening proceeds without load. The shortest fibres will be subjected to a relatively greater part of the load. Hence, the initial shortening velocity will be determined mainly by the load acting on these fibres. The fibres with longer equilibrium lengths (i. e. less stretched) will not take over part of the load until the contraction, and hence the shortening, has proceeded for some time. Therefore, they contribute to the shortening velocity at a time when the velocity of the short fibres otherwise would decrease.

A following calculation shows that differences in fibre length of the same order of magnitude as found in the histological examination just described can account for differences in the force-velocity relation of fibre and whole muscle of the same order of magnitude as that found experimentally. In this calculation a system is considered consisting of two fibres, which on account of a difference in equilibrium length of 20 per cent have initial tensions in the ratio $P_1 : P_2 = 3:1$. The resulting velocity for this system can be compared with the velocity of a whole muscle. In the calculation Hill's equation was applied to the fibres in the range of loads up to P_0. At loads of above P_0, where the shortening is actually an elongation, the velocity as a function of the load, has an almost horizontal course (Katz 1939), which has been taken into account in the calculations.

In Appendix III, p. 298, the calculations are given of the shortening velocity of the system mentioned above, corresponding to a whole muscle assuming for its fibres: $a = 0.30\ P_0$ and $b = 0.92\ L_0$ per sec. If the computed force-velocity curve is approximated by a hyperbola, we obtain:

$$a_m = 0.145\ P_0 \text{ and } b_m = 0.445\ L_0/\text{sec.}$$

or

$$a_m = 0.120\ P_0 \text{ and } b_m = 0.360\ L_0/\text{sec.}$$

according to the way in which the hyperbola is fitted to the calculated resulting velocity.

The experimental values for a and b from whole semitendinosus muscle were:

$$a_m = 0.125\,P_0 \text{ and } b_m = 0.38\,L_0/\text{sec.}$$

Thus, it is possible from the different state of stretch for the various fibres in the muscle to understand the difference in the constants of the equations for the single fibre and whole muscle. The difference in the specific maximal tension during contraction for whole semitendinosus muscle and its single fibres was discussed on p. 134.

The relatively higher shortening velocity found in whole semitendinosus muscle as compared with sartorius is assumed to be due to a larger non-uniformity in fibre length in the sartorius with a resulting larger proportion of connective tissue.

Relaxation (desactivation) after the cessation of stimulation.

The course of the shortening and the course of the relaxation with time are different. While the shortening velocity reached its maximal value immediately after the end of the latent period, the relaxation velocity did not reach maximum until some time after the cessation of stimulation. In the first phase of shortening, the shortening velocity was approximately constant, while the change in length after the interruption of stimulation followed an S-shaped curve. Therefore, the relaxation velocity rose slowly, reached a maximal value and then decreased slowly again. In tetanic contraction at 0° C., the time interval between the interruption of stimulation and the maximal relaxation velocity was 0.3 sec.

When characterizing in the following the mechanical course of the relaxation by the maximal relaxation velocity (V_d), we are well aware that this is only an approximate description of the whole course of relaxation. The relaxation might also be characterized by the interval elapsing between the interruption of stimulation and the occurrence of maximal velocity. However, since the *maximal relaxation velocity* showed characteristic variations caused by shortening, load, temperature, duration of contraction, and fatigue, it was convenient to use this parameter in discussing relaxation.

Shortening: At the same load, temperature, and duration of contraction, the maximal relaxation velocity depended on the

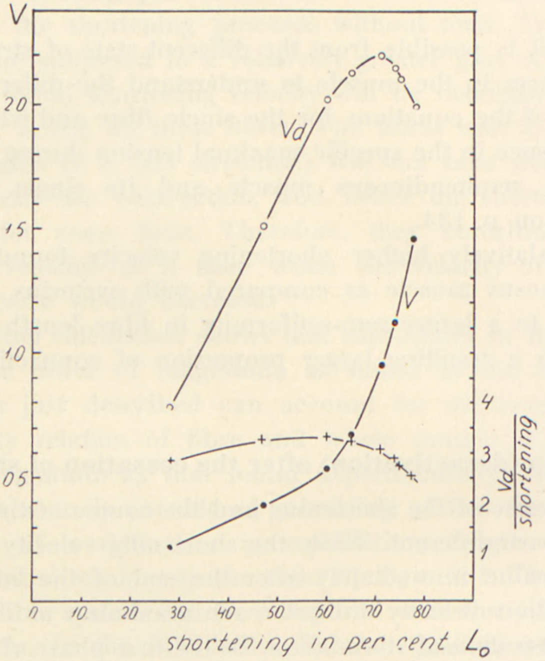


Fig. 81. Maximal shortening velocity (V = •), lengthening velocity (V_d = O) during relaxation, and velocity constant (+) plotted versus maximum shortening during and after different degrees of isotonic tetanic contraction. 0° C., load 0.17 P_0, different strength of stimulation, completely curarized muscle fibre.

left ordinate: velocity in L_0 per second.

right ordinate: velocity constant $\left(\frac{V_d}{\text{shortening}}\right)$ in sec.$^{-1}$.

abscissa: shortening in per cent of L_0.

amount of shortening. A variation of the shortening at the same load could be obtained by varying the strength of the tetanic stimulation from threshold value to three times the threshold value. Fig. 81 shows that the maximal velocity of relaxation increased approximately proportionally with the shortening up to 75 per cent of the maximal shortening, i. e. a shortening of approximately 60 per cent of L_0.

Duration of contraction: Different durations of contraction were obtained by varying the number of stimuli from 1, 2, 3, 4 stimuli up to tetanic contraction lasting 3—10 sec. The duration was defined as the time elapsing between the first sign of shortening and the time at which the relaxation velocity was maximal.

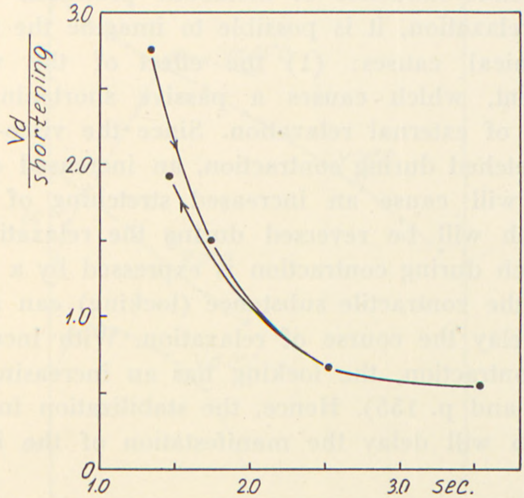


Fig. 82. Decreasing relaxation velocity, expressed as velocity constant, with increasing duration of the isotonic, tetanic contraction, 0° C., load 0.15 P_0. *ordinate:* ratio between maximum lengthening velocity after interruption of stimulation and maximum shortening ("velocity constant" in sec.$^{-1}$). *abscissa:* duration of contraction in seconds.

Since the maximal relaxation velocity was also affected by the shortening, the course of relaxation was described by the *maximal velocity of relaxation per unit of shortening* (in sec.$^{-1}$). Within the range of proportionality between shortening velocity and shortening this "*velocity constant*" expresses the effect of the duration independent of the shortening reached. The velocity constant decreased with increasing duration of contraction (fig. 82) and the effect was most marked during transition from a twitch to a tetanic contraction. The duration of contraction required for the velocity constant to approach constant values varied inversely with the load in the different experiments, i. e. for high and low loads the extreme values were 3 and 8 sec. respectively. That the effect on the relaxation velocity was not caused by fatigue was seen from control contractions of short duration released 1—2 sec. after a tetanic contraction of long duration. The controls *immediately* showed high relaxation velocity.

The decreased velocity of elongation occurring with increased duration of contraction may be due to different factors. Apart from a possible influence of metabolic products, which may counteract relaxation, it is possible to imagine the two following mechanical causes: (1) the effect of the visco-elastic *series* element, which causes a passive shortening reducing the velocity of external relaxation. Since the visco-elastic element is stretched during contraction, an increased duration of contraction will cause an increased stretching of series elements, which will be reversed during the relaxation. (2) the process which during contraction is expressed by a mechanical *shunt* over the contractile substance (locking) can also be assumed to delay the course of relaxation. With increasing duration of contraction, the locking has an increasing influence (see p. 131 and p. 155). Hence, the stabilization in the structural pattern will delay the manifestation of the internal relaxation.

Fatigue: Numerous repetitions of contractions of the same duration gradually caused a reduction of the relaxation velocity to about the same extent as the shortening itself was reduced. Thus, the velocity constant was not significantly affected by fatigue. Both the relaxation velocity and the shortening were more affected by fatigue than the shortening velocity. When relaxation velocity and shortening during fatigue had fallen to 35 per cent of the initial values, the shortening velocity was only reduced to 60 per cent of the initial value.

Load: As a function of the load, the relaxation velocity after tetanic contraction always had a maximum at 0.2 to 0.4 P_0 (fig. 62 and 83). The maximum value of the relaxation velocity varied considerably from fibre to fibre and, when referred to the same load, could even exceed the shortening velocity by 20 to 25 per cent.

Temperature: It is well known from experiments on whole muscles that over a considerable range of loads the temperature dependence of the relaxation velocity is larger than that of both the shortening velocity and of the shortening. Fig. 83 shows the shortening and relaxation velocities as a function of the load during tetanic contraction at 0° C. and 26° C. At loads $> 0.2\ P_0$ the temperature dependence of the relaxation velocity was always larger than that of the shortening velocity. This difference in-

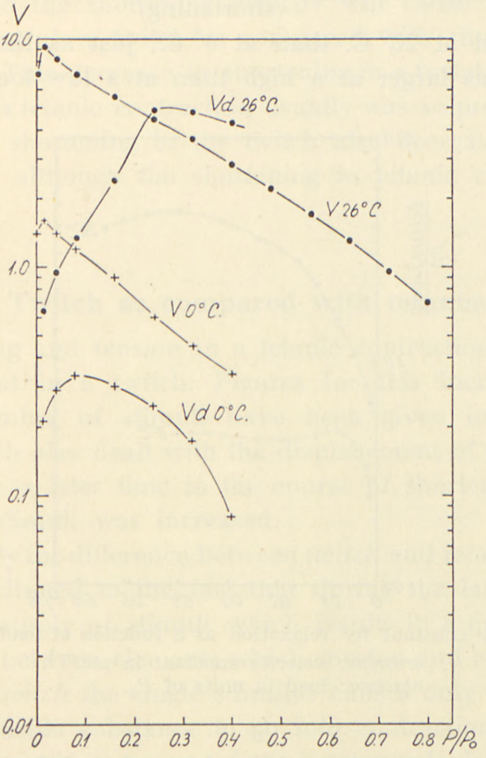


Fig. 83. Maximal shortening velocity (V) and lengthening velocity (V_d) during and after isotonic tetanic contraction (duration approximately 1 second), 0° and 26° C.
ordinate: velocity in L_0 per second, logarithmic scale.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

creased with increasing load. At load $0.25\ P_0$ the relaxation velocity thus increased 20 times and the shortening velocity 7 times, when the temperature rose from 0° to 26° C.; at $0.4\ P_0$ V_d increased 50 times and the shortening velocity only 8 times for the same rise in temperature. In the range of load 0 to $0.2\ P_0$, where V_d increased rapidly with load, the temperature dependence was less than at high loads, and at loads $< 0.1\ P_0$ it may be less than the temperature dependence of the shortening velocity.

The experiments at 26° C. also showed a maximum for the relaxation velocity as a function of the load. This maximum occurred at higher loads than the maximum in experiments at 0° C. The velocity constant $\left(\frac{Vd}{\text{shortening}}\right)$ varied more markedly with the load at 26° C. than at 0° C., just as the temperature coefficient was larger at a high than at a low load (fig. 84).

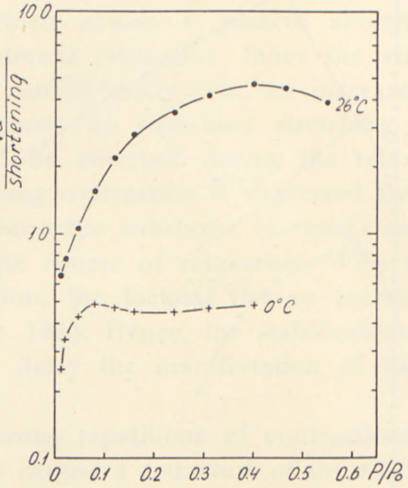


Fig. 84. Velocity constant for relaxation as a function of load at 0° and 26° C.
ordinate: velocity constant in sec.$^{-1}$.
abscissa: load in units of P_0.

The larger temperature dependence found for the relaxation velocity, as compared with the shortening velocity, supplies an explanation for the difference in the influence of temperature on the shortening in a twitch and in a tetanic contraction. As previously mentioned, the shortening in tetanic contraction increased markedly with rising temperature, while the shortening in twitch increased much less, or decreased. Both in a twitch and in a tetanic contraction the relaxation appears externally *after* the end of the stimulation. In a twitch this occurs so early that a considerable shortening velocity can still be present. At the peak of the twitch the external shortening velocity is zero, but that of the active elements is compensated for by the velocity of elongation in the visco-elastic series element.

At high relaxation velocity and high velocity of stretch in the passive elements, the shortening velocity is compensated at an early time and hence the maximal shortening is reduced. The fact that relaxation velocity rises more rapidly with rising temperature than the shortening velocity will cause a decrease in the shortening of a twitch as compared with that of a tetanic contraction. This decrease in shortening in a twitch as compared with that in a tetanic contraction usually was so pronounced that the absolute shortening in the twitch also decreased with rising temperature, although the shortening in tetanic contraction increased.

Twitch as compared with tetanus.

Shortening and tension in a tetanic contraction considerably exceeded that in a twitch. Figures for this increase with increasing number of stimuli have been given in a preceding section, which also dealt with the displacement of the shortening maximum to a later time in the course of shortening when the number of stimuli was increased.

Essentially the difference between *twitch* and *tetanic contraction* must be attributed to the fact that during the latter there is a continuous supply of stimuli which results in a quasi-stationary equilibrium between elements which shorten and elements which relax. In a *twitch* the single stimulus causes only a limited part of the contractile substance to go into contraction, since relaxation has desactivated part of the contracted elements already before the shortening maximum has been arrived at. In addition, when a single stimulus is applied the limited possibility of activation might also be a limiting factor. Thus, shortening in a twitch often comprises only a minor fraction of that attained in tetanic contraction. This is true even when the relaxation velocity is low as compared with the shortening velocity, due consideration being given to the more limited time available for the development of a twitch.

It remains to explain why the initial shortening velocities during a twitch and a tetanic contraction following maximal stimulation are identical. Apparently this finding is in contradiction with the assumption that relaxation starts to act in a twitch before the maximum in shortening has been reached. However, there are a number of observations which indicate that there is an upper limit for the velocity with which contractile substance can be activated, regardless of the number of stimuli applied. Hence, the stimuli will only be effective gradually. Examples for this "storing" of stimuli with a following delay in the

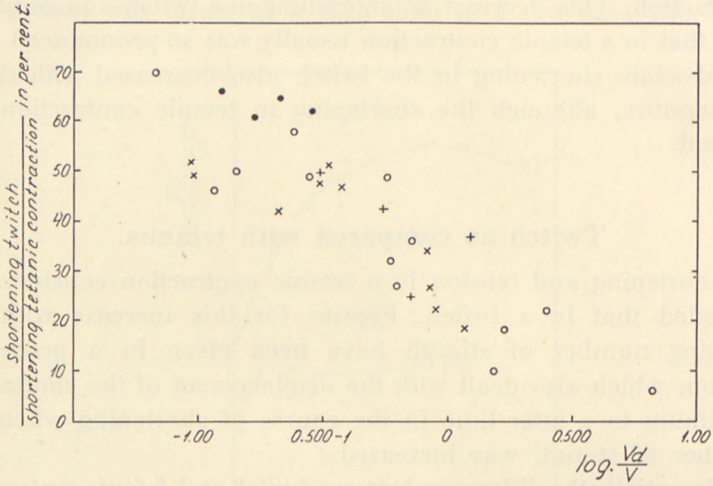


Fig. 85. Correlation between the ratio of shortening in the isotonic twitch and tetanus and the ratio of relaxation and shortening velocity.
ordinate: peak shortening of twitch in per cent of the shortening in tetanic contraction.
abscissa: ratio between maximal relaxation velocity and shortening velocity in tetanic contraction, logarithmic scale.

maximum of activation have been given in a previous section (cf. p. 141).

The reduced shortening found in a twitch as compared with a tetanic contraction at different loads and temperatures can be explained roughly by the joint effect of shortening and relaxation velocities and of a limited possibility of activation by virtue of the single stimulus applied.

The external shortening and relaxation velocities can, with certain reservations, be considered to correspond to the same quantities in the contractile elements themselves. On this basis, an attempt has been made to correlate the ratio of the peak shortening in a twitch and the maximal shortening in a tetanic contraction with the ratio of the relaxation and shortening velocities in a tetanus.

Each point in fig. 85, where the abscissa denotes the logarithm of $\frac{V_d}{V}$ and the ordinate the ratio between shortening in a twitch and in a tetanic contraction, corresponds to a mean value from experiments on at least five different muscle fibres or small fibre bundles. The points include experiments at high and at low temperature, and at high and low load in non-fatigued fibres and at different degrees of fatigue. Regardless of these different experimental conditions, the *relative shortening in the twitch as compared with that of the tetanic contraction* decreased with increasing $\frac{V_d}{V}$. For a fixed value of this ratio, shortening in a twitch as a fraction of the shortening in a tetanic contraction varied on an average 8 per cent and at most 15 per cent. This spread must be attributed to the fact that $\frac{V_d}{V}$ in the active substance can only be reflected with approximation in the external reaction of the fibre. A direct transfer of changes in length and tension in the contractile elements is prevented by their organization in the texture. Furthermore, as mentioned above, the external relaxation velocity is the sum of relaxation and shortening velocities in the contractile component.

Initial total activation or gradual activation?

The present explanation of the difference between twitch and tetanus deviates essentially from that suggested by Hill (1949c). We assume a continuously increasing degree of activation with increasing shortening. Hence, the shortening velocity is considered to be an expression of the velocity with which the contractile elements are activated. According to Hill the degree of activation (contraction intensity, P_i) is practically maximal at the onset of shortening or tension. This implies that the whole contractile substance simultaneously is thrown into contraction.

The finding that the increase in stiffness develops much faster than both tension and shortening has been considered one of the main indications of the early and total activation. However, as previously described, in the isolated fibre both longitudinal and torsional stiffness did not reach their maximum values until

$\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the time necessary for the attainment of the shortening maximum had elapsed. Also in whole muscle GASSER and HILL (1924) and HILL (1949d) have demonstrated that maximal stiffness is reached only about twice as fast as the maximum in tension.

According to HILL the early maximum in stiffness indicates an initial maximum activation of the contractile component. Its activity is transmitted through a passive series element which does not give external manifestations of stiffness until some shortening has developed and has stretched the series element. The explanation suggested here assumes a gradual development of activation in contractile chains which are more or less aligned (slack). The question is, however, whether the fact that the maximum in stiffness occurs earlier than the maximum in tension, is consistent with the assumption of a gradual activation of the contractile substance during the development of contraction. In a homogeneously aligned contractile substance it should be expected that the stiffness increases proportionally with the degree of activation. Our suggestion that not all contractile elements contribute simultaneously to the onset of tension would imply an *initial* rise in stiffness as well. Under *isometric* conditions the slack chains, as their lengths become comparable with the taut ones, will contribute to the *stiffness* in finite increments, so that as a function of time the stiffness builds up quite rapidly as more and more slack chains are recruited. Moreover, remembering the general property that stiffness increases with rising tension, as the tension in the various chains increases, so will their stiffness and thereby the total stiffness will increase as well. On the other hand, the *tension* contributed by each chain as its slack is taken up will not occur in steps, but will gradually rise from zero.

Similarly, under *isotonic* conditions on account of their higher shortening velocity, the slack chains will catch up with the loaded ones and contribute stepwise to the total stiffness, whereas they only gradually assume their share in the load, and, thus again the rate of the increase in stiffness will be greater than that of the shortening. The finite initial contribution of a chain to stiffness will be equal to the stiffness present in it in the state at which it is "captured" by the load. With the tension rising in the whole texture the intrinsic forces will increase and with progressing contraction cause a "give" in the contractile elements which will tend partially to diminish the mechanical effect of the rise in stiffness (cf. also BUCHTHAL *et al.* 1944a). In the equivalent system the yielding which occurs during contraction both under isometric and isotonic conditions is symbolized by the viscous series element previously mentioned (cf. p. 170).

The assumption of a non-uniform state of internal tension in the contractile elements as a cause of the early maximum in stiffness is supported by the finding that the maximum is most pronounced at a small initial load. There the slack is most pronounced in the resting fibre. The same mechanism can explain the previously described changes of elastic and viscous stiffness with vibrational amplitude (cf. p. 102). If one assumes that the disappearance of slack is the main cause of the initial rise in stiffness, the course of stiffness with time can hardly prove or disprove an initial total activation.

The early development of *heat of activation* within the latent period is used as an argument in favour of an initial maximal activation (HILL 1949c, 1950a). However, the time course of heat of activation can also be attributed to the heat production which accompanies the shortening in slack chains (cf. p. 283). HILL's (1950c) finding that heat of activation develops more slowly when contraction is initiated at high loads than at low loads can also be explained by assuming a gradual activation.

As discussed in detail in Part IV, the interpretation suggested in the present paper gives a suitable basis for a quantitative explanation of the variation of shortening velocity with load, a finding difficult to understand from the assumption of a total initial activation. It can also help to understand the previously mentioned "storing" of the effect of successive stimuli.

Active or passive relaxation.

From the analysis of the course of relaxation as a function of load and temperature, it is possible to discuss certain aspects of the problem of relaxation. An *active* relaxation implies the assumption that the contracted state is a state of equilibrium for the contractile substance, and that the resting length is reached by an active extension of the contractile elements after the cessation of stimulation. Contraction may be interpreted as the removal of a "barrier" to shortening, and the potential energy decreases during the shortening and is then rebuilt during the active relaxation. A *passive* relaxation, on the other hand, means that the process of contraction is active, since the mechanical energy is not stored in the minute structure of the resting fibre. During transition from rest to contraction the energy content of

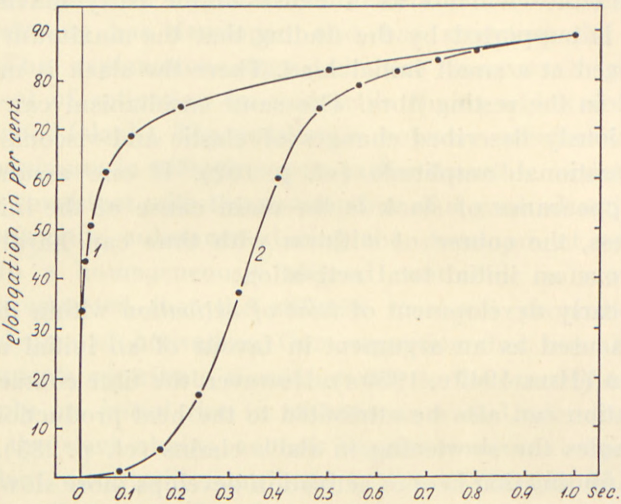


Fig. 86. Comparison between the course of adjustment in the resting fibre and during relaxation from isotonic tetanic contraction. 0° C.
curve 1: resting fibre, initial load 0.05 P_0, suddenly loaded by 0.2 P_0.
curve 2: relaxation of isotonically contracted fibre after interruption of stimulation (load 0.2 P_0).
ordinate: elongation in per cent of L_0.
abscissa: time in seconds.

the fibre increases. Hence, the beginning of relaxation only indicates the end of the state of contraction, whereupon the elasticity of the contractile substance acts to reestablish the resting length of the entire texture. In passive relaxation, the transition from contraction to rest denotes the time at which the external load begins to pull out the shortened—but desactivated—minute structural elements to the resting length. The velocity with which this stretching occurs can be determined with good approximation by applying a sudden load to the resting fibre (transient). An unavoidable source of error in the evaluation of these experiments consists of non-contractile, elastic series elements, which also are present in the fibre, although to a less extent than in whole muscle. Hence, before comparing a transient at rest and the elongation during relaxation it will be necessary to investigate to what extent the deformation during transient on the resting fibre takes place in the *contractile* elements. This information is provided by the length-tension diagrams. A fibre which had contracted without tension and then was loaded with 0.5 P_0 was stretched by about 15 per cent of L_0. When the fibre was loaded at rest, the corresponding increase in length amounted to about 100 per cent of L_0. Therefore, it must be concluded that the essential part of the stretch in the resting substance occurred in the contractile elements. Consequently, the transient course shown in fig. 86 (curve 1), illustrating the effect of quick loading with 0.2 P_0 in a resting fibre with small initial load, is essentially an expression of the mechanical reaction of elements which participate actively in the contraction (for the rôle of the sarcolemma see p. 110). Curve 2 in the same figure shows the course of relaxation after isotonic contraction at the same load (0.2 P_0, 0° C.) as applied during transient extension at rest. A comparison of these two curves, in which the same passive shunting elasticities were involved, shows that the visco-elastic resistance to elongation, as it manifests itself in transient experiments, can only be an insignificant delaying component in the course of relaxation after contraction.

The difference in the course of the curves, however, cannot be interpreted as evidence of an active relaxation, since it can equally well mean that the process of contraction does not disappear abruptly at the end of stimulation, and that some substance still is found in the contracted state some time after stimulation has been interrupted. The S-shaped course of the relaxation curve thus expresses the statistical distribution of the times for the transition of the different elements from contraction to rest. The course of the curve does not permit a decision whether this time is due to active or passive processes.

Since Kühne (1859) described that a muscle contracted on a surface of mercury, i. e. without influence of external deforming forces, does not straighten again, relaxation in a tensionless muscle has been of importance in the discussion of active or passive relaxation. Kaiser (1900) repeated these experiments and reduced the friction of the muscle by surrounding it with a film of olive oil and found that the muscle rapidly regained its equilibrium length after the end of stimulation. The muscle returned so rapidly to its original shape that Kaiser considered this to be caused by elastic forces. However, in experiments on whole muscle Hill (1949e) was recently able to confirm the findings of Kühne that the muscle retains its contracted length after the end of stimulation. Using the latent period as indicator, which in spite of the short length is not increased, Hill concludes that the short length at rest is caused by a real shortening of the fibre and not by "slack".

The single fibre, which at rest hangs tensionless in a loop between two suspension points in Ringer's solution and shortens during contraction, regains its original length immediately after the end of the stimulation (Ramsey, cit. from Fenn 1945). This observation, however, can hardly give any contribution to the problem of active or passive relaxation. The contractile substance itself must be assumed to have a natural length to which it returns after the end of the contraction.

The unloaded length of the fibre is determined by the equilibrium between the tension in the fibrils and the longitudinal forces arising in the sarcolemma (see p. 117). Thus, the equilibrium length of the fibrils is not necessarily identical with the equilibrium length of the fibre. A radial pressure exerted by the sarcolemma at equilibrium length will normally be sufficient to elongate the fibre after a contraction in the tensionless state.

Hill (1949d) has calculated the straightening elastic force which e. g. can arise on account of differences in the colloid-osmotic pressure in the fibre and the surrounding fluid, and found that this force, which is of the same order of magnitude as the weight of the fibre, would be sufficient to explain the spontaneous alignment found by Ramsey. This interpretation, however, cannot apply to experiments which we have performed with the fibre suspended in Ringer with the same colloid-osmotic pressure as plasma; also in these experiments we found that the fibre resumed its initial length immediately after the end of stimulation. Experiments in which the elastic forces in the resting fibre (length 110—120) were measured in Ringer's solution and in a moist chamber in air, demonstrated the presence of an aligning force in the single fibre and in small fibre bundles large enough to cause return to the resting length. With the fibre bundle in Ringer at a low load, a stiffness could be measured which was up to 40 per cent higher than the stiffness of the fibre in the moist chamber in air (p. 28). The difference in stiffness corresponds to a change in load equal to several times the weight of the fibre. These experiments show that a force large enough to cause alignment really occurs when the fibre is in Ringer's solution. When the fibre is placed in air, this force is probably counteracted by the surface tension in the Ringer film, which still surrounds the fibre. The fact that a whole muscle does not show the spontaneous relaxation means that the aligning force cannot, as in the fibre, overcome the mechanical hysteresis. The lack of an external elongation may consequently be due to an increased hysteresis or decreased forces of alignment. A deformation in the pattern of the connective tissue during shortening can cause an increased resistance to elongation. On the other hand, the fact that the fibres of the whole muscle can be compressed without curling (see p. 136) may cause a decreased resistance to shortening by the locking, and consequently weaker forces will be present for an elongation during relaxation.

An important argument, apparently in favour of passive relaxation, is Hill's (1949 b) finding that heat production during relaxation of a tensionless contracted muscle is zero, and that heat production during a relaxation proceeding under load, does not measurably exceed the energy which is introduced from outside (increase in length × tension).

As previously described during the discussion of "locking" (see p. 155), a marked internal resistance which considerably exceeds the external forces, develops in a contracting fibre. This tension must cause a large internal work of deformation, which may appear as heat during relaxation. During the tensionless relaxation it might, therefore, be assumed that the external heat production is zero, because the expected heat of deformation is compensated for by a negative heat production, assumed to be connected with the process of relaxation. Also during relaxation under tension a considerable internal work of deformation must be released as heat, in addition to the work of deformation introduced from outside.

Apart from the "spontaneous" relaxation after the end of stimulation, described here, there are indications that during tetanic stimulation an additional relaxation may be enforced by a load considerably in excess of P_0 (Hill 1939). This relaxation similarly might be assumed to be connected with a negative heat production. The heat production during stretching of an activated muscle with a tension between P_0 and $2\,P_0$ is less than the work involved (Hill 1937, 1938, Fenn 1923, 1924, Aubert 1948). Thus, it is possible to measure a negative heat of shortening, which according to the considerations given here, corresponds to the negative heat of relaxation. The unexpectedly low heat production on stretching means that part of the mechanical energy introduced increases the potential energy of the structure or becomes transformed into chemical energy. Part of the heat released in the muscle as initial heat must thus be expected to be re-absorbed in the relaxation phase.

It is obvious from the preceding discussion that neither the study of mechanical properties nor the measurement of heat production can give an unambiguous answer to the problem of active or passive relaxation. On the other hand, in view of the theory for the mechanism of contraction developed in a later section of this paper, it seems rather doubtful that this is a pertinent question when dealing with the problem of relaxation. According to this hypothesis the contractile substance is assumed to consist of minute structural chains with elements which may occur in two states of equilibrium, a short and a long one. The energetic potential of these two states will be of the same order of magnitude. Contraction is defined as an increase in probability of the occurrence of short linkages in proportion to the long modification. Hence, contraction and relaxation are considered only to be consequences of changes in probability of these two states. On this basis it will hardly be meaningful to talk about active or passive relaxation.

Work and rate of work production.[1]

The area between the length-tension diagram at rest and the curve for the isometric maxima represents theoretically the upper

[1] A preliminary report of these experiments has been given in Acta neurol. psychiat. 1949, **24.** 333.

limit for the net work which a fibre is able to perform during a cycle of work, i. e. stretching from zero tension to maximal tension at the indifference point (negative work) followed by active shortening (positive work). However, this would be valid only if the tetanic shortening followed the curve for the isometric maxima (with due regard to the elastic aftereffect). This, how-

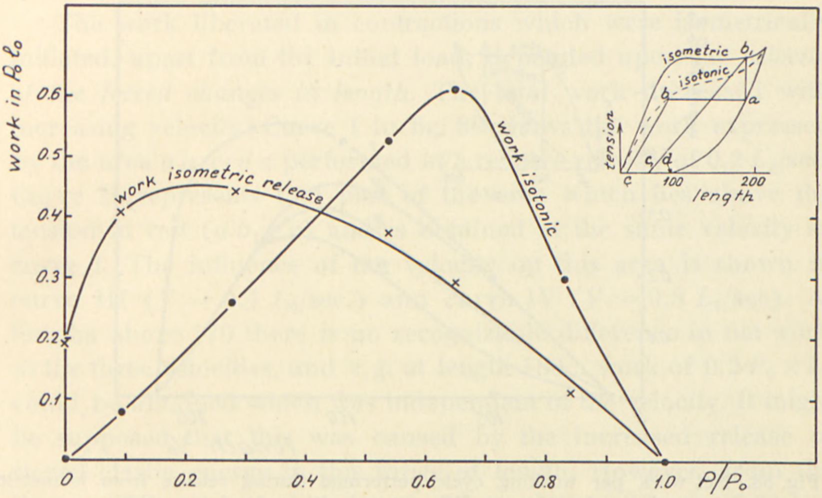


Fig. 87. Work as a function of the load in isotonic tetanic contraction and in release from isometric tetanic contraction, release velocity $0.2\,L_0$ per second, 0° C. The inset length-tension diagram in the right corner shows the areas for work beginning at the resting point *a*. Work during isotonically started contraction corresponds to the area within points *a b c d a*, work during release contraction to the area $a\ b_1\ c_1\ d\ a$.
ordinate: work in units of $P_0 \times L_0$.
abscissa: initial load at rest in units of P_0.

ever, is not the case. Even if sufficient time is allowed for complete adjustment of the tension to the new length, the tension during release is considerably lower than that reached in the isometric maximum (locking, see length-tension diagram during release, p. 130).

In the following section an account is given of the part played by the mechanical conditions present at the onset of contraction for the net amount of external work. For this purpose a comparison has been made between the external net work in *isotonically* started contraction (corresponds to *a*—*b* in fig. 87) and an *isometrically* attained contraction (corresponding to a—b_1). The initial phase of the isotonic contraction is characterized by a constant tension and shortening velocity, and hence work is produced with constant velocity. When initiated isometrically the contraction is characterized in its initial phase by constant length, increasing tension, and storage of elastic energy. In the subsequent release phase (b_1—c_1 and b—c) the remaining part of

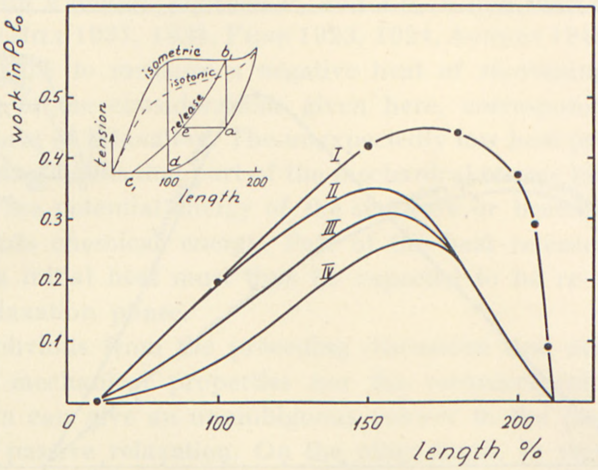


Fig. 88. Net work per working cycle performed during release from isometric tetanic contraction at different velocities of release. 0° C.
curve I: net work at total release, work represented by area $a\ b_1\ e\ c_1\ d\ a$ in inset length-tension diagram. Release velocity 0.2 L_0 per second.
curves II—IV: work during release from isometric tetanic contraction to the same tension as initially present at rest (area $a\ b_1 e\ a$).
release velocities: curve II 0.2 L_0 per second, curve III 0.4 L_0 per second, curve IV 0.8 L_0 per second.
ordinate: work in units of $P_0 \times L_0$.
abscissa: initial length in per cent of L_0.

the work is liberated which contraction can produce. It consists partly of stored elastic energy, and partly of energy originating from continuation of the contraction process during continued stimulation. In contraction which is evoked during isotonic conditions the net work corresponds to the area of $a\ b\ c\ d\ a$, and in isometric release contraction to the area $a\ b_1\ c_1\ d\ a$. Fig. 87 shows the work under these conditions as a function of the initial load and with a release velocity of 0.2 L_0 per sec.

At a high initial load the net work was largest during a contraction which was started isotonically. The curve had its maximum at 0.65 P_0 and the work, in units of $P_0 \times L_0$, was 0.60. The position of the maximum here corresponded to length 200. At a load 0.4—0.5 P_0 the work was the same during both types of contraction, and at a low load the work was largest during an isometrically induced contraction. In this case the maximum occurred at an initial load of 0.25 P_0, corresponding to a length of 180 and was 25 per cent lower than the maximal work during contraction started under isotonic conditions.

The work liberated in contractions which were isometrically initiated, apart from the initial load, depended upon the *velocity of the forced changes in length.* The total work decreased with increasing velocity. Curve I in fig. 88 shows the work expressed by the area $a\, b_1\, c_1\, d\, a$ performed at a relative velocity of 0.2 L_0/sec. Curve II represents that part of the area which lies above the tension at rest ($a\, b_1\, e\, a$) and is obtained at the same velocity as curve I. The influence of the velocity on this area is shown in curve III ($V = 0.4\ L_0$/sec.) and curve IV ($V = 0.8\ L_0$/sec). At lengths above 170 there is no recognizable difference in net work at the three velocities, and e. g. at length 180 a work of $0.2\, P_0 \times L_0$ could be obtained which was independent of the velocity. It might be supposed that this was caused by the increased release of stored elastic energy in this range of length. However, from the linear stiffness-load relation and with a relative stiffness of $30\, L_0^{-1}$ at most a work of $0.015—0.03\ P_0 \times L_0$* could be expected. During sudden release of whole muscle HILL (1950) found tension over only 2—3 per cent of the "natural length", i. e. 3—5 per cent of L_0. The work obtained hereby is only $0.015—0.025\ P_0 \times L_0$, hence, considerably less than the work which does not vary with the velocity (see also p. 125). The fact that part of the work is independent of velocity (fig. 88) can be explained by assuming

* Assuming a stiffness-load relation:

$$\frac{dP}{dL} = \varkappa (P + P_{st})$$

the work W liberated during release from load P_1 to P_2 will be:

$$W = \frac{1}{\varkappa}\left(P_1 - P_2 - P_{st} \log \frac{P_1 + P_{st}}{P_2 + P_{st}}\right)$$

Putting $\varkappa = 30\, L_0^{-1}$ and $P_{st} = 0.05\ P_0$ one obtains for $P_1 = P_0$ and $P_2 = 0$:

$$W = 0.028 \quad P_0 \times L_0$$

and for $P_1 = P_0$ and $P_1 = 0.5\, P_0$:

$$W = 0.0155\ P_0 \times L_0.$$

that there is less time for the manifestation of locking, the higher the release velocity. Thereby the inhibiting influence on the amount of work released is concealed. At lower initial length the velocity of the contraction process itself begins to influence the amount of energy released, probably because locking is developed more slowly at lower length (fig. 67). The decrease in the total external work with rising release velocity is in agreement with the observation that the shortening velocity decreased with increasing load. This relation implies on the other hand, that the muscle force—and hence also the work performed—must decrease with increasing velocity.

As a special type of work performed partly under isotonic conditions, the work produced in *afterload contractions* was examined. Here the total shortening, referred to the isotonic load, was less than during isotonic contraction (see p. 130). Hence, the net work was less than the work which started under isotonic conditions, and the difference was relatively greater, when the length was limited at low degrees of stretch and when the load was high.

The amount of work absorbed when a tetanically contracted fibre was stretched, exceeded essentially that liberated in isotonic tetanic contractions or afterload contractions. The tension in the former slightly exceeded P_0, i. e. rose above the curve of the isometric maxima. Thus, the work absorbed in stretch during contraction was considerably larger than $P_0 \times \Delta L$.[1] In isotonic contraction and in release contraction from initial load 0.5 P_0 the total work produced was approximately 0.45 $P_0 \times L_0$ with a change in length of 100 per cent of L_0 (0° C., fig. 87). For the same change in length the work absorbed in stretch during tetanic contraction was 1.2 $P_0 \times L_0$, Thus, in order to perform the same amount of work in isotonic or afterload contraction on the one hand and in stretch contraction on the other, in the latter only 40 per cent of the fibre mass is necessary as compared with the former.

The force-velocity relation (Hill 1938), even when corrected for forces $> P_0$ (Katz 1939), can only account for a minor part of the difference between the two types of work. This is illustrated by the following example:

Comparing the work done by the brachial biceps during raising

[1] ΔL = elongation.

and lowering of the body in two subjects we found that the lowering, which was performed with the same velocity as the raising (within 5 sec.), was carried out at least three times more easily, using fatigue or the integrated number of action potentials as a measure. In recent experiments ASMUSSEN (1951) has demonstrated a difference of the same order of magnitude when the oxygen consumption was used as a measure of the intensity of work. To simplify the comparison, the differences in torque during different phases of the work were disregarded and constant load was assumed during both raising and lowering. Assuming that the change in length of the biceps muscle during raising and lowering of the body maximally is 30 per cent and the time allowed for the movement in each direction was 5 seconds, the mean velocity will be 0.06 muscle lengths per second. With $\frac{P_0}{a} = 4$ and $b = 1$ muscle length (HILL 1940) the tension during body raising will be 0.93 P_0 and during body lowering 1.40 P_0. During lowering of the body some of the fibres go out of action and the remaining fibres, for a longer or shorter period, are under a load $> P_0$. In this comparison it is taken into consideration that for $P > P_0$ the force-velocity relation no longer follows HILL's equation, the slope of the curve being considerably reduced (KATZ 1939). Thus a difference in work of maximally 50 per cent can be accounted for. However, actually the difference is at least 200 per cent and, as mentioned above, it can be explained without difficulty by the differences in the length-tension relation during afterload contraction (body raising) and stretch contraction (body lowering). The former proceeds along a length-tension diagram which is considerably lower than that of the isometric maxima. Therefore, in order to lift the load, a larger number of fibres must be put into action. During lowering, fewer fibres can equilibrate the same load.

Rate of work production.

In *isotonic* contraction the rate of work production (measured in $P_0 \times L_0$/sec.) was calculated as the product of shortening velocity (V) in relative units and the corresponding relative load.

A discussion of the maximal shortening velocity as a function of load and temperature was given in an earlier section (see p. 148, 175). The maximum of the rate of work production lay at load 0.3 to 0.4 P_0, i. e. at half the load required for maximal total work.

During *isometric release contraction* with constant *forced* release velocity, the determination of the velocity of work is encumbered with difficulties. During release work is liberated partly on account of active shortening and partly on account of stored elastic energy accumulated during the rise in tension in the initial isometric phase. Since it is impossible to distinguish between these two effects during release, the *mean velocity of work production* was used as a measure of the rate of work production. The mean rate of work production is defined as the total work divided by the time taken to perform this work. The time necessary for the isometric increase in tension (0.1 sec.) was also included in this time. A comparison between the rate of work production in isotonic contraction and in isometric release contraction, necessitates investigation of the *mean* rate of work production in isotonic contraction as well. In the isotonic contractions we have used a contraction period of the same duration as that used in isometric release contraction (0.5 sec.). In both isotonic contraction and isometric release contraction, the maximal mean rate of work production was reached at an initial load of 0.3 to 0.4 P_0. The rate of work production amounted to about 0.3 $P_0 \times L_0$ per sec. Fig. 89 shows the way in which the rate of work production decreased during isometric release, when lower relative velocities were used (0.4 and 0.2 L_0 per sec.). On release with velocities of $<$ 0.2 L_0 per sec. the rate of work production decreased linearly with the release velocity. Independent of the release velocity, the rate of work production had its maximum at an initial load of 0.3 to 0.4 P_0.

The rate of work production in *whole* muscles determined during isotonic contraction, varied as a function of the load similarly to that found in single fibres or small bundles. The maximum also lies at 0.3 to 0.4 P_0, but the maximum in a whole semitendinosus muscle is only 0.2 $P_0 \times L_0$ per sec. However, this is higher than the maximum in sartorius muscle, for which we found a maximum rate of work production of 0.125 $L_0 \times P_0$ per sec. These results show that, at the same load, the rate of work production in the single fibre, is considerably higher than in whole muscle. The difference between fibre and whole muscle decreases the more uniform the fibres of the muscle are with regard to relative

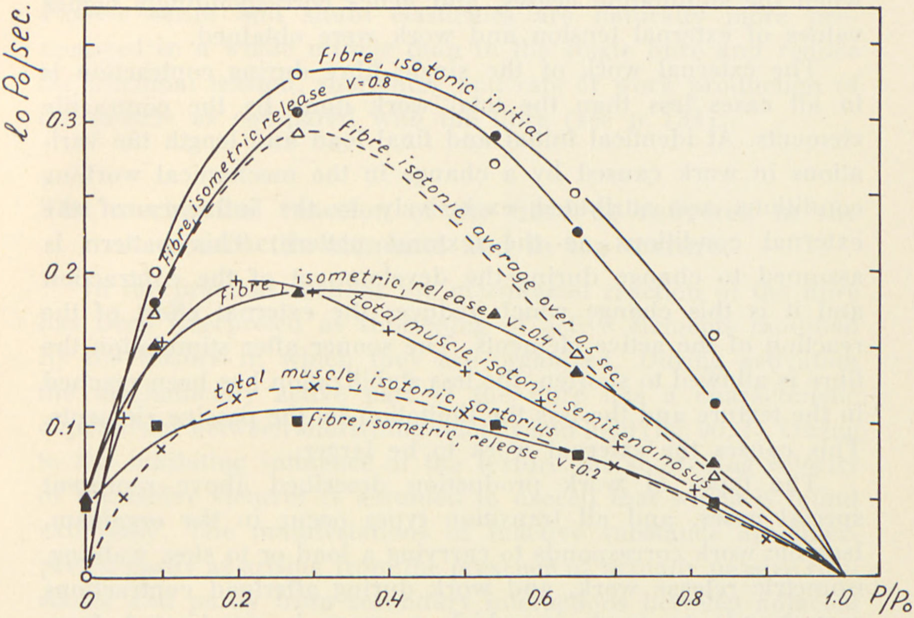


Fig. 89. *Rate of work production* in a single fibre (from m. semitendinosus) and in the total muscle (m. semitendinosus and m. sartorius). Release from isometric tetanic contraction with different velocities of release (0.2, 0.4 and 0.8 L_0 per second) averaged over the first 0.5 seconds of a contraction. 0° C.
○ — — — ○ — — — ○ isolated fibre, isotonic contraction,
initial rate of work calculated from initial shortening velocity.
× — — — × — — — × whole sartorius, isotonic contraction,
initial rate of work calculated from initial shortening velocity.
ordinate: rate of work in units of $L_0 \times P_0$ per second.
abscissa: initial load in units of P_0.

length and the more of the fibres are aligned in the longitudinal direction at equilibrium length.

The results shown in fig. 87 and fig. 89 were obtained on the basis of shortening and tension in experiments with *continuous* tetanic contraction. Previous experiments have shown that an increase in the yield of work of up to 50 per cent could be obtained when the stimulation was interrupted for a short period during a release contraction. This additional work was obtained in spite of the fact that the fibre was desactivated during part of the total period of work (Buchthal 1942). The cause of this difference was considered to be the limiting influence which the locking had on shortening in a continuous cycle of work whereby the yield of work is reduced. The locking is interrupted when the stimulation ceases, and hence correspondingly higher values of external tension and work were obtained.

The external work of the single fibre during contraction is in all cases less than the total work done by the contractile elements. At identical initial and final load and length the variations in work caused by a change in the mechanical working conditions are attributed exclusively to the influence of the external conditions on the textural pattern. This pattern is assumed to change during the development of the contraction and it is this change which reduces the external effect of the reaction of the active elements. The sooner after stimulation the fibre is allowed to shorten, the less stabilization has been reached in the texture and the less the limitation by the passive elements. This causes the external work to be larger.

The types of work production described above represent special cases, and all transition types occur in the organism. Isotonic work corresponds to carrying a load or to slow walking, isometric release work, and work during afterload contractions corresponds to work in which a mass is accelerated from velocity zero, e. g. as in a jump. The maximum for both types of work investigated lies at a high degree of stretch (length 180 and length 200). Even if there are whole muscles which in nature cannot attain this elongation, some of their individual fibres which often do not run through the whole length of the muscle may exhibit the degree of stretch necessary to obtain maximal values of work. An elongation of the whole muscle of 50 per cent may thus correspond to an elongation of 100 per cent or more of some of its fibres.

Comparing the isolated fibre with the whole muscle, the geometric arrangement of the fibres and their relation to the pattern of connective tissue has to be taken into account. In the cases in which connective tissue shunts contractile substance, the types of contraction at a definite degree of stretch may be changed from an isotonic to an "internal" afterload contraction. The stiffness of the connective tissue acts as a stop for the length of the fibres. The connective tissue which occurs in *series* with the contractile substance causes the velocity of development of tension in isometric contraction to be delayed by the work which the fibres must perform in order to stretch the passive substance. Passive series and shunt elasticities are naturally more pronounced in a whole muscle than in the single fibre and reduce the maximal tension, shortening and rate of work production of the muscle as compared with the fibre (see p. 134).

The mechanical reaction of the fibre as reflected in the contractile elements and in the texture.

In the previous sections the mechanical reaction of the fibre has been interpreted as shortening of active elements modified by the texture in which they are organized. During activation the mechanically active part of the fibre has a characteristic dependence between shortening velocity and load (fig. 90, *1*). Owing to the inhibiting influence of the texture the shortening velocity of the active element is assumed to exceed that which is found externally. The manifestations of inactive substance are interpreted partly as arising from the presence of actually passive substance and partly from secondary interactions between adjacent chains of contractile elements (entanglements, fig. 90, *2*). These points of entanglement are distributed at random and slack chains (4) occur between the points. On activation the slack chains will tend to catch up with the taut ones (3). Hereby the intrinsic tension in the structure will increase both longitudinally and transversally. This increase in the tension will cause a higher resistance towards both an increase in length and in cross-section, i. e. it will impede shortening. The gradual disappearance of slack which occurs on activation will by the better alignment of the structure cause an increase in longitudinal orientation (a_1). Simultaneously chains which are orientated transversely (a_2) when activated will cause an increase in transverse stiffness. The initial rise in the ratio between the transverse and longitudinal moduli which occurs at an early time after the onset of contraction indicates that the resulting effect is an initial decrease in longitudinal orientation (STEN-KNUDSEN 1950). Thereafter the longitudinal orientation increases. This increase which occurs with deve-

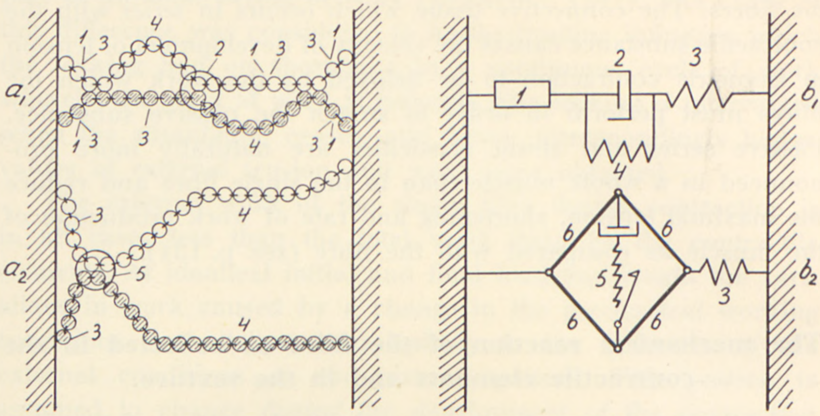


Fig. 90. Pattern of minute structure in a muscle fibre and its mechanical analogue.

a_1: two contractile chains with long range elasticity with three points of entanglement, one example marked with circle 2.
(1) and (3) parts of the chains under stress,
(4) part of the chain with slack.

b_1: (1) corresponds to contractility in chains under stress (1 and 3 in a_1),
(2) symbolizes viscosity caused by rearrangement in points of entanglement (e. g. 2 in a_1),
(3) longitudinal elasticity in elements under stress (1 and 3 in a_1),
(4) shunt elasticity caused by the variation in slack (4 in a_1),
(2), (3) and (4) act as series components to the contractile component (1).

a_2: molecular pattern accounting for shunt elasticity during contraction. Two contractile chains entangled at (5).
(3) part of chain which gives rise to strong transverse structural forces, when the fibre diameter increases during shortening.
(4) parts of the chains with slack.

b_2: bar-polygon (6) symbolizing the resistance against an increase in cross section converted to a shunt element impeding shortening.
(5) catch mechanism with series viscosity symbolizing entanglement (5 in a_2),
(3) series elasticity in the catch mechanism (corresponding to the elasticity 3 in a_2).
b_2 acts as a shunt to b_1 impeding its mechanical reaction.

loping contraction is considered to be caused by the "slip" in the texture which occurs with increasing intrinsic tension. Thereby a better alignment of elements will be produced and a sharp decrease in transverse stiffness relative to the longitudinal one.

On account of the practically constant volume, the shortening is accompained by a corresponding increase in cross-section. In the equivalent diagram the transmission between transverse forces and longitudinal forces is symbolized by a rhombic structure with articulating joints (6) which represents the increase in diameter on shortening.

When new points of entanglement are loaded during the development of contraction, disruptures occurring at random will cause an increase in orientation and length by rearrangements, and hence be shown externally as series elasticity (2, 4, and 3 in a_1 and b_1, fig. 90.) and as shunting elasticity (3 and 5 in a_2 and b_2) of a markedly viscous character. The viscosity is a result of the time necessary for regrouping. The difference in the textural pattern shown in the diagram between series (a_1) and shunt (a_2) elasticities is schematic. In reality, as mentioned above, a random mixture of more or less longitudinally and transversely orientated structural elements must be considered. In connection with points of entanglement, slack causes a viscous series elasticity (longitudinal orientation, a_1, b_1) at one point of the structure and an increased shunting stiffness at *another* point (transverse orientation, a_2, b_2).

According to the interpretation given here, the stiffness during contraction is a complex quantity and is the result of an interaction of the following three factors: a change in the geometric pattern of the texture during activation, a rise in the number of activated elements, and a rise in the stiffness of the contracting elements themselves. Hence, the early maximum in stiffness cannot be considered to be an indication of an initial maximum intensity of activation.

Chemical findings likewise suggest the establishment of a more rigid textural pattern during contraction. (Dubuisson 1950 a, b). This is concluded from the change in extractibility of the structural proteins. In the contracted state myosin β and protein y are non-extractable by 0.6 M KCl, which extracts these proteins in the resting muscle. Moreover, a new protein (myosin γ = "contractin") appears. These changes are considered to indicate the formation of new and more solid linkages between the components of the structural proteins.

Summary of Experimental Results.

The object of the present paper is a study of rheological properties of the resting and the activated muscular substance. The experiments were performed on *isolated fibres* or small bundles of frog's semitendinosus representing the smallest functioning unit which can be isolated from a living striated muscle. In spite of the fact that the isolated muscle cell undoubtedly is examined in an environment different from the physiological, the influence of which it is difficult to evaluate, the study of the isolated muscle fibre involves many obvious adventages. Thus, in the analysis of mechanical properties part of the complications are avoided which naturally arise from the pattern in which the fibres are organized in the whole muscle, such as the transmission of the mechanical effects to the outside, a non-uniform state of stretch in different fibres, connective tissue, etc. Moreover, it is possible to select fibres with a constant cross sectional area and the small diameter of the fibre allows fast transmission of heat and fast diffusion from or to the surrounding medium. Consequently, the use of isolated fibres brings about essential advantages both experimentally and in the evaluation of the experimental results.

The study of rheological properties comprises *static* experiments, *transient*-experiments, i. e. an analysis of the course of adjustment after quick stretch or quick loading, and *vibration* experiments, i. e. the application of periodic changes in length or load with different frequencies of vibrations. The temperature used in most of the experiments was 0° C., being referred to as a standard condition.

The resting muscle fibre.

The tension of the resting muscle fibre increases exponentially with increasing load. Therefore, the static stiffness $\left(\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta L}\right)$ increases linearly with the load. Within a range of elongation which must be assumed to represent physiological conditions, i. e. up to 70 per cent of stretch, the tension of the fibre is essentially the result of the fibrillar substance. The sarcolemma hardly contributes to tension until stretch exceeds 50 per cent of the equilibrium length (Casella 1951).

The stationary value of tension increases with increasing temperature, the increase being maximal at 20 per cent of stretch (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a). In the application of simple thermo-kinetical considerations it is necessary to remember that the temperature coefficient is always less than that which corresponds to a proportionality to the absolute temperature.

The *hysteresis* in the mechanical properties as it is revealed e. g. in recording the length-tension diagram with increasing and decreasing load was systematically investigated by applying sudden changes in load or length to the fibre (transients). The variation in load (ΔP) as compared with the initial load (P) was examined for values which varied between 0.1 and 3, the maximal value of ΔP being 0.5 P_0 and the minimum value 0.04 P_0. It could be demonstrated in these experiments that the time delay in the mechanical adjustment, i. e. the elastic aftereffect, can account quantitatively for the hysteresis. Over a large interval of time the velocity with which the new length adjusts itself after a quick loading or unloading varies approximately in inverse proportion with time. This course of adjustment, which can be followed from less than 10 msec. to several minutes after the transient, is described by means of a distribution of retardation times in a Voigt-model. The spectrum of retardation times extends over several decades. There is good agreement between the changes in length after a sudden increase and after a sudden decrease in load, the constants characterizing the course of adjustment in both cases being approximately identical. At *a high temperature* (25° C.) the adjustment within the first 10 msec. after the transient occurs faster than at 0° C. and thereafter more slowly. In the Voigt-model this behaviour corresponds to an increased representation of short retardation times.

However, even when small changes in load are applied, there are properties which cannot be appropriately described by a Voigt-model. The fibre exhibits *thixotropy*, both in the initial phase of stretch during a transient loading and in the effect of repeated transients on the stiffness. In the initial phase of a transient loading the mechanical reaction of the fibre is dominated more by a viscous resistance than by elasticity as compared with the vibrational elasticity measured with the same change in load. Repeated quick loadings cause a transient decrease in stiffness.

The original stiffness is regained after a recovery period of a few minutes.

In *vibration experiments* performed at a constant mean load ("isotonic") it was possible to differentiate accurately between elastic and viscous components in the mechanical reaction. As a measure of these properties we have used *elastic* and *viscous stiffness* determined at the resonance frequency of the oscillating system, in which the muscle fibre provides the directional force and the inertia corresponds to the equivalent mass of the recording system at the point of attachment of the fibre. The damping is produced by the "viscous resistance" of the fibre. At resonance the inertial forces of the system equilibrate the elastic forces of the fibre. Therefore, *elastic stiffness* is $m \times \omega_0^2$, where ω_0 represents the cyclic vibrational frequency at resonance and m the equivalent mass. At resonance the viscous resistance of the fibre is in equilibrium with the external force applied and *viscous stiffness* is defined as the ratio between the external force and the vibrational amplitude produced by it. The vibrational stiffness was found to be of the same order of magnitude as that found from the initial elongation produced by *small* transient changes in load. Immediately after a sudden change in load the vibrational stiffness exceeds its adjusted value by approximately 50 per cent. This final value is obtained in the course of several seconds. *Elastic stiffness increases linearly with the load.* Over the range of frequencies examined (25—150 c.p.s.) it varies only insignificantly with the vibrational frequency, while viscous stiffness increases with increasing frequency. A decrease in vibrational frequency to one fourth causes a decrease in viscous stiffness of 25 to 50 per cent.

In a standard fibre 1 cm long the dynamic elastic stiffness at 0° C. amounts to 18—20 dynes cm^{-1} *per dyne load* (vibrational amplitude[1] 1 per cent of L_0, frequency 25—100 c.p.s.).

The elastic stiffness decreases with increasing *amplitude of vibrations.* Expressed by $\frac{d\,(\log \text{ stiffness})}{d\,(\log \text{ amplitude})}$ the amplitude dependence for vibrational amplitudes of 0.5 to 2 per cent[1] of the equilibrium length at low loads amounts to 0.3 and at high loads decreases to 0.1. The amplitude dependence cannot be accounted for by

[1] $\frac{\text{peak to peak}}{2}$.

the non-linear course of the length-tension diagram, but is explained by assuming that the number of loaded minute structural elements varies *within* the period of vibration. The average number of elements participating in the load during the oscillation will decrease with increasing vibrational amplitude, i. e. slack will occur in a larger part of the period of oscillation. Thixotropy originating from slack will enhance this effect.

The dynamic elastic stiffness varies considerably more with *temperature* than the static tension. With increasing temperature the elastic stiffness decreases on an average 1 per cent per °C.

Dynamic viscous stiffness is of the same order of magnitude as the elastic stiffness, but its temperature coefficient is twice as large (2 per cent per °C.). The temperature dependence is most pronounced at low loads. Viscous stiffness increases with increasing load as well, but less than proportionally to the load. As a function of the amplitude, viscous stiffness has a maximum around amplitudes of 0.1—0.4 per cent of the equilibrium length.

A decrease in the *water content* of the fibre causes an increase of both elastic and viscous stiffness, while an increased water uptake does not produce significant variations in these quantities. This means that at the normal osmotic concentration that part of the structure which is deformed by the mechanical vibrations is fully hydrated and water acts as a "plasticiser". The viscosity measured by vibrations or in transient experiments is a structural viscosity, the resistance produced by the viscosity of the sarcoplasm (Rieser 1949) being more than 10000 times less. The sarcolemma tube as such gives hardly any significant contribution to the viscous component of the structural stiffness, delayed elasticity being here much less pronounced than in the intact fibre. Moreover, the difference between static and dynamic stiffness is less in the sarcolemma tube than in the intact fibre. In the latter dynamic stiffness (vibrational frequency 25—150 c.p.s.) exceeds the static by 3—5 times. The static stiffness is measured by differentiation of the adjusted length-tension diagram and the *static modulus* of the resting fibre at equilibrium length amounts to $0.50—0.63 \times 10^6$ dynes per cm^2. The *dynamic modulus* with the resting fibre at equilibrium length was 2.5×10^6 dynes per cm^2 (0° C., vibrational frequency ca. 30 c.p.s., vibrational amplitude 1 per cent of L_0). The *difference between dynamic and static* stiffness decreases with increasing load. The transition from dynamic to static conditions can be derived from the course of adjustment in transient experiments and is described by the Voigt-model mentioned above.

The analysis of the mechanical reaction of the resting muscle fibre thus reveals that there are delayed mechanical adjustments with retardation times extending over an interval from 0.1 msec. to several minutes. The slow adjustment is considered to arise exclusively from transitions in the *texture* of the fibre, i. e. the pattern in which the minute structural elements are organized. The short retardation times taken together with the relatively high degree of orientation in the unloaded fibre indicate that the adjustment occurs *within* the minute structural elements as well.

The muscle fibre has rubber-like elasticity, and the organization of its minute structure involves the assumption of transverse forces. Their existence is proved by measurements of torsional stiffness. This exceeds that of an ideally parallelized anisotropic substance without points of entanglement by twenty times at low degrees of stretch and by 5 times at length 200 (Sten-Knudsen 1950). Thus, in the muscle fibre there are essential deviations from a pure parallel orientation of the structure. Compared with the longitudinal modulus the torsional modulus in a muscle fibre is ten times less than in a randomly orientated isotropic body (Sten-Knudsen 1948).

The transverse forces are considered to arise from deformations in the structure between its points of entanglement in the incompletely parallelized substance. These points of entanglement cause a non-uniform distribution of tension in the different minute structural elements and under certain conditions only part of the structure will participate in the load. Especially at low loads an essential part of the structure will consist of *slack elements*. With increasing elongation the number of loaded elements will increase, slack will decrease, resulting in a higher degree of mechanical anisotropy. In the range of small loads the increase in stiffness with load can be accounted for by an increase in the number of minute structural elements which participate in the load. Assuming the presence of slack, it is possible to account quantitatively for the large variation of elastic and viscous stiffness with the vibrational amplitude. The fact that this amplitude dependence increases with increasing *sr*[1] indicates moreover that an increasing viscous stiffness prevents adjustment of the slack which arises *within* an oscillation period. Finally, on this basis it is possible to explain the mechanical and thermal changes which occur at an early time after the activation.

The contracted muscle fibre.

The length-tension diagram of the isolated fibre in the tetanic contraction, i. e. the curves of the isometric and isotonic maxima have an S-shaped course. The isotonic maxima always lie below the isometric, and the curve of release contractions[2] is still lower than that of the isotonic maxima. These differences are not the result of an incomplete *final* adjustment caused by insufficient time to adjust (cf. also the difference between afterload and stop-contractions). The reduced external tension obtained when the fibre shortens as compared with the tension which develops under isometric conditions is explained by an internal resistance arising from the stabilization of the textural pattern in the development of a contraction (elastic locking). Thereby the shortening is inhibited. Thus, differences in the *initial* adjustment during contraction determine the tension arising under the different conditions for contraction. The increased resistance in the texture develops gradually during contraction and is most pronounced when tension is developed over a long period of time before the fibre is allowed to shorten and when shortening occurs slowly. The maximal tension in tetanic contraction at 0° C. amounts to 2.75×10^6 dynes per cm^2 and increases approximately 1 per cent per degree C. with rising temperature. The shortening at 0° C. in tetanic contraction amounts to approximately 100 per cent of the equilibrium length (load $0.1\ P_0$) and increases 20 per cent when the temperature rises to 25° C. The temperature dependence of shortening increases with increasing load. The variation in shortening, produced by a change in temperature occurs with a significant delay in time. This hysteresis is not due to delayed temperature transmission to the fibre substance,

[1] $sr = \frac{\text{viscous stiffness}}{\text{elastic stiffness}}$.

[2] Release from isometric contraction to the same tension as at rest.

but indicates a delayed adjustment of temperature-dependent equilibria in the texture.

Adjustment to the new length after *quick loading* or unloading applied *during contraction* displays a smaller initial change and a larger and faster creep as compared with the adjustment after a transient in the resting fibre. A change in length, arising in the resting fibre from a preceding loading or unloading is neutralized much faster by a contraction than would be the case if the adjustment continued in the resting fibre. Expressed by the spectrum of retardation times, the course of adjustment after a transient applied during contraction is characterized by a Voigt-model with retardation times which extend over a smaller interval than in the resting fibre.

During contraction *dynamic elastic and viscous stiffness* referred to the same tension as in the resting fibre always exceed that of the resting fibre by approximately 100 per cent (frequency of vibration 25—150 c.p.s.). Static stiffness measured by the slope of the reversible release diagram from isometric contraction can be less during contraction than at rest (BUCHTHAL 1942). The distribution of retardation times in the spectrum for the resting and the contracted fibre helps to understand this difference between static and dynamic stiffness during contraction as compared with that in the resting fibre. With increasing load dynamic stiffness increases during contraction, but approaches rest at a high load. The *temperature dependence* of elastic stiffness during contraction exceeds that of the stiffness in the resting fibre; it amounts to 2.0 per cent increase when the temperature falls 1 degree C. Viscous stiffness varies only slightly more with the temperature in the contracted fibre than at rest (2.2 per cent per °C.).

The dependence of stiffness on the amplitude of vibration is considerably less in the contracted fibre than at rest. It amounts to one fifth of the maximal value found in the resting fibre and, in contrast to what is the case at rest, in the contracted state it does not vary significantly with the load. The decrease in the amplitude dependence of the stiffness during contraction is considered a sign of the shortening of slack minute structural elements, which thereby become aligned. Therefore, the distribution of tension in the contracted fibre is more homogeneous than at rest. An increase in mechanical anisotropy at the level of tetanic contraction is also indicated by the change in the torsional modulus which decreases as compared with the longitudinal modulus (Sten-Knudsen 1950).

Both vibrational experiments and transients applied at different times after stimulation show that stiffness develops faster than tension and shortening. This initial course of stiffness is interpreted as being due to the disappearance of slack by the fast contraction of unloaded chains. Thereby more and more elements contribute to the external stiffness and always with a finite initial stiffness. The fact that stiffness does not continue to rise with the further development of tension or shortening, but passes a maximal value early in the course of contraction is explained by a yielding in the texture which occurs when the internal tension passes a critical value. Direct signs of this "give" in the structure have been observed (1) when the fibre is stretched during contraction, (2) in the development of the vibrational stiffness on the tetanic level of an isometric contraction, and (3) in the decrease of the contraction tension when the vibrational amplitude exceeds a critical value (4 per cent of the equilibrium length, peak to peak). Therefore, the maximum in stiffness can hardly be considered a suitable expression of a *maximum intensity* of activation, which exists in the initial stage of the contraction.

The *shortening velocity* of the isolated fibre decreases with increasing load according to a hyperbolic function and follows essentially Hill's equation (1938), but with different values for the constants a and b as compared with those found for whole muscle. These constants vary both with temperature and with the initial mechanical conditions for the contraction. If the temperature rises from 0° to 25° C., the velocity increases 4—8 times according to the initial value of the shortening velocity. As was the case with shortening, shortening velocity adjusts itself with a time delay to changes in the temperature of the surrounding medium.

The non-uniform state of stretch in whole muscle can account quantitatively for the differences in the values for the constants a and b found in the fibre and the whole muscle.

The relation between shortening velocity and load is valid even when changes in load are introduced before or during shortening. This is demonstrated by quick loadings applied at different times after the stimulus during the course of a twitch.

Tension in isometric contraction develops faster than shortening under isotonic conditions. In agreement with Hill (1949 d) this difference is explained by the effect of a passive element acting in series with the contractile substance. The mechanical reaction of this element as calculated from the force-velocity relation as compared with its reaction at transient loadings indicates that *viscous properties* dominate this element in the initial phase of contraction. Hitherto, this element was considered to correspond practically to an undamped elasticity (Hill 1949 d, 1950 b). The finding of a visco-elastic element acting in series with the contractile elements makes it impossible to determine the internal tension (P_i) at the peak of tension or shortening in a twitch. In the conception of minute structure arrived at in the present paper the properties of the series element are attributed partly to the elasticity of the contractile substance, and partly to the external effects of transitions in the texture subsequent to a change in load or to activation.

In spite of the identity of the initial shortening velocity in a twitch and in a tetanic contraction, the maximal shortening in a *twitch* amounts to only half the shortening attained during tetanic contraction. In contrast to the assumption that contraction also initially is maximal in a twitch and that shortening here is less because relaxation enters before the tetanic level is reached (Hill 1949 d), the present experimental findings are interpreted by assuming that contraction develops approximately proportionally to time and that relaxation enters about simultaneously with contraction. The gradual development of contraction is reflected in the course of shortening with time. Thus, large loads will inhibit the development of contraction (= decreased shortening velocity) and high temperature will facilitate contraction (= increased shortening velocity). A single stimulus is considered to represent a limited possibility of activation (= shortening). This assumption is supported by experiments in which a transient load is applied to the fibre after the latent period for an interval of time which corresponds to half the time necessary to reach the peak of shortening in an isotonic twitch (0° C.). While the load acts on the fibre, the course of shortening is interrupted, but continues *displaced in time* after the load again is removed, as if the stimulus had been given essentially later ("storing" of activation). Furthermore, the limited possibility of activation inherent in each stimulus is indicated by experiments in which twin stimuli are applied within the latency period. As is well-known from experiments on whole muscle, thereby a summation is caused of the effect of the second stimulus which is displaced in time. The resulting shortening attains its maximum in the middle of the relaxation period of the twitch which is elicited by the first stimulus. This effect is studied under isotonic conditions at a low load and thus cannot be explained by the delaying influence of a series element. The evidence has been mentioned above which indicates that the course of stiffness can hardly *prove* an initial maximum intensity of contraction. Moreover, the time course of initial heat production (Hill 1950 c) is not inconsistent with the assumption of a gradual activation during the development of the contraction. Heat of activation is supposed to arise from the shortening of slack minute structural elements, i. e. a heat production which externally will be associated with an increase neither in tension nor in shortening. The delayed development of heat of activation at high loads (Hill 1950 c) could correspond to an alignment of these slack elements.

Relaxation after the cessation of stimulation is interpreted as a gradual desactivation. A transient change in load applied to the resting fibre, which has the same magnitude as the tension developed in contraction produces a change in length different in type and of much higher velocity than the elongation which is associated with the desactivation after the stimulation is interrupted.

As a function of load, the maximal *relaxation* velocity determined after a tetanic contraction under isotonic conditions has a maximum. At the load at which this maximum is attained, the relaxation velocity is of approximately the same order of magnitude as the shortening velocity. The relaxation velocity varies over a large range of shortening about proportionally to shortening, but decreases with increasing duration of contraction. *Fatigue* depresses both the shortening and the relaxation velocity to a much higher degree than it reduces the shortening velocity.

At the peak of external shortening (e. g. in a twitch) there is equilibrium between a finite shortening velocity and a finite relaxation velocity. This interpretation is supported by the correlation which under all conditions examined was found to exist between shortening velocity and relaxation velocity on the one hand and the ratio between shortening in a twitch and in a tetanic contraction on the other. Independent of load, temperature, and degree of fatigue, the shortening in a twitch can be predicted from the shortening velocity, the relaxation velocity, and the shortening in a tetanic contraction. That a high shortening velocity facilitates the shortening in a twitch while a high relaxation velocity has the opposite effect, is likewise seen from the paradoxical variation with temperature which can be observed for the shortening in a twitch. While tetanic shortening increases with temperature, shortening in a twitch either decreases or changes insignificantly with rising temperature. This finding can be explained by the 3—4 times higher temperature coefficient of the relaxation velocity as compared with that of the shortening velocity.

Active and passive relaxation are discussed and it is concluded that mechanical investigations can hardly give a pertinent contribution to the understanding of this problem. However, in view of the conception developed in the last part of this paper for the description of the process of contraction, the problem as such no longer seems to be meaningful.

A comparison of the *net work* produced by the muscle fibre during contraction from different initial conditions shows that the largest amount of work is liberated in isotonic contraction at an initial load of 0.6 to 0.7 P_0. This load corresponds to about 100 per cent elongation in the resting fibre. The maximum amount of work produced in an isometric release contraction with a release velocity of 0.2 L_0[1] per second is found at an initial load of 0.3 P_0, corresponding to 80 per cent of stretch. The amount of work produced decreases with increasing velocity of release. The difference between eccentric (negative) and concentric (positive) work is derived from the differences between the length-tension relation for stretch during contraction and afterload contraction. The static length-tension diagram of the former exceeds slightly that of an isometrically contracted fibre (Buchthal 1942) and is much higher than that of isotonic or afterload contractions. The diffe-

[1] L_0 = equilibrium length.

rence is explained by the stabilization in the texture which characterizes an isometric contraction (elastic locking). An attempt is made to give a quantitative estimate of the internal resistance produced in the development of contraction.

As a function of the initial load the *mean rate of work production*, defined as the total amount of work divided by the time during which it is performed, has a maximum at 0.2 to 0.4 P_0. The highest rate was observed in isotonic contraction and amounted to 0.3 $P_0 \times L_0$ per second (0° C.). The relative rate of work production of the isolated fibre exceeds considerably that of the corresponding whole muscle.

Part IV.

Minute structure and interpretation of mechanical properties.

1. Review of experiments on direct minute structure analysis.

Before an attempt is made to interpret the mechanical investigations on muscle fibres in terms of conceptions which have been developed for the understanding of the rheology of rubber-like substances and high polymers, a short review is given of the results obtained with other methods of minute structural analysis. These results must form the basis of an estimation of the level in the structure at which the deformations can be assumed to occur.

Examination of the isolated living fibre with the *ordinary microscope* indicates that apart from the cross striations, there is a longitudinal orientation, i. e. a fibrillar structure with a diameter of 1—2 μ (Buchthal *et al.* 1936). In electron microscopy which implies the use of dehydrated material, the diameter of these fibrils was found to vary between 0.2—3.2 μ, with a maximum occurrence of fibrils with a diameter of 1 μ (Draper and Hodge 1949). These fibrils are made up of fine threads, *protein filaments*, the diameter of which varies according to the different investigators, but is of the order of magnitude of 100—160 Å. Owing to the technique of preparation and maceration the length of these filaments, as they appear in the preparations for the electron microscope, varies considerably. However, in view of the fact that fragments with a length of 2—3 μ are frequently met with, the assumption seems justified that the filaments pass uninterrupted through one or more compartments (Hall *et al.* 1946, Draper and Hodge 1949, Rozsa *et al.* 1950).

The protein filaments show fine transverse lines, with a periodicity of 250—400 Å comparable to that found in collagen and nerve fibrils. This pattern occurs in the filaments both in the A and in the I substance. *There are no indications of an increased orientation of the filament in the anisotropic substance.* Possibly the region between two of these fine stripes can be considered the fundamental functional unit of the fibre, but the detailed structure of this region, the resolving of which approaches the borders of the electron microscope, is mostly a matter for speculation. Draper and Hodge (1949) assume it to be made up of at least 3 macromolecules of different structure arranged in a definite pattern. Since the fine stripes often disappear during the preparation, Rozsa *et al.* (1950) considered them to be caused by a material which periodically is glued to the filament, and which can be washed off. It also seems wise to be cautious in accepting the assumption that the filaments represent tubular structures filled with some fluid material. Obviously, the preparative treatment of the fibre can give rise to a number of artifacts and Rozsa *et al.* did not find any indications of this tubular structure. As mentioned above, for the time being electron microscopical analysis does not give any pertinent information concerning changes in structure accompanying the deformation occurring with stretch and during contraction. On the other hand, the results from the analysis with the electron microscope make it necessary to revise the interpretation of measurements of birefringence in the muscle fibre.

By immersing the fibre in substances with different refractive indices it has been established that birefringence in the muscle fibre is the result of a form (rod) component and a crystalline component (Stübel 1923, Noll and Weber 1934, Weber 1934 a, b). This differentiation is only possible on fixed fibres. In the living muscle fibre of the frog the resulting birefringence amounts to $2.0 \times 10^{-3} \pm 0.05 \times 10^{-3}$ (Buchthal and Knappeis 1938, Knappeis 1948) and varies 1 per cent per 10 per cent of stretch. In fixed mammalian fibres Fischer (1947) found a 2—3 times larger effect of stretch on birefringence. Provided that the results from fixed fibres can be applied to the living fibre, the crystalline birefringence increases about as much with stretch as the form birefringence. However, it is essential to point out that the increase in birefringence with stretch under all circumstances is small in muscle as compared with caoutchouc and actomyosin threads.

The approximately parallel longitudinal orientation of protein filaments revealed by the electron microscope would be sufficient as such to account for the degree of birefringence found in the muscle fibre. However, considering that there are no signs of differences in orientation in the protein filaments corresponding to the anisotropic and isotropic segments, and in view of the fact that the filaments pass uninterrupted through one or more compartments, the origin of the resulting birefringence must be reconsidered. It may be looked for either in a substance with negative birefringence in the I segment which compensates for the positive birefringence of the fibril itself, or in positive birefringent substances surrounding the fibrils in the anisotropic segments. The former assumption is supported by the histo-chemical finding of lipoid material in the I layer (Dempsey *et al.* 1946) and by the extraction of a material with negative birefringence from muscle (Matoltsi and Gerendás 1947). However, the question seems far from settled and, as pointed out by Draper and Hodge (1949), one might just as well assume the filaments throughout their whole length to be covered with a substance the negative birefringence of which could compensate their positive birefringence. Thereby, the I substance would appear isotropic and the substance surrounding the fibrils in the A segments might account alone for the resulting positive birefringence.

The amount of material present in the muscle fibre apart from the filaments is assumed to be localized essentially in the A segment, the space in the isotropic part being very restricted. Assuming this to be a well established fact it is of interest to note the work of Casparsson and Thorell (1942), whose findings indicate that nucleotide is localized in the I segments. During contraction or contracture the anisotropic substance is assumed to migrate towards the I segment. However, these assumptions do not give a quantitative explanation of the systematic changes found in the distribution of the length of the A and I substance during isometric and isotonic contraction and during stretch (Buchthal *et al.* 1936, Buchthal and Knappeis 1943).

In isotonic contraction of whole muscle birefringence decreases (Fischer 1936, 1944, 1947). In isometric contraction the results obtained are somewhat conflicting. Von Muralt (1932, 1934) has found a slight negative fluctuation with two peaks, while Bozler and Cottrell (1937) found a decrease, an increase, or no change at all depending on the initial tension. Obviously, the complicated mechanical changes accompanying isometric contraction in whole muscle make the interpretation of these findings rather difficult. In the isolated fibre a tetanic isometric contraction is followed by a decrease in birefringence (10—20 per cent, Buchthal and Knappeis 1938). The decrease is not present if a contraction is released in a fibre poisoned with monoiodoacetic acid. It is found also in contractions released by minute amounts of adenosine triphosphate, but is absent when contraction is released by inorganic triphosphate (Buchthal *et al.* 1944b). For technical reasons no information is available as yet concerning the changes *during* isometric or isotonic contraction of the isolated fibre.

The evidence hitherto available indicates that the deformations caused by stretch or contraction must occur at the molecular level of the structure.

X-ray diffraction analysis which has contributed important results to the understanding of protein structure has been applied to myosin, muscle, and similar fibrous structures (Böhm 1931, Astbury 1931, 1936, Böhm and Weber 1933). It has revealed that there is a *fibre diagram* both in the living and in the fixed and dried muscle. These fibres contain a more or less irregular mass of protein chains which are so perfectly arranged in the crystalline protein molecule, and fibrous substances may be compared with a kind of "oakum of protein strands" (Bragg 1948). Owing to the rather imperfect arrangements of molecular fragments they give more diffuse X-ray diffraction effects and must be considered "unsatisfactory witnesses" (Bragg 1948). In analogy to findings on other fibrous proteins, especially keratin and myosin, Astbury (review 1947) has suggested a way in which polypeptide chains could be folded, and assumed the presence of chains also in muscle which occur in a short (α) and a long (β) modification. However, this is an analogy and the transformation from an α to a β-form by stretch has not hitherto been found in *living* muscle. Only in dried muscles which were reimmersed and stretched, spacings corresponding to a longer modification have been demonstrated.

The reproducible spacing corresponding to the intramolecular foldings is 5.1 Å, while a spacing of 10—11 Å is considered to indicate a periodicity in the transverse direction, i. e. corresponding to the mean distance *between* the molecules. Recent investigations have shown that the 1.5 Å reflexion from planes perpendicular to the fibre axis which characterizes a number of polypeptide chains (PERUTZ 1951) also occurred in dried muscle (HUXLEY and PERUTZ 1951). It was present in the relaxed, stretched, and contracted state. These subdivisions are considered to indicate a spacing corresponding to the repeat of the amino acid residues along the polypeptide chains and correspond to the helix with 3.7 residues per turn suggested by PAULING *et al.* (1951).

In an important series of papers which has appeared very recently PAULING and COREY (1951) have treated the fundamental structure of proteins. They suggest two main configurations of polypeptide chains, viz. the α helix with 3.7 residues per turn and the pleated sheet consisting of a layer of chains with the same orientation. According to their assumptions the α helix is present in α keratin and α myosin, while the pleated sheet occurs in β keratin and β myosin.

PAULING and COREY (1951 a) characterize contraction of muscle by the transition from a pleated sheet configuration to layers of packed cylindrical helices subsequent to the disrupture of a number of the hydrogen bonds. Provided that the mechanical forces between larger units are of a similar nature as those acting between the individual chains, an assumption which seems reasonable, the conception of structural changes given by PAULING and COREY can account a. o. for the decrease in transverse forces that occurs in a tetanic contraction as indicated by the changes in the torsional modulus mentioned above (p. 205).

The estimations of mechanical tension and heat production made on the basis of the structural data are difficult to evaluate. However, there seems to be a discrepancy between the calculated values for heat and for force developed by the muscle. Thus, a calculated tension of 1.53 kg per cm^2 per g. muscle and a calculated shortening of 54 per cent result in a work of 0.018 cal per g. muscle and not in a work of 0.18 cal per g. muscle, the figure given by PAULING and COREY. The reason for this discrepancy is not obvious from the assumptions made and the calculations given by the authors. However, a value of 0.018 cal per g. muscle would be in good agreement with the experimental values for the maximum work which can be obtained in a tetanic contraction of a muscle fibre (0.036 cal per g. muscle).

X-ray diffraction of living muscle showed clear signs of an *incomplete* longitudinal molecular orientation within the filament. Stretch caused an improvement of this orientation. In the evaluation of results from X-ray diffraction it must be recognized that essential deformations of the structure may be applied without evoking corresponding changes in the pattern. Thus, the diffraction pattern of stretched hair which was allowed to shorten 20 per cent, remained unaltered with respect to spacing and signs of different orientation. The pattern in an isotonically contracted smooth muscle (mytilus, shortening 50 per cent) showed no deviation from the resting muscle, while iodoacetic acid contracture in frog's sartorius was accompanied by an increase in orientation and in scattering near the centre of the diagram. That the increase in orientation is moderate cannot be surprising in view of the relatively high degree of orientation present already in the resting muscle. The increase in scattering around the primary spot of the diagram is interpreted as being caused by the formation of amorphous irregular aggregates, which bring about certain distortions of the filaments. An isotonic iodoacetic acid contracture is associated with scattering to larger angles. Investigations of the normal type of contraction in living fibres with a proper technique are still scarce.

Optical methods, other than measurements of birefringence, have been applied to the living muscle fibre and have given information about structural properties and their changes by deformations. *Light-transparency* is only to a minor degree caused by true absorption. The fibre acts as a scattering body and absorption is 20—40 times less than the decrease in the light intensity of the primary ray caused by the muscle fibre. The specific absorption remained unaltered by stretch and increased by 0.8 per cent in the isometric twitch. The transparency decreases both during stretch and isometric contraction corresponding to an increase in scattering. The close packing of minute structural elements during contraction is assumed to cause light-interference of neighbouring rod-shaped particles (*increased aggregation*). These results were interpreted as an *improvement* in minute structural orientation which accompanies both stretch and contraction (Buchthal *et al.* 1939). A transient *increase* in transparency has been found at an early time after stimulation, simultaneously with the latency relaxation (D. K. Hill 1949). This increase is an indication of a decrease in true absorption and does not occur at quick stretch of other highly elastic substances.

The cross striations of the fibre give rise to a diffraction pattern (Ranvier 1874, Sandow 1936, Buchthal and Knappeis 1940). Even with a beam which is circular in cross section, the spectra do not form sharply limited round spots as is the case in a Rowland grating. The images of 0. to IV. order have no sharp limit and they are elongated in the vertical direction. These "tails" indicate the presence of diffraction phenomena in the longitudinal structures of the fibre. The intensity maxima which have been observed in the tails indicate a periodicity in these longitudinal structures. The histological correlate is the grouping of fibrils in columns of 5—7 μ in diameter (fig. 1). The tail which has a fan-like spreading in the resting fibre, is closed to a pointed narrow stripe both by stretch and by contraction. This also indicates an improvement of the parallel orientation by stretch and contraction (Buchthal and Knappeis 1940).

Although many important details of minute structure in the muscle fibre still remain unrevealed, there are a number of common trends which have come out from electron microscopical, X-ray, and optical analysis. The muscle fibre has a relatively good, but by no means complete longitudinal orientation. This orientation is improved by stretch and by contraction. The mechanical deformations must mainly be looked for on the molecular level. Both X-ray diffraction and transparency measurements give indications of an increased aggregation of the minute structure in contraction.

2. Minute structural interpretation of mechanical properties.

In the present investigation of the structural elements of striated muscle accessible in a living state we have mainly dealt with the isolated fibre, whose mechanical reactions are considered to be the nearest expression of the minute structure. The parallelized organization existing for the fibres of a muscle is repeated in its fibrils and protein filaments. Therefore, after a certain degree of adjustment has been obtained, equivalence can be assumed in the mechanical reactions of the fibre and its filaments. The minute structural investigations referred to in the preceding section have revealed that on the molecular level of the fibre structure we might also reckon with an orientation, though incomplete, nevertheless predominantly along the longitudinal axis of the fibre. The deformation obtained by stretch or contraction must be attributed to changes in the structural proteins, which consist of long molecular chains with a high molecular weight ($1—17 \times 10^6$, Weber 1934 b, Bergold 1946). As is the case with other high polymers it is improbable that these long chains exist as fixed units. The incomplete orientation will facilitate the interaction between adjacent units, and thermal agitation will cause local deformations which are distributed at random in time and space. In order to explain the large elastic extensibility (change in length 1 : 4) it is necessary to look for a minute structural mechanism dealing with forces which act over a large distance, i. e. *long range forces* as in high polymeric substances.

When the properties of the fibre are looked upon in a general way their complex mechanical reactions found under various conditions display both phenomena which occur quickly and reactions whose adjustment takes a considerable time. The adjustment can be described by a distribution of retardation times and/or relaxation times in a mechanical equivalent system.

The kinetic theory of rubber-like substances.

At an early state of the development of high polymer physics mechanical properties of highly elastic substances, especially rubber, have been explained by assuming the presence of loosely curled chain molecules (Ostwald 1926). A few years later Busse (1932) clearly defined the properties which characterize the minute structure of a highly elastic material. Rubber is assumed to be built up from chain molecules of long length. Their primary valency linkages are considered to be strong enough to resist the tension when deformed. Between the adjacent molecules secondary linkages are assumed to exist which are broken and reformed by thermal agitation and thus allow movement of the chains in relation to each other. Moreover, a minor number of main-valency transversal linkages are supposed to be present in the reversibly elastic structure. This interlocking forms a more or less permanent pattern of a three-dimensional network. According to the kinetic theory (Meyer *et al.* 1932, Wall 1942, Treloar 1943, 1949, 1951), the individual links of the chains have a relative freedom of motion. Therefore, the chain molecules can assume a large variety of different configurations, each having in principle the same probability at zero load. The mechanical forces arise from the thermal movements, which cause different states of contraction by curling of the molecular chain as a whole. The length of the chain or its degree of orientation is determined by the ratio between the disorganizing thermal forces and the external aligning forces acting on the chain. If the chains with respect to their terminals have a certain degree of orientation, an internal curling up will result in an external shortening of the substance in the direction of its orientation and it will display elastic properties. Thus, according to the kinetic theory, shortening (e. g. as it occurs in rubber with an increase in temperature) is considered to be caused by a change in the thermo-kinetic conditions. It is an essential consequence of the kinetic theory that the elastic tension in a highly elastic substance which is stretched to a given length increases proportionally to the absolute temperature.

With the development of the theory for the mechanical (thermoelastic) properties of highly elastic materials corresponding kinetic considerations were applied to biological substances (Meyer and Ferri 1936, Wöhlisch 1939).

The anomalous behaviour of elastic tension with temperature, which in muscle as in rubber at constant length shows increasing tension with rising temperature, the finding of delayed elasticity and the demonstration of phenomena such as yielding, elastic locking, and thixotropy indicate that also in muscle there is an organization of minute structural elements in a network, a *texture* which is similar to that assumed for other high polymers. This assumption is supported by the demonstration of variable cross-linkages in measurements of torsional elasticity and its variation during stretch and contraction (Sten-Knudsen 1950). However, although disrupture and reformation of points of entanglement between minute structural elements of the texture can explain part of the mechanical reactions of the muscle fibre, by no means can it account for all their peculiarities. Changes in the textural pattern implying the occurrence of slack chains, can explain the differences between isotonic and isometric contraction (locking), the amplitude dependence of dynamic elasticity, the maximum in stiffness which occurs in an early phase of contraction, and finally the finding of thixotropy in the mechanical reaction of the fibre.

The kinetic theory can account satisfactorily for the static properties of rubber. However, the S-shaped length-tension diagram which can be expected in a substance with kinetic elasticity and which in fact is found, does not apply to the resting muscle fibre. The deviation occurs especially at small degrees of stretch where an increase in length *in the muscle fibre* is associated with a low gradient of tension, while the gradient is high in the curve which is determined by kinetic elasticity. In the latter the initial stiffness, i. e. the stress gradient, exceeds that present at a moderate load. Although in the case of e. g. rubber this deviation could be explained on the basis of the work performed in order to attain the degree of preorientation which in muscle already exists at zero load, there are, apart from orientation, other quantitative differences in the mechanical reaction between muscle and rubber:

The proportionality between static tension and absolute temperature (T) characterizing orientated rubber, which as mentioned is a direct consequence of the kinetic theory, does not apply to the muscle fibre. The temperature coefficient of the isolated muscle fibre amounts at most to only one third of a kinetically caused temperature dependence (Buchthal *et al.* 1944a). This is in conflict with Meyer and Picken's results (1937) from experiments on whole muscle. The higher temperature coefficient of the "static" tension which even exceeds that corresponding to a proportionality with absolute temperature might be explained by the greater difficulty in attaining equilibrium of temperature and mechanical adjustment of the structure in a whole muscle.

Eyring and Tobolsky's theory.

The kinetic theory in its simplest formulation, however, met rather early with difficulties. Although this theory can account for the static properties of rubber, it is unable to explain the viscous effects, such as the slow changes in length observed at constant load, delayed elasticity, and the decrease in tension at constant stretch. For an explanation of these phenomena, Tobolsky and Eyring (1943) and Tobolsky *et al.* (1943) suggested that the chain molecules of rubber have cross-linkages with a relatively low energy content. These cross-linkages are broken and reformed by thermal agitation. Thereby flow properties of the substance will emerge, adjacent molecules continuously changing position in relation to each other. A flow unit moves from one position of equilibrium to another by overcoming a *potential barrier*, the energy necessary being derived from thermal agitation. The shape and position of the potential barrier changes slightly with the external load. Certain points of entanglement will resist and not be disrupted, then only displaying crystalline elasticity, while others will give and yield in steps. This results in a visco-elastic reaction of the material.

On the basis of these reaction-kinetic considerations Eyring *et al.*[1] have introduced the 3-element model consisting of an elasticity shunted by a generalized Maxwell-element to describe the mechanical behaviour of rubber and certain textile fibres. Also in cellulose fibres the stress-relaxation can be adequately described by this theory (Andersen 1951). The elasticity of the Maxwell-element has linear properties while the viscosity is non-linear and its resistance determined by the following equation:

$$\sinh r \cdot \sigma = r \cdot \eta \frac{d\gamma}{dt}, \tag{63}$$

[1] Halsey, White, and Eyring 1945, Halsey and Eyring 1945, Eyring and Halsey 1946, Stein, Halsey, and Eyring 1946, Halsey and Eyring 1946a, Holland, Halsey, and Eyring 1946, Reichardt and Eyring 1946.

where σ denotes the resistance, $\frac{d\gamma}{dt}$ the velocity of flow, η corresponds to the viscosity, and r is a constant. However, the mechanical reaction of wool fibres could not be satisfactorily described on the basis of EYRING's simple 3-element model (HALSEY and EYRING 1946b), and it was necessary to introduce non-linear elasticities in this model, so that its correlation to the basic minute structural reaction becomes extremely complex. Also in the case of muscle this type of theory seems hardly adequate to describe the mechanical reactions.

As regards *dynamic mechanical properties* of muscle they display essential differences from rubber as well. For example the difference between static and dynamic elasticity in the muscle fibre exceeds considerably that found in rubber. In the former the dynamic stiffness exceeds the static by 300—500 per cent. In normally and under-vulcanized rubber which we have examined under the same conditions as the muscle fibres, the dynamic elasticity exceeds the static on an average by 50 per cent and at most by 100 per cent. Therefore, the mechanical reactions of the muscle fibre are dominated to a higher degree by retardation phenomena than is the case in rubber. The large difference between static and dynamic elasticity found in the muscle fibre indicates that time enters as an essential factor in the length-tension relation. The delay in time corresponds to the presence of a viscous component, though it does not behave as a classic Newtonian viscosity.

In search of a cause of the non-Newtonian delay one might think of changes in the degree of hydration of the elastic minute structural elements. The liquid which surrounds and imbibes these elements might alter their mechanical dimensions owing to differences in the pressure gradient which might arise from mechanical deformations. Although an assumption of this type might seem near at hand when discussing a cellular structure, it seems less probable in the case of the muscle fibre. The dimensions of the elastic filaments are so small that the time necessary for diffusion would be extremely short. Thus, possible fluid displacements will hardly influence to a measurable degree the variations of tension with time which extend over seconds to minutes.

The slow adjustment to a new stationary state after a change in length indicates that the structural changes do not occur instantaneously but with a certain limited velocity. As mentioned above, this flow is considered to be due to a discontinuous interaction between the molecular chains thereby accounting for the variations of viscosity under different conditions. A Newtonian viscosity is independent of the load and its resistance varies proportionally to the velocity of deformation. In a muscle fibre the viscous resistance increased with increasing load and/or degree of orientation. To an essentially lesser degree the same was the case both in vulcanized and under-vulcanized rubber. The viscous reaction of the muscle fibre is attributed chiefly to properties of the texture in which the minute structural elements are organized, i. e. it is interpreted as a structural viscosity caused by a delayed adjustment to altered mechanical conditions. Its increase with increasing degree of stretch is interpreted in the following way: The orientation of the texture increases with increasing load. With a small degree of orientation disrupture of a point of entanglement will cause a high increase in length while at high degrees of stretch the resulting increase in length will be only slight. Therefore, more and more points of entanglement will have to be broken to produce a given deformation with increasing load, corresponding to an increase in viscosity. This effect will be further enhanced if the number of points of entanglement increases with increasing elongation.

Granted that curled elements may qualitatively account for the length-tension relation, nevertheless the stiffness-tension relation, the variation of the viscous resistance, and the orientation present in the muscle fibre already at equilibrium length imply that the theories developed for other highly elastic substances cannot be accepted as a basis of the description of the mechanical reaction of the muscle fibre. The simple kinetic theory as well as EYRING and TOBOLSKY's transition theory refer deformations almost exclusively to the textural pattern of the substance. In view of the fact that the orientation in the muscle fibre is altered only insignificantly by stretch it seems reasonable *that the changes in length accompanying stretch and contraction are attributed to alterations in the length of the chain molecules and not to the degree of orientation*. Therefore, transitions between different modifications will have to occur within the polymerized molecule itself. In previous investigations the dependence of dynamic stiffness on frequency, temperature, and load in experiments performed at constant mean length of the muscle fibre led to the assumption that the tension causes altered chemical states of linkage *within* the minute structural element (Buchthal *et al.* 1944 a). The present experimental material has supported this assump-

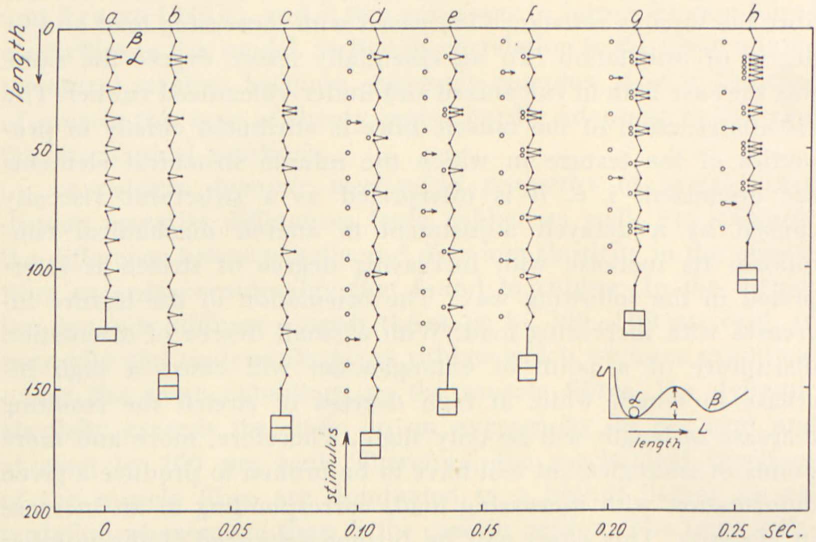


Fig. 91. Schematic representation of the transmutation theory.

a. Transmutation chain at a low load. The number of α- and β-links are approximately equal.

b. Transmutation chain during the adjustment to a higher load. The number of β-links has increased.

c. and *d.* Further developing of the adjustment.

d.—*h.* Contraction of a transmutation chain.

d. The chain just after stimulation. The fixating agent has appeared and has fixated α-links.

e. The fixation brings about an increased number of $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$ transmutations, i. e. shortening. Fixation proceeds.

f.—*h.* Further development of shortening and fixation.

abscissa: time in sec.

ordinate: length in per cent of L_0.

Inset on the right: potential barrier with two equilibrium positions α and β.

ordinate: potential energy U.

abscissa: length L.

tion and enabled us to extend the conception of chains with transmuting links as a basic element of the structure for an explanation of both visco-elastic properties and contractility. Recently reversible changes in the chemical composition induced by alterations of the load have been demonstrated chemically. Thus, Mochulsky and Tobolsky (1948) have produced evidence that the "cold flow" of polysulfide rubbers is chemical rather than physical in nature. The chemical reaction is considered an intermolecular exchange reaction between a terminal mercaptan group of one chain and a disulfide linkage of an adjacent chain.

It seems to us therefore well motivated to study the quantitative properties of a molecular chain within which a transmutation occurs between states of different length, in such a way that the resulting length of the chain is determined by the ratio between the probabilities of the occurrence of short and long modifications. By this analysis an attempt is made to investigate to what extent a relatively simple model conception can account for complex mechanical reactions which cannot be attributed to the phenomena of adjustment in the texture. Moreover, it turns out that a possibility arises to consider in a new light the minute structural changes concomitant with contraction thereby accounting for the degree of shortening, the shortening velocity, and the relaxation. H. H. Weber (1934a) described delayed elasticity in myosin threads qualitatively by assuming a transformation between linkages of different lengths within the molecule. In analogy to results obtained from the X-ray diffraction analysis of keratin and myosin Astbury (1936, 1947) suggested also in the case of muscle the existence of two different linkages, a long one and a short one, the former arising at a high degree of stretch (cf. p. 223). On the basis of Astbury and Bell's (1941) findings in keratin Speakman and Peters (1948) calculated the static length-tension diagram of wool fibres. Similar considerations provided the starting point for the quantitative treatment given in the following, although no other structural assumptions are implied than two different modifications within the protein molecule[1].

The single transmutation chain.

The contractile molecular chains are assumed to consist of a large number of links occurring in two stable modifications,

[1] Burte and Halsey (1947) have derived both static and dynamic properties for this two-position model. They find the model well suited for dealing with substances of the nylon-rubber-wool type. Their paper contains some of the results which we have obtained independently. In this connection we should like to emphasize the importance which we ascribe to cross-linkages between the minute structural elements e. g. for the understanding of thixotropy. Burte and Halsey explain thixotropy by means of a three-position model.

a short one (α) and a long one (β). The difference in length is supposed to arise either from the size of the angle formed by adjacent parts of the molecule or from the change in orientation of cyclic rings building up the links (BAILEY). The rings can alternate in their orientation either longitudinally (β) in the direction of the axis of the chain molecule or transversely to it (α) (fig. 1, cyclic units). Transmutation from the one linkage to the other can be described by the transition over a potential barrier in passing from one potential minimum to another.

The single links of a molecular chain are exposed to thermal bombardments displaying a frequency of approximately 10^{13} per sec. This figure is based on the assumption that the majority of thermal encounterings is caused by water molecules which form the main component of the muscle tissue. As shown by HILL and KUPALOV (1930), water occurs only to a minor degree in a bound state. The frequency of thermal collisions (ν) is determined from the following formula:

$$\nu = \frac{c}{1000} \cdot N \cdot 2\pi r \cdot l \cdot \sqrt{\frac{kT}{2\pi m_{H_2O}}} \tag{64}$$

where c denotes the concentration of bombarding molecules, $N = 6 \cdot 10^{23}$ Avagadro's number, r and l the radius and length of the transmuting element in the chain molecule, $\sqrt{\frac{kT}{2\pi m_{H_2O}}}$ the mean velocity of water molecules at temperature T, and m_{H_2O} the mass of the water molecule. The length and the radius of the elements are assumed to be 20 and 3 Å respectively.

A small part of the collisions are assumed to have sufficient energy ($\geq$ the activation energy for the transmutation) to release a transmution from one modification to another ($\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ or $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$). The fact that not all thermal encounterings cause a transmutation is due partly to the distribution with regard to the direction of bombardment, partly to the energy distribution of the colliding particles, i. e. the Maxwell distribution corresponding to the temperature in question. The larger the energy necessary for transmutation, the less probable it will be. The probability that a thermal collision has an energy exceeding the temperature energy, kT, according to the Maxwell distribution is

57 per cent. The probability of an energy $> 4\,kT$ is 4.6 per cent and the probability of an energy $> 9\,kT$ is 0.044 per cent. The activation energy in the usual chemical reactions is of the order of magnitude of one electron volt. The temperature dependence of the mechanical reaction of the muscle fibre found from the displacement of the boundaries of the spectrum of retardation times (fig. 26) gives an equivalent activation energy of 0.6 eV. In this estimation we have considered mainly the shortest retardation times which can be expected to be an expression of processes within the molecular chains. The probability that the energy of the colliding particle will exceed 0.6 eV ($> 25\,kT$) at 0° C. is 8×10^{-11}.

The transmutations will cause a continuous alternation between the two modifications of the links in the molecule. However, apart from the energy of activation derived from thermal movements, an additional prerequisite for a transmutation to occur is that there are suitable possibilities for it in space.

According to EYRING's viscosity theory (cf. EYRING and POWELL 1944) the probability of transmutation is relatively small when the molecular packing is tight. Thereby the transmutation frequencies for both $\alpha \to \beta$ and $\beta \to \alpha$ is reduced and there will be a spectrum of activation energies instead of a single one.

The energy necessary to cause transmutation apart from thermal agitation is derived from the external load which acts on the molecular chain. In order to keep equilibrium between the stress in the transmuting element and the external load, the length of the individual α and β linkages changes slightly with load.

Let us consider the potential barrier for the unloaded transmuting link as being only one-dimensional and determine the influence of the load on the activation energies of the system. The potential energy (U) is given by

$$U = U(L), \tag{65}$$

where L denotes the length of the link. As postulated above, U has two minima corresponding to the α and β modification and a maximum corresponding to the peak of the barrier. The barrier is not necessarily symmetrical. The activation energy for transmutation $\alpha \to \beta$ is

$$A_{\alpha \to \beta} = U(L_1) - U(L_\alpha) \tag{66}$$

and for transmutation $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$

$$A_{\beta \rightarrow \alpha} = U(L_1) - U(L_\beta), \tag{67}$$

where L_1 denotes the length corresponding to the peak of the potential barrier.

A load P is considered to cause a modification of the potential to

$$U_P(L) = U(L) - P \times L. \tag{68}$$

The maximum and minimum for this potential are determined by

$$\frac{dU_P}{dL} = 0, \text{ i.e. } \frac{dU}{dL} = P. \tag{69}$$

Therefore, at load P the length of the α and β modifications $L_\alpha(P)$ and $L_\beta(P)$ are determined by

$$\frac{dU}{dL} = P \quad \text{for} \quad L = L_\alpha(P) \quad \text{and} \quad L = L_\beta(P). \tag{70}$$

Also the maximum is displaced to a position $L_1(P)$ determined by

$$\frac{dU}{dL} = P \quad \text{for} \quad L = L_1(P).$$

If the load P exceeds the maximum gradient of $U(L)$ in the interval $(L_\alpha < L < L_1)$ only one modification can exist, viz. the long one.

According to the potential barrier indicated in fig. 91 (inset) we have

$$L_\alpha < L_\alpha(P) \leqq L_1(P) < L_1 \quad \text{and} \quad L_\beta(P) > L_\beta. \tag{71}$$

Therefore, the activation energies in the loaded state are:

$$A_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}(P) = U(L_1(P)) - U(L_\alpha(P)) - P \times (L_1(P) - L_\alpha(P)) \tag{72}$$

and

$$A_{\beta \rightarrow \alpha}(P) = U(L_1(P)) - U(L_\beta(P)) + P \times (L_\beta(P) - L_1(P)). \tag{73}$$

By its displacements of the equilibrium positions in both cases the load P causes a decrease in the thermal energy necessary to cause a transmutation (activation energy). In addition, for the transmutation $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ we have a decrease in activation energy corresponding to the work performed by the tension in surmounting the potential barrier. Conversely for the transmutation $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$ we have an increase in activation energy corresponding to the work to be performed against the load in surmounting the potential barrier.

The frequency of transmutation, $W_{\alpha\rightarrow\beta}(P)$ and $W_{\beta\rightarrow\alpha}(P)$, i. e. the probability per time unit of the transition from one modification to another is assumed to depend on the activation energy (A) in the same way as the reaction velocity of a monomolecular chemical reaction depends on the activation energy, i. e. through the van t'Hoff factor $e^{-\frac{A}{kT}}$ (Gibbs, Arrhenius). Here T represents the absolute temperature and k Boltzmann's constant. Hence, the frequencies with which the transmutation occurs, are:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} W_{\alpha\rightarrow\beta}(P) &= \nu_{\alpha\rightarrow\beta}(T,P)\cdot e^{-\frac{A_{\alpha\rightarrow\beta}(P)}{kT}} \\ W_{\beta\rightarrow\alpha}(P) &= \nu_{\beta\rightarrow\alpha}(T,P)\, e^{-\frac{A_{\beta\rightarrow\alpha}(P)}{kT}}. \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (74)$$

The factor $\nu\,(T,P)$ depends on the frequency of collisions, their spatial distribution, and the spatial possibilities for a transmutation to occur. It follows from the general formula for the dependence of activation energy on the load applied (72, 73) that a load P *increases* the transmutation frequency $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ partly because the load by its work facilitates the transmutation, partly because the displacement of the equilibrium positions by the load causes a decrease in activation energy. Conversely for the transmutation $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$ the load causes partly a decrease in the frequency of transmutation on account of the extra work necessary when a transmutation occurs against the load, partly an increase which again is due to the displacement of the equilibrium positions. In advance it is impossible to estimate the relative importance of the different factors for the transmutation frequency. Therefore, in order to be able to perform quantitative estimations, certain assumptions are necessary which, however, appear to be reasonable approximations. The potential $U(L)$ is assumed to have such a shape that the changes in length of the individual α and β link caused by the load and the decrease in activation energy, which arises from these changes, are of secondary importance.

Hence $U(L)$ must increase steeply from the α minimum to the peak of the potential and from the β minimum outwards so that the slope soon equals the load. This will certainly be fulfilled for loads P for which $P \times (L_\beta - L_\alpha)$ is small as compared with the activation energies. As will be shown below (p. 243), this inequality actually exists in the case of the transmutation chains of the muscle fibre. Here, at 0° C., an activation energy (A) of 0.6 eV (14 kcal per mole) corresponds to approximately 25 kT, i. e. 5—8 times the estimated maximum value of $P \times (L_\beta - L_\alpha)$.

With this assumption the activation energies (72, 73) will be:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} A_{\alpha\to\beta}(P) &= A_{\alpha\to\beta} - P \times \lambda_\alpha \\ A_{\beta\to\alpha}(P) &= A_{\beta\to\alpha} + P \times \lambda_\beta \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (75)$$

where

and

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \lambda_\alpha &= L_1 - L_\alpha \\ \lambda_\beta &= L_\beta - L_1 . \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (76)$$

Moreover, we assume that the proportionality factors $\nu_{\beta\to\alpha}$ and $\nu_{\alpha\to\beta}$ are identical and we disregard their possible dependence on the load.

Hence we get from (74) the following expressions for the frequency of transmutations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} W_{\alpha\to\beta}(P) &= \nu(T)\, e^{-\frac{A_{\alpha\to\beta} - P\lambda_\alpha}{kT}} \\ W_{\beta\to\alpha}(P) &= \nu(T)\, e^{-\frac{A_{\beta\to\alpha} + P\lambda_\beta}{kT}} . \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (77)$$

The small temperature dependence of the length of the muscle fibre makes it reasonable to assume that the activation energies $A_{\alpha\to\beta}$ and $A_{\beta\to\alpha}$ are equal. In the following they are denoted by A. Moreover we assume that the potential $U(L)$ is symmetrical,

i. e. $\lambda_\beta = \lambda_\alpha = \lambda$. In the approximation applied in the following calculations a possible asymmetry will be without importance. Thus:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} W_{\alpha\to\beta}(P) &= \nu(T)\, e^{-\frac{A}{kT}}\, e^{\frac{P\lambda}{kT}} \\ W_{\beta\to\alpha}(P) &= \nu(T)\, e^{-\frac{A}{kT}}\, e^{-\frac{P\lambda}{kT}} \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{78}$$

or by introducing

$$W = \nu(T)\, e^{-\frac{A}{kT}} \quad \text{and} \quad p = \frac{P\lambda}{kT}, \tag{79}$$

where p represents a quantity which is proportional to the load:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} W_{\alpha\to\beta}(P) &= We^{p} \\ W_{\beta\to\alpha}(P) &= We^{-p}. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{80}$$

Based on these assumptions, calculations can be performed regarding the mechanical behaviour of a chain with transmuting links of the type indicated above. Static and dynamic properties will be considered separately and at the end of every section a comparison will be given between theoretical results and experimental findings.

The static length-tension diagram for a transmutation chain.

The basis of the calculations simply is, that if a chain of transmuting elements is in equilibrium with a given load, the number of $\alpha \to \beta$ transmutations per second must be equal to the number of $\beta \to \alpha$ transmutations per second.

Therefore, denoting the number of α-elements in the chain by N_α and the number of β-elements in the chain by N_β we get

$$N_\alpha\, W_{\alpha\to\beta}(p) = N_\beta\, W_{\beta\to\alpha}(p); \tag{81}$$

introducing

$$\alpha = \frac{N_\alpha}{N_\alpha + N_\beta} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{N_\beta}{N_\alpha + N_\beta} \tag{82}$$

and (80) we get

$$\frac{\beta}{\alpha} = e^{2p}. \tag{83}$$

Furthermore we have

$$\alpha + \beta = 1. \tag{84}$$

From (83) and (84) we get

$$\beta = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2p}} \tag{85}$$

and

$$\alpha = \frac{e^{-2p}}{1 + e^{-2p}}. \tag{86}$$

The length $L_N(P)$[1] of the chain is

$$L_N(P) = L_\alpha N_\alpha + L_\beta N_\beta. \tag{87}$$

The length per link $L(P)$, i. e. the mean length of one link in time, therefore is:

$$L(P) = \alpha L_\alpha + \beta L_\beta. \tag{88}$$

By means of (83) this is transformed to

$$L(P) = L_\alpha \left(1 + \beta \frac{L_\beta - L_\alpha}{L_\alpha}\right)$$

and, furthermore, according to (85) we get the following expression for the length per element:

$$L(P) = L_\alpha \left(1 + \frac{L_\beta - L_\alpha}{L_\alpha} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2p}}\right). \tag{89}$$

The ratio $\frac{L_\beta}{L_\alpha}$ in the following is put equal to 4. This value is assumed on the basis of the difference between the minimal length of a shortened fibre at a low load and the length of the resting fibre at high degrees of stretch. Finally, using L_α as length

[1] $N = N_\alpha + N_\beta$, the number of links in the chain.

unit the final expression for the length-tension diagram of the transmutation chain is:

$$L(p) = 1 + \frac{3}{1 + e^{-2p}}. \tag{90}$$

This diagram is given in fig. 92b. For small loads the length-tension relation is linear, i. e. in this range the chain behaves approximately as a body with Hookean elasticity. With larger loads the length approaches asymptotically its limiting value, which referred to L_a as length unit is 4.

The equilibrium length L_0 of the chain, i. e. the length at load $P = 0$ is 2.5 according to (90). Hence, with the present assumptions the chain can be extended by only 60 per cent.

The length-tension diagram for the transmutation chain is similar to the static diagram of the resting muscle fibre (fig. 92a).

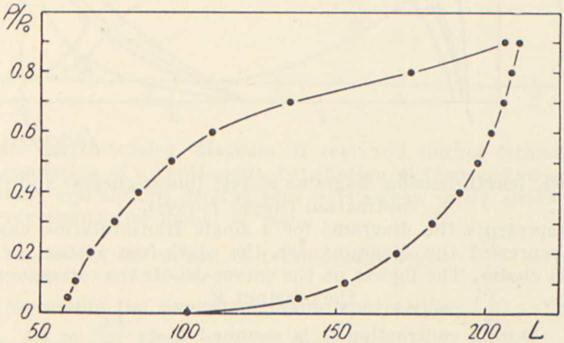


Fig. 92a. Static length-tension diagram at rest and the curve for the isotonic maxima for the muscle fibre (0° C.).
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.
ordinate: load in units of P_0.

However, in two respects these two diagrams deviate from each other:

1) The transmutation chain can only be extended by 60 per cent, while the fibre can be stretched by more than 100 per cent, and 2) the muscle fibre at low loads displays only a small increase in tension with increasing length. Therefore, the equilibrium length of the transmutation chain is apparently too high. However, as discussed below, the difference can be understood, when a model

is used containing more than one transmutation chain, the different chains being connected by cross-linkages and forming a network.

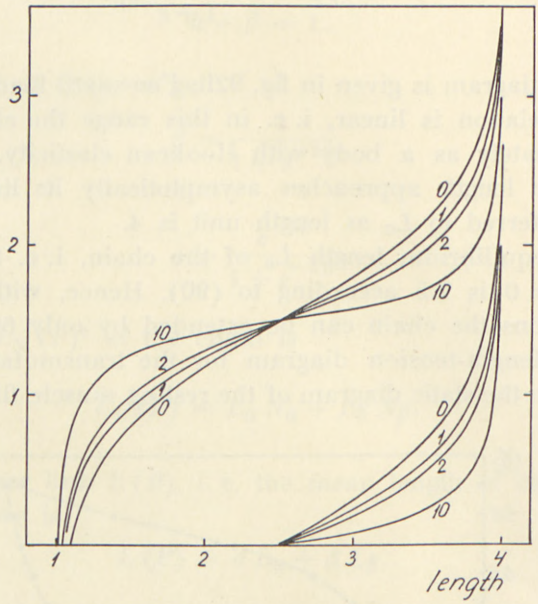


Fig. 92b. Static length-tension diagrams at rest (lower curves) and during tetanic contraction (upper curves).

0 represents the diagrams for a single transmutation chain.

1, 2 and 10 represent the diagrams for the slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains. The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of the constant K.

During contraction it is assumed that: $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$.

abscissa: length per link in units of L_α.

ordinate: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

The length of the resting muscle fibre does not go to an asymptotic value when the load is large, as does the transmutation chain according to the present assumptions. This difference will disappear when the deformation is considered which is produced by an elasticity placed in series with the transmutation chain.

This element with Hookean elasticity will not be significantly deformed until the possibilities for changes in length by the $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ transmutations are practically exhausted. It must be sought mainly in the deformations of the α- and β-links themselves caused by the load (cf. p. 236).

When a single transmutation chain is used as an essential element in the structural interpretation of the static length-

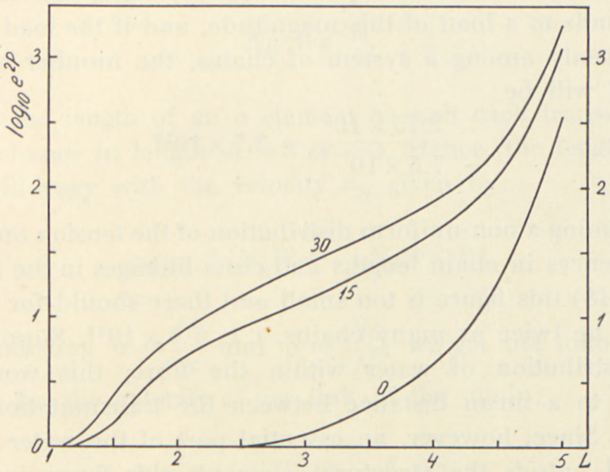


Fig. 92c. Static length-tension diagram at rest and during tetanic contraction for a system consisting of a continuous distribution of transmutation chains with different equilibrium lengths plus a Hookean series elasticity.

0 represents the model at rest.

15 represents the model in tetanic contraction: $\frac{FC}{D} = 15$.

30 represents the model in tetanic contraction: $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$.

The elongation caused by the series elasticity is assumed to be $0.20 \log_{10} e^{2p}$.

abscissa: length per link of the chain with the smallest L_0 in units of L_α.

ordinate: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

tension diagram of the muscle fibre, it is a prerequisite that the loads which normally act on the fibre correspond to loads on the transmutation chains which can actually produce an essential part of the possible deformations. Therefore, according to the theoretical length-tension diagram (fig. 92b) $2p$ must assume values of, e. g., 3.0 which corresponds to an elongation of 54.3 per cent in proportion to the 60 per cent which is obtainable. The following estimation shows that it is actually possible to arrive at such values of p. At 0° C. the temperature energy kT

is 3.74×10^{-14} erg. Therefore, at 0° C. $2p = 3$ corresponds to an external work of $2P\lambda = 1.12 \times 10^{-13}$ erg. Assuming that $L_\alpha = 5$ Å and $L_\beta = 20$ Å, i. e. that $2\lambda = L_\beta - L_\alpha = 15$ Å, $2p = 3$ corresponds to a value of P of 7.5×10^{-7} dynes. The maximum force (P_0) which the muscle fibre can develop in an isometric tetanic contraction is 2.75×10^6 dynes per cm² (0° C., Table 10). If $2p = 3$ corresponds to a load of this magnitude, and if the load is distributed evenly among a system of chains, the number of chains per cm² will be

$$\frac{2.75 \times 10^6}{7.5 \times 10^{-7}} = 3.7 \times 10^{12}.$$

Assuming a non-uniform distribution of the tension on account of differences in chain lengths and cross-linkages in the structure (cf. p. 248) this figure is too small and there should for example actually be twice as many chains, i. e. 7.5×10^{12}. Supposing an even distribution of water within the fibre, this would correspond to a mean distance between the transmutation chains of 36 Å. Since, however, an essential part of the water must be localized *outside* the structural elements this figure is reduced correspondingly, e. g. by a factor 1.5—2.5, and we arrive at values which appear reasonable in comparison with distances found from X-ray analysis of proteins of the *k-f-m* group (Astbury 1947).

Theory for isotonic transients applied to a transmutation chain.

The length-tension diagram derived for the single transmutation chain represented a static problem. The assumptions made enable us to deal with non-static problems as well. The basis of this treatment is the fact that the velocity of elongation is always proportional to the difference between the number of $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ and $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$ transmutations per second. Each increase in length must arise from a relative increase in transmutations $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ as compared with $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$.

Let us consider a chain without equilibrium in the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations. The chain is assumed to consist of a large number of elements N, N_α of which are in the α and N_β of which are in the β modification. When the chain is loaded by the load P_1, the number of transmutations $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ per second according to (80) will be

$$N_\alpha \cdot We^{p_1}$$

and the number of transmutations $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$ will be

$$N_\beta \cdot We^{-p_1}.$$

With the length of an α element as unit each transmutation gives a change in length of $+3$ or -3. Hence, the length of the chain will vary with the velocity v_N given by:

$$v_N = 3\,[N_\alpha We^{p_1} - N_\beta We^{-p_1}]. \tag{91}$$

By introducing $\alpha = \frac{N_\alpha}{N}$ and $\beta = \frac{N_\beta}{N}$, we get the following expression for the velocity v per link of the chain:

$$v = 3\,W\,[\alpha e^{p_1} - \beta e^{-p_1}]. \tag{92}$$

According to (88) the length of the chain per link is:

$$L = \alpha + 4\,\beta = 1 + 3\,\beta. \tag{93}$$

Hence, the velocity per element is:

$$v = 3\,\frac{d\beta}{dt}. \tag{94}$$

(92), (93), and (94) give the following differential equation relating the variation of L and P in time:

$$\frac{dL}{dt} = 3\,We^{p_1} - W\,(L-1)\,(e^{p_1} + e^{-p_1}),$$

i. e.

$$\frac{dL}{dt} = -\,W\,(e^{p_1} + e^{-p_1})\,L + W\,[4\,e^{p_1} + e^{-p_1}]. \tag{95}$$

Hence, if we know the variation of P_1 with time, we can determine the length L as a function of time from (95).

In applying these results to an isotonic transient, a transmutation chain originally in equilibrium with the load P at time zero is suddenly subjected to a change in load ΔP. Thereby the frequency of transmutations in the two directions, which originally is identical, will suddenly be changed and the transmutation frequency $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ will be different from that for $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$. Thus, the chain will acquire a velocity of change in length aiming at bringing the chain to the length which corresponds to the static load $P + \Delta P$. The variation of length with time can be determined from (95) by putting $P_1 = P + \Delta P$ and introducing the initial condition

$$L = L(p) \quad \text{at time} \quad t = 0.$$

Thereby we get:

$$L(t) = L(p + \Delta p) - (L(p + \Delta p) - L(p))\, e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}}, \tag{96}$$

where

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = W\left(e^{p + \Delta p} + e^{-p - \Delta p}\right), \tag{97}$$

and where $L(p)$ and $L(p + \Delta p)$ represent the static length corresponding to load P and $P + \Delta P$. Thus, the transmutation chain goes exponentially from the initial length to the new final length, with a decay-time τ given by (97). This finding is of particular interest in relation to the Voigt-model applied to describe the reaction of the muscle fibre to an isotonic transient (Part II). It shows that the single transmutation chain reacts to an isotonic transient as a Voigt-element with the elastic stiffness:

$$G_{\text{elast}} = \frac{\Delta P}{L(p + \Delta p) - L(p)} \tag{98}$$

and a retardation time τ given by (97). Hence, the distribution of retardation times characterizing the Voigt-model for the muscle fibre, can be partly understood by using as a model for the muscle fibre a system of cross-linked transmutation chains, in which there is a non-uniform distribution of tension. However, the prolonged creep in the muscle fibre must be considered, as we have discussed in Part II of this paper, to be due chiefly to the disrupture and reformation of points of entanglement. The dynamic stiffness of the muscle fibre which is determined by the short retardation times (p. 105) arises therefore chiefly from transmutations within the molecule and only to a minor degree from transitions in the texture.

The initial velocity v_0 in the isotonic transient is obtained from (92), when P_1 is put equal to $P + \Delta P$ and α and β are given by (85) and (86).

Hence v_0 is

$$v_0 = 3\,W \left[e^{p+\Delta p} \cdot \frac{1}{1+e^{2p}} - e^{-p-\Delta p} \cdot \frac{1}{1+e^{-2p}} \right] \tag{99}$$

or

$$v_0 = 3\,W \frac{e^{\Delta p} - e^{-\Delta p}}{e^{p} + e^{-p}}. \tag{100}$$

By means of this expression and the experimentally found initial velocities in isotonic transients a rough estimation can be attempted of the frequency of transmutation W. With an initial velocity of 10—30 L_0 per sec. = 10—30·2.5 L_a units per sec. (see isotonic transients Table 2) and assuming $2\,p_0 = 3$, we get with $\Delta P = 3\,P$ for small loads values for W of 20—60 sec^{-1}.

However, evidence has been presented in the preceding parts of this paper, that in the transient experiments with large deformations cross-linkages will play a rôle even within the short time interval used for the determination of the initial velocity (5—20 msec.). Hence, the actual values of W must exceed considerably the estimate given here.

Static length-tension diagram for a system of cross-linked transmutation chains.

As emphasized above, a single transmutation chain does not describe satisfactorily the length-tension relationship of the resting fibre. The initial slope calculated for the transmutation chain deviates from that of the fibre.

A more adequate picture of the minute structure comprises a system of transmutation chains which are more or less randomly cross-linked and rather well orientated along the fibre axis, but which are not necessarily of the same length (i. e. they do not consist of the same number of links). This model is analysed for two simplified cases:

1) a system consisting of parallel chains with different equilibrium length (influence of slack).

2) a cross-linked system of chains without slack (influence of cross-linkages).

1. The length-tension diagram of a system of parallel chains with different numbers of links shows good agreement with the length-tension diagram of the resting muscle fibre. Let us consider a system of chains with the number of links ranging between N_1 and N_2 (both $\gg 1$) and for the sake of simplicity we assume that the different numbers of links are equally probable. The chains are supposed to be coupled at the ends. Therefore, the equilibrium length of the system, i. e. its length at load zero is:

$$L_0 = 2.5 \cdot N_1. \tag{101}$$

The maximum elongation which is possible remains 60 per cent. This implies that chains with a number of links $N > 1.6\, N_1$ never will participate in the load. If the system has a length L, the chains whose equilibrium length is $< L$ will be loaded, the condition being:

$$L > 2.5 \cdot N$$

or

$$N < 0.4\, L. \tag{102}$$

A chain with a number of links which fulfils this condition will be under load $p\,(N)$ determined by

$$L = N \cdot \left[1 + \frac{3}{1 + e^{-2\,p\,(N)}}\right],$$

i. e.

$$2\,p\,(N) = \log \frac{L - N}{4\,N - L}. \tag{103}$$

According to the assumption concerning the distribution of the number of links in the chains the mean tension p is:

$$p = \frac{1}{N_2 - N_1} \sum_{N = N_1}^{N_{\max}} p(N), \tag{104}$$

where $N_{\max}$ denotes the lowest value of N_2 and $0.4\,L$. By introducing $n = \frac{N}{N_1}$ and by replacing the summation (104) with an integration we get from (103)

$$2\,p = \frac{1}{n_2 - 1} \int_1^{n_{\max}} \log \frac{L/N_1 - n}{4\,n - L/N_1}\, dn$$

or

$$2\,p = \frac{1}{n_2 - 1} \Big[(L/N_1 - 1) \log (L/N_1 - 1) - (L/N_1 - n_{\max}) \log (L/N_1 - n_{\max}) + \frac{1}{4}(4 - L/N_1) \log (4 - L/N_1) - \frac{1}{4}(4\,n_{\max} - L/N_1) \cdot \log (4\,n_{\max} - L/N_1) \Big]. \tag{105}$$

By assuming a variation in the equilibrium length of the chains of e. g. 30 per cent, i. e. with $N_2 = 1.3\,N_1$, and putting an elasticity in series with the system, we get the length-tension diagram shown in fig. 92 c. With regard to the series elasticity, which must be considered to have both a crystalline and a kinetic component, we have assumed it to increase in length by 0.2 L_a units per unit of load expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

It is seen that the initial course of the length-tension diagram which we have obtained, corresponds to that experimentally found in the muscle fibre (fig. 92 a).

These calculations show the effect on the length-tension diagram of slack in the fibre structure, since the parallel chains of different "length" can be considered to correspond to the chains situated between cross-linkages in the structure.

2. Correspondingly we can deal with the isolated effect of cross-linkages. For this purpose we disregard slack and possible different numbers of links in the chains.

Hence, a system will be considered consisting of parallel cross-linked transmutation chains with the same number of links and acted upon by the load p. We assume continuous disrupture and reformation of cross-linkages in the structure. The cross-linkage is assumed to consist of a coupling of links of the same type. These aggregates can include links from more than two chains, since it is assumed that each link is able to form two cross-linkages.

The probability per second of the formation of a cross-linkage is postulated to be proportional to the possibility for the presence of cross-linkages in the adjacent chains. The proportionality factor is denoted by C_1. The probability per second of disrupture of a cross-linkage is assumed to be constant independent of the load and the size of the aggregate. It is denoted by C_2. The links are grouped according to what type of aggregate they belong to, i. e. aggregates with 2, 3, 4, $\cdots$ links, respectively.

Let us consider a system of chains in which the total number of links is N, N_α of which are α-links and N_β of which are β-links. The system is assumed to contain M aggregates, M_α of which are α-aggregates and M_β of which are β-aggregates. α_2, α_3, α_4 denote the number of aggregates with 2, 3 and 4 links and α_1 the number of free α-links. A corresponding notation is used for the β-links. Then there exist the following relationships between the number of aggregates and the number of α- and β-links:

$$M_\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \cdots \tag{106}$$

$$M_\beta = \beta_1 + \beta_2 + \beta_3 + \cdots \tag{107}$$

and

$$N_\alpha = \alpha_1 + 2\,\alpha_2 + 3\,\alpha_3 + \cdots \tag{108}$$

$$N_\beta = \beta_1 + 2\,\beta_2 + 3\,\beta_3 + \cdots \tag{109}$$

and

$$M = M_\alpha + M_\beta \tag{110}$$

$$N = N_\alpha + N_\beta. \tag{111}$$

As previously we use

$$\alpha = \frac{N_\alpha}{N} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{N_\beta}{N}. \tag{112}$$

The length per link in a chain measured in units of L_α is determined by (93)

$$L = 1 + 3\,\beta. \tag{113}$$

In determining the static length-tension diagram simple equilibrium considerations are again applied. It is assumed that only free elements participate in the transmutations $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$. This is justified since the activation energy for a transmutation of an aggregate must be considerably larger than for a single link.

In the stationary state, where we have constant length, the frequency of transmutation $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ is equal to that of $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$, i.e.

$$\alpha_1 \, We^{P} = \beta_1 \, We^{-P}, \tag{114}$$

i. e.

$$\frac{\beta_1}{\alpha_1} = e^{2p}. \tag{115}$$

Moreover, the same number of α-links must enter and leave the aggregates per second, i. e.

$$2\, C_2 (\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \cdots) = C_1 \alpha_1 \cdot \frac{\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \cdots}{N}. \tag{116}$$

In this formula, according to the assumptions above, the expression to the left gives the number of free α-links formed per second and the expression to the right gives the number of free α-links, which are taken up in aggregates.

Introducing the constant K:

$$K = \frac{C_1}{C_2}, \tag{117}$$

we get from (116) and (106)

$$2\,(M_\alpha - \alpha_1) = K \frac{\alpha_1}{N} \cdot M_\alpha,$$

i. e.

$$\alpha_1 = \frac{2\, M_\alpha}{2 + K \cdot \dfrac{M_\alpha}{N}}. \tag{118}$$

The number of α-aggregates containing n elements is constant as well; expressed mathematically this gives:

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\sum_{r=1}^{,,\frac{n}{2}''} C_1 \alpha_r \cdot \frac{\alpha_{n-r}}{N} \cdot \frac{1}{1+\delta_{r,n-r}} + 2\, C_2 (\alpha_{n+1} + \alpha_{n+2} + \cdots) \\ = C_2 \cdot (n-1)\, \alpha_n + C_1\, \alpha_n \cdot \frac{\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \cdots}{N}\end{aligned}\right\} \tag{119}$$

where

$$\delta_{r,n-r} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for} \quad r \neq \frac{n}{2} \\ 1 & \text{for} \quad r = \frac{n}{2}, \end{cases} \tag{120}$$

and where $,,\frac{n}{2}``$ indicates a summation to $r \leqq \frac{n}{2}$.

(119) is transformed to

$$K \cdot \sum_{r=1}^{,,\frac{n}{2}''} \alpha_r \frac{\alpha_{n-r}}{N} \cdot \frac{1}{1+\delta_{r,n-r}} + 2\,(M_\alpha - \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 - \cdots - \alpha_n)$$

$$= (n-1)\, \alpha_n + K \alpha_n \cdot \frac{M_\alpha}{N}.$$

Hence,

$$\alpha_n = \frac{2\,(M_\alpha - \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 \cdots - \alpha_{n-1}) + K \sum_{r=1}^{,,\frac{n}{2}''} \alpha_r \frac{\alpha_{n-r}}{N} \cdot \frac{1}{1+\delta_{r,n-r}}}{n + 1 + K \cdot \frac{M_\alpha}{N}}. \tag{121}$$

Corresponding expressions can be derived for the β-links and for the sake of simplicity let us apply the same value for the constant K.

Expressions (118) and (121) and the corresponding expressions for the β-links make it possible to compute the aggregate distribution as a function of $\frac{M_\alpha}{N}$ and $\frac{M_\beta}{N}$. This is shown in fig. 93 a, b, c for $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \cdots$ with the values 1, 2, and 10 for K.

In order to derive a length-tension diagram, in the first place we need to determine α and β or N_α and N_β as a function of $\frac{M_\alpha}{N}$ and $\frac{M_\beta}{N}$. This is done by means of expressions (108), (109),

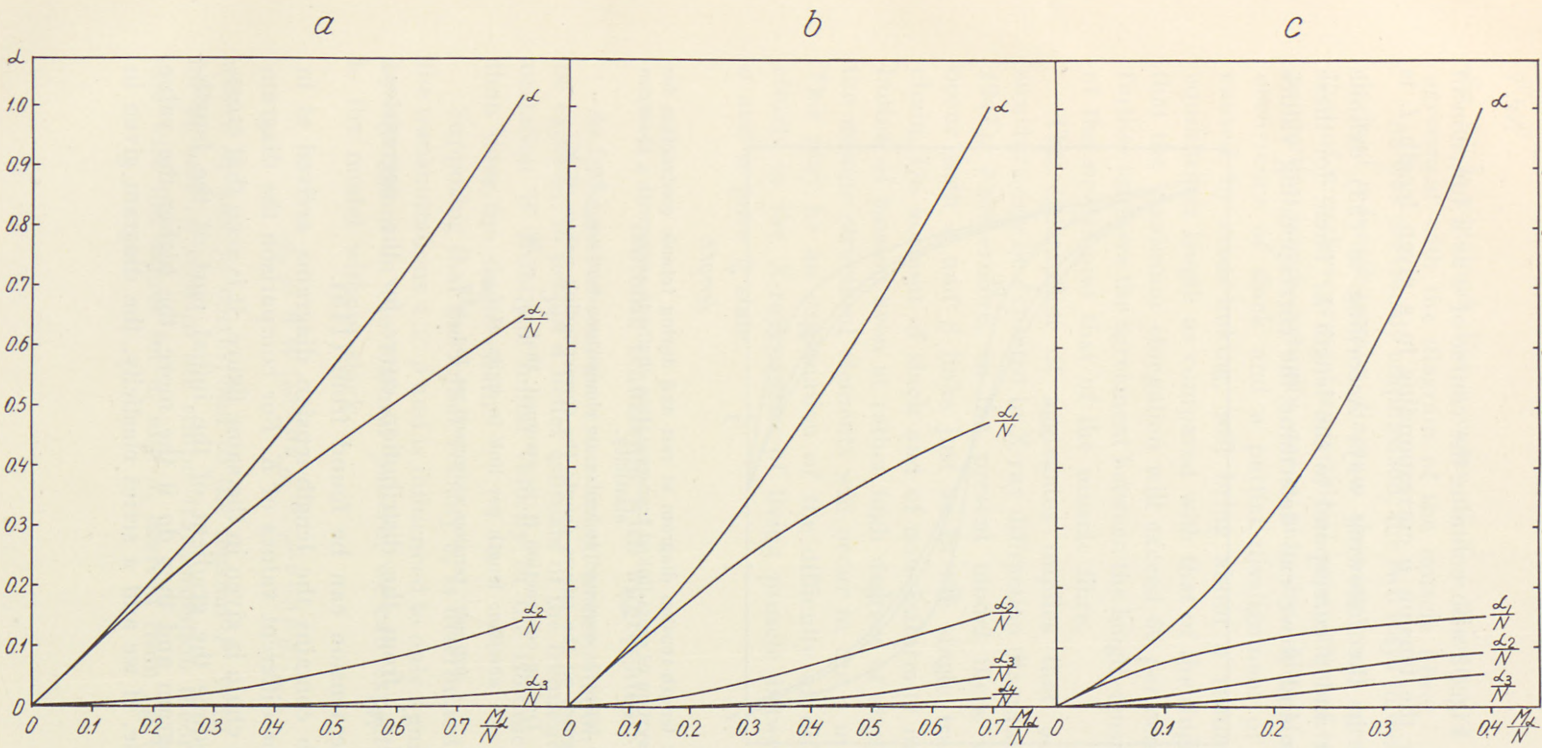


Fig. 93. The aggregate distribution for the slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains.

a. $K = 1$ *b.* $K = 2$ *c.* $K = 10$ (see text).

abscissa: $\frac{M_\alpha}{N}$, i. e. the number of α-aggregates per link.

ordinate: $\frac{a_n}{N}$, i. e. the number of α-aggregates consisting of n links per link of the system.

and (112). Fig. 93 also contains the course of α as a function of $\frac{M_\alpha}{N}$. Finally the tension p corresponding to a given length L is determined in the following way: According to (93) definite values of α and β correspond to the length L. Then, for these values of α and β we can determine the corresponding values

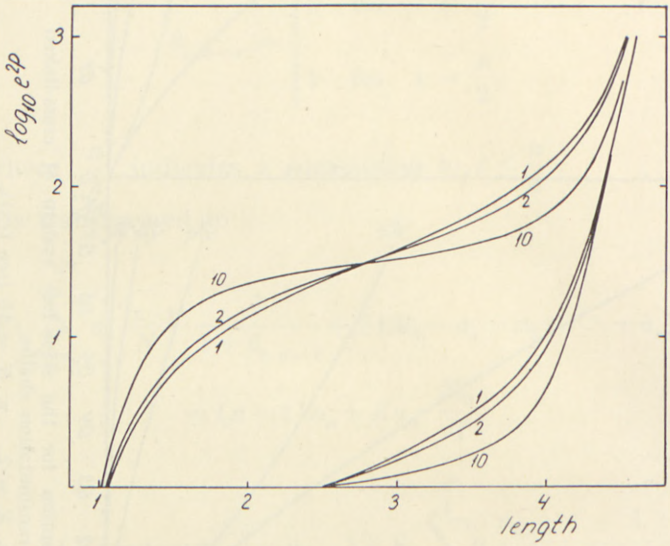


Fig. 94. Static length-tension diagram at rest and during tetanic contraction for the slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains in series with a Hookean elasticity.

The latter is assumed to cause an elongation: $0.20 \log_{10} e^{2p}$.

The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of K.

During contraction it is assumed that $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$.

abscissa: length per link in units of L_α.

ordinate: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

for $\frac{\alpha_1}{N}$ and $\frac{\beta_1}{N}$ from the distribution curve for the aggregates. Finally, the tension can be found from (115).

Fig. 92b contains the length-tension diagrams arrived at in this way for different values of K. For comparison the diagram for a single chain is given in the same figure. It is seen that cross-linkages reduce the gradient of the initial part of the length-tension diagram and they do it the more, the higher the value of K we use. If we add a series elasticity, the diagram given in fig. 94 is obtained. For a value of $K = 2$ we get a satisfactory agreement with the diagram of the muscle fibre.

As was previously emphasized, the two ways in which we have derived a length-tension diagram showing good agreement with that of muscle represent an artificial separation of two essential properties which actually occur side by side. Moreover, the occurrence of slack and a partial disalignment of the chains caused by cross-linking, will bring about a reduction in the equilibrium length as compared with that of the single chains so that the maximum elongation will exceed 60 per cent. This will further improve the agreement between the length-tension diagram of the model and that of the muscle fibre.

The assumption of aggregates implies that a crystalline structure can be expected in X-ray diffraction diagrams (Astbury 1947). Furthermore, in the present model there will always occur both α and β links just as in the single transmutation chain. On account of slack and of non-uniformity in the distribution of tension even at rather high degrees of stretch, part of the minute structural elements will occur in the α modification. This may be an explanation of the difficulty of differentiating clearly in the X-ray pattern of living muscle between a pure α and a pure β state.

Isotonic transients with aggregates.

As indicated above, the cross-linked transmutation model can be expected to permit a better estimate of the frequency of transmutation W from the initial velocity in the isotonic transients than does the single chain.

Supposing that the initial velocity v_0 is determined chiefly by the transmutations $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ and is influenced to only a minor degree by alterations in the textural pattern, we can expect according to the model without slack:

$$v_0 = 3\,W\,[e^{p+\varDelta p}\,\alpha_1 - e^{-p-\varDelta p}\,\beta_1], \tag{122}$$

where α_1 and β_1 correspond to the tension P. With the values for p_0 and v_0 used in the simple transmutation theory (p. 247) and with the values for α_1 and β_1 derived from fig. 93 we find that $K = 2$ gives an increase in W of 50 per cent as compared with the single chain (20—60 sec.$^{-1}$) while $K = 10$ gives an increase of 400 per cent.

Theory for contraction of the transmutation chain.

As indicated in Parts II and III of this paper the minute structure of the contracted fibre is assumed not to differ in principle from that of the resting fibre. Therefore, the contracted fibre is considered to consist of a system of more or less randomly cross-linked, rather well aligned transmutation chains. The decrease in length in contraction is taken as an expression of a relative increase in the number of links in the α modification. The increase is assumed to arise from a reduction in the probability of transmutation from the short to the long modifications, i. e. a number of α links are assumed to be excluded from a transmutation. This is supposed to be realized by a *fixation* of links in the α-form in such a way that they are prevented from participating in the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations (fig. 91). The fixation is assumed directly or indirectly to be brought about by the stimulus. For the time being the physico-chemical correlate of this fixation can only be a matter for speculation. Thus, it remains an open question whether the fixation consists in the removal or the addition of a "chemical unit" from or to the link. Speculations as to the nature of this unit whether an atomic particle or a more complex molecule, and with respect to its relation to the actin-myosin model and to the interaction between adenosine triphosphate and acto-myosin, seem to us to be premature.

In the active phase we assume a continuous fixation and defixation (i. e. disappearance of fixation) of α links. The frequency of fixation is assumed to be proportional to the concentration C of a fixation agent (factor) and to the number of possibilities for fixation, i. e. proportional to the number of non-fixated α links. The frequency of defixation on the other hand is supposed to be proportional to the number of α links in the fixated state.

Let us first apply these considerations to a single transmutation chain and investigate how far mechanical properties characterizing contraction can be described in terms of this simple conception. Referred to a given load the activated chain contains a certain fraction β of links in the β state, another fraction α_1 in the transmutable α state and finally a fraction α_f in the fixated α state. Thus we have:

$$\alpha_1 + \alpha_f + \beta = 1. \tag{123}$$

In an equilibrium state, i. e. when the frequency of transmutation $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ is equal to the frequency of transmutation $\beta \rightarrow \alpha$, we have in analogy to the resting chain:

$$\alpha_1 \, We^p = \beta We^{-p},$$

i. e.

$$\frac{\beta}{\alpha_1} = e^{2p}. \tag{124}$$

The static length-tension diagram of the "tetanically contracted" transmutation chain.

As mentioned above, the activated state is characterized by the concentration C of a fixating element. C is considered constant on the tetanic level of a contraction. According to our general assumptions the number of fixations and defixations per link of the chain per time unit is

$$FC\alpha_1 \text{ (fixation) and}$$
$$D\alpha_f \text{ (defixation),}$$

where F and D are proportionality factors. In the stationary state corresponding to static length and tension these two frequencies are equal and the condition for equilibrium $\alpha_f \rightleftarrows \alpha_1$ therefore is:

$$FC\alpha_1 = D\alpha_f. \tag{125}$$

For α_1, α_f and β we have (123), (124), and (125), which give

$$\beta = \frac{1}{1 + \left(1 + \dfrac{FC}{D}\right) e^{-2p}}. \tag{126}$$

By introducing this value for β in the expression (93) for the length L per element expressed in units of L_a we get the length-tension diagram in contraction:

$$L_{\text{contr}}(p) = 1 + \frac{3}{1 + \left(1 + \frac{FC}{D}\right) e^{-2p}}. \tag{127}$$

It is seen that the parameters F, C, and D only enter as $\frac{FC}{D}$. With $\frac{FC}{D} = 0$ the expression (127) corresponds to the length-tension diagram of the "resting" chain.

Putting

$$1 + \frac{FC}{D} = e^{2p_{\text{extra}}}, \tag{128}$$

i. e. introducing

$$2p_{\text{extra}} = \log\left(1 + \frac{FC}{D}\right), \tag{129}$$

(127) assumes the simple form:

$$L_{\text{contr}}(p) = 1 + \frac{3}{1 + e^{-2(p - p_{\text{extra}})}}. \tag{130}$$

Comparing this expression (130) for the length-tension diagram in tetanic contraction with that derived for the resting chain (90) we see that at a given length > the equilibrium length the static tension in contraction exceeds the static tension of the resting chain by the constant amount p_{extra}. Hence, the simple transmutation chain is characterized by a constant extra tension in an isometric tetanic contraction. Moreover, it is seen from (130) that the part of the length-tension diagram which corresponds to lengths < 2.5 can be derived as the mirror image through the point $(2.5, p_{\text{extra}})$ of that part which exceeds the length 2.5.

The curves in fig. 95 show the length-tension diagram of the contracted transmutation chain given by (130) for different values of $\frac{FC}{D}$. When $\frac{FC}{D}$ exceeds 5, the diagram acquires a pronounced S-shaped course. There is good agreement with the experimental findings on the muscle fibre, both for the curve of the isometric and of the isotonic maxima. It should be noted that for the transmutation chain the isotonic and the isometric maxima coincide.

The experimental fact that isotonic and isometric maxima for the muscle fibre do not coincide and that the extra tension decreases at high degrees of stretch can be understood from the more complicated model with cross-linked chains (cp. Part III).

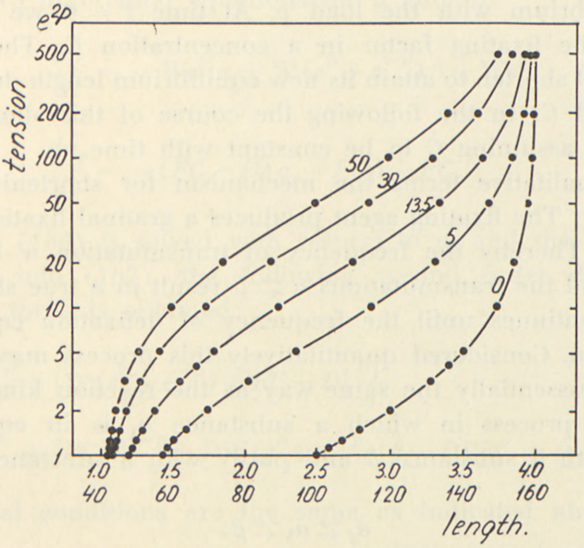


Fig. 95. Static length-tension diagram at rest and during tetanic contraction for the transmutation chain.
0. Rest.
5, 13.5, 30 and 50. Tetanic contraction. The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of $\frac{FC}{D}$.
abscissa: length per link in units of L_α and in per cent of the equilibrium length ($L_0 = 100$).
ordinate: tension (e^{2p} in logarithmic scale).

The theoretical curves obtained for low values of $\frac{FC}{D}$ should correspond to the diagram of the muscle fibre at low degrees of contraction.

The *dynamic stiffness* of the muscle fibre which is considered to arise mainly from the transmutations within the contractile chains will increase when the transmutation (deformation) of certain elements is impeded. Thus, the fixation of links can account for part of the increase in stiffness which characterizes contraction. This contribution is approximately inversely proportional to $1 - \alpha_f$. As to the other factors involved in the increase in stiffness see changes in texture p. 105.

Shortening- and relaxation velocity in the single transmutation chain.

We shall consider a transmutation chain at rest which is in equilibrium with the load p. At time $t = 0$ we suddenly release the fixating factor in a concentration C. Thereby the chain will shorten to attain its new equilibrium length determined by p and C. In the following the course of this shortening is analysed assuming C to be constant with time.

In qualitative terms the mechanism for shortening is the following: The fixating agent produces a gradual fixation of free α links. Thereby the frequency of transmutation $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ is reduced and the transmutations $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ result in a true shortening, which continues until the frequency of defixation equals that of fixation. Considered quantitatively this process may be dealt with in esssentially the same way as the reaction kinetics of a chemical process in which a substance α_1 is in equilibrium partly with a substance β and partly with a substance α_f

$$\alpha_f \rightleftarrows \alpha_1 \rightleftarrows \beta. \tag{131}$$

The fixating elements can be compared with a catalyser which makes possible the formation of α_f. In the following mathematical treatment α_1, α_f, and β are studied as functions of time.

With the former assumptions we get the following equations of motion for the course of shortening:

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = W\left[\alpha_1 e^{p} - \beta e^{-p}\right] \tag{132}$$

$$\frac{d\alpha_1}{dt} = W\left[\beta e^{-p} - \alpha_1 e^{p}\right] + D\alpha_f - FC\alpha_1 \tag{133}$$

$$\frac{d\alpha_f}{dt} = FC\alpha_1 - D\alpha_f \tag{134}$$

with the initial conditions at time zero:

$$\beta = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2p}}, \quad \alpha_1 = \frac{1}{1 + e^{2p}} \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha_f = 0.$$

According to (123)

$$a_1 = 1 - a_f - \beta. \tag{135}$$

When this is introduced in (132) and (134) we get the following two differential equations for β and a_f:

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = -We^p a_f - W(e^p + e^{-p})\beta + We^p, \tag{136}$$

$$\frac{da_f}{dt} = -(FC + D)a_f - FC\beta + FC. \tag{137}$$

When (136) is solved with respect to a_f and the result introduced into (137), the following second order differential equation for β is obtained:

$$\left.\begin{aligned}&\frac{d^2\beta}{dt^2} + [W(e^p + e^{-p}) + FC + D]\frac{d\beta}{dt}\\ &\quad + [FCWe^{-p} + DW(e^p + e^{-p})]\beta - DWe^p = 0.\end{aligned}\right\} \tag{138}$$

The initial conditions are the same as indicated above, viz.: at $t = 0$

$$\beta = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2p}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d\beta}{dt} = 0.$$

The general solution of (138) is of the form:

$$\beta(t) = c_1 e^{-\lambda_1 t} + c_2 e^{-\lambda_2 t} + \beta_{\text{contr}}, \tag{139}$$

where the constants λ_1 and λ_2 are given by:

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 &= \mathrm{W}(e^p + e^{-p}) + FC + D\\ \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2 &= \mathrm{W}[FCe^{-p} + D(e^p + e^{-p})].\end{aligned} \tag{140}$$

β_{contr} according to (138) is:

$$\left.\begin{aligned}\beta_{\text{contr}} &= \frac{DWe^p}{FCWe^{-p} + DW(e^p + e^{-p})}\\ &= \frac{1}{1 + \left(1 + \frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}}.\end{aligned}\right\} \tag{141}$$

The integration constants c_1 and c_2 are given by the initial conditions:

$$\frac{1}{1+e^{-2p}} = c_1 + c_2 + \frac{1}{1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}} \tag{142}$$

and

$$0 = c_1\lambda_1 + c_2\lambda_2.$$

The solution introduced in (139) gives

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \beta(t) = \left(\frac{1}{1+e^{-2p}} - \frac{1}{1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}}\right)\cdot \\ \left[\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_1 t} - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_2 t}\right] + \beta_{\text{contr}}\cdot \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{143}$$

Hence, the length $L(t) = 1 + 3\,\beta(t)$ changes as a function of time according to:

$$L(t) = L_{\text{contr}} + \Delta L\left[\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_1 t} - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_2 t}\right], \tag{144}$$

where the final shortening ΔL is

$$\Delta L = L_{\text{rest}} - L_{\text{contr}} = 3\left[\frac{1}{1+e^{-2p}} - \frac{1}{1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}}\right]. \tag{145}$$

The *shortening velocity* $V(t)$ expressed in units of L_a per second is per link of the chain according to (144):

$$V(t) = -\frac{dL}{dt} = \frac{\lambda_1\lambda_2}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}\Delta L\left[e^{-\lambda_1 t} - e^{-\lambda_2 t}\right]. \tag{146}$$

In accordance with the assumptions made about the initial state it is seen from this expression that the shortening as a function of time begins with the velocity zero. By differentiation of (146) we find that the velocity is at its maximum at time t_0 determined by:

$$\lambda_1 e^{-\lambda_1 t_0} = \lambda_2 e^{-\lambda_2 t_0},$$

i. e.

$$t_0 = \frac{1}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}\log\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}. \tag{147}$$

The shortening $\Delta L(t_0)$ in this state according to (144) is

$$\Delta L(t_0) = L_{\text{rest}} - L(t_0) = \Delta L\left[1 - \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1} e^{-\lambda_1 t_0} - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1} e^{-\lambda_2 t_0}\right)\right]$$

or according to (147):

$$\Delta L(t_0) = \Delta L\left[1 - \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}\left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}\right)^{-\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}} + \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}\cdot\left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}\right)^{-\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}}\right]. \quad (148)$$

The course of shortening in the muscle fibre starts with a maximal velocity after a latent period of about 25 msec. (0° C.). Therefore, the parameters of the transmutation chain λ_1 and λ_2 are adjusted in such a way that the maximal shortening velocity is reached when only a minor part of the shortening has been attained. According to (148) this will be the case when

$$\lambda_2 \gg \lambda_1. \quad (149)$$

For example $\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = 20$ gives

$$\frac{\Delta L(t_0)}{\Delta L} = 0.10 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_1 t_0 = 0.16$$

and $\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = 100$ gives $\frac{\Delta L(t_0)}{\Delta L} = 0.036$ and $\lambda_1 t_0 = 0.046.$

According to the equations (140) defining λ_1 and λ_2, the condition (149) is fulfilled when

$$\left.\begin{aligned} & FC \ll W, \\ \text{and thus also} \quad & D \ll W. \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (150)$$

These assumptions imply that fixation and defixation are considered to be slow processes as compared with the transmutations $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$. That this is justified can be seen from the curves in fig. 86 showing the course of relaxation, i. e. the course of elongation after the cessation of tetanic stimulation, and the course of the change in length after a quick unloading. The latter, which must be determined chiefly by the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations, proceeds with much higher velocity than the process of relaxation (desactivation), the course of which is determined by FC and D as well (see below).

With the assumption given in (149), the course of shortening as a function of time (144) is practically exponential with the time constant λ_1, since the term of the expression containing $e^{-\lambda_2 t}$ will soon attain values which are extremely small as compared with $e^{-\lambda_1 t}$. This course of shortening as a function of time is seen in fig. 98 a for different values of e^{2p}, with $FC = 9$ sec.$^{-1}$ and $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$. A comparison shows good agreement between these curves and the experimentally found time course of shortening in isotonic tetanic contraction (fig. 98 b).

Thus, the theory for the contraction of the transmutation chain can account for the decrease in shortening velocity with time in the muscle fibre. In qualitative terms this can be understood in the following way: at the moment of stimulation, when most α links are available for fixation, the velocity of fixation is maximal and with a certain delay (t_0, cf. p. 262) gives rise to a maximal shortening velocity. Then, the velocity decreases owing to the gradual decrease in the possibilities of fixation. This decrease is counteracted only partially and little by little through the formation of new α links by thermal agitation.

The maximal shortening velocity V_0 according to (146), (147) and (149) is

$$V_0 \approx \lambda_1 \Delta L. \tag{151}$$

Thus, $\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = 20$ gives: $V_0 = 0.85\ \lambda_1 \cdot \Delta L$ and $\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = 100$ gives: $V_0 = 0.955\ \lambda_1 \cdot \Delta L$.

λ_1 can be determined from the ratio $\frac{\lambda_1 \lambda_2}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}$ in equation (140). Thus, assuming (149) we get

$$\lambda_1 \approx \frac{W[FCe^{-p} + D(e^p + e^{-p})]}{W(e^p + e^{-p}) + FC + D} \approx \frac{FC}{1 + e^{2p}} + D. \tag{152}$$

Introducing (152) and (145) in (151) we get the following approximate expression for the maximum shortening velocity of a transmutation chain:

$$V_0 \approx \frac{3\,FC}{(e^p + e^{-p})^2}. \tag{153}$$

This expression can also be derived from the following simple arguments, which are applicable in the analysis of other properties of the transmutation chain as well.

Assuming that the transmutations represent quick processes as compared with both fixation and defixation, it is justified to suppose that the following relation is valid during the whole course of shortening:

$$\frac{\beta}{\alpha_1} \approx e^{2p}. \tag{154}$$

Introducing this in (123) we get

$$\beta \approx \frac{1 - \alpha_f}{1 + e^{-2p}}. \tag{155}$$

Hence:

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} \approx -\frac{1}{1 + e^{-2p}} \cdot \frac{d\alpha_f}{dt}. \tag{156}$$

The initial velocity with which the α elements are fixated according to (134) is:

$$-\left(\frac{d\alpha_f}{dt}\right)_{\text{init}} = \frac{FC}{1 + e^{2p}}. \tag{157}$$

Introducing (157) in (156) one obtains

$$-\left(\frac{d\beta}{dt}\right)_{\text{init}} \approx \frac{FC}{(1 + e^{2p})\,(1 + e^{-2p})}. \tag{158}$$

This corresponds to the expression (153) for the maximal shortening velocity V_0.

The *force-velocity relation* expressed by (153) is given in fig. 96. With $FC = 9$ sec.$^{-1}$ and $e^{2p_0} = 100$, the theoretical curve shows relatively good agreement with the experimental one obtained from the muscle fibre. This must be considered an expression of an actual agreement between theory and experiment in the range of loads examined. However, it must be kept in mind that the experimental shortening velocity is the external velocity and not the velocity with which the contractile

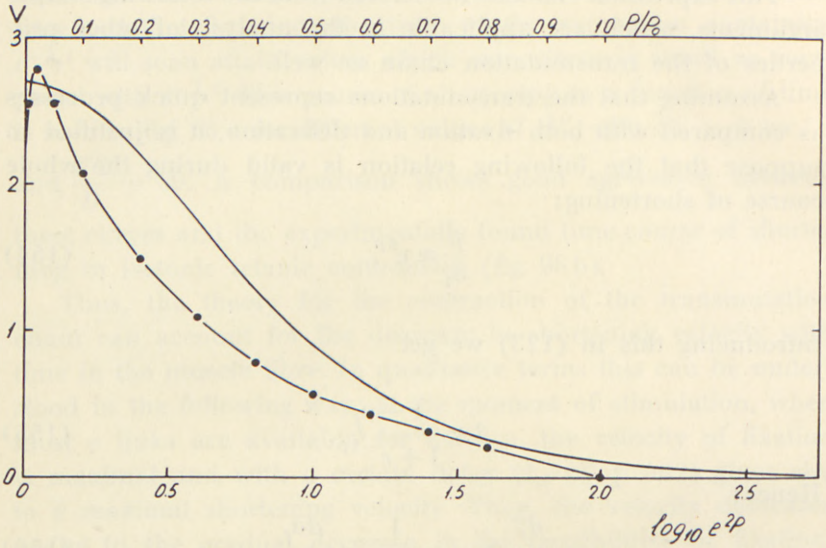


Fig. 96. Maximum shortening velocity as a function of the load for the transmutation chain and for the muscle fibre.
Upper curve: transmutation chain.
Lower curve: muscle fibre (0° C.).
abscissa: above: load on the fibre in units of P_0;
below: tension in the chain expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.
ordinate: shortening velocity in L_0 per sec.

substance itself shortens. Thereby the difference between the experimental and the computed curves can be accounted for in the following way: the initial maximum which is found in the experimental curve has been interpreted as being caused by the take-up of the slack, which must be most pronounced at small lengths. The fact that the experimental curve has a steeper slope at moderate loads in a range in which the theoretical curve is slightly concave towards the abscissa is explained by the changes of the flow velocity with the load which occur in the visco-elastic series element of the muscle fibre. At low loads the flow velocity must increase with increasing load on account of an increasing probability of disrupture of points of entanglement. At high loads the possibilities of a flow are restricted owing to the better alignment of the structure (cf. p. 205, Part III).

The variation in time of the degree of fixation a_f can be found by inserting $\beta(t)$ given from (143) in (136). This gives:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} a_f(t) &= \frac{\frac{FC}{D} e^{-2p}}{1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}}\left[1-\left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_1 t}-\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}e^{-\lambda_2 t}\right)\right] \\ &+\frac{FC}{\lambda_2-\lambda_1}\cdot\frac{1}{1+e^{2p}}\left[e^{-\lambda_1 t}-e^{-\lambda_2 t}\right]. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{159}$$

Introducing the assumptions (149) and (150) into (159) we get the following approximate expression:

$$a_f(t) \approx \frac{\frac{FC}{D} e^{-2p}}{1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}}\left[1-e^{-\lambda_1 t}\right], \tag{160}$$

where λ_1 is determined from (152).

Comparing the expressions (144) and (159) for $\Delta L(t)$ and $a_f(t)$ the following relation is obtained:

$$\Delta L(t) \approx \frac{3}{1+e^{-2p}}\,a_f(t). \tag{161}$$

Thus, the shortening is approximately proportional to the degree of fixation. This is of interest for the understanding of heat production during contraction (cf. p. 284).

It is now possible to relate the time-interval t_0 (147) required for the transmutation chain to obtain maximal shortening velocity to the latent period of the muscle fibre. According to (152), (140), and (147) the assumptions (150) give the following approximate expression for t_0:

$$t_0 \approx \frac{1}{W(e^p+e^{-p})}\log\frac{W(e^p+e^{-p})}{\frac{FC}{1+e^{2p}}+D}. \tag{147 a}$$

Table 13 contains values for t_0 in msec. calculated from (147a) for different loads (i. e. different values of e^{2p}) and with $FC =$ 9 sec.$^{-1}$, $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$ and $W = 50$, 100, and 200 sec.$^{-1}$.

TABLE 13.
"Latent" period t_0.

$e^{2p} =$	1	4	9	36	100
$W = 50$ sec.$^{-1}$	30.3	32.7	29.6	20.5	14.2
$W = 100$ sec.$^{-1}$.........	18.6	19.1	16.9	11.4	7.8
$W = 200$ sec.$^{-1}$.........	11.1	10.9	9.5	6.3	4.2

It is seen from the table that the times t_0 are of the same order of magnitude as the experimentally determined latent periods for the muscle fibre. Moreover, for loads $< 0.5\,P_0$ ($e^{2p_0} = 100$) t_0 varies only slightly with the load in accordance with the approximately constant latent period found in the muscle fibre.

Relaxation.

Let us consider a transmutation chain which under the load p is contracted tetanically at the concentration C of the fixating factor. When stimulation is interrupted, the concentration C of the fixating factor will decrease, since it will gradually be consumed. In the following analysis it is assumed that the concentration C is zero immediately after the cessation of the stimulation. Obviously this is a simplification as compared with the actual process in the beginning of the relaxation of a muscle fibre. The removal of the fixating factor causes an elongation of the chain, a relaxation. Its mechanism is a spontaneous defixation of fixated elements. Thereby the frequency of transmutations $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ is increased and the result is a true elongation of the chain.

The equations of motion for the course of relaxation can be derived from the equations (132)—(134) for the course of shortening by putting $C = 0$. Thereby we get:

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = W\left[\alpha_1 e^{p} - \beta e^{-p}\right], \tag{162}$$

$$\frac{d a_1}{d t} = W\left[\beta e^{-p} - a_1 e^{p}\right] + D a_f, \tag{163}$$

$$\frac{d a_f}{d t} = -D a_f. \tag{164}$$

The initial conditions are:

$$\beta = \frac{1}{1 + \left(1 + \frac{FC}{D}\right) e^{-2p}}, \quad a_1 = \beta e^{-2p} \quad \text{and} \quad a_f = \frac{FC}{D} a_1$$

at $t = 0$.

Solution of these equations performed in the same way as was done for the equations for the course of shortening gives

$$L(t) = L_{\text{rest}} - \Delta L \left[\frac{\mu_2}{\mu_2 - \mu_1} e^{-\mu_1 t} - \frac{\mu_1}{\mu_2 - \mu_1} e^{-\mu_2 t}\right], \tag{165}$$

where μ_1 and μ_2 are determined by the equations which correspond to (140)

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \mu_1 + \mu_2 &= W(e^{p} + e^{-p}) + D \\ \mu_1 \mu_2 &= DW(e^{p} + e^{-p}), \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{166}$$

i. e.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \mu_1 &= D \\ \mu_2 &= W(e^{p} + e^{-p}). \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{167}$$

The *relaxation velocity* $V_d(t)$ expressed in units of L_a per second is per link according to (165):

$$V_d(t) = \frac{\mu_1 \mu_2}{\mu_2 - \mu_1} \Delta L \left[e^{-\mu_1 t} - e^{-\mu_2 t}\right]. \tag{168}$$

It is seen from this expression that the relaxation begins with a velocity zero, in accordance with what could be expected from the initial conditions. With the former assumptions for W and D we get the following expression for the maximum relaxation velocity V_d^0 according to (168) and (167)

$$V_d^0 \simeq D \Delta L. \tag{169}$$

Introducing (145) we get:

$$V_d^0 \approx \frac{3\,FC}{(1+e^{2p})\left(1+\left(1+\frac{FC}{D}\right)e^{-2p}\right)}. \tag{170}$$

The same expression can be obtained from the simple considerations accounted for on p. 265 in connection with the determina-

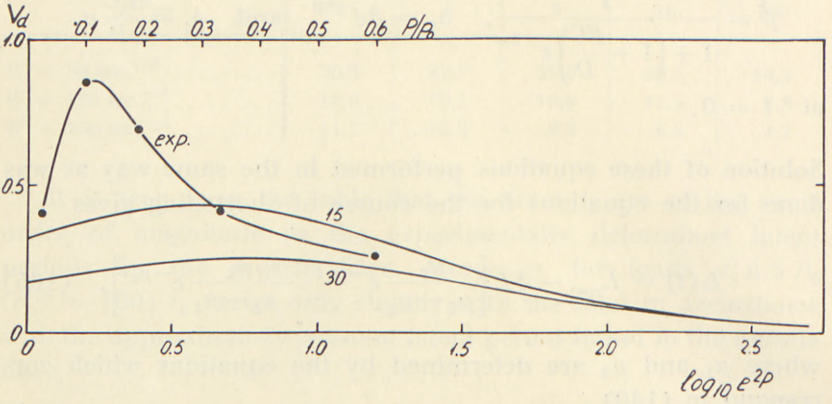


Fig. 97. Maximum relaxation velocity as a function of the load for the transmutation chain and for the muscle fibre.
exp.: muscle fibre (0° C.).
15 and 30: transmutation chain.
The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of $\frac{FC}{D}$.
abscissa: above: load on the fibre in units of P_0;
below: tension in the chain expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.
ordinate: relaxation velocity in L_0 per sec.

tion of the maximal shortening velocity. The maximal relaxation velocity in the muscle fibre is reached later than in the single transmutation chain. However, this deviation between theory and experiment could be expected considering that in reality the concentration of the fixating factor will disappear slowly and not suddenly, as assumed in our calculations. In spite of this difference it is of interest to compare the velocity of relaxation as a function of load in the transmutation chain and in the muscle fibre.

In fig. 97 the maximum relaxation velocity for the transmutation chain corresponding to $\frac{FC}{D} = 15$ and 30 and $FC = 9$ sec.$^{-1}$

is shown as a function of the load. The theoretical curves are of the same type as the experimental ones. Both have a maximum and the theoretical velocities have a similar order of magnitude.

The development of tension in the isometric tetanic contraction of a transmutation chain.

We shall consider a transmutation chain which originally is in equilibrium at rest at load P_1. At time $t = 0$ the fixating factor is suddenly released in a concentration C. If we keep the length of the chain constant corresponding to a constant number of β links, the gradual fixation of α links will cause a rise in the ratio between β links and free α links. Thereby a gradual rise is obtained in the tension of the chain. This corresponds to an isometric contraction of a muscle fibre.

The development of tension is determined on the basis of the general equations of "motion" (132)—(134) considering $p = p(t)$ as variable. Since the length remains constant, we have:

$$\beta(t) = \beta_{\text{rest}}(p_1) \tag{171}$$

and hence

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = 0\,. \tag{172}$$

Introducing (171) and (172) in (132) we get

$$\alpha_1(t) = \beta_{\text{rest}}\, e^{-2p(t)}. \tag{173}$$

Using (123), (171), and (172) the equation of motion for α_1 is

$$\frac{d\alpha_1}{dt} = D(1 - \beta(p_1) - \alpha_1) - FC\alpha_1,$$

i. e.

$$\frac{d\alpha_1}{dt} = D\alpha_{\text{rest}}(p_1) - (FC + D)\,\alpha_1\,. \tag{174}$$

Solution of (174) gives

$$\alpha_1(t) = \frac{\alpha_{\text{rest}}}{1 + \frac{FC}{D}}\left[1 + \frac{FC}{D}\, e^{-(FC+D)t}\right]. \tag{175}$$

Introduced in (173) this gives

$$e^{2\,(p\,(t)-p_1)} = \frac{1+\dfrac{FC}{D}}{1+\dfrac{FC}{D}\,e^{-(FC+D)\,t}}. \tag{176}$$

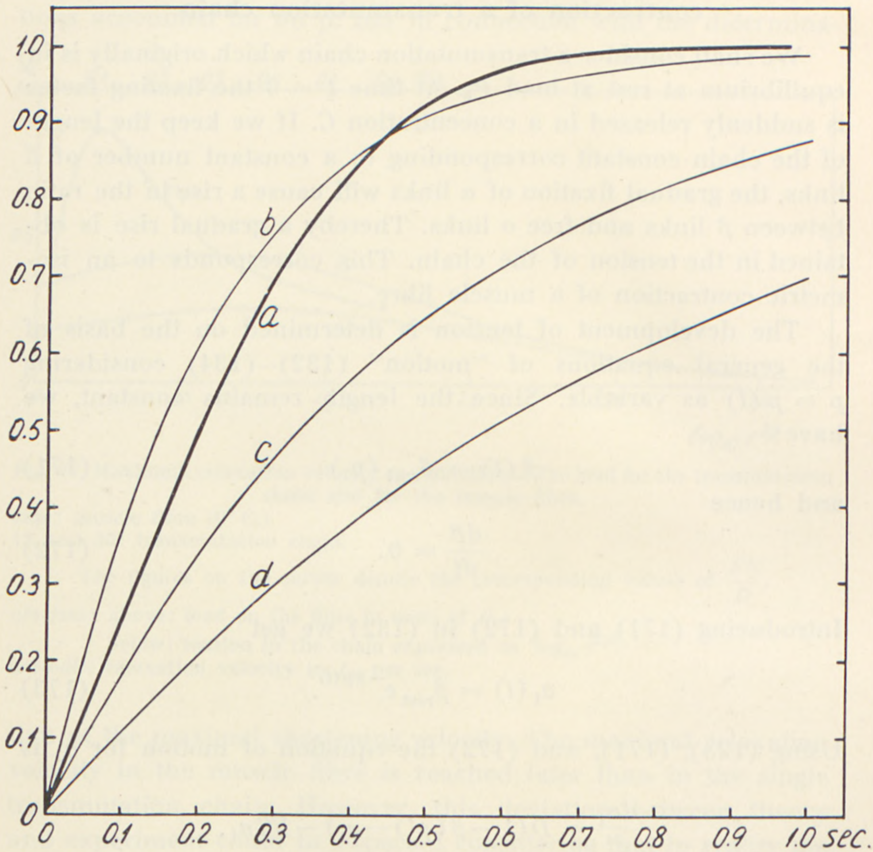


Fig. 98a. Development of tension and the course of shortening in isometric and isotonic tetanic contraction of the transmutation chain.

a. tension
b, *c*, and *d* shortening,
b. $e^{2p} = 1$,
c. $e^{2p} = 4$,
d. $e^{2p} = 9$.

It is furthermore assumed that $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$ and $FC = 9$ sec.$^{-1}$.

abscissa: time in sec.
ordinate: increase in tension and shortening divided by their final values.

Hence the *increase in tension*

$$\Delta p = \Delta p\,(t) = p - p_1$$

is:

$$\Delta p\,(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\log \frac{1 + \dfrac{FC}{D}}{1 + \dfrac{FC}{D}\,e^{-(FC+D)\,t}}. \qquad (177)$$

It is seen from this expression that the increase in tension is independent of the initial load and only determined by FC and D.

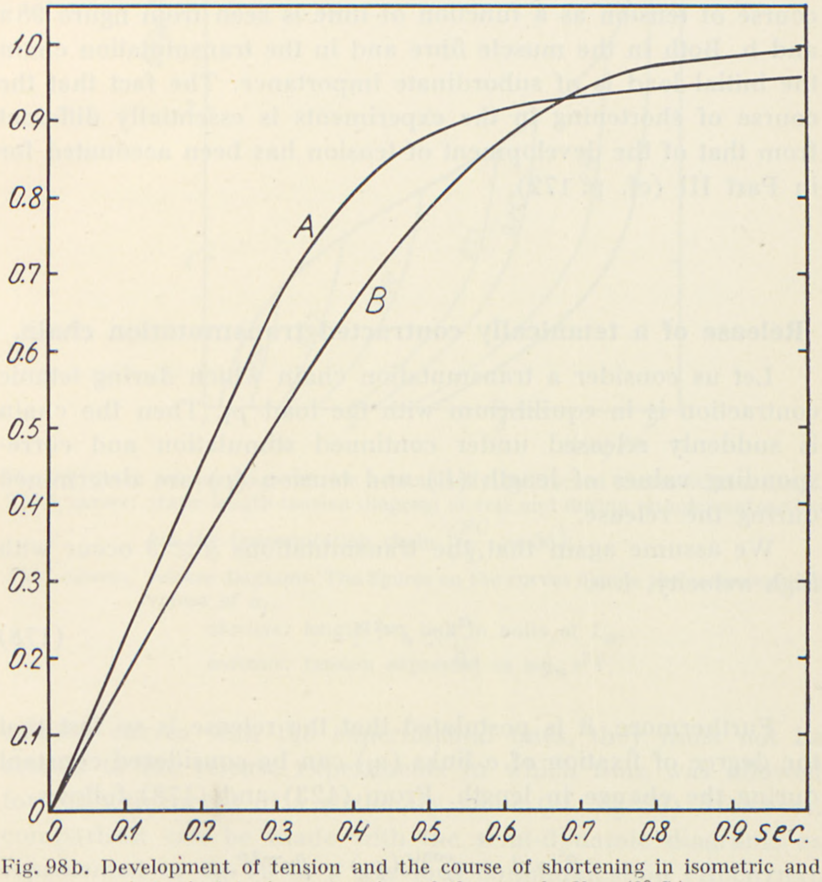


Fig. 98b. Development of tension and the course of shortening in isometric and isotonic tetanic contraction of the muscle fibre (0° C.).
A. extra tension (length 140).
B. shortening (load $0.2\,P_0$ corresponding to $e^{2p} \gtrsim 2.5$ cf. fig. 96).
abscissa: time in sec.
ordinate: increase in tension and shortening divided by their final values.

The development of tension computed for $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$ and $FC = 9$ sec.$^{-1}$ is given in fig. 98a. In the same figure examples are given for the theoretical course of shortening (cf. p. 264). With $e^{2p} = 1$, tension and shortening in the single transmutation chain develop with approximately the same velocity. With $e^{2p} = 4$, the development of shortening is delayed as compared with the tension. This difference will increase with increasing values of e^{2p} (cf. the expression for λ_1 (152)).

The agreement between the experimental and the computed course of tension as a function of time is seen from figure 98a and b. Both in the muscle fibre and in the transmutation chain the initial load is of subordinate importance. The fact that the course of shortening in the experiments is essentially different from that of the development of tension has been accounted for in Part III (cf. p. 172).

Release of a tetanically contracted transmutation chain.

Let us consider a transmutation chain which during tetanic contraction is in equilibrium with the load p_1. Then the chain is suddenly released under continued stimulation and corresponding values of length (L) and tension (p) are determined during the release.

We assume again that the transmutations $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ occur with high velocity, i. e.

$$\frac{\alpha_1}{\beta} \simeq e^{-2p}. \tag{178}$$

Furthermore, it is postulated that the release is so fast that the degree of fixation of α links (α_f) can be considered constant during the change in length. From (123) and (178) follows

$$\beta = 1 - \alpha_f^{\text{contr}}(p_1) - \beta e^{-2p},$$

i. e.

$$\beta = \frac{1 - \alpha_f^{\text{contr}}(p_1)}{1 + e^{-2p}},$$

and hence:

$$L_{\text{release}}(p) = 1 + 3\,\frac{1 - a_f^{\text{contr}}(p_1)}{1 + e^{-2p}}. \tag{179}$$

The calculated release diagrams for $\frac{FC}{D} = 30$ are shown in fig. 99 for different degrees of fixation. In comparing these cal-

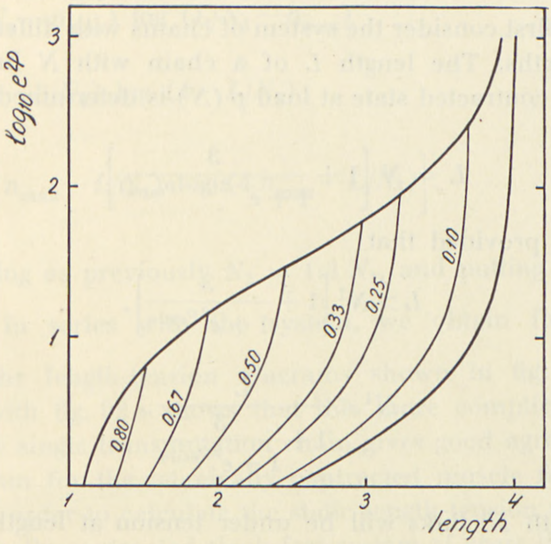


Fig. 99. Quick release diagrams for a tetanically contracted transmutation chain.
Thick curves: static length-tension diagram at rest and during tetanic contraction for the transmutation chain $\left(\frac{FC}{D} = 30\right)$.
Thin curves: release diagrams. The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of a_f.
abscissa: length per link in units of L_a.
ordinate: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

culated curves with the experimental ones, they must not be related to the release experiments in which time was allowed for the adjustment of a stationary value (cf. fig. 50). However, comparison can be made with the semi-dynamic diagrams as represented in fig. 19 in a previous communication (Buchthal 1942). As to the relation between shortening heat and fig. 99 see p. 284.

The static length-tension diagram for a tetanically contracted system of cross-linked transmutation chains.

Let us determine the static length-tension diagram during tetanic contraction for the two systems previously considered, viz. the system consisting of transmutation chains with different equilibrium lengths and the slack-free system of cross-linked chains.

1). We first consider the system of chains with different equilibrium lengths. The length L of a chain with N links in the tetanically contracted state at load $p\,(N)$ is determined by (130):

$$L = N\left[1 + \frac{3}{1 + e^{-2(p - p_{\text{extra}})}}\right]. \tag{180}$$

Therefore, provided that

$$L > N^1\left[1 + \frac{3}{1 + e^{2\,p_{\text{extra}}}}\right],$$

i. e.

$$N^1 < \frac{L}{1 + \dfrac{3}{1 + e^{2\,p_{\text{extra}}}}}, \tag{181}$$

a chain with N^1 links will be under tension at length L of the system. The tension $p\,(N)$ in a chain satisfying this condition is according to (180) determined by:

$$2\,(p\,(N) - p_{\text{extra}}) = \log\left(\frac{L-N}{4\,N-L}\right). \tag{182}$$

The mean tension p at length L for the system of chains is (104):

$$p = \frac{1}{N_2 - N_1}\sum_{N=N_1}^{N_{\max}} p\,(N), \tag{183}$$

where now $N_{\max}$ is the lowest of the figures N_2 and $\dfrac{L}{1 + \dfrac{3}{1 + e^{2\,p_{\text{extra}}}}}$.

Introducing $n = \dfrac{N}{N_1}$ and replacing the summation with an integration, (182) and (183) will give:

$$2\,p = 2\,p_{\text{extra}} \cdot \frac{n_{\max}-1}{n_2-1} + \frac{1}{n_2-1}\int_1^{n_{\max}} \log \frac{L/N_1 - n}{4\,n - L/N_1}\,dn. \tag{184}$$

From this we obtain:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2\,p = 2\,p_{\text{extra}} \cdot \frac{n_{\max}-1}{n_2-1} + \frac{1}{n_2-1} \Big[& (L/N_1 - 1)\log(L/N_1 - 1) \\ & -(L/N_1 - n_{\max})\log(L/N_1 - n_{\max}) \\ & +\frac{1}{4}(4 - L/N_1)\log(4 - L/N_1) \\ & -\frac{1}{4}(4\,n_{\max} - L/N_1)\log(4\,n_{\max} - L/N_1)\Big]. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{185}$$

Choosing as previously $N_2 = 1.3\,N_1$, and putting a Hookean elasticity in series with the system, we obtain for $\frac{FC}{D} = 15$ and 30 the length-tension diagrams shown in fig. 92c. Comparison with fig. 92a shows that this more complicated model just as the single transmutation chain gives good agreement with the diagram for the tetanically contracted muscle fibre.

2). In order to calculate the static length-tension diagram for the tetanically contracted slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains, we will assume that the fixating agent can act both on free α-links and on α-links in aggregates. Furthermore, we assume that fixation does not alter the ability of the links to form cross-linkages. The equilibrium conditions corresponding to (124) and (125) show that with these assumptions the length-tension diagram in contraction can be obtained from the diagram at rest in the same simple way, as the contraction diagram for a transmutation chain can be derived from its diagram at rest.

Fig. 92b shows the contraction diagrams obtained in this way from the rest diagrams shown in the same figure. The difference between these contraction diagrams and that of a single transmutation chain is only of minor importance. The similarity with the diagrams of the muscle fibre is striking. It is further increased when a Hookean elasticity is put in series with the cross-linked system of transmutation chains (fig. 94).

Shortening velocity and relaxation velocity in a system of cross-linked transmutation chains.

As shown in the preceding section, there was a remarkable similarity between the force-velocity relations both with regard to shortening and relaxation in the single transmutation chain

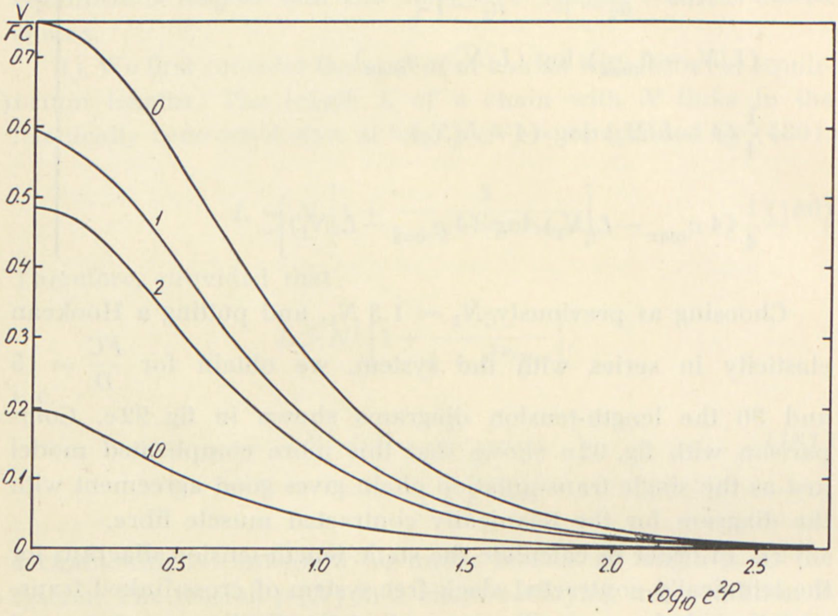


Fig. 100. Maximum shortening velocity as a function of the load for the slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains.
The figures on the curves denote the corresponding value of K, defined by (117).
The curve denoted by 0 is that for a single transmutation chain.
abscissa: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2P}$.
ordinate: shortening velocity in L_0 per sec. divided by FC.

and in the muscle fibre. This makes it worth while to analyse the force-velocity relations in a system of cross-linked chains, the mechanical reactions of which in several respects are more closely related to those of the muscle fibre. Let us for this purpose consider the slightly simplified model with cross-linkages but without slack (p. 249). By using the formerly applied arguments based on the assumption given in (150) we get the following expressions for the maximum velocities of shortening and relaxation:

$$V_0 \approx \frac{3\,FC}{1+e^{-2p}} \cdot \left(\frac{\alpha_1}{N}\right)_{\text{rest}} \tag{186}$$

and

$$V_d^0 \approx \frac{3\,D}{1+e^{-2p}} \cdot \left(\frac{\alpha_{1f}}{N}\right)_{\text{contr}}, \tag{187}$$

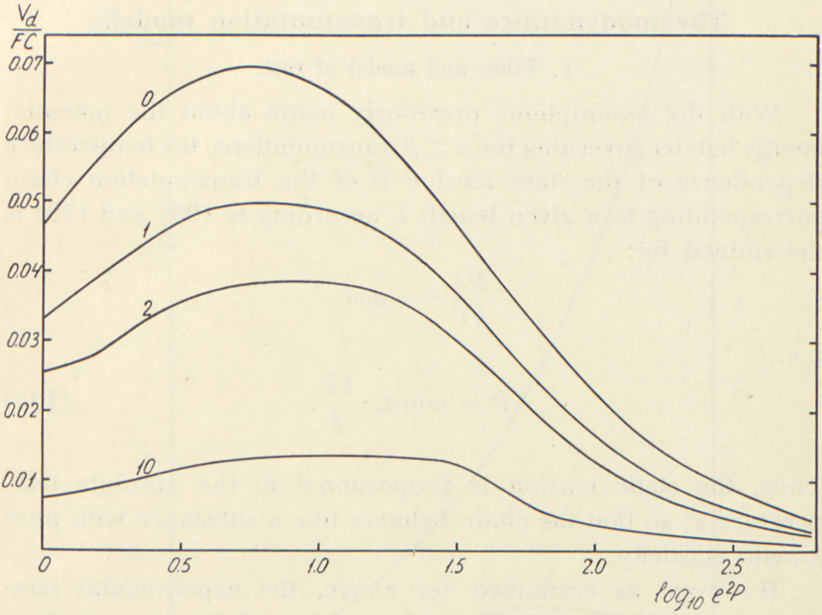


Fig. 101. Maximum relaxation velocity as a function of the load for the slack-free system of cross-linked transmutation chains.
The figures on the curves denote the corresponding values of K, defined by (117). The curve denoted by 0 is that for a single transmutation chain.

$$\frac{FC}{D} = 30.$$

abscissa: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.
ordinate: relaxation velocity in L_0 per sec. divided by FC.

where $\left(\frac{\alpha_{1f}}{N}\right)$ denotes the fraction of links which are fixated but not cross-linked. By introducing the values for $\left(\frac{\alpha_1}{N}\right)_{\text{rest}}$ and $\left(\frac{\alpha_{1f}}{N}\right)_{\text{contr}}$ we can calculate the force-velocity relations given in figs. 100 and 101. A comparison of these curves with the relation found for the single chain shows that the application of the cross-linked system mainly changes the level but not the shape of the curves. Thus, the cross-linked system will be suited to describe force-velocity relations as well, when the values chosen for *FC* are correspondingly increased as compared with those applied in the single chain.

Thermodynamics and transmutation model.

1. Fibre and model at rest.

With the assumptions previously made about the potential energy barrier governing the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations, the temperature dependence of the static tension P of the transmutation chain corresponding to a given length L according to (90) and (79) is determined by:

$$\frac{P\lambda}{kT} = \text{const.},$$

i. e.

$$P = \text{const.} \cdot \frac{kT}{\lambda}. \qquad (188)$$

Thus, the static tension is proportional to the absolute temperature T, so that the chain behaves like a substance with pure kinetic elasticity.

However, as accounted for above, the experimental temperature coefficient of the static tension of the muscle fibre is at most only one third of that corresponding to kinetic elasticity .This implies that the simple kinetic theory of elasticity is not suited for the description of the elasticity of the muscle fibre. A calculation of that part of the tension $\left(T\frac{dP}{dT}\right)$ which might arise from changes in entropy, based on the experimentally determined temperature dependence of the static tension of the muscle fibre (Buchthal *et al.* 1944 a), clearly demonstrates this fact.

From the curves of fig. 102 it is seen that entropy at small degrees of stretch may account for at most approximately 40 per cent of the total tension in the fibre. With increasing elongation the possible part played by entropy decreases considerably and at length 180 it is reduced to only 10 per cent. Corresponding results were obtained by Woods (1946) in an investigation of

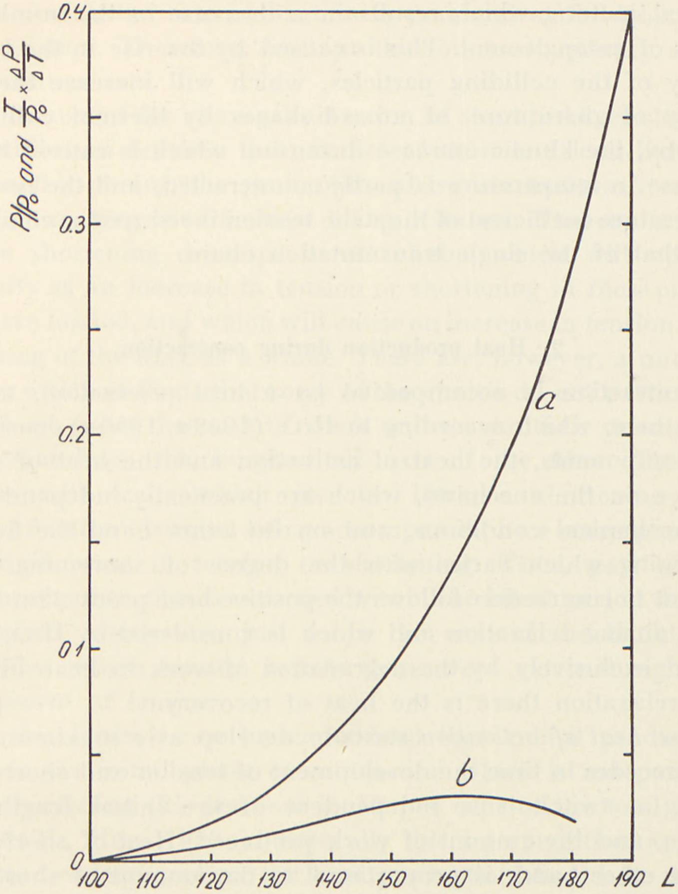


Fig. 102. The component of the tension in the resting fibre arising from entropy.
a) length-tension diagram, 0° C.
b) $T \dfrac{\Delta P}{\Delta T}$.
ordinate: tension and possible entropy contribution in units of P_0.
abscissa: length in per cent of L_0.

the temperature dependence of the static tension in wool fibres and myosin films.

While the single chain cannot adequately account for the experimental findings, the system of cross-linked transmutation chains can help to understand the reduction in the temperature coefficient which characterizes the muscle as compared with the single chain. A rise in temperature will cause a change in the textural pattern, which results in a decrease in the number of points of entanglement. This is caused by the rise in the kinetic energy of the colliding particles, which will increase the possibility of disrupture of cross-linkages by thermal collisions. Thereby, the kinetic increase in tension which is caused by the increase in temperature is partly counteracted, and the resulting temperature coefficient of the static tension is reduced as compared with that of the single transmutation chain.

2. Heat production during contraction.

Contraction is accompanied by a heat production, termed initial heat, which according to Hill (1949a, 1950a) consists of two components, the heat of activation and the heat of maintenance on the one hand, which are practically independent of the mechanical conditions, and on the other hand the heat of shortening which varies with the degree of shortening. Subsequent to contraction follows the positive heat production which arises during relaxation and which is considered by Hill to be caused exclusively by the degradation of work to heat. Finally, after relaxation there is the heat of recovery.

The *heat of activation* starts to develop at a maximum rate and precedes in time the development of tension and shortening. During a twitch it is independent of the initial length, the tension, and the amount of work produced. Heat of shortening, on the other hand, is proportional to the amount of shortening but independent of the work produced.

Obviously it is imperative for any theory of contraction that an attempt be made to account for these different phases of heat production, for their rate of development, and their dependence or independence of the mechanical conditions.

The present theory assumes a fixation of short linkages as an essential prerequisite for the process of contraction. Let us assume that this fixation is accompanied by a positive heat production arising from the reaction heat produced by the interaction of groups in the a link with the fixating factor and from the decrease in internal energy due to the exclusion of the short modification from a transmutation. Since at the start of stimulation the fixating factor can attack the relatively largest number of short linkages, the rate of fixation is maximal at the beginning of stimulation. Therefore, heat production must quickly attain its maximum rate.

As accounted for above, the fixation of short linkages changes the equilibrium between the number of short and long linkages in the active chains, the probability of transmutations from the short to the long modification being reduced. Thereby a progressive shortening develops in all chains which will appear externally as an increase in tension or shortening in *those* chains which are loaded, and which will cause an increase in tension or in shortening of the fibre as a whole. There are, however, a number of signs which indicate that some of the chains do not participate in the load, either because of slack or because their orientation is different from the longitudinal axis of the fibre. Thereby fixations will occur which give an intrinsic shortening with "heat of fixation" without being accompanied by a corresponding external increase in tension or shortening. Thus, part of the initial heat production is recorded within the latent period during the intrinsic shortening, just as in the case of the initial rise in stiffness which started before there were external signs of development of tension.

On this basis it can be understood that a heat production occurs in the initial phase of contraction which is independent of the shortening (25 per cent to 50 per cent of the total heat, Hill 1949b, Hill 1950c). Naturally this interpretation applies chiefly to low loads, where the heat production should be determined exclusively by the slack in the minute structure. Assuming that heat of activation arises from internal shortening which causes the disappearance of slack, one should expect that the amount of heat would be reduced when contraction is initiated at high initial length, since slack is diminished. The protracted production of heat which actually occurs at high elongations could partly be interpreted by this reduction in slack (Hill 1950c). However, the finding that the amount of heat of activation is of the same order of magnitude at low and high degrees of stretch needs an additional explanation. One might assume that heat of activation at high stretch is due chiefly to the extension of the previously mentioned visco-elastic series element (cf. p. 170). The elongation of this element is compensated for by the internal shortening which in turn gives rise to heat of activation in the active part and heat arising from degraded work in the passive part of the structure.

If the transmutation chain is allowed to shorten, the number of fixations will increase approximately linearly with the isotonic shortening (cf. p. 267). The amount of heat produced will only depend on the number of fixations and not on the velocity with

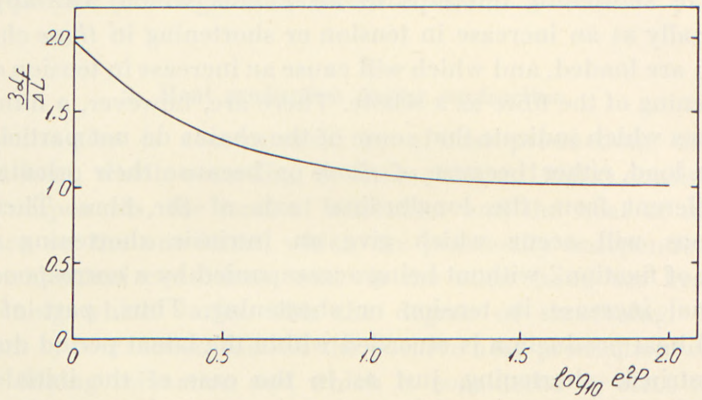


Fig. 103. The ratio between degree of fixation and shortening as a function of the tension in the transmutation chain.

abscissa: tension expressed as $\log_{10} e^{2p}$.

ordinate: $\frac{3\,a_f}{\Delta L}$, where a_f is the degree of fixation and ΔL is the shortening; approximated by $1 + e^{-2p}$.

which the fixations occur, i. e. it will be independent of the shortening velocity. Thus, that part of the shortening in the chains which is not manifested externally, accounts for the heat of activation; while the part responsible for the external shortening accounts for the *heat of shortening* which at a given load is proportional to the amount of shortening. This is in agreement with the experimentally found proportionality between heat of shortening and shortening (Hill 1938, 1949a). In the transmutation chain the proportionality factor for this relation will vary with the load. Fig. 99 gives the length-tension relation for a transmutation chain with different degrees of fixation (different values of a_f). Under isotonic conditions a given variation in a_f causes a larger variation in length at high loads than at low loads. By definition a given variation in a_f corresponds to a given amount of shortening.

Therefore, the shortening heat per unit of shortening decreases with increasing load. The proportionality factor for this decrease $\approx 1 + e^{-2p}$ is given in fig. 103. A corresponding tendency to a change in the proportionality factor between heat of shortening and shortening (a) can also be observed in whole muscle (cf. e. g. the experiment given in fig. 7, Hill 1949b). The theoretically found decrease in shortening heat with increasing load may, however, be concealed in the muscle. Considering that especially at high load the work of the transmutation chains is impeded by shunt and series elastic elements, a given external shortening velocity will correspond to a somewhat higher internal shortening, which in turn is associated with a mechanical loss and an increased heat production.

The fact that tensionless relaxation occurs without a measurable heat production according to Hill (1949b) is due either to a relaxation which actually has no heat production or to the compensation of a negative heat by a corresponding positive heat production. In an earlier part of this paper we have dealt with the strong internal forces which must be assumed to arise during contraction and which impede shortening of the muscle fibre even when it does not shorten against an external load (elastic locking). This internal resistance represents a certain amount of potential energy which is degraded to heat in the relaxation phase. Hence, if there is no external positive heat production, one must expect a negative heat associated with the process of relaxation which neutralizes the previously mentioned "frictional" heat.

It is in agreement with this assumption, that a slow stretch during isometric contraction is associated with a negative heat production (Hill 1938, Fenn 1924, Aubert 1948); this effect is interpreted as being due to an enforced relaxation in the structure arising from the elongation.

Maintenance of contraction in a tetanus is associated with *heat of maintenance*. According to Hill (1949a) this is considered the summed effect of the heat of activation released by each stimulus, implying that the heat production during relaxation is zero. At the level of tetanic contraction, activation and relaxation balance each other and it is the intensity of relaxation which determines the intensity with which a reactivation will take place. As mentioned, there are certain indications that relaxation is accompanied by a negative heat which counteracts the positive heat produced by the intrinsic work of deformation. According to this conception heat of maintenance would be interpreted as the difference between heat of activation (i. e. the positive heat accompanying fixation) and the negative heat concomitant with relaxation. It may be emphasized that the occurrence of a heat of maintenance is incompatible with the assumption of reversibility between fixation and defixation since this would imply that heat of maintenance was zero. Hence, the negative heat supposed to be associated with relaxation must be somewhat less than the positive heat which accompanies fixation and the mobilization of the fixating factor.

According to Abbott (1951) the heat of maintenance decreases asymptotically within the first 5 seconds of tetanic contraction. This course of heat production may indicate that the asymptotic value corresponds to the *actual* heat of maintenance, while the excess heat is the result of the internal adjustment in the texture (internal shortening in slack chains and degraded work arising from the elongation of the visco-elastic series element). This interpretation is supported by the finding that the maximum relaxation velocity within the same time interval of 5 seconds (0° C.) is reduced in the same way as heat of maintenance (p. 183). Moreover, the time course of adjustment after an isotonic transient during contraction extends over several seconds as well.

Summary of transmutation theory (Part IV).

In the first section of this Part a review is given of direct investigations of the minute structure of muscle. This includes investigations with the ordinary microscope, measurements of birefringence, transparency and diffraction with visible light, electron microscopy, and X-ray analysis. The muscle fibre in its minute structure has a relatively good, but not complete longitudinal orientation. This orientation is somewhat increased by both stretch and contraction. However, the increase in orientation by stretch is essentially less than in a substance with pure kinetic elasticity. There exists a considerable degree of orientation in the muscle fibre already at equilibrium length and the deformation caused by stretch and contraction must be attributed mainly to alterations in the length of the chain molecule.

The basic minute structural element is assumed to consist of a molecular chain characterized by two states of equilibrium with different lengths. A transmutation from one state to the other is described as a transition over a potential energy barrier, from one potential minimum to another. The energy for transmutations is derived from thermal collisions and from the external load acting on the chain. The transmutations will cause a continuously repeated alternation between the two modifications within the molecule. A chain of this type will display both long-range elasticity and delayed adjustment, i. e. visco-elasticity.

The static and dynamic mechanical properties of a transmutation chain were analysed quantitatively and compared with the experimental findings on isolated fibres at rest. Furthermore, chains with transmuting links as structural elements give a possibility to consider in a new light the mechanical reactions and the minute structural changes which accompany contraction, thereby giving a possibility to develop a theory of contraction in quantitative terms.

The *static properties* of the single transmutation chain were derived from a calculation of the probability per time unit ($W_{\alpha \to \beta}$) of the occurrence of a transmutation from the short (α) to the long (β) modification and vice versa ($W_{\beta \to \alpha}$). The probability per second of an $\alpha \to \beta$ transmutation is given by the expression

$$\underset{\alpha \to \beta}{W} \approx \nu e^{-\frac{A - P\lambda}{kT}},$$

where A represents the energy of activation, P the load acting on the chain, λ the distance between the equilibrium position (potential minimum) and the peak of the potential barrier, kT the temperature energy, and ν a factor giving the frequency of thermal collisions with due consideration to the spatial possibilities of a transmutation.

Conversely, the probability per sec. ($W_{\beta \to \alpha}$) of a transmutation from the long to the short modification is given by:

$$\underset{\beta \to \alpha}{W} \approx \nu e^{-\frac{A + P\lambda}{kT}}.$$

The *static length-tension diagram* of the transmutation chain is similar to that of the resting fibre (cf. fig. 92a and b). The minor deviations can be accounted for by assuming a Hookean elasticity in series with a system of cross-linked transmutation chains. Owing to the non-uniform distribution of tension and the slack which will occur in this network, even at high degrees of stretch part of the links will be in the α modification. This may explain the difficulty of clearly differentiating in the X-ray diffraction pattern between a pure α and a pure β state.

Dynamic properties of a single transmutation chain as computed from the adjustment after a sudden increase or decrease in load (isotonic transient) can be expressed in terms of a single Voigt-*element*. A cross-linked system of chains, on the other hand, can be described by a spectrum of retardation times for a Voigt-*model* of a similar type as that used to describe the dynamic properties of the muscle fibre. The long retardation times, characterizing the course of creep and stress-relaxation in the muscle fibre, are mainly caused by disrupture and reformation of points of entanglement in the texture in which the transmutation chains are organized. The short retardation times correspond to adjustment in the chains themselves as well.

The configuration of the minute structure during *contraction* is assumed not to differ in principle from that of the resting fibre. In the model of transmutation chains, developed to describe the mechanical properties of the resting fibre, the length of the molecular chain is determined by the ratio of short and long links. At rest this ratio is influenced by the load via its influence on the probability of transmutations. If we assume the probability of a long $\rightarrow$ short transmutation to be increased or the short $\rightarrow$ long transmutation in some way to be reduced, an active shortening can be obtained at constant load. The decrease in length in contraction is taken as an expression of a relative increase in the number of links in the α modification. This increase is assumed to arise from a fixation of a number of links in the α-state in such a way that they are prevented from participating in the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations. The fixation is thought to be brought about directly or indirectly by the stimulus, e. g. by a "factor" which reacts with the α links of the protein chains, which thereby are locked and excluded from transmutation.

For the time being the physico-chemical correlate of this fixation can only be a matter for speculation, and it remains an open question whether it consists in the removal or in the addition of some compound to the a link. In the active phase we assume a continuous fixation and defixation (i. e. disappearance of fixations) of a links. The frequency of fixations is assumed to be proportional to the concentration C of a fixating agent and to the number of possibilities of fixation, i. e. proportional to the number of non-fixated a links. The frequency of defixation on the other hand is supposed to be proportional to the number of a links in the fixated state. On this basis we have calculated both the static and dynamic behaviour of the chain with fixated links. The S-shaped length-tension diagram of the tetanically contracted transmutation chain is in good agreement with the experimental findings (fig. 92 a and b). In the transmutation chain the curves for isotonic and isometric contraction coincide. The difference found in the experiments can be accounted for by the internal forces arising in the more complicated model with cross-linked chains The increased stiffness which characterizes contraction can be understood from the reduced number of links which can participate in the transmutations. Thus, if half of the links are fixated, the stiffness will be doubled. The theory can account not only for stationary or quasi-stationary properties in contraction. There is good agreement between the calculated increase in tension in a chain and the development of tension as a function of time found in the experiments (fig. 98 a and b). Both in the muscle fibre and in the transmutation model the initial load is of minor importance for the development of tension. The theory can also explain that a shortening develops more slowly as a function of time than a change in length when a transient is applied to the resting fibre. Since the largest number of a links is available for fixation at the beginning of contraction, shortening with a certain delay will attain a maximum velocity. Then it will continue more slowly as possibilities arise for fixation when new links are formed by thermal collisions. The shortening is approximately proportional to the degree of fixation. This is of interest for the understanding of heat production when shortening heat is assumed to arise from the processes associated with the fixation. The relation between *shortening velocity and load* as calculated for the transmutation chain compares well with the experimental force-velocity relation (fig. 96).

Relaxation is considered to be brought about by the removal of the fixating factor, thereby giving rise to an increased possibility of $\alpha \rightarrow \beta$ transmutations which in turn cause an elongation of the chain. As a function of load the computed curves are of the same type as the experimental ones (fig. 97). Both have a maximum at a moderate load and the calculated velocities are of a similar order of magnitude. The investigation of a cross-linked model of transmutation chains with fixated elements shows in principle the same properties as the single transmutation chain with respect to the length-tension diagram, the force-velocity relation, and the relation between relaxation velocity and load.

Thermodynamics: The temperature dependence of tension at constant length in the single transmutation chain at rest corresponds to a proportionality between tension and absolute temperature, just as in a pure kinetic elasticity. However, with increasing temperature the textural pattern arising from the cross-linked network of transmutation chains will become more flexible, the number of points of entanglement being reduced. Thus, the interaction between the chains will reduce the temperature coefficient. In the experiments on the isolated resting fibre the temperature dependence maximally amounted to one third of that which corresponds to a proportionality with absolute temperature and, therefore, entropy would account for at most one third of the static tension. This finding is considered an indication that the simple kinetic theory of rubber-like substances does not apply to the muscle fibre.

Finally an attempt was made to interpret the different phases of heat production during contraction in terms of the transmutation model. Assuming that fixation is accompanied by a positive heat production, the latter will quickly attain its maximum value, since the velocity of fixation is maximal in the initial phase of contraction. Moreover, the proportionality which in the experiments on whole muscle was found to exist between shortening and shortening heat (Hill 1938) corresponds to the approximate proportionality between fixation and shortening in the activated transmutation chain. The fact that part of the heat produced (heat of activation) is recorded early after the stimulus and is independent of the external mechanical conditions, such as load and shortening, is explained by the presence of slack elements the activation of which will cause heat without manifesting itself as external shortening.

It is by no means suggested that the scheme of minute structural organization and function outlined here is final, but it appears to us that it comprises a framework with a simple theoretical basis into which most of the data for a large number of different experimental conditions can be quantitatively fitted with an error not exceeding the variation which is unavoidable in biological material.

APPENDIX I

The non-linear length-tension diagram and the amplitude dependence of the stiffness.

A non-linear length-tension diagram can be expected to cause a variation of the vibrational stiffness with changes in the amplitude of the vibrations. In the following we shall investigate whether the approximately exponential length-tension relation for the muscle fibre which is found statically and dynamically:

$$P(L) \approx P_{st} \cdot [e^{\varkappa(L-L_0)} - 1] \tag{1}$$

can explain the direction and magnitude of the experimentally found variations of stiffness with amplitude.

The change in tension ΔP accompanying a small change in length γ from an initial length L can be written as a Taylor's expansion:

$$\Delta P(\gamma) = G \cdot \gamma + k_1 \gamma^2 + k_2 \gamma^3 + \cdots, \tag{2}$$

where $G, k_1, k_2 \cdots$ are constants depending on L, characterizing the length-tension relation. From (2) it is seen that

$$G = \frac{dP}{d\gamma} \quad \text{for} \quad \gamma = 0, \tag{3}$$

i. e. G is the stiffness at length L. If $k_1 = k_2 = \cdots = 0$, we have a material which at least for small values of γ, obeys Hooke's law.

The higher order terms in (2) represent for the amplitudes applied to the muscle fibre only small corrections of the first order term $G\gamma$. From (1) we obtain the following expression for $\Delta P(\gamma)$:

$$\Delta P(\gamma) = P_{st} e^{\varkappa(L-L_0)} \left[\varkappa\gamma + \frac{1}{2}\varkappa^2\gamma^2 + \frac{1}{6}\varkappa^3\gamma^3 + \cdots\right]. \tag{4}$$

Comparison with (2) gives:

$$G(L) = \varkappa(P(L) + P_{st}). \tag{5}$$

This shows that $\varkappa$ is the relative stiffness.

We now impose upon the fibre the external alternating force: $\sigma(t) = \sigma_0 \sin \omega t$. Here σ_0 denotes the amplitude of the force and ω its cyclic frequency. The total system: muscle fibre plus equivalent mass m of the recording system moves according to the equation of motion:

$$m \frac{d^2 \gamma}{dt^2} + \eta \frac{d\gamma}{dt} + \Delta P(\gamma) = \sigma_0 \sin \omega t, \tag{6}$$

where $\eta \frac{d\gamma}{dt}$ denotes the damping force. The resulting periodic motion can formally be written:

$$\gamma(t) = a_0 + a_1 \cos \omega t + b_1 \sin \omega t + a_2 \cos 2\omega t + b_2 \sin 2\omega t + \cdots, \tag{7}$$

where the constants $a_0\, a_1\, b_1\, a_2\, b_2 \cdots$ depend on ω and σ_0. The main terms in this expression in our case, where the higher order terms in (2) are small, will be $a_1 \cos \omega t$ and $b_1 \sin \omega t$. The other terms only represent minor corrections.

We can define the *resonance frequency* ω_0 as the frequency at which $b_1 = 0$, i. e. the main term of (7) is displaced 90° in relation to the alternating force. The resonance frequency ω_0 and the corresponding values of the constants in (7) can be determined from the infinite number of equations obtained when (7) and (2) are inserted in (6).

Neglecting the higher order terms in (2) one gets the well-known expressions:

$$\omega_0 = \sqrt{\frac{G}{m}} \tag{8}$$

and

$$\gamma(t) = \gamma_0 \cos \omega_0 t, \quad \text{where} \quad \gamma_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\eta \omega_0}.$$

The resonance frequency is independent of the amplitude σ_0 and, therefore, of γ_0 as well, i. e. we have no amplitude dependence in the first order approximation.

Next we will take into account the second term: $k_1 \gamma^2$ in (2). As mentioned, this term in our case is considerably smaller than $G\gamma$. According to (4) the ratio between the two terms is $\frac{1}{2} \varkappa \gamma$. From the experimental values of $\varkappa$ the ratio is estimated maximally to be of the order of magnitude of 0.10.

The relative change of the resonance frequency with amplitude which is half the relative change in $m\omega_0^2$ (elastic stiffness) in the second order approximation is found to be approximately: $-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{k_1 a_1}{G}\right)^2$, i. e. proportional to the square of the ratio mentioned above. One might have expected that the change would be proportional to $\frac{k_1 a_1^2}{G a_1}$. However, the change is reduced to the amount stated since the term $k_1\gamma^2$ in the half-period where $\gamma > 0$ causes an *in*crease in stiffness, while in the half-period where $\gamma < 0$ it produces a corresponding *de*crease.

The extra contribution to the relative change in resonance frequency arising from the third order term $k_2\gamma^3$ is approximately: $\frac{3}{8}\frac{k_2 a_1^2}{G}$ (ignoring the influence of the damping which is of minor importance). The third order term thus gives either a positive or a negative contribution according as $k_2 > 0$ or < 0. Comparison with (4) shows that this contribution in the case of the muscle fibre is positive and equal to one half of that arising from the second order term.

Expressed as the decrease in $m\omega_0^2$ with amplitude, the amplitude dependence resulting from the second and the third order terms in (2) can therefore be written:

$$C a_1^2, \tag{9}$$

where C depends on G, k_1, and k_2, and to a smaller degree on η. Disregarding the dependence on η, one obtains:

$$C = \frac{1}{8}\varkappa^2 G. \tag{10}$$

If G' and G'' denote the stiffnesses (i. e. $m\omega_0^2$) corresponding to the amplitudes a_1' and a_1'', we have according to (9):

$$C = \frac{G' - G''}{(a_1'')^2 - (a_1')^2}. \tag{11}$$

In the following table we show values of C calculated from (10) giving a measure of the amplitude dependence which can arise from the non-linearity of the length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre. For $\varkappa$ the expression (5) is applied and for G we use the limiting value of $m\omega_0^2$ corresponding to very small amplitudes. Furthermore, Table 14 contains values of C calculated from (11) giving the actually determined amplitude dependence. The data are based on a series of experiments with different fibre lengths. The equilibrium length on an

Table 14.
Amplitude dependence and length-tension diagram.

length in per cent of L_0	load P in dynes	G' dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}	G'' dynes $\times$ cm^{-1}	C (10)	C (11)
		$\times 10^3$	$\times 10^3$	$\times 10^7$	$\times 10^7$
130	140	10.0	9.0	0.42	145
155	315	16.4	15.7	0.37	102
169	670	31.3	28.8	0.56	362
201	1310	58.5	52.6	1.16	855

average amounted to 0.48 cm.; the equivalent mass m was 0.045 g, a_1' was 0.1 per cent, and a_1'' 0.2 per cent of the equilibrium length.

It is seen from Table 14 that the amplitude dependence of $m\omega_0^2$ which can be expected solely from the non-linear length-tension relation of the muscle fibre found dynamically and statically, is 300—700 times less than that found experimentally.

(For mathematical details compare e. g. N. W. McLachlan 1950, chapter IV).

APPENDIX II

Amplitude dependence of vibrational stiffness.

The experimental variation of vibrational stiffness with amplitude could not be derived from the non-linearity of the length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre (cf. Appendix I). We had hoped that the transmutation chains introduced in Part IV would give an adequate explanation. In these chains tension is no longer an unambiguous function of the length, since the velocity influences the length-tension diagram as well. However, a calculation of the behaviour of transmutation chains showed that changes in resonance frequency will only appear in the second approximation and, therefore, to a much lower degree than found experimentally. This agrees with the finding that the mechanical reaction of the single transmutation chain to an isotonic transient can be described in terms of a Voigt-element (a linear system) (cf. p. 246).

A system of parallel chains with different equilibrium lengths which can account for the initial slope of the length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre, cannot as such give a significant variation of stiffness with vibrational amplitude.

However, the presence of a large stiffness in series with the transmutation chains can give rise to a significant amplitude dependence of the stiffness. In the calculations it is permissible to consider formally the transmutation chains as Voigt-elements. The viscosity of a Voigt-element in a certain phase of the vibration period may prevent it from following the decreasing external force. This causes the element (i. e. the chain) to become without tension (slack). With increasing amplitude the probability of slack increases. Hence, one gets a decrease in stiffness with increasing amplitude. For suitably high amplitudes all the chains will be without tension during part of the oscillation period. This will occur when the inertial force plus the external alternating force exceeds the constant force acting on the fibre.

As previously mentioned, X-ray diffraction patterns strongly indicate the presence of a crystalline elasticity (G_c) in the muscle fibre. The elasticity of the contractile minute structural elements can be accounted for by transmutations between modifications of different lengths within the protein molecule (cf. Part IV). The essentially stiffer crystalline elasticity is assumed to follow Hooke's law and to have a stiffness exceeding that of the system of chains at the mean tension considered by e. g. 200 times.

In the quantitative treatment we consider a system consisting of a single transmutation chain in series with a Hookean elasticity G_c. Furthermore, the transmutation chain is treated as a Voigt-element with an elasticity G_t and a viscosity η.

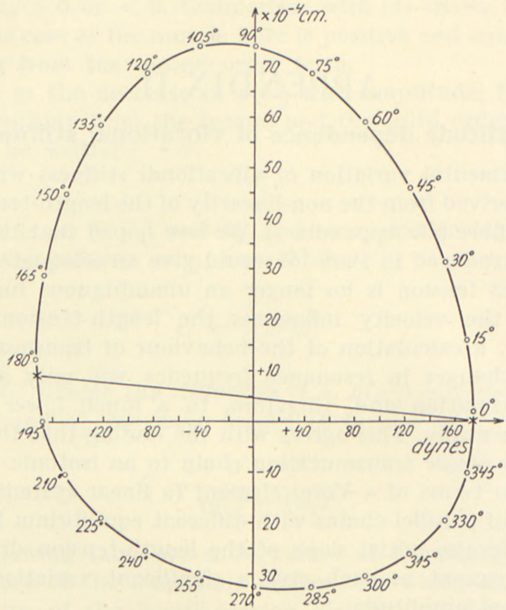


Fig. 104. Lissajous-figure relating the external alternating force and the resulting periodic motion of the system consisting of a Voigt-element in series with a Hookean elasticity plus an inertia.
Constant load = 1000 dynes.
Amplitude of the external alternating force = 170 dynes.
The figures on the curve represent the time, 360° = 1 oscillation period, frequency 400 c.p.s.
abscissa: alternating force in dynes.
ordinate: change in length in μ.

For the measuring of stiffness the recording system plus the analogue of the muscle fibre are acted upon by a periodically alternating force. In a phase in which the imposed force decreases, the large stiffness G_c adjusts itself instantaneously to the varying tension while the damped elasticity (the Voigt-element) cannot follow, i. e. hardly shortens at all. Since the change in length in the crystalline element G_c is insignificant, the inertia of the total system will quickly reduce the tension in the chain to zero and cause it to become slack. As mentioned, this behaviour will give rise to an essential decrease in stiffness with increasing vibrational amplitude.

In order to evaluate the order of magnitude of this amplitude dependence we have solved the equations of motion for the oscillating system in its "free" phase, i. e. the phase in which there is slack, and in the coupled phase, i. e. the phase during which the chain is able to follow the changes in load. The solutions are adjusted so that the resulting motion is periodic with the frequency of the external alternating force. The result, which varies with the amplitude and the frequency of the alternating force, is given as a vector diagram in which the abscissa gives the alternating force, and the ordinate the change in length. The closed curve obtained corresponds to the experimentally found Lissajous figures. The figures given on the periphery of the calculated curve (fig. 104) indicate the time, 360° denoting one oscillation period.

With fixed values of the constant tension and the amplitude of the alternating force, varying frequency gives a number of these Lissajous figures. Among them we select the one which is nearest to resonance, i. e. when the length axis of the egg-shaped curve coincides with the ordinate. When this procedure is used for different force amplitudes, we find that the resonance frequency decreases strongly with increasing force amplitude. As in the experiments the calculated Lissajous figures (fig. 104) are not entirely symmetrical along their length axis.

In the calculations represented in fig. 104 we have used the following values for the parameters of the system:

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_c &= 5 \cdot 10^5 \text{ dynes} \times \text{cm}^{-1} \\
G_t &= 2.5 \cdot 10^3 \text{ dynes} \times \text{cm}^{-1} \\
\eta &= 4.45 \cdot 10^2 \text{ dynes} \times \text{cm}^{-1} \times \text{sec.} \\
\text{and } m &= 0.05 \text{ g},
\end{aligned}
$$

where m is the equivalent mass of the total system. We have calculated partly the resonance frequency corresponding to very small amplitudes and partly the resonance frequency corresponding to a force amplitude of 17 per cent of the constant load, P, which is assumed to be 1000 dynes.

In the experiments we have found for the same load and the same force amplitude a reduction in the resonance frequency of 10 per cent. The calculations give a reduction amounting to 20 per cent. The experimental and theoretical results are compiled in Table 15.

It appears from the table that the constants used in the present example are not completely suited for a description of the dynamic properties of the muscle fibre. However, the main object of the calculations was to show that the model used really displays an amplitude dependence of a direction and magnitude similar to that found experimentally.

The different amplitude dependence found in the resting muscle fibre and in the tetanically contracted fibre, and the difference between

Table 15.
Amplitude dependence.

	force ampl. in per cent of P	length ampl. in per cent of L_0	elastic stiffness	viscous stiffness	stiffness ratio	frequency c. p. s.
			$\times 10^3$	$\times 10^3$		
exp.	~ 0	~ 0	55	85	1.54	169
	17	0.5	46	81	1.76	153
calc.	~ 0	~ 0	500	58	0.116	500
	17	1.1	312	32	0.100	400

amplitude dependence in rubber and in muscle must be ascribed to the difference in slack and creep properties in the different cases.

APPENDIX III

Shortening velocity as a function of load in the isolated fibre and in whole muscle.

Let us consider a "muscle" consisting of two fibres, fibre 1 and fibre 2, where the equilibrium length of fibre 2 is 20 per cent higher than that of fibre 1, and where the ends of the fibres are supposed to be coupled. We shall determine the relation between shortening velocity and load for this idealized muscle.

On account of the difference in equilibrium length a load P will be unevenly distributed between the fibres and the ratio in which it is divided will vary with the load. From the static length-tension diagram of the muscle fibre (fig. 11) one finds the ratio to vary between 2.4 and 4 when P varies between 0.1 P_0 and 2 P_0 (P_0 referring to a single fibre). In the following calculations we assume a value of 3 for the ratio independent of the load.

The fibres are considered to be composed of a contractile component obeying the force-velocity relation and an exponential series elasticity. Thus, we have for the elasticities:

$$\frac{dP_1}{dL} = \varkappa^1 (P_1 + P_{st}^1) \tag{1}$$

and

$$\frac{dP_2}{dL} = \frac{\varkappa^1}{1.2} (P_2 + P_{st}^1), \tag{2}$$

where P_1 and P_2 denote the load on fibre 1 and 2, respectively, i. e.

$$P_1 + P_2 = P, \tag{3}$$

and where L is the length while $\varkappa^1$ and P_{st}^1 are constants to which in accordance with the experiments (cf. Part III) we ascribe the values:

$$P_{st}^1 = 0.05\, P_0 \tag{4}$$

and

$$\varkappa^1 = 33 \text{ cm}^{-1}. \tag{5}$$

For loads below P_0 we determine the shortening velocity of the contractile components of the fibres from Hill's equation, i. e.:

$$(P_1 + a)\,(V_1 + b) = (P_0 + a) \cdot b \tag{6}$$

and

$$(P_2 + a)\,(V_2 + 1.2\,b) = (P_0 + a) \cdot 1.2b. \tag{7}$$

For loads exceeding P_0 we modify these relations to

$$(P_1 + a)\,(4\,V_1 + b) = (P_0 + a) \cdot b \tag{8}$$

$$(P_2 + a)\,(4\,V_2 + 1.2b) = (P_0 + a) \cdot 1.2b. \tag{9}$$

This seems justified from Katz's force-velocity curves (Katz 1939).
From (6) and (7) one obtains:

$$V_1 = b \cdot \frac{P_0 - P_1}{P_1 + a} \quad \text{for} \quad P_1 < P_0 \tag{10}$$

and

$$V_2 = 1.2\,b \cdot \frac{P_0 - P_2}{P_2 + a} \quad \text{for} \quad P_2 < P_0. \tag{11}$$

Furthermore:

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{4}\,b \cdot \frac{P_0 - P_1}{P_1 + a} \quad \text{for} \quad P_1 > P_0 \tag{12}$$

and

$$V_2 = \frac{1}{4} \cdot 1.2\,b \cdot \frac{P_0 - P_2}{P_2 + a} \quad \text{for} \quad P_2 > P_0. \tag{13}$$

The coupling of the fibres will force them to shorten externally with a velocity V lying between V_1 and V_2. Consequently, the series elasticity of fibre 1 is stretched with the velocity $V_1 - V$, while that of fibre 2 shortens with the velocity $V - V_2$. According to (1) and (2) these processes will bring about variations in the loads P_1 and P_2, governed by:

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} = \frac{dP_1}{dL} \cdot \frac{dL}{dt} = \varkappa^1 (P_1 + P_{st}^1)(V_1 - V) \tag{14}$$

and

$$\frac{dP_2}{dt} = \frac{dP_2}{dL} \cdot \frac{dL}{dt} = \frac{\varkappa^1}{1.2} (P_2 + P_{st}^1)(V_2 - V). \tag{15}$$

We are considering isotonic conditions, i. e. the load P is constant. This implies according to (3) that:

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} + \frac{dP_2}{dt} = 0. \tag{16}$$

(14), (15), and (16) give:

$$V = \frac{(P_1 + P_{st}^1)\, V_1 + \dfrac{1}{1.2}(P_2 + P_{st}^1)\, V_2}{P_1 + P_{st}^1 + \dfrac{1}{1.2}(P_2 + P_{st}^1)}. \tag{17}$$

We now introduce the above mentioned assumption:

$$P_1 = 3\, P_2, \tag{18}$$

i. e.

$$P_1 = 0.75\, P \quad \text{and} \quad P_2 = 0.25\, P. \tag{19}$$

Thus, $P_1 < P_0$ is equivalent to $P < 1.33\, P_0$, while $P_2 < P_0$ is equivalent to $P < 4\, P_0$.

Inserting the expressions (10)—(13) for V_1 and V_2 and the assumptions (18) and (19) in (17), we obtain the following relation between shortening velocity and load for our "muscle":

$$\left. \begin{aligned} V = b \cdot \frac{(0.75\, P + 0.05\, P_0) \cdot \dfrac{P_0 - 0.75\, P}{0.75\, P + a} + (0.25\, P + 0.05\, P_0) \dfrac{P_0 - 0.25\, P}{0.25\, P + a}}{0.75\, P + 0.05\, P_0 + \dfrac{1}{1.2}(0.25\, P + 0.05\, P_0)} \\ \text{for} \quad P < 1.33\, P_0 \end{aligned} \right\} \tag{20}$$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} V = b \cdot \frac{(0.75\, P + 0.05\, P_0) \dfrac{1}{4} \dfrac{P_0 - 0.75\, P}{0.75\, P + a} + (0.25\, P + 0.05\, P_0) \dfrac{P_0 - 0.25\, P}{0.25\, P + a}}{0.75\, P + 0.05\, P_0 + \dfrac{1}{1.2}(0.25\, P + 0.05\, P_0)} \\ \text{for} \quad 1.33\, P_0 < P < 4\, P_0. \end{aligned} \right\} \tag{21}$$

Putting $a = 0.30\,P_0$ and $b = 0.92\,L_0$/sec. we get from (20) and (21) the force-velocity relation shown in fig. 105, where the load on the "muscle" is measured in units of P_{0M}, the load at which $V = 0$. According to (21) $P_{0M} = 2.75\,P_0$. Fig. 105 also contains the force-velocity

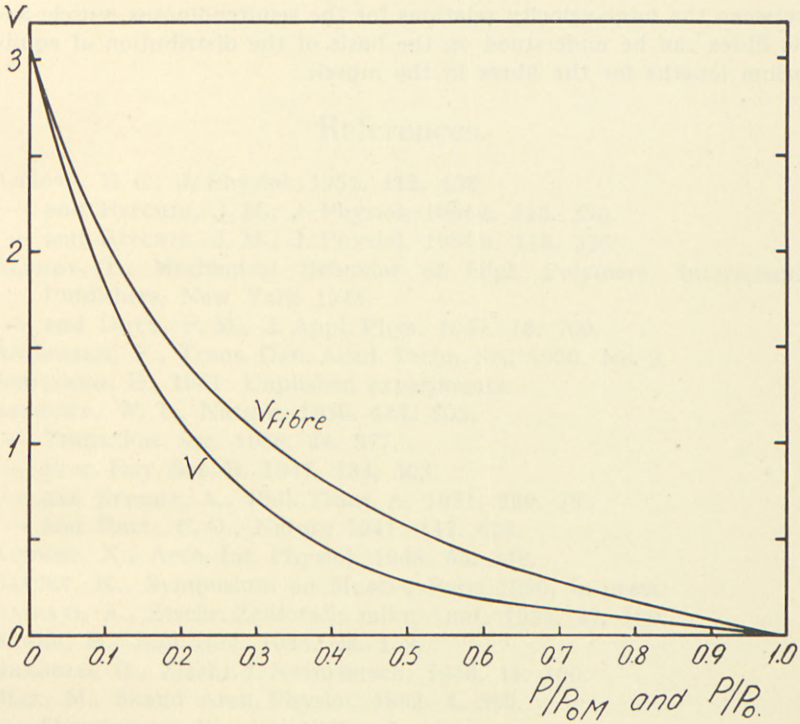


Fig. 105. Maximum shortening velocity as a function of the load for a single fibre and for a "muscle" consisting of two fibres with a difference in equilibrium length of 20 per cent.

V_{fibre}: single fibre.

V : "muscle".

abscissa: load on the fibre in units of P_0 and load on the "muscle" in units of P_{0M}.

ordinate: shortening velocity in units of L_0 per sec.

curve for fibre 1 given by (10). Comparison with the experimental curves for fibre and muscle shows that the theoretical difference between fibre and "muscle" is of the right order of magnitude (fig. 63).

If the "muscle" curve in fig. 105 is approximated by curves determined by Hill's equation:

$$(P + a_M)\,(V + b_M) = (P_{0M} + a_M)\,b_M, \tag{22}$$

one finds values of a_M between $0.145\,P_{0M}$ and $0.12\,P_{0M}$. The corresponding values for b_M are $0.445\,L_0$/sec. and $0.36\,L_0$/sec. The experimentally determined constants for the semitendinosus muscle are: $a_M = 0.125\, P_{0M}$ and $b_M = 0.38\, L_0/\text{sec}$.

As described in Part III (fig. 80) the fibres of a muscle have actually differences in equilibrium length of the order of magnitude assumed in the above calculations. Therefore, we may conclude that the difference between the force-velocity relations for the semitendinosus muscle and its fibres can be understood on the basis of the distribution of equilibrium lengths for the fibres in the muscle.

References.

Abbott, B. C., J. Physiol. 1951. **112.** 438.

— and Ritchie, J. M., J. Physiol. 1951a. **113.** 330.

— and Ritchie, J. M., J. Physiol. 1951b. **113.** 336.

Alfrey, T., Mechanical Behavior of High Polymers, Interscience Publishers, New York 1948.

— and Doty, P. M., J. Appl. Phys. 1947. **16.** 700.

Andersen, F., Trans. Dan. Acad. Techn. Sci. 1950. No. 3.

Asmussen, E., 1951. Unplished experiments.

Astbury, W. T., Nature, 1936. **137.** 803.

— Trans. Far. Soc. 1938. **34.** 377.

— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1947. **134.** 303.

— and Street, A., Phil. Trans. A. 1931. **230.** 75.

— and Bell, F. O., Nature 1941. **147.** 696.

Aubert, X., Arch. Int. Physiol. 1948. **55.** 348.

Bailey, K., Symposium on Muscle, Paris 1950, in press.

Bairati, A., Ztschr. Zellforsch. mikr. Anat. 1937. **27.** 100.

Barer, R., Biol. Rev. 1948. **23.** 159.

Bergold, G., Ztschr. f. Naturforsch, 1946. **1b.** 100.

Blix, M., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1892. **4.** 399.

— Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1895a. **5.** 150.

— Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1895b. **5.** 173.

Böhm, G., Ztschr. Biol. 1931. **91.** 204.

— and Weber, H. H., Kolloidztschr. 1932. **61.** 269.

Boyle, P. J. and Conway E. J., J. Physiol. 1941. **100.** 1.

Bozler, E. and Cottrell, C. L., J. Cell. Comp. Physiol. 1937. **10.** 165.

Bragg, L., Science, 1948. **108.** 455.

Brenschede, W., Kolloidztschr. 1943. **104.** 1.

Buchthal, F., Dan. Biol. Medd. 1942. **17.** no. 2.

— and Lindhard, J., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1936. **74.** 223.

— and Knappeis, G. G., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1938. **78.** 97.

— and Lindhard, J., Dan. Biol. Medd. 1939. **14.** no. 6.

— and Knappeis, G. G., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1940. **83.** 19.

— and Knappeis, G. G., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1943. **6.** 123.

— and Kaiser, E., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1944. **8.** 38.

— Knappeis, G. G., and Lindhard, J., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1936. **73.** 163.

Buchthal, F., Knappeis, G. G., and Sjöstrand, T., Skand. Arch. Physiol. 1939. **82**. 225.
— Kaiser, E., and Knappeis, G. G., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1944a. **8**. 16.
— Deutsch, A., and Knappeis, G. G., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1944b. **8**. 271.
— Deutsch, A., Knappeis, G. G., and Munch-Petersen, A., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1949. **16**. 326.
Bull, H. B., J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1945. **67**. 2047.
Burte, H. and Halsey, G., Text. Res. J. 1947. **17**. 465.
Busse, W. F., J. Phys. Chem. 1932. **36**. 2862.
Casella, C., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1951. **21**. 380.
Caspersson, T. and Thorell, B., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1942. **4**. 97.
Cronkite, A., Anat. Rec. 1936. **64**. 173.
Demsey, E. W., Wislocki, G. B., and Singer, M., Anat. Rec. 1946. **96**. 221.
Draper, M. H. and Hodge, A. J., The Austral. J. Exper. Biol. Med. Science. 1949. **27**. 465.
Dubuisson, M., Biol. Rev. 1950a. **25**. 46.
— Biochem. et Biophys. Acta 1950b. **4**. 25.
Evans, L. C., Principles of Human Physiology. London 1947. p. 116.
Eyring, H. and Powell, R. E., Rheological Properties of Simple and Colloidal Systems, in Colloid Chemistry, Theoretical and Applied, ed. by J. Alexander. Vol. V 1944, p. 236 ff.
Fenn, W. O., J. Physiol. 1923. **58**. 175.
— J. Physiol. 1924. **58**. 373.
— Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 1936. **4**. 233.
— Contractility, in Physical Chemistry of Cells and Tissues, by R. Höber, Section 7. p. 445, Philadelphia, Blakiston Co., 1945.
Fick, A., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1871. **4**. 301.
— Mechanische Arbeit und Wärmeentwicklung bei der Muskeltätigkeit, Leipzig 1882.
Fischer, E., Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 1936. **4**. 214.
— J. Cell. Comp. Physiol. 1944. **23**. 113.
— Ann. New York Acad. Sc. 1947. **47**. 783.
Gasser, H. S. and Hill, A. V., Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1924. **96**. 398.
Gross, B., J. Appl. Phys. 1947. **18**. 212.
— J. Appl. Phys. 1948. **19**. 257.
Hall, C. E., Jakus, M. A., and Schmitt, F. O., Biol. Bull. 1946. **90**. 32.
Halsey, G. and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1945. **15**. 451.
— and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1946a. **16**. 124.
— and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1946b. **16**. 329.
— White, H. S., and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1945. **15**. 295.
Hartree, W. and Hill, A. V., J. Physiol. 1921. **55**. 389.
Hill, A. V., Adventures in Biophysics, Oxford Univ. Press 1931, p. 120.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1937. **124**. 114.

Hill, A. V., Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1938. **126.** 136.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1939. **127.** 849.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1940. **128.** 263.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1949a. **136.** 195.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1949b. **136.** 211.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1949c. **136.** 242.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1949d. **136.** 399.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1949e. **136.** 420.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1950a. **137.** 268.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1950b. **137.** 273.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1950c. **137.** 330.
— and Kupalov, P. S., Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1930. **106.** 445.
Hill, D. K., J. Physiol. 1949. **108.** 292.
Höncke, P., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1947. **15.** Suppl. 48.
Holland, H. D., Halsey, G., and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1946. **16.** 201.
Huxley, H. E. and Perutz, M. F., Nature 1951. **167.** 1054.
Jones, W. M. and Barer, R., Nature 1948. **161.** 1012.
Jordan, H. J., First Report on Viscosity and Plasticity, Kon. Ned. Akd. Wet. Verhand. 1939, Part 15, Chapter 4. p. 214.
Josenhans, W., Ztschr. Biol. 1949. **103.** 61.
Kaiser, K., Ztschr. Biol. 1896. **33.** 157.
— Zbl. Physiol. 1900. **14.** 195.
Katz, B., J. Physiol. 1939. **96.** 45.
— Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1948. **135.** 507.
Lord Kelvin, Elasticity, Encyclopaedia Britannica, 9. ed. 1875.
Knappeis, G. G., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1948. **16.** Suppl. 53. p. 40.
v. Kries, J., Arch. Anat. Physiol., Physiol. Abt. 1880. p. 348.
Kühne, W., Arch. Anat. Physiol. 1859. p. 815.
Kuhn, W., Künzle, O., and Preissmann, A., Helv. Chim. Acta 1947a. **30.** 307.
— Künzle, O., and Preissmann, A., Helv. Chim. Acta 1947b. **30.** 464.
Levin, A. and Wyman, J., Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1924. **96.** 398.
Lindhard, J., Ergebn. Physiol. 1931. **33.** 337.
Long, M. E., Am. J. Anat. 1947. **81.** 159.
Maltoltsi, A. G. and Gerendás, M., Nature 1947. **159.** 502.
Mauro, A., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1951. **25.** Suppl. 89. p. 59.
Maxwell, J. C., Phil. Mag. 1868 (IV) **35.** 134.
McLachlan, N. W., Ordinary non-linear differential equations in engineering and physical sciences, Oxford 1950, Chapter IV.
Meyer, K. H. and Ferri, C., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1936. **238.** 78.
— and Picken, L. E. R., Proc. Roy. Soc. B. 1937. **124.** 29.
— v. Susich, S., and Valkó, E., Kolloidztschr. 1932. **59.** 208.
Mochulsky, M. and Tobolsky, A. V., Indust. Eng. Chem. 1948. **40.** 2155.
v. Muralt, A., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1932. **230.** 299.
— Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1934. **234.** 653.

Noll, K. and Weber, H. H., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1934. **235.** 234.
Ostwald, W., Kolloidztschr. 1926. **40.** 58.
Pauling, L., Corey, R. B., and Branson, H. R., Proc. U. S. Nat. Acad. Sci. 1951. **37.** 205.
— and Corey, R. B., Proc. U. S. Nat. Acad. Sci 1951. **37.** 235, 241, 251, 256, 261, 272, 282.
— and Corey, R. B., Proc. U. S. Nat. Acad. Sci 1951a. **37.** 261.
Perutz, M. F., Nature 1951. **167.** 1053.
Ralston, H. J., Inman, V. T., Strait, L. A., and Shaffrath, M. D., Am. J. Physiol. 1947. **151.** 614.
— Polissar, M. J., Inman, V. T., Close, J. R., and Feinstein, B., J. Appl. Physiol. 1949. **1.** 526.
Ramsey, R. W., Ann. New York Acad. Science 1947. **47.** 675.
— R. W. cit. from W. O. Fenn in Physical Chemistry of Cells and Tissues, by R. Höber, Philadelphia, Blakiston Co. 1945. p. 509.
— and Street, S. F., J. Cell. Comp. Physiol. 1940. **15.** 11.
— and Street, S. F., Biol. Symp. 1941. **3.** 9.
Ranvier, L., Arch. Physiol. Norm. Path. 1874. ser. 2. part I. p. 774.
Reichardt, C. H. and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1946. **16.** 635.
Reichel, H., Ztschr. Biol. 1936. **97.** 429.
— Ztschr. Biol. 1938. **98.** 510.
Reiner, M., Twelve Lectures on Theoretical Rheology, Amsterdam 1949.
— Deformation and Flow, London, 1949b. Lewis.
Rieser, P., Protoplasma 1949. **39.** 95.
Romeis, B., Taschenbuch d. mikroskop. Technik, München 1928. p. 418.
Rozsa, G., Szent-Györgyi, A., and Wyckoff, R. W. G., Exp. Cell Res. 1950. **1.** 194.
Sandow, A., J. Cell. and Comp. Physiol. 1936a. **9.** 37.
— J. Cell. and Comp. Physiol. 1936b. **9.** 55.
— J. Cell. and Comp. Physiol. 1944. **24.** 221.
— Ann. New York Acad. Science 1947. **47.** 895.
Schenck, F., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1895. **61.** 77.
Sitaramayya, C., J. Physiol. 1951. **114.** 27 P.
Speakman, J. B. and Peters, L., J. Text. Inst. 1948. **39.** 253.
Stein, R., Halsey, G., and Eyring, H., Text. Res. J. 1946. **16.** 53.
Sten-Knudsen, O., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1948. **16.** Suppl. 153. p. 58.
— Internat. colloquium on rheolog. problems in biology, Lund 1950 in press.
Stübel, H., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1923. **201.** 629.
Sulzer, R., Ztschr. Biol. 1930. **90.** 13.
Szent-Györgyi, A., Biol. Bull. 1949. **96.** 140.
Tobolsky, A. and Eyring, H., J. Chem. Phys. 1943. **11.** 125.
— Powell, R. E., and Eyring, H., Elastic-viscous Properties of Matter in "The Chemistry of Large Molecules", Interscience Publ. New York 1943.

Treloar, L. R. G., Trans. Far. Soc. 1943. **39.** 241.

— The Physics of Rubber Elasticity, Oxford 1949 (Clarendon Press).

— Nature 1951. **167.** 425.

Varga, L., Enzymologia 1950. **14.** 196.

Voigt, W., Abh. Königl. Gesell. Wiss. Göttingen 1890. **36.** Mathem. Kl. Nr. 1.

Wall, F. T., J. Chem. Phys. 1942. **10.** 485.

Walter, W G., Arch. Néerland. Physiol. 1944—1947. **28.** 655.

Weber, H. H., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1934a. **235.** 205.

— Ergeb. Physiol. 1934b. **36.** 109.

Wöhlisch, E., Kolloidztschr. 1939. **89.** 239.

— and Grüning, W., Pflügers Arch. Physiol. 1943. **246.** 469.

— Mesnil de Rochemont, R., and Gerschler, H., Z. Biol. 1927. **85.** 325.

Woods, H. J., J. Colloid Sci. 1946. **1.** 407.

List of symbols.

		Definition on page
A, $A_{\alpha \to \beta}$, $A_{\beta \to \alpha}$	activation energy	235
a	constant in Hill's equation (expressed in units of P_0)	177
$\alpha-$	short modification of keratin, fibrinogen, and myosin	223
α	fraction of links in the α-modification	239
α_2, α_3 – – –	number of α-aggregates with 2, 3 – – – links respectively	250
α_f	fraction of links in the fixated α-state	257
α_1	fraction of links in the non-fixated α-state	257
b	constant in Hill's equation (expressed in units of L_0 per sec.)	177
$\beta-$	long modification of keratin, fibrinogen, and myosin	223
β	fraction of links in the β-modification	239
β_2, β_3 – – –	number of β-aggregates with 2, 3 – – – links respectively	250
C	concentration of fixating factor	256
c	constant in the distribution function of retardation times	71
C_l	experimental constant from creep experiments	55
C_p	experimental constant from isometric transients (stress-relaxation)	63
C_1 and C_2	proportionality factors in aggregate formation and break-down	250
D	defixation factor in the contraction theory	257
ΔL	change in length	56
ΔP	change in load	45
Δp	increase in tension in the transmutation chain	246
η	damping, viscosity, friction	17
FC	fixation factor in the contraction theory	257

Symbol	Meaning	Definition on page
G	stiffness, elasticity	39, 49, 60
G_{elast}	elastic stiffness	17
G_{visc}	viscous stiffness	18
G_{tot}	total stiffness $= \sqrt{G^2_{elast} + G^2_{visc}}$	19
$G(\tau)$	distribution function of relaxation times	69
γ	deformation	17
γ_0	deformation amplitude	17
I	moment of inertia	22
J	reciprocal elastic stiffness (compliance)	66
$J(\tau)$	distribution function of retardation times	67
$j(\tau)$	normalized distribution function	72
K	constant in the aggregate theory $= \frac{C_1}{C_2}$	251
$K(\log \tau)$	distribution function of relaxation times in logarithmic time scale $= \tau \cdot g(\tau)$	75
$\varkappa$	constant in the length-tension relation of the muscle fibre = relative stiffness	59, 292
L	fibre length	38
L_0	equilibrium length of the muscle fibre	35
$L(\log \tau)$	distribution function of retardation times in logarithmic time scale $= \tau \cdot j(\tau)$	72
L_α and L_β	length of the α- and β-modifications respectively	235
λ_α	distance from the α-minimum to the peak of the potential energy barrier	238
λ_β	distance from the β-minimum to the peak of the potential energy barrier	238
2λ	distance from the α-minimum to the β-minimum	239
λ_1 and λ_2	decay constants in the theoretical course of shortening	261
M	number of aggregates	250
M_α and M_β	number of α- and β-aggregates respectively	250
m	mass, equivalent mass	17
μ_1 and μ_2	decay constants in the theoretical course of relaxation	269
N	number of links	240
N_α and N_β	number of links in the α- and β-modifications respectively	239
n	relative number of links in a chain	249
ν_0	resonance frequency (c. p. s.)	20
ν	collision frequency	234

		Definition on page
ω	cyclic frequency	17
ω_0	resonance frequency (cyclic)	18
P	load on the fibre	38
P_0	reference load = the load at which the shortening velocity is zero	38
P_m	mean load	60
P_i	internal tension in the contractile elements	173
P_{st}	stiffness-tension	84
p	measure of the load on a transmutation chain $= \frac{P \cdot \lambda}{k \cdot T}$	239
P_{extra}	extra tension	258
ψ	phase displacement	17
r	proportionality factor in the Tobolsky-Eyring sinh-equation	229
σ	force	17
σ_0	force amplitude	17
σ_f	force acting on the fibre	80
σ_i	inertial force	80
sr	stiffness ratio $= \frac{G_{visc}}{G_{elast}}$	19
t_0	"latent period" = time required for a transmutation chain to obtain maximal shortening velocity	262
τ	relaxation and retardation time	66, 68
τ_1 and τ_2	boundaries in the spectrum of retardation times	71
$U(L)$	potential energy barrier governing the $\alpha \rightleftarrows \beta$ transmutations	235
V	shortening velocity	147
V_0	maximal shortening velocity in the transmutation theory	264
V_d	relaxation velocity	181
V_d^0	maximal relaxation velocity in the transmutation theory	269
v	velocity in transients	55
$W_{\alpha \to \beta}$ and $W_{\beta \to \alpha}$	transmutation frequencies per link	237
W	proportionality factor in the transmutation frequency per link	239

Index of subjects.

Indleveret til selskabet den 9. maj 1951.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 15. december 1951.

Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab

Biologiske Meddelelser, bind **21**, nr. 8

Dan. Biol. Medd. **21**, no. 8 (1953)

QUEEN ICHETIS' WHEAT

A CONTRIBUTION TO THE STUDY OF EARLY DYNASTIC EMMER OF EGYPT

BY

HANS HELBAEK

København

i kommission hos Ejnar Munksgaard

1953

Printed in Denmark.
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri.

The staple wheat species of Egypt, from the dawn of agriculture in the Nile valley till the day of the Roman hegemony, was Emmer, *Triticum dicoccum* Schübl. This cereal is believed to be derived from the wild *T. dicoccoides* Koern., which is distributed from the Syro-Palestinian coastal mountains to the foothills of Iraq and Iran.

For a long time Egyptian culture was considered the earliest bearer of agriculture, and consequently Emmer was believed to have emerged as a cultivated plant in Egypt or in the mountainous area of Abyssinia.[1] When in the nineteen-twenties the Russian plant geographer, Vavilov, mapped out the distribution of plants, wild and cultivated, of the western Asiatic and eastern African regions, he discovered a conspicuous concentration of varieties of Emmer in Abyssinia. He was convinced that the place in which a cultivated plant occurs in the greatest diversity should be considered the place of emergence of the species or, in other words, the place where the first experiments in its domestication had taken place. Indeed he recognized the necessity of the presence of the wild progenitor in any postulated place of emergence, but as *T. dicoccoides* does not exist in Abyssinia today he rejected the idea of its paternity to Emmer and suggested some unknown, now extinct, species in its place.[2]

Since then archaeological investigations of Mesopotamia and adjacent areas have disclosed above doubt that agriculture was performed in these parts of the Middle East long before the earliest agricultural settlements were active in Egypt,[3] and furthermore, it has been shown that the earliest Emmer in these regions is of a more primitive type, resembling *T. dicoccoides* more closely than even the earliest Egyptian wheat.[4]

In consequence of Vavilov's discoveries and subsequent theories as to agricultural diffusion in the Early Neolithic it was believed that the cultivation of Emmer had started in Abyssinia or Upper Egypt and from there spread along the Nile and the eastern Mediterranean to Mesopotamia in the east and to Anatolia, and eventually Europe, in the west.[5]

Based upon the more recent archaeological and botanical discoveries this concept is at the moment given up in preference of the belief that the progenitor is actually *T. dicoccoides*; that the place where this plant was originally subjected to cultivation was the area mentioned above, where *T. dicoccoides* grows wild to-day; and, consequently, that the dispersion of its cultivation had the general direction from north to south, as far as Egypt is concerned,[6] contrary to the concept maintained by Vavilov as well as earlier investigators.

As long as Emmer was believed to have performed the migration from the south towards the north there was no special reason for expecting plants distributionally confined to regions north of Egypt, to have grown together with Emmer in that country. But with the change of viewpoints new possibilities became apparent. Thus, for instance, it became theoretically reasonable to expect Eincorn (*T. monococcum* L.) among the Egyptian grain deposits. This species is believed to have developed by cultivation of the wild *T. Aegilopoides* Bal. which is distributed in much the same places as is *T. dicoccoides*, and further in Anatolia and the Balkans. Now its occurrence in the Emmer fields of the Nile valley seemed theoretically possible, as the two wild species occur together in certain localities, and their two cultivated descendants have been established in the same finds of early prehistoric grain from Iraq,[6] Syria,[6] Anatolia[7] and Europe.[8] As the Egyptian Emmer must originate in, or have passed through areas where Eincorn was a component of the Emmer field, it was a warrantable assumption that Eincorn might have been introduced into Egypt together with Emmer.

But Eincorn was never established in the large deposits of prehistoric and Early Dynastic Emmer of Egypt, investigated by outstanding morphologists as, for instance, Georg Schweinfurth, who was especially well acquainted with the early plant material from that country. And up to quite recently all literature dealing with these matters offered the statement that Eincorn was perfectly unknown to the Egyptian-Semitic area, a conviction that seemed to be shared by all plant breeding archaeologists and geneticists.[9]

Thus when in 1948 and 1950 reports appeared recording the discovery of Eincorn in the Neolithic site at Omari,[10] and in the burial deposit of the Third Dynasty grave of the Pharaoh Zozer in the Saqqarah Pyramid near Memphis,[11] dated at about 2900 B.C., it meant a complete break with long-established conceptions. For this reason the excavator, Jean-Philippe Lauer, and the Botany Department of Fuad I University in Cairo, represented by Vivi Laurent Täckholm, considered it desirable to have a thorough investigation made when next the opportunity arose.

This happened in 1950 when during his excavation of Queen Ichetis' tomb in the Saqqarah Pyramid J.-P. Lauer discovered a new grain deposit of exactly the same nature as the earlier Saqqarah find, the Zozer deposit. In order to obtain an opinion independent of that of the previous investigators, and reached by application of the methods especially used by the plant husbandry archaeologist, the present writer was entrusted with the interesting work of examining and describing the mummified wheat from the Sixth Dynasty tomb of Queen Ichetis, approximately 4500 years old.

The sample submitted for examination consists of two whole spikes and 26 major portions of such.[12] It is of the usual brown colour and not especially fragile. Some of the fragments are top portions, others bottom portions of the spike. Obviously they were all awned originally, and in some of the specimens portions of very sturdy awns are preserved. Eight of the spikes are more or less distinctly hirsute, twenty are smooth, that is without hairs visible to the naked eye. They all bear tufts of longer or shorter, stiff hairs below the base of the glume and above the articulation point, and usually a small tuft at the dorsal side of the glume base as well. In the majority of the spikes the internodes have slightly hairy margins, but this detail is very modestly developed, even in the otherwise hirsute specimens. It was not possible to segregate the hirsute spikes from the smooth ones by any other character as the pubescence occurs combined with other features in a seemingly quite fortuitious way.

It will appear from the Table (p. 15), in which the principal dimensions are accumulated, that the Ichetis crop was of an amazing variability. Very few of these specimens are of a size corresponding to the general conception of Emmer, and many have certain dimensions, as for instance length of internode, that would fit into the lower dimensional range in modern Eincorn.[13] On the whole it must be admitted that these spikes, to a superficial observation, are extremely deceptive and, as far as size is concerned, suggestive of Eincorn. This impression does not, however, stand up to a close morphological scrutiny.

In the attempt at establishing a reliable basis for identification of this wheat the two extremes were considered between which the Ichetis wheat must in any case be placed: the wild progenitor,[14] on the one hand, and the highly cultivated descendant, on the other. This comparison was applied to the two possibilities, Emmer and Eincorn. In the following the two diploid species will, for convenience, be called the Eincorn group, the two tetraploid species, the Emmer group, the former comprising only *T. Aegilopoides* and *T. monococcum*, the latter only *T. dicoccoides* and *T. dicoccum*. Certain details of the spikelet were selected which are homologous in the wild and the modern cultivated form of each of the two groups.[15] Thus the identification is founded upon the following characters:

I. The apex of the glume.
II. The capacity and character of the palea posterior.
III. The size, structure and proportions of the rudimentary flowers.
IV. The dimensions of the distal epidermis cells of the central portion of the palea.
V. The number of fertile flowers, and the shape of the kernels.

I. In the glumes of all the four species in question two particularly strong veins fork out from the woody spikelet base, framing a median portion of thick tissue. In the Eincorn group these veins run independently to the apex of the glume, the ventral slightly longer than the dorsal one, both ending in a solid point. In their upper part these veins are straight and somewhat convergent, but they do not tend to unite. The points are connected by the transverse margin of the glume, deflected into a deep curve.

In *T. dicoccoides* only the ventral vein ends in a strong point, the dorsal one being much shorter and its point hardly protruding above the oblique transversal margin. The ventral vein in *T. dicoccum* describes an even curve from base to apex, and the shorter, straight, dorsal vein points directly towards the tip of the ventral one, forming only a small notch at its tip.

This part is considerably varied in the Ichetis wheat. Even within the individual spike a pronounced variation can be noted (Pl. IV, d), but in no case is there any approximation to the design of the Eincorn group. The glume apices vary between the construction of the apex of *T. dicoccoides* and that of *T. dicoccum*. In one case, Specimen No. 25, the apices sometimes are even reminiscent of the design in *T. spelta*, but on a small scale. The mode of articulation of the specimen, however, refers it to the Emmer group. (Illustrations Pl. IV, a & d).

II. In the Emmer group the palea is of a generous width, suited to accomodate a considerable expansion of the breadth of the ventral side of the grain under its growth. Even in a well nourished, mature fruit the palea has a slight fold corresponding to the ventral furrow of the grain. In the Eincorn group this organ is narrow and not at all able to follow the transversal increase of the grain. So already at a fairly early stage of ripening the palea splits along the middle, leaving the convex ventral side of the grain bare.[16] Incidentally, the large sterile flower (second in the spikelet) takes over the covering function of the palea, excepting cases where two kernels are developed.

In no case split paleae were found in the Ichetis wheat. They were all wrinkled longitudinally and of an unemployed capacity corresponding to the full development of the kernel. (Illustrations Pl. IV, b, bottom row).

III. Generally speaking, two kernels are developed in the spikelet of the Emmer group, in the Eincorn group only one. A rudimentary continuation of the spikelet is present in both groups, consisting of one or more rudimentary flowers with distinct internodes between them. In the Eincorn group the paleae of the second (usually sterile) flower are fairly strongly built and approximately of the same length as those of the fertile flower. The third flower has a long, very thin internode and contains in its flimsy bracts the tiny rudiments of a fourth flower. In the Emmer group the second flower is usually fertile, and the third, containing one or more additional rudiments, is packed between the two kernels. The rudimentary spikelet continuation is much heavier in the Emmer group, especially the internode is wider and flatter than it is in the Eincorn group. Rudiments of *T. monococcum*, *T. dicoccum*, and two of the Ichetis wheat are shown in Pl. IV, b, upper row. It is evident that this part, too, ranges the antique wheat along with the Emmer group.

It may be added that the difference in shape and dimensions described for the two cultivated species was found equally decisive in the two wild ones.

IV. It would undoubtedly be possible to point out many parts of the spikelet in which the microscopical details afford indication of the association between the two related species and, at the same time, emphazising the difference between the two groups. However, for our needs it would suffice to pick out one portion of the same organ of all the species and compare them. As an area particularly suitable for the purpose the writer preferred the central portion of the palea posterior, in which the dimensions of the cells have proved to be tolerably constant, measured from the middle towards the keel or, in the case of the Eincorn group, from the rent towards the keel. The widths of the distal epidermis cells in this area proved typical to each group, and very different in the two groups. The stated average width of the sinuate-walled cells is one twentieth of the total width of 20 successive cells, and measuring was carried out in several places of the same object, by a magnification as great as possible, in the present case 8×30 diam.

In *T. Aegilopoides* the average width was found to be 10.6 to 13.9 μ, in *T. monococcum* 11.5 to 13.3 μ. These cells are much wider in the Emmer group, namely, in *T. dicoccoides* 20.0 to 21.5 μ, and in *T. dicoccum* 17.9 to 22.6 μ. Compared with these dimensions the Ichetis material definitely joins the Emmer group with the following cell widths: Specimen No. 25: 17.3 μ, No. 26: 18.7 μ, No. 16: 20.2 μ and No. 24: 20.8 μ. The four specimens selected for this test represent the smallest and the largest spikes, the shortest and the longest internodes. No. 25, which is one of the narrowest spikes, but the one with the longest internode, has the smallest cell width, but the cells of the most voluminous spike, No. 26, are almost as narrow. The greatest width was found in No. 24, which in every respect is one of the slightest of all the specimens. (Illustrations in Pl. III).

V. As mentioned above, the spikelets of the Eincorn group contain principally but one kernel. In consequence of this circumstance the shaping of the grain is in a certain sense only dependent upon the space available within the glumes. Thus the dorsal and ventral sides of the grain attain much the same shape, both being convexly keeled. The grain is approximately elliptical in cross section and its thickness is usually greater than its breadth. In most spikelets of the Emmer group two grains are developed, and consequently they restrict each other's development with the result that the ventral sides are flattened against each other. Under favourable growth conditions the Eincorn group may also develop two grains in the spikelet, but then one of them would be decidedly asymmetrical in cross section, and in any case they will both be small and slender.

All the twenty-two spikelets of the Ichetis wheat which were dissected and examined contained two kernels. Not one is fully developed; they are all meagre and shrunk, the majority literally empty fruit shells. However, such shape as is acknowledgable always corresponds to the shape of Emmer grains. No kernel has the convexly bulging ventral side that is typical of the Eincorn group, and, although narrow, the ventral side is in all cases flat or transversally hollow. Thus the evidence of the grains tally with that of the other four parts.

It was, of course, necessary to remove at least one spikelet from each of the Ichetis spikes in order to describe the interior parts. These spikelets were selected from the end of the specimen nearest to the middle of the originally whole spike or, in other words, as far from the top and bottom as possible. This precaution was taken as a means to secure a description of the spikelet typical of each individual spike, as extreme top and bottom spikelets are usually deficient in development. The same principle was, of course, followed at the selection of comparative material from recent spikes.

By detaching the spikelets for dissection it was learnt that the rachis is considerably tougher in the ancient wheat than in a modern, mature spike. This circumstance explains the peculiar fact that the Ichetis spikes did not disintegrate either when being handled in antiquity or at the recent transport and examination. The brittleness of the rachis of the Glume wheats[17] is a property that emerges when the end of the vegetation period is approaching, and it is dependent upon the state of maturity of the fruits. If an immature spike is cut off the rachis will not turn brittle.

Also the shriveled and meagre appearance of the kernels is an extraordinary feature, in that their state of shrunkenness cannot be the consequence of their long stay in the dry grave. If the content of mature starch had filled out the fruit shell it would have shrunk but negligibly even during this long time,[18] but these kernels must have been soft and contained a large proportion of water. The evaporation of the water is the reason for the shrinkage. The incompleteness of the grains account for the fact that the spikelets were not strained to their maximum transverse dimensions.

Therefore, the fundamental explanation of the toughness of the rachises and the shape of the kernels — and further the small transverse dimensions of the spikelets — is that these spikes were not ripe when harvested.

Considering the points so far enumerated we may be entitled to identify the Ichetis wheat as Emmer, T. dicoccum. In spite of a certain dimensional conformity with recent Eincorn the morphological discrepancies are too great for referring any part of the find to this species.

In the light of the present investigations and the experiences gained from them it would seem warrantable to discuss the previously recorded finds which are claimed to represent Eincorn.

According to the report on the Zozer deposit[19] two distinctly different types of wheat are present, identified as Emmer and Eincorn. They mainly differ by their dimensions, and it is typical that to a certain degree the smaller type (allegedly Eincorn) occurs as coherent pieces of spikes. From this fact it may be inferred that these spikes like the Ichetis material represent the cereal in some state of immaturity, and that the smaller dimensions are explained by this circumstance. The average length of internode in the alleged Eincorn is given as 2.3 mm., and agreement is claimed with Percival's average in the Eincorn internode, 1.8—2 mm. The justification of this claim is not quite apparent. Further, it appears from the illustrations that there is no principal difference between the internodes of the two alleged species. It is obvious, too, that the two types of grains do not vary as corresponding to the two species in question, but only as far as the state of development is concerned. Certainly neither of them corresponds to the general conception of the typical Eincorn kernel. Finally, the early stage of development is stressed by the very low density rate[20] of the spikes, as evident in the pictures.

Thus the present writer feels justified in suggesting that all the wheat of the Zozer deposit is Emmer.

Regarding the spike fragment from Omari[21]—which is carbonized—it seems as if the examiners based their opinion upon its small size alone. No characters justifying the identification as Eincorn are apparent from the published picture, but a very low density rate is evident (about 0.40), which indicates that also this spike was far from mature, in fact, it seems barely to have passed the flowering stage. This circumstance, combined with the shrinkage by carbonization, would account for its very small size.

As matters stand to-day the Omari find is hardly a suitable argument in the discussion, neither archaeologically nor botanically. The lowermost two spikelets ought to be sacrificed in an attempt at settling the question, but, as a positive result could not be guaranteed in advance, the spike being utterly fragile, this is, perhaps, too much to ask.

Thus we are not entitled to consider Eincorn as established for Egypt, and it may be that this is not going to happen in the future either. It is quite possible that Palestine, the present southern boundary of the distributional range of the wild T. Aegilopoides, is at the same time the possible southern limit of the cultivated Eincorn. If so, we shall never find Eincorn in the Nile valley. It appears from prehistoric finds from the area common to the two wild plants that they accompanied each other as cultivated plants from the early phases of agriculture,[22] and it is inconceivable that Eincorn should not have arrived in Egypt together with Emmer, if it could endure the soil and climate.

The classificatory aspects having been considered, still another problem claims attention: why was unripe grain employed in the burial rite? Was no ripe grain available at the time of the ceremony—or rather not sufficient of it—or may the immature spikes be regarded as the compliance with traditional burial prescriptions which demanded whole spikes of wheat?

Under certain circumstances ripe and unripe cereals may be available together at harvesting time, viz., after an unfavourable vegetation period. If a corn field is beaten down by heavy rain after a draught shortly after the fruits have started their development, the plants may sprout and ear anew, thus bearing two sets of spikes of considerably differing age. The older set will finish its development more or less normally, but the younger set will not catch up, and at harvesting time it will still be immature. Could this have happened in Egypt? The recession of the Nile after the inundation was finished at the middle of November (before the water control at Assuan was erected), and not until then the field work could start. Showers now and again occur in the early winter, but usually not after the end of December. The earing time may be estimated at some 60 to 70 days after sowing, and thus the flowering would take place some time after the middle of January or in early February, a time when rain is improbable. Consequently two stages of development could certainly not be the rule in an Egyptian crop, and the situation met with in the two grave deposits at Saqqarah is far from unique. As a matter of fact, a large number of deposits from Egyptian graves contain major portions of Emmer spikes which have not disintegrated and which were thus presumably immature. It is inconceivable that the crops generally were as bad as reflected in the Ichetis wheat, as the riches which allowed the erection of the immensely costly Pyramids were most certainly derived from a flourishing agriculture. If, on the other hand, we suggest that all interments containing immature wheat took place during the short spring time, we should undoubtedly get into conflict with the law of averages. For instance, some four centuries lie between the two Saqqarah graves, and immature wheat was contained in both.

Another explanation may be possible. If some old religious prescription demanded that whole—or green—wheat spikes be sacrificed at burials, the only possible way of complying with this ceremonial duty would be for the temples to store whole spikes permanently, cut at the short time when such were available in the spring.

The cereal names commonly met with in old Hieroglyphic texts are IT for barley, BT for Emmer, and a third word, SWT, is translated into wheat in a general, but botanically unspecified way. In her paper on the Zozer plants[23] Vivi Laurent Täckholm discusses the various possibilities of botanically defined translations of the word SWT. She rejects Macaroni wheat, *T. durum*, which has been suggested, on the grounds that the species cannot be considered as established for Egypt until Graeco-Roman times, and the word appears already in the old Dynastic texts. In consequense of the alleged presence of Eincorn in Omari and Saqqarah she propounds that species for the name. However, as appearing from the present discussion, the evidence offered must be described as inadequate for that solution. Incidentally, Spelt which is often brought up in connection with Egyptian words for wheat is out of the question, having at all times been confined to European soil and never being found in the Egyptian grain deposits.[24]

Judging by the actual plant material handed down to us SWT most probably represents a variety of Emmer which perhaps while alive was distinguished by some character that does not readily appear from the material in the mummified state. If so it rests with botanical morphology to find new ways and means of investigation, and to point out the finer distinctions in the Emmer material already recovered. There must be a difference when two names are employed, and it is difficult to accept the present situation: two names, but always only one of the plants appearing whenever we encounter ancient wheat.

APPENDIX

In order to give an impression of the great dimensional diversity and the morphological instability in the Ichetis Emmer certain related dimensions of each individual spike are set forth in the following list. These particulars may also be of use to future examiners, for comparison with other Egyptian grain deposits.

Most of the statements are quite simple as explained below, the dimensions being quoted in millimetres. Only the "density rate" requires a comment because it is calculated in an unorthodox way.

The traditional way of expressing the density of a cereal spike is simply to state the average length of the internode, or how many internodes per inch or other unit. As long as one is dealing with spikes of approximately the same grain size this method gives a fair idea of the density, and consequently conveys an impression of the angle between the longitudinal axis of the spike and that of the grain.

In the present case we are, however, dealing with a collection of spikes of such variability as to related dimensions that it cannot be described as one type, and thus the internode does not adequately characterize the density. Therefore it was preferred tentatively to express the density rate by the angle between the two axes, as represented by its sine. The formula for the calculation is this:

$$\frac{\text{Spk. B.} \times 0.5}{\text{Spl. L.}} = \text{D.R.}$$

Definitions and abbreviations.

The columns of the following list show these particulars:

No. : Specimen number as given in Plate I and II.

Hair : gl. = glabrous, pb. = pubescent.

Int. L. : Length of internode. Average.

Spl. L. : Length of spikelet from articulation point to the tip of the paleae.

Spk. B. : Breadth of spike. Average.

D. R. : Density rate according to the formula above.
Gl. L. : Variation of glume length from base to apex.
Dim. A.: Dimension A; the width of the ventral side of the spikelet fork as measured across the articulation scar.[25]
Dim. B.: Dimension B.; the width of the glume base as seen from the side.

(The two last mentioned are the only reliable dimensions in chaff of the Glume wheats and as such employed in the identification of spikelet parts, carbonized or occurring as impressions in clay.)

Table of related dimensions.

No.	Hair	Int. L.	Spl. L.	Spk. B.	D. R.	Gl. L.	Dim. A.	Dim. B.
1	gl	1.86	—	12.0	—	7.87–8.78	—	—
2	gl	1.98	—	11.1	—	8.60–8.97	—	—
3	gl	2.02	—	11.5	—	7.87–8.78	—	—
4	gl	2.33	11.9	12.4	0.52	9.52–9.70	2.55	0.99
5	pb	1.72	9.9	11.7	0.59	8.42–8.78	2.05	0.84
6	gl	2.01	11.3	10.4	0.46	9.15–9.70	2.24	0.95
7	gl	2.44	10.1	11.5	0.57	8.42–9.97	2.66	0.91
8	pb	1.99	10.4	11.8	0.56	7.69–8.42	2.43	0.87
9	pb	2.03	—	—	—	8.60–9.70	2.47	1.14
10	gl	2.00	10.8	10.5	0.49	7.32–7.95	2.66	0.99
11	gl	2.25	12.1	10.6	0.44	8.97–9.52	2.77	1.14
12	gl	1.74	10.6	11.9	0.56	8.60–8.97	2.62	0.91
13	pb	1.81	10.1	11.4	0.56	7.87–8.42	2.39	0.91
14	pb	1.91	10.1	8.9	0.44	7.69–8.24	2.31	0.87
(15)			lacking					
16	gl	1.86	9.3	10.1	0.54	8.24–8.60	2.28	0.87
17	gl	2.12	—	9.1	—	8.42–8.60	—	—
18	gl	1.98	10.1	10.8	0.53	7.87–8.60	2.62	0.95
19	gl	1.72	9.3	10.5	0.56	7.14–7.87	2.24	0.95
20	pb	2.09	10.4	9.9	0.48	8.24–8.78	2.39	1.10
21	pb	2.00	11.0	10.0	0.45	8.24–8.97	2.39	0.87
22	gl	2.24	—	10.0	—	7.69–8.42	—	—
23	gl	1.71	defect					
24	gl	1.77	9.3	9.6	0.51	7.69–8.24	2.13	0.91
25	gl	2.75	10.6	9.0	0.42	7.95–8.78	2.66	0.99
26	gl	2.31	12.3	12.4	0.50	9.52-10.25	3.04	1.25
27	gl	1.85	9.2	10.2	0.55	7.50 7.87	2.36	0.84
28	pb	1.90	9.7	9.9	0.51	7.95 8.42	2.24	0.76
29	gl	1.97	9.7	9.0	0.46	7.50–8.24	2.09	0.95

Numbers 1, 2, 3, were not dissected, and thus the exact dimensions of some of the organs could not be ascertained. These three specimens are entirely unique, even among the rich grain deposits of Ancient Egypt, showing the mark of the sickle in addition to the perfectness of numbers 1 and 2.

Notes and references.

1. G. Schweinfurth 1908. Pflanzenreste aus der Zeit der XII Dynastie zu Abusir. Wissensch. Veröff. deutsch. Orient. Ges.
2. N. Vavilov 1926. Studies on the origin of cultivated plants. Bull. Appl. Bot. and Pl. Breed.

   N. Vavilov 1928. Geographische Genzentren unserer Kulturpflanzen. Zeits. indukt. Abstamm. Vererbungsl.
3. R. J. Braidwood 1951. From Cave to Village in Prehistoric Iraq. Bull. Am. Schools Orient. Res.

   R. J. Braidwood 1952. The Near East and the Foundations for Civilization. Condon Lectures. Oregon.
4. Hans Helbaek 1953. Archaeology and Agricultural Botany. Annual Report of the London Univ. Inst. of Archaeol.
5. E. Schiemann 1932. Entstehung der Kulturpflanzen. Handb. der Vererb.wisssch.
6. Hans Helbaek 1953. Archaeology —. (See 4.)
7. L. Wittmack 1890. Samen aus den Ruinen von Hissarlik. Verh. Berl. anthr. Ges. Zeitschr. Ethnl.

   E. Schiemann 1951. Emmer in Troja. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.
8. E. Schiemann 1932. Entstehung —. (See 5.)

   Knud Jessen & Hans Helbaek 1944. Cereals in Great Britain and Ireland in Prehistoric and Early Historic Times. Kgl. Dan. Vidensk. Selsk. Biol. Skrifter.

   Hans Helbaek 1952. Spelt, *Triticum spelta* L., in Bronze Age Denmark. Acta Archaeologica.
9. Georg Buschan 1895. Vorgeschichtliche Botanik.

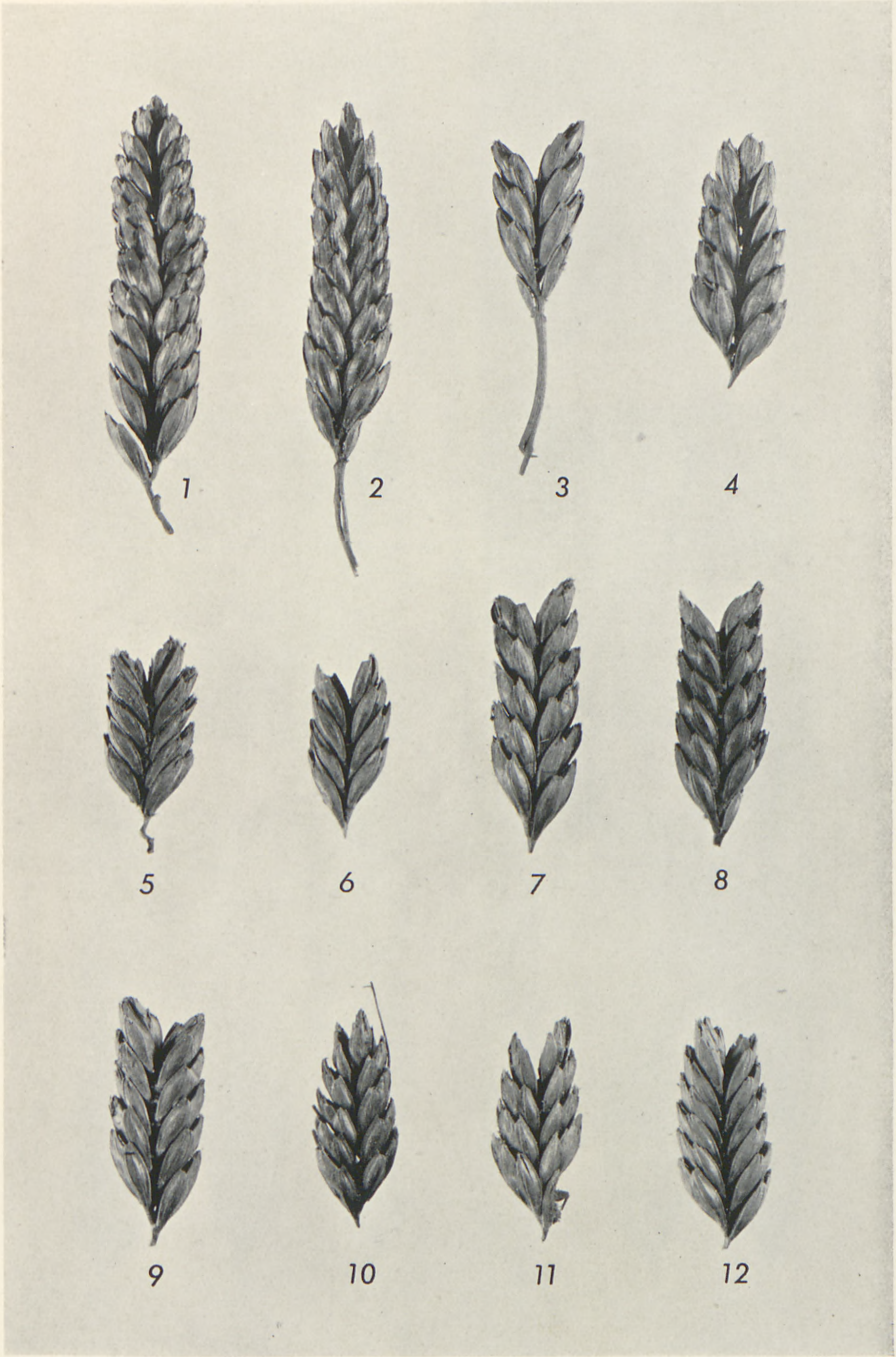
   Robert Gradmann 1909. Der Getreidebau im deutschen und römischen Altertum.

   E. Schiemann 1932. Entstehung —. (See 5.)
10. F. Debono 1948. El Omari (près d'Helouan). Ann. Serv. Ant. Egypte. (Identification by Täckholm, Schiemann, Kihara.)

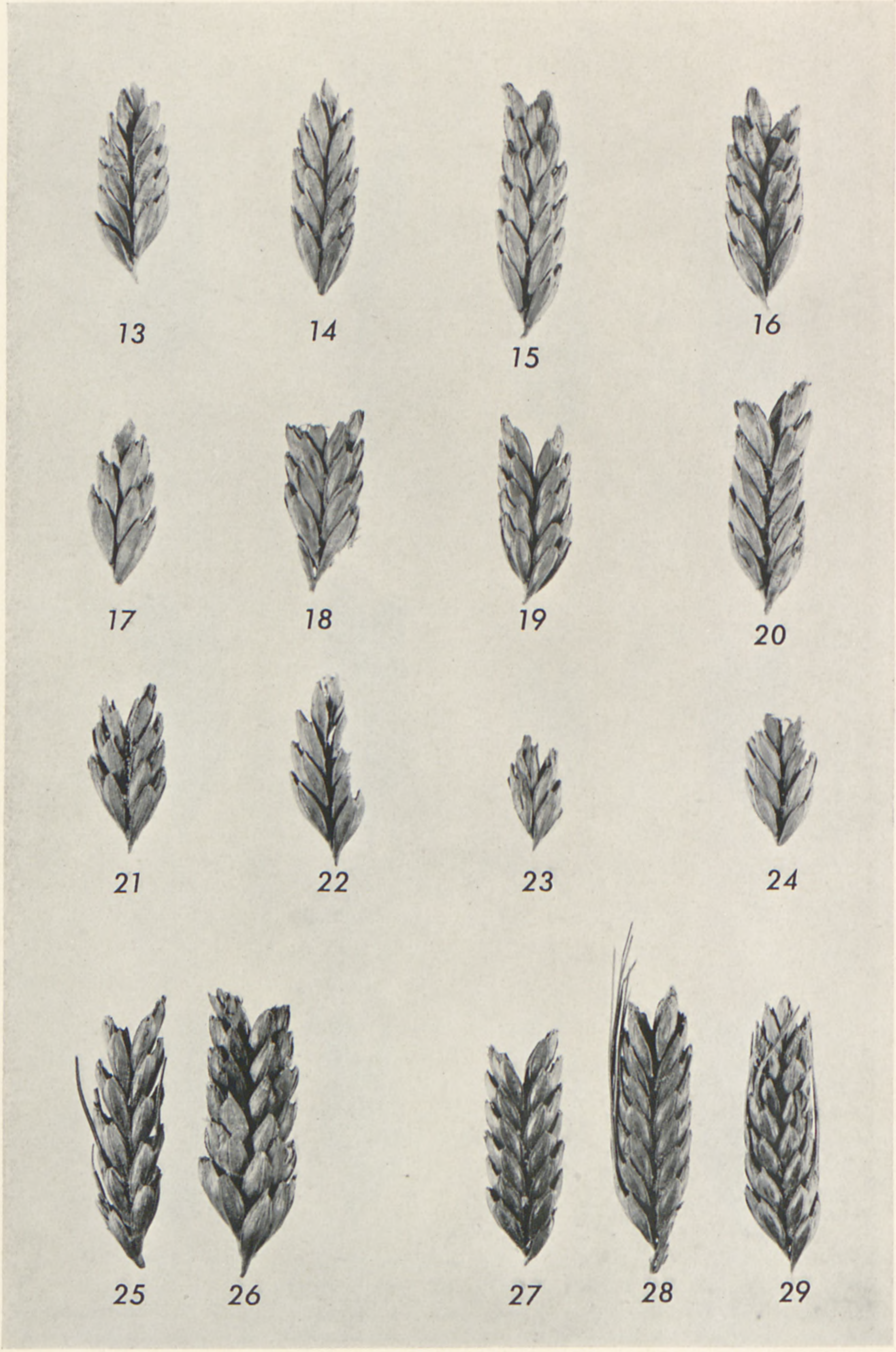
    Vivi Laurent Täckholm 1952. Faraos Blomster. (See illustration p. 60.)
11. J.-P. Lauer, V. Laurent-Täckholm, E. Åberg. 1950. Les plantes découvertes dans les souterrains de l'enceinte du Roi Zozer à Saqqarah, (III[e] Dynastie). Bull. Inst. Egypte. (Cereal identifications by Ewert Åberg.)

12. See illustrations Plate I and II.
13. John Percival 1921. The Wheat Plant.
14. Hans Helbaek 1953. Archaeology —. (See 4.)
15. The writer wishes to extend his most sincere thanks to Herbarium Aaron Aaronsohn, Israel, (Dr. Yoram Ephraty), for kindly supplying him with fresh spikes of varieties of *T. dicoccoides.*
16. E. Schiemann 1932. Entstehung —. (see 5). Illustration p. 82, after Flaksberger. (The organ in question is erroneously called *palea inferior.*)
17. The term "Glume wheats" comprises *T. monococcum*, *T. dicoccum*, and *T. spelta*, and is based exclusively upon their morphological relationship. Genetically they are of different lineage.
18. See illustration in Åberg 1950. Plantes —. (See 11) Plate IV, fig. 15.
19. E. Åberg 1950. Plantes —. (See 11.)
20. Density rate is explained on p. 14.
21. F. Debono 1948. El Omari —. (See 10.)
22. Hans Helbaek 1953. Archaeology —. (See 4.)
23. Vivi and Gunnar Täckholm 1941. Flora of Egypt I. Bulletin of the Faculty of Science No. 17. Cairo.
Vivi Laurent Täckholm 1950. Plantes —. (See 11.)
24. A. Erman and H. Grapow 1925. Wörterbuch der Ägyptischen Sprache. I.
25. Knud Jessen 1939. Trouvailles de blé. (Therkel Mathiassen. Bundsø. Une station de récent âge de la pierre dans l'île d'Als.) Aarb. Nord. Oldk. Hist. fig. 36, p. 84. København.

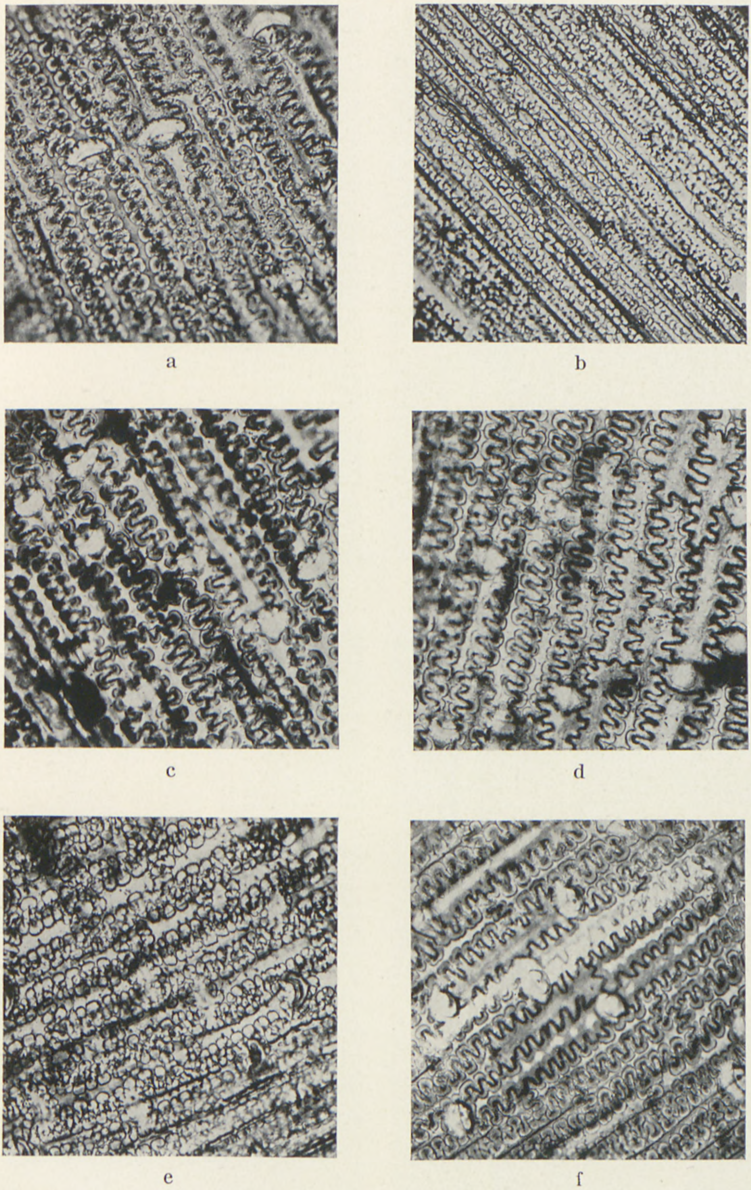
Indleveret til selskabet den 25. marts 1953.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 2. september 1953.



Queen Ichetis' wheat. Specimens Nos. 1—12, (natural size); phot. Riksmuseets Botaniska Avdelning, Stockholm.



Queen Ichetis' wheat. Specimens Nos. 13—29. (natural size); phot. Riksmuseets Botaniska Avdelning, Stockholm.

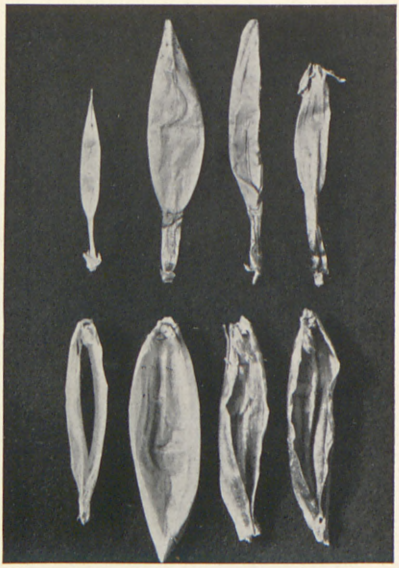


Distal epidermis cells of palea posterior from:
a. Ichetis No. 24 b. Recent *T. monococcum*
c. Ichetis No. 25 d. Ichetis No. 26
e. Recent *T. dicoccum* f. Ichetis No. 16.

c. 240 diam. phot. Hans Helbaek.

PLATE IV

a



b

c

d

a. Top row: glumes of glabrous and hirsute spikelets of the Ichetis wheat.
Middle and bottom row: kernels of the Ichetis wheat.

b. Top row, from left: rudimentary spikelet continuation of recent *T. monococcum*; *T. dicoccum*; Ichetis Nos. 7 & 11.
Bottom row, from left: Palea posterior of recent *T. monococcum*; *T. dicoccum*; Ichetis Nos. 10 & 12.

c. Top row: Hirsute spikelets of small dimensions, Ichetis Nos. 14 & 28.
Bottom row: Glabrous spikelets of largest dimensions, Ichetis No. 26.

d. Ichetis specimen No. 25. Note glume apices.

c. 3 diam. phot. Hans Helbaek.

Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab
Biologiske Meddelelser, bind **21**, nr. 9

Dan. Biol. Medd. **21**, no. 9 (1953)

SOME MARINE ALGAE FROM MAURITIUS

ADDITIONS TO THE PARTS PREVIOUSLY PUBLISHED, V

BY

F. BØRGESEN

København
i kommission hos Ejnar Munksgaard
1953

Printed in Denmark.
Bianco Lunos Bogtrykkeri

Also during the past year I have received some collections of algae from Mauritius and the examination of these has shown that they contained not only several species of which I have formerly seen very little material, but also that several new species and even two, as I think, new genera are contained in them.

I have previously pointed out that the algal flora of the island must be said to be very rich and an examination of the lately received collections has confirmed this. In this connection I want to point out that it is almost only the litoral and upper sublitoral algal flora from which the collections originate and from the large brown algae found there as well I have seen very little.

I have had very little material of the algae growing in the deeper sublitoral region for examination; what I have had has nearly all been collected by the late zoologist Dr. Th. Mortensen during his stay on the island.

I want to thank Dr. R. E. Vaughan, Director of the Mauritius Institute in Port-Louis, and his assistant Mr. G. Morin for their continual interest in collecting the algal material.

To Mme, Dr. Geneviève Feldmann and Professor, Dr. Jean Feldmann, Université de Paris, I am much indebted for very valuable information as to some specimens of algae.

I also want to thank Cand. mag. Tyge Christensen for his valuable help with the Latin diagnoses.

The lady artist Miss Ingeborg Frederiksen has also this year helped me with the drawings of most of the figures for which help I thank her very much. A single figure is drawn by Mr. Helge Høvring, M. Sc.

To the Trustees of the Carlsberg Foundation I am much indebted for a continued grant also this year.

CHLOROPHYCEAE

I. Siphonocladales.

Fam. 1. Valoniaceae.

Valonia Ginn.

1. **Valonia Ægagropila** C. Ag.

Alg. Mauritius I, 1940, p. 11; 1945, p. 21; 1946, p. 13.

Some few specimens are found in a batch of algae received recently.

Mauritius: Ile aux Aigrettes, 12-5-52, G. MORIN, no. 1224.

Fam. 2. Boodleaceae.

Struvea Sonder.

1. **Struvea anastomosans** (Harv.) Piccone.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions IV, 1952, p. 7, fig. 3.

Two gatherings of this species are included in a collection of algae recently received.

The specimens form rather large, up to 2—3 cm high tufts; they are much felted together and adhering to each other.

About the localities it is said: "On reef in 3′ water at low tide and on dead coral near reef."

Mauritius: Ilot Barkly, 26-4-52, G. MORIN, no. 1217 and the same locality, 10-6-52, G. MORIN, no. 1229.

II. Siphonales.

Fam. 1. Bryopsidaceae.

Bryopsis Lamour.

1. Bryopsis indica A. & E. S. Gepp.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 44.

Some fine specimens (Fig. 1) of this little *Bryopsis* are present in a lately received batch of algae. The specimens form small,

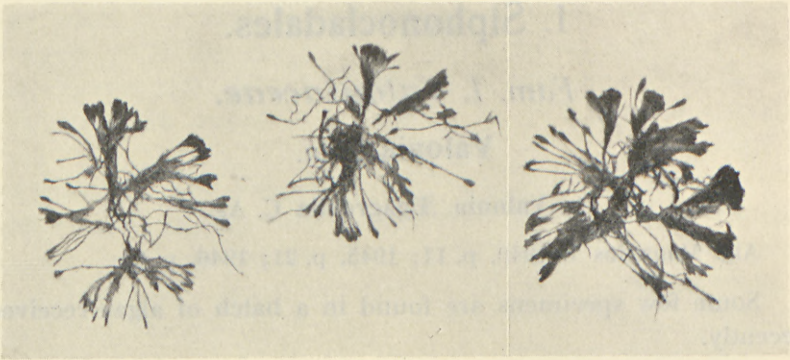


Fig. 1. *Bryopsis indica* A. & E. S. Gepp (× 1).

ca. $1\frac{1}{2}$ cm high, dense tufts in which *Chaetomorpha antennina* (Bory) Kütz. is intermixed.

As to the locality it is said: "In deep pools near reef."

Taylor in his interesting book: Plants of Bikini, 1950, p. 50, mentions that this species was found in the Eniwetok Atoll.

Mauritius: Near Pointe aux Sables, 1-12-51, G. Morin.

Fam. 2. Caulerpaceae.

Caulerpa Lamour.

1. Caulerpa Vickersiae Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions I, 1949, pp. 6—12, figs. 1—2.

In a quite recently received collection of algae from Mauritius it was a pleasure for me to find that this nice little *Caulerpa* was found again in the island. The specimens were in good accordance with those formerly found, referable to the var. *typica*.

As to the locality it is only said: "attached to old pieces of coral".

This new record of the species in the island enables me briefly to reply to the points of view stated by authors of two quite recently appearing papers as to the correct name of this species.

The former of these papers is Dr. Lois Eubank Egerod's very valuable and beautifully illustrated work "An Analysis of the *Siphonous Chlorophycophyta*, with Special Reference to the *Siphonocladales, Siphonales* and *Dasycladales* of Hawaii", Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1952.

In this paper p. 368 Mrs. Egerod briefly says: "On grounds of priority, Okamura's name for the species is retained instead of *C. Vickersiae* Børgs." On the other hand Mrs. Egerod "concurs with Børgesen (1949) in not recognizing the varietal entities". The latter being in agreement with my opinion is of course quite satisfactory to me, and as to the right naming of the species according to my view, I refer the reader to my remarks about the question given in my paper quoted above.

The other paper is that of Professor G. F. Papenfuss, "Notes on South African Marine Algae", III, likewise published at the end of 1952 and received by me together with Mrs. Egerod's in January this year.

In this paper Papenfuss follows his pupil's opinion in using Okamura's name for the species. Having first mentioned that the species is now found in South Africa, Papenfuss continues: "Børgesen (1949, p. 8) prefers to retain the name *Caulerpa Vickersiae* Børgesen (1911) for this taxon because he . . . was the first to give a proper description of the species. It is true that Okamura's (1897) description of *C. ambigua* is misleading, but nevertheless it is sufficient to valuate this name, which according to the International Rules of Botanical Nomenclature must be retained."

To this I shall only repeat, what was said already in my paper of 1949, p. 7, that Mme Weber van Bosse, the monographer of the genus *Caulerpa*, in her work on the genus, after correspondence with Okamura himself about the species, places it in the group *Opuntioides* together with *C. sedoides*; the conclusion of this must be that OKAMURA's description is not only misleading but wrong and his figures are not better.

The locality of the specimens now found was: Ilôt Barkly, 26-4-52, G. MORIN, no. 1218.

2. **Caulerpa serrulata** (Forssk.) J. Ag. emend. Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 50; 1946, p. 38; 1948, p. 13.

Some specimens of this species coming near to the var. *typica* are found in a collection received lately.

They were collected "in lagoon".

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 12-4-52, G. MORIN, no. 1214.

3. **Caulerpa cupressoides** (Vahl) Weber.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 50; 1946, p. 38; 1948, p. 32; 1951, p. 9.

A rather small form with erect, irregularly ramified assimilators up to about 2′ cm high and covered with nearly cylindrical ramuli mucronated above is found in a collection received recently from Mauritius, The ramuli remind somewhat of those in var. *ericifolia* Weber, *l. c.* p. 327.

It was collected in a lagoon.

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 12-4-52, G. MORIN, no. 1213.

4. **Caulerpa racemosa** (Forssk.) Weber v. Bosse. var. **clavifera** (Turner) Weber v. Bosse.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 51; 1946, p. 39; 1948, p. 32; 1951, p. 10; 1952, p. 11.

A gathering of fine specimens of var. *clavifera* (Turner) Weber v. Bosse are contained in a collection of algae received recently from Mauritius. It was gathered in a "Deep pool near reef".

forma *simplicissima* Børgs.

In Additions I, 1949, p. 14, fig. 4 I referred a peculiar form having subcylindral-subclavate assimilators only as a forma

Fig. 2. *Caulerpa racemosa* (Forssk.) Weber v. Bosse. var. clavifera (Turner) Wb. v. Bosse. A form ad f. *simplicissimam* Børgs. vertens (× about ½).

simplicissima to *Caulerpa racemosa*, var. *clavifera*. In a batch of algae received recently a specimen was found (Fig. 2) in which, as is seen in the figure, some of the assimilators are naked like those in f. *simplicissima*, some carrying a few nearly globular ramuli.

The specimens were collected "on reef".

Mauritius: var. *clavifera*, Pointe aux Sables, 12-3-52, R. E. V. no. 1197; forma *simplicissima* Børgs., Ilôt Barkly, 26-4-52, G. Morin, no. 1219.

5. Caulerpa peltata Lamour.

Alg. Mauritius, 1940, p. 51; 1946, p. 39; 1951, p. 10.

Several fine specimens of this species are found in a collection received lately.

They were collected "in pools near shore".

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 12-3-52, G. Morin, no. 1198.

6. Caulerpa lentillifera J. Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions I, 1949, p. 15.

As I had formerly seen very little material of this small, elegant *Caulerpa* it was of interest in a collection of algae received lately from Mauritius to get some large well prepared specimens.

These were quite typical, having the characteristic marked constriction of the pedicel just below the globose upper part of the ramuli.

The assimilators reached a height of up to 3 mm and are densely covered by the small globose ramuli nearly to their base. They are much ramified and the ramification was upon the whole very irregular, also owing to the pecularity that rhizomes sometimes are given out from the assimilators in a way very similar to that found in assimilators of *Caulerpa racemosa*; compare my figure 4, p. 61 in The Journal of the Indian Bot. Soc., vol. XI, Madras 1932.

As to the locality it is said: "Calm water near reef submerged at low tide".

Mauritius: Ilôt Barkly, 30-10-51, G. Morin, no. 1174.

Fam. 3. Codiaceae.

Avrainvillea Decaisne.

1. **Avrainvillea amadelpha** (Mont.) Gepp.

Alg. Mauritius, I, 1940, p. 54, and 1948, p. 33.

Two small specimens are found in a collection of algae recently received from Mauritius.

They were "growing in a lagoon and attached to corals".

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 12-4-52, G. Morin, no. 1212.

Codium Stackh.

1. **Codium Geppei** O. Chr. Schmidt.

Alg. Mauritius, 1946, p. 49, and 1948, p. 38.

Of this species I have lately received some fine, well prepared specimens forming large, much entangled patches made by the creeping and mutually coherent thalli.

As to the locality and way of growing of the specimens it is said by the collector: "Densely entangled growth on the under-surface of overhanging rocks." The locality has surely been on an exposed shore; I refer in this respect to the detailed description of its way of growing, Dr. E. C. T. HOLSINGER, Colombo, has sent me several years ago; compare my paper: Some Marine Algae from Ceylon, 1936, pp. 69—70.

Mauritius: Riambul near Souillac, 8-2-51, R. E. V. no. 1042.

2. **Codium Bartlettii** Tseng and Gilbert.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions I, 1949, p. 23, fig. 12.

A large and well prepared specimen of this species is contained in a gathering of algae recently received from Mauritius. Fig. 3 shows the specimen; as appears from the figure the characteristic features of this species are easily observable in this specimen. This for instance is true of the characteristic unequal development of the branches, when the thallus becomes forked, the one of the branches becoming more vigorous than the other and continuing the axis below it. Another characteristic feature found in this species is that the angles of the branches are very broadly rounded. Upon a small part of a specimen preserved in formol and sea water it is easily observable that the thallus below the furcations is complanate, but otherwise subterete.

As to the vesicles the shape of these are in good accordance with the figures of TSENG and GILBERT and mine.

The specimen was sterile.

As to the locality it is said: "In deep pool growing in coral sand."

Mauritius: Riambel, 24-10-50, R. E. V. no. 953.

Fig. 3. *Codium Bartlettii* Tseng and Gilbert (× ca. ½).

PHAEOPHYCEAE

ISOGENERATAE

I. Ectocarpales.

Fam. 1. ***Ectocarpaceae.***

Ectocarpus Lyngb.

1. Ectocarpus Vaughani Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, II, Phaeophyceae, 1941, p. 31, figs. 12—14.

This species, hitherto found in Mauritius only, occurred abundantly upon specimens of *Nemacystus erythraeus*.

About the locality it is said: "in calm water near shore."

Mauritius: Les Salines, Roche Noire, Pont Louis, 11-11-50, R. E. V. no. 961.

II. Dictyotales.

Fam. 1. ***Dictyotaceae.***

Padina Adanson.

1. Padina Commersonii Bory.

Alg. Mauritius, II, 1941, p. 49; Additions III, 1951, p. 14.

Already in a postscript in Additions III, 1951, p. 14, I was able to state that a specimen of *Padina* (no. 1118), sent by air-mail

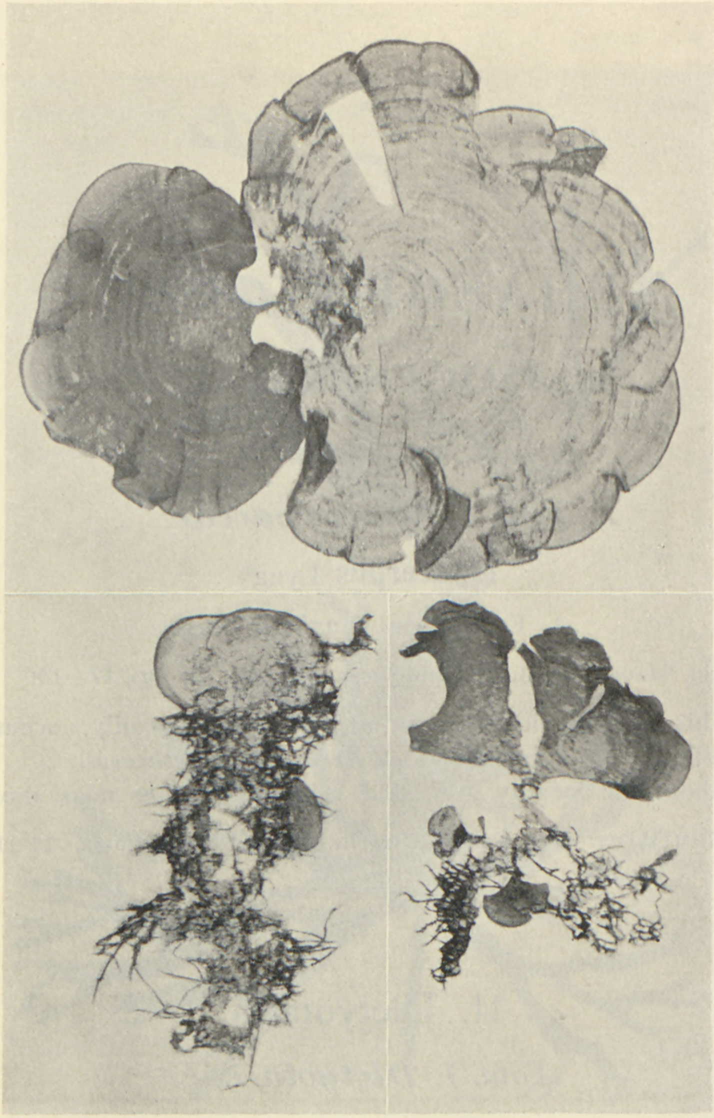


Fig. 4. *Padina Commersonii* Bory. *a*, a fertile thallus. *b* and *c*, young ones with basal, creeping filaments (*Vaughaniella*) (× 1).

from Mauritius, to which the basal filaments (*Vaughaniella*) were attached, was *Padina Commersonii* Bory.

Later I have received more material of the same number containing some well developed fertile thalli with the basal creeping filaments (Fig. 4).

Regarding the locality it is said: "Shallow calm water exposed at low tide—on flat sand-covered basaltic rock." Here "exposed" surely means that the locality is laid dry during low tide but not exposed to the surf in which places the extensive patches of *Vaughaniella* are found and where the plant is unable to develop the erect *Padina*-thalli.

In a medley of different algae (no. 1049) *Vaughaniella* was present in abundance.

According to Dr. Vaughan's information about the locality and the algae found there, they were "growing entangled with *Gelidiella acerosa*, from which they were often difficult to separate", and furthermore it was said: "forms a dense entangled matlike growth on large rocks protected from strong surf."

One of the commonest algae in this community was *Vaughaniella*, the creeping, much ramified filaments of which were fixing themselves round about to the other algae by means of the long rhizoids. The specimens were sterile and no traces of *Padina Commersonii* were found.

Very common in this medley of algae was further more *Wurdemannia miniata* (Drap.) Feldm. et Hamel, which was in good accordance with my figures in Mar. Alg. D. W. I., 1919—20, figs. 360—61; moreover *Champia parvula* was common, and so were fragments of *Centroceras, Ceramium, Polysiphonia, Laurencia*, and finally *Jania adhaerens* was rather abundantly present, fixing itself especially to *Wurdemannia miniata*.

Mauritius: Flic-en-Flacq, 22-2-51, R. E. V. no. 1049. Blue Bay, 8-5-51, R. E. V. no. 1118.

Dictyota Lamour.

1. Dictyota dichotoma (Huds.) Lamour.

Lamouroux, Essai, p. 58. — *Ulva dichotoma* Hudson, Flora Anglica, p. 476.

Of *Dictyota* I have formerly seen very little material; it is therefore of interest that in a batch of algae received recently some well prepared fertile material of this genus was included.

The specimens, having obtuse apices and the fertile organs scattered over the surface of the thallus, some of them, though, also near the margins, are, I think, referable to *Dictyota dichotoma*, even if they are not so regularly dichotomously divided as the specimens from Europe mostly are. Of the many illustrations Kützing in Tabulae gives of this species the Mauritian specimens are rather like Fig. 1, Tab. 10 in vol. 9.

As to the locality it is said: "Calm water near shore."

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 22-6-51, G. Morin, no. 1144.

Geogr. Distr.: Atlantic coasts of Europe and Africa, Mediterranean Sea, Natal, Japan, Philippine Islands, etc.

2. **Dictyota divaricata** Lamour.

Alg. Mauritius, II, 1941, p. 50. Addit. List, 1948, p. 46.

Some few specimens of this species are present in collections received lately.

Mauritius, no locality, C. Neyroles, no. 452. Trou d'Eau Douce, 22-3-47, R. E. V. no. 652.

HETEROGENERATAE

A. HAPLOSTICHINEAE

I. Chordariales.

Fam. 1. Spermatochnaceae.

Nemacystus Derb. et Sol.

1. **Nemacystus erythraeus** (J. Ag.) Sauv.

Sauvageau, C., Alg. mar. Golfe Gasc., 1897, p. 279 (repr., p. 48). Kylin, H., Chordariales, 1940, p. 46. — *Cladosiphon erythraeus* J. Ag., Spec. alg., vol. I, 1948, p. 55. *Mesogloia gracilis* Hering et Martems in herb. Kützing, Tab. Phyc., vol. 8, tab. 10.

Some specimens (no. 961) lately received from Mauritius (Pl. I) seem to be referable to this species, but I want to point out that I have not been able to compare the Mauritian specimens with authentic material.

According to Kylin, p. 46 the characteristic features of this species are that the cells in the assimilatory filaments are proportionally short and furthermore that in the middle of the plurilocular sporangia the cells may sometimes have longitudinal walls. As to the first-mentioned character the cells of the assimilating filaments are short in the Mauritian specimens; as to the second this cannot be stated, as I have not found plurilocular sporangia in the material.

The dried specimens have a length of about 20—30 cm and have a dark brown colour. They are very irregularly ramified and have surely been very much entangled. The thicker parts of the thallus are about 1 mm thick, tapering upwards to a half mm or less. The thallus becomes hollow when old. The uppermost cells in the assimilating filaments are often rather broad, shorter than their breadth and often obliquely inflated on the convex side of the filaments.

I have formerly referred (II, 1941, p. 57) some few specimens to *Nemacystus decipiens* (Sur.) Kuck. These specimens have a slender thallus agreeing quite well with Okamura's figure in Icones Jap. Alg., vol. II, pl. 89 and also in several ways deviate from the specimens mentioned here, for instance, by the presence of hairs; on the other hand these specimens had plurilocular sporangia in the middle of which longitudinal walls sometimes were found, a character which Kylin, as said above, points out as being a characteristic of *Nemacystus erythraeus.*

The specimens here referred to *Nemacystus erythraeus* (J. Ag.) Sauv. were collected "in calm water near shore".

Mauritius: Les Salines, Roche Noire, Port Louis, 11-11-50, R.E.V. no. 961.

Geogr. Distr.: Red Sea.

B. POLYSTICHINEAE

I. Punctariales.

*Fam. 1. **Encoeliaceae.***

Chnoospora J. Ag.

1. Chnoospora implexa (Her.) J. Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, II, 1941, p. 63. Add. Lists, 1948, p. 50.

Several fine gatherings of this species were found in a lately received collection.

The specimens were collected in calm water.

Mauritius: Black River, La Preneuse, 17-10-51, G. Morin, nos. 1166 and 1168.

RHODOPHYCEAE

Florideae.

I. Nemalionales.

Fam. 1. Helminthocladiaceae.

a. Nemalieae.

Liagora Lamour.

1. **Liagora rugosa** Zan.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1, 1942, p. 30, fig. 14. Additions I, 1949, p. 28. Additions, IV, 1952, p. 21, figs. 10—11.

In a collection of algae received quite recently from Mauritius some specimens of *Liagora* are found which are like those which in the parts quoted above have I referred to this species and which as to the habit must be said to be in good accordance with the figures of Zanardini in Plant. Mar. Rubr., p. 65, pl. IV, fig. 2.

The specimens were tetrasporic like those formerly seen.

About the locality it is said: "Submerged at low tide but exposed to strong currents and waves."

Mauritius: Pointe aux Caves, 1-12-51, G. Morin, no. 1186.

2. **Liagora pinnata** Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions I, 1949, p. 32.

Of this elegant species I have formerly seen only two specimens from Mauritius, kept in the Kew Herbarium and collected by

Colonel Pike; they have been determined by Dickie as *Liagora obtusa* n. spec. It was therefore of interest that in a collection of algae recently received from Mauritius I found two specimens of this species together with some little material preserved in formol and seawater. An examination of the two dried specimens has shown that they are antheridial, while the material in formol is female but with young carpogonial branches only.

This species belongs to the section *Farinosae* of Yamada, "*Liagora* from Japan", 1938, p. 23, characterized by the nearly cylindrical assimilating filaments, the lateral, nearly straight carpogonial branches, and the large globular antheridial bodies. Besides I may refer to my figures in Mar. Alg. D. W. I., vol. II, p. 74, figs. 76—81 and to Yamada's figures 17—18 l. c.

It is most regrettable that gonimoblasts were not found in the specimens, since Yamada in Japanese specimens has found that the carpospores are transformed to tetrasporangia.

While in the West Indies I found the plant to be monoecious, the plant in Japan is dioecious and the fine specimens from Mauritius are likewise so.

As to the locality it is only said: "calm water, near reef."

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 17-10-51, R. E. V. no. 1164.

3. **Liagora valida** Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions I, 1949, p. 26, fig. 26.

Lately I have from Mauritius received some few, fine specimens which I think are best placed in the form cycle of this very variable species.

The specimens (Plate II above) are of a whitish-rosy colour and when seen through a lens they display a mealy surface. The densely ramified thallus is repeatedly furcated, becoming gradually very thin, the uppermost ramifications scarcely reaching $\frac{1}{4}$ mm.

As compared with other specimens of this very variable species, it is essentially the densely placed and very thin branches and branchlets of the thallus which distinguish these specimens.

In the part from 1949, p. 28, mentioned above I have pointed out the great variability which is found in the specimens referred to this species, which makes it questionable, if it ought not to be divided into several species; cf. HOWE's statement on this question.

The specimens here mentioned are very alike in all respects except in size, the smallest of the specimens having only a breadth of 5 cm while on the other hand the largest one is ca. 15 cm broad.

An examination has shown that their structure agrees quite well with my former description and figures in Mar. Alg. D.W.I., vol. II, p. 70, figs. 71—75.

In two of the specimens I have found carpogonial branches, in one gonimoblasts, and one specimen was sterile.

As to the locality it is said: "Behind reef in lagoon; shallow water."

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 17-10-51, R. E. V. no. 1162.

4. **Liagora bella** nov. spec.

Frons caespitosa, parva, ca. 5 cm alta, teres, a basi ca. 1 mm crassa, ad apicem versus attenuata, repetite furcata, mollissima et mucosissima, flaccida, calcificatione frustulosa, exigua.

Specimina exsiccata superficie farinaceo-scabra, colore sordide albo-rosea.

Axis centralis ex filamentis crassioribus, ca. 20 μ crassis, et filamentis tenuioribus compositus.

Stratum periphericum assimilationis ex filamentis repetite furcatis, ca. 300—400 μ longis formatum, cellulis in parte basali subcylindrico-fusiformibus, in media parte crassioribus, oblonge-pyriformibus, ad apicem versus gradatim minoribus.

Species dioica. Antheridia non observata. Rami carpogoniorum robusti, recti vel subcurvi, ex 5—6 cellulis compositi.

Gonimoblasti semiglobulari-complanati, filamentis involucralibus validis circumcincti.

Mauritius: Black River, La Preneuse, 17-10-1951, in shallow water near reef. R. E. V. no. 1163.

The thallus of this little nice *Liagora* (Plate II below) has, in accordance with the small fragments of it preserved in formol and seawater and in a dried condition, when living, formed a roundish tuft about 5 cm high.

The thallus is repeatedly furcated with about right angles between the branches; the lowermost main branches are up to about 1 mm broad tapering evenly towards the uppermost tips, which are less than half a mm broad.

The colour of the dried specimens is whitish-greyish with a reddish tinge and the surface of the dried specimens is farinaceous.

The thallus is embedded in a thick layer of slime and therefore very lubricous and slippery.

The numerous long hairs issuing from the tips of the assimilating filaments, especially in a very large number from those in the uppermost young parts of the thallus, are completely embedded in the slime.

The rather scarce calcification consists of scattered, incoherent clumps found among the uppermost parts of the assimilating filaments and giving the surface of the dried thallus a gritty appearance; and when the thallus preserved in formol and seawater is seen through a lens the calcification looks like small roundish grains very nicely distributed among the tips of the assimilating filaments; but under higher magnification the particles of chalk are seen to be of rather irregular size and shape and also to be rather irregularly distributed.

The central axis is composed of rather thick filaments, about 20 μ broad, with thick walls winding very loosely about each other and more or less mixed with thinner ones.

The assimilating filaments (Fig. 5), issuing from the central ones, are ca. 300—400 μ long; from their basal cells thin rhizoid-like filaments are given out, bending about the thallus. The repeatedly furcated assimilating filaments are straight outwardly directed, in their basal parts composed of elongated nearly cylindrical cells which become gradually broader and shorter upwards; somewhat below their apices the cells in the filaments are broadest, oblong-roundish and hence become gradually smaller towards their summits. From the apical broadly oblong or subpyriform cells long thin hairs issue abundantly and likewise short ones.

The specimens are female.

No antheridial bodies were found in the specimens, which surely all are fragments of a single specimen; the plant must therefore be presumed to be dioecious.

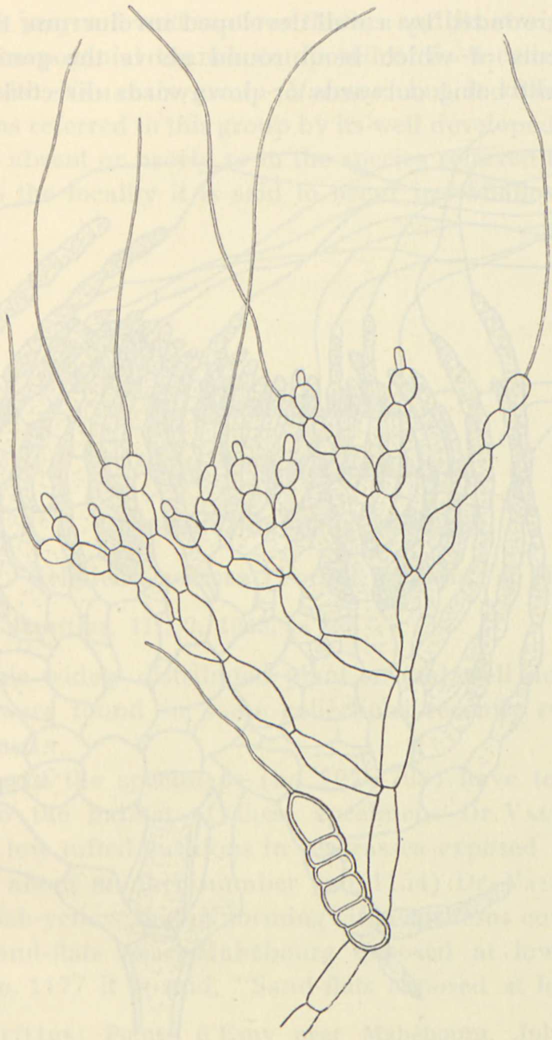


Fig. 5. *Liagora bella* Børgs. Assimilating filaments with a carpogonial branch (× 220).

The carpogonial branch is laterally placed upon a cell near the middle of the assimilating filaments and is composed of 6, sometimes only 5 cells; it is nearly straight, about 60 μ long and up to 15 μ broad (Fig. 5).

The rather large and compact gonimoblasts (Fig. 6) are flattened-semiglobular with a more or less excavated base reaching a breadth of about 200 μ and a height of about 50 μ;

they are surrounded by a well developed involucrum, the uppermost filaments of which bend round above the gonimoblasts, the lowermost being outwards or downwards directed.

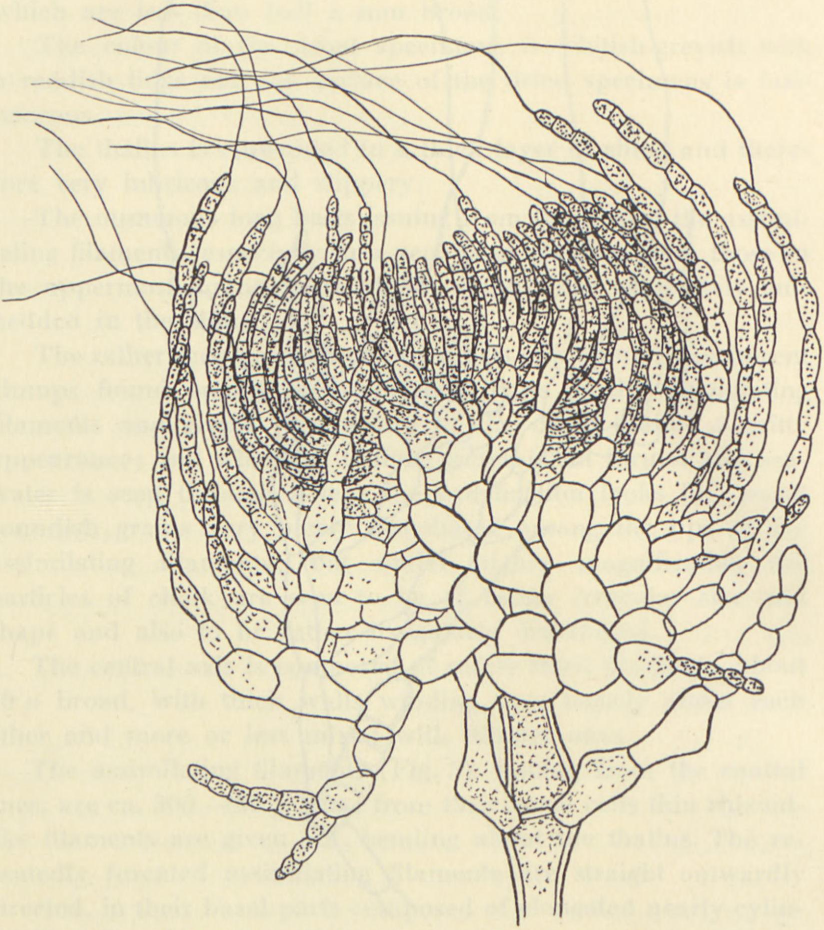


Fig. 6. *Liagora bella* Børgs. A gonimoblast (× 400).

After fertilization from the cells uppermost in the stalk below the gonimoblast a number of often much branched filaments issue in all directions. The basal cells in these filaments become large, up to 5—20 μ broad, globular, or more irregularly shaped, and almost without chromatophores; they form an often dense cover round the stipe. The upper ends of these filaments have chromatophores and become like the involucral filaments.

By its very soft and mucous thallus and its straight or almost straight carpogonial branch composed of 5—6 cells, this species agrees with YAMADA's group *Mucosae*, but it differs from the specimens referred to this group by its well developed involucrum, which is absent or nearly so in the species referred to this group.

As to the locality it is said to occur in "Shallow water near reef".

Gelidiales.

Fam. 1. Gelidiaceae.

Gelidiella Feldm. et Hamel.

1. **Gelidiella acerosa** (Forssk.) Feldm. et Hamel.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 5.

Of this widely distributed plant several well developed specimens were found in some collections recently received from Dr. VAUGHAN.

Some of the specimens (no. 707—708) have tetrasporangia.

As to the habitat of these specimens Dr. VAUGHAN writes: "Forms low tufted cushions in seagrasses exposed at low tide."

And about another number (no. 1154) Dr. VAUGHAN writes: "Brownish-yellow thallus forming large cushions covering a wide area. Sand-flats near Mahébourg exposed at low tide." And about no. 1177 it is said, "Sand-flats exposed at low tide".

Mauritius: Pointe d'Esny near Mahébourg, July 18th, 1947, R. E. V. nos. 707—708. Mahébourg, 19-7-51, R. E. V. no. 1154. Mahébourg, 15-11-51, G. MORIN, no. 1177.

Cryptonemiales.

Fam. 1. Corallinaceae.

Subfam. 1. Corallineae.

Cheilosporum. (Decsne) Aresch.

1. **Cheilosporum jungermannioides** Rupr.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions II, 1950, p. 8.

Having formerly seen only a small specimen of this species without any statement of locality and dates but Mauritius, I have lately received some very fine material of it (Fig. 7).

Fig. 7. *Cheilosporum jungermannioides* Rupr. Part of a tuft (× 2).

A comparison of the specimens from Mauritius with some collected by SETCHELL in Tahiti, the type locality of the species, has brought out that the specimens from both localities are in very good accordance with each other.

The specimens which form tufts up to about 10 cm broad were collected "On reef, exposed to strong surf" and were, when collected, "greyish-pink" of colour.

Mauritius: Mahébourg reef, 26-3-51, R. E. V. no. 1075.

Jania Lamour.

1. **Jania adhaerens** Lamx.

Lamouroux, I., Hist. Polypiers corallig., 1816, p. 270. Areschoug, J. G., in J. Agardh, Spec. Alg., vol. II, p. 559. Børgesen, F., Mar. Alg. D. W. I., 1919, p. 195, figs. 184—187. Taylor, W. Randolph, Pacific Marine Algae, Los Angeles 1945, p. 195.

This little species was found abundantly in a collection of various small algae entangled in tufts of *Gelidiella acerosa*; among these *Wurdemannia miniata* was also found and it was especially to the thalli of this species that *Jania adhaerens* fixed itself by means of a small semiglobular disc.

The diameter of its thallus varies somewhat in the different specimens but it is as a rule between 40—80 μ and the length of the joints is also rather variable; it comes up to 200—250 μ. Besides I refer to Taylor's detailed comparative examination of the various forms mentioned in the literature.

The specimens from Mauritius are in rather good conformity with Kützing's fig. f. in Tab. Phycologicae, vol. 8, tab. 83.

Mauritius: Flic-en-Flacq, 22-2-51, R. E. V. no. 1049.
Geogr. Distr.: Widely distributed in warm seas.

Fam. 2. Grateloupiaceae.

Grateloupia C. Ag.

1. **Grateloupia filicina** (Wulf.) Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 27.

Several gatherings of this species, of which I formerly have seen only some few specimens from Jadin's collection, are found in collections received lately.

According to the information about the localities in which the specimens were taken, they are found in pools or in protected places in shallow water.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 24-4-51, G. Morin, no. 1110. Flic-en-Flacq, 2-9-51, R. E. V. no. 1157. Ilôt Barkly, 27-1-52, G. Morin, no. 1199.

Gigartinales.

Fam. 1. Solieriaceae.

Eucheuma J. Ag.

1. Eucheuma speciosum (Sonder.) J. Ag.
var. *mauritiana* Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 49, figs. 21—22.

Of this variety I have formerly seen only a single specimen collected by the late Dr. TH. MORTENSEN; this specimen was preserved in formol and part of it is shown in fig. 21 *l. c.*

In a collection of algae lately received from Mauritius some fine specimens were found which agree very well with HARVEY's figure in Phycologia Austr., tab. LXIV, showing a specimen having a rather regularly constricted thallus; on the other hand the thallus in KÜTZING's figure in Tabulae, vol. 18, pl. 6, fig. c is not constricted.

In the specimen lately received from Mauritius the thallus is in some parts articulated, in other parts not. It is densely covered by the conical spines. In a dried condition the colour of the specimens is reddish-brown.

The specimens were collected "in lagoon, attached to dead corals".

Mauritius: La Preneuse, 12-4-52, G. MORIN, no. 1220.

Tenaciphyllum nov. gen.

Frons membranacea, tenax, carnosa, prostrata, dorsiventralis, irregulariter lobata et flabellata, pagina inferiore thalli radicibus firmioribus saxo adfixa.

Frons e stratis tribus contexta, strato superiore et inferiore e cellulis subcylindricis aut magis oblongis, densissime aggregatis compositis, strato medullari e cellulis parietibus crassis indutis, in media parte thalli majoribus, subglobosis aut subpolygonalibus, in exteriore parte gradatim minoribus contexto.

Tetrasporangia fusiformia, zonatim divisa, in nematheciis crassis, macularibus extensis, superficiem thalli plus minus tegentibus orta. Organa sexualia ignota.

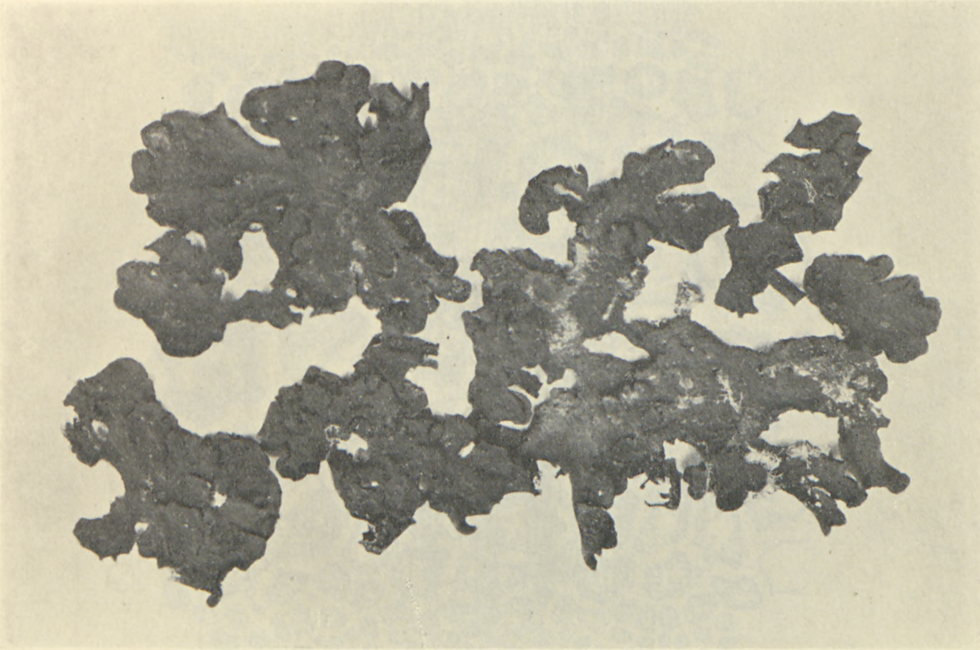


Fig. 8. *Tenaciphyllum lobatum* Børgs. A dried specimen (Nat. size).

1. **Tenaciphyllum lobatum** nov. spec.

Thallus disciformis, ca. 1 mm crassus, irregulariter in lobos profunde divisus, margine rotundato-sinuoso. Color thalli in vivo obscure ruber, in sicco nigrescens, superficies opaca, scaber.

Stratum superius et inferius thalli ex cellulis oblongis, densissime aggregatis composita. Medulla ca. 600—700 μ crassa, ex cellulis subglobularibus aut magis irregularibus, parietibus crassis indutis, in media parte maioribus, ca. 150 μ latis, sursum et deorsum gradatim minoribus contexta.

Tetrasporangia ca. 30—40 μ longa et 7—8 μ lata, in nematheciis expansis, usque ad ca. 300 μ crassis, in superficie thalli formatis ubique orta.

According to information from the collector it has "a flat dark-red, disk-like thallus"; it is not stated by the collector, but it has surely been found upon an exposed coast.

Mauritius: Flic-en-Flacq, 3-4-50, R. E. V. no. 905.

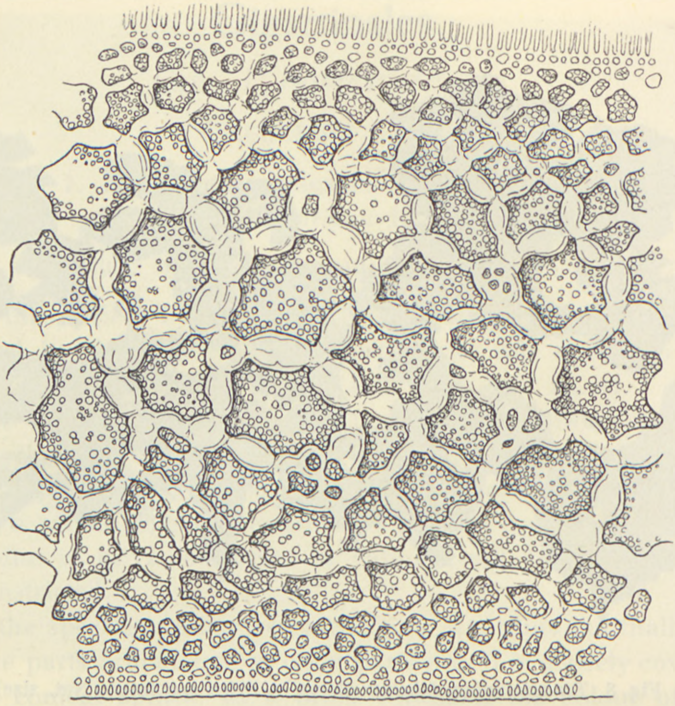


Fig. 9. *Tenaciphyllum lobatum* nov. spec. Transverse section of the thallus. The cell-contents are more or less stellately contracted. Above, the lowermost part of the thick fertile layer is seen (× ca. 150).

The thallus of this, as I think, representative of a new genus (Plate III and Fig. 8), is prostrate, flat, tough and fleshy, ca. 1 mm thick, most irregularly lobed, with lobes up to 4—5 cm broad, when preserved in formol and seawater, but only half this size in a dry condition. The surface of a dry specimen is dull, not shining, and its colour is dark reddish-brown to blackish. From the underside of the thallus numerous, short, vigorous, rootlike processes are given out without any order; in places many are densely crowded, in others few occur and in some places none at all; they become root-like hapters, with a short, rather thick stipe, 3—4 mm long, from the basal end of which irregularly shaped processes issue by means of which the thallus becomes strongly fixed to rocks and corals.

A transverse section of the thallus shows that it is plainly dorsiventrally built (Fig. 9).

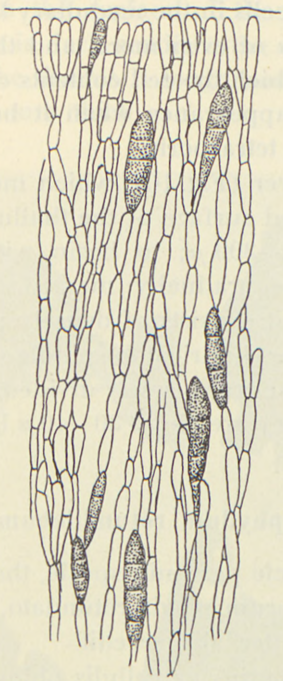


Fig. 10. *Tenaciphyllum lobatum* nov. spec. A small part of a transverse section of the fertile layer showing the zonately divided sporangia scattered in the tissue (× ca. 400).

In the cortical layer, when sterile, the dorsiventrality, to be sure, is not so much developed; that upon the side of the thallus turned upwards is about 25 μ thick and composed of densely placed enlongated subcylindrical cells, that below is a little less thick and composed of more oblong-shaped cells.

The medullary tissue has a thickness of about 500—700 μ; it consists of a parenchymatous tissue, uppermost and below composed of small roundish cells increasing in size inwards, but still so that the largest cells often are found somewhat below the middle of the thallus, from where the cells rather abruptly decrease in size towards the lower side. The part of the thallus above this line is up to about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the whole thickness of the thallus and the dorsiventrality is thus markedly pronounced. The largest cells in the medulla have a diameter of up to about 150 μ; here and there, mixed among the large cells, a single or a group of some few small cells are found.

The walls of the cells in the medullary layer are stratified and very thick about 50 μ or even more, and they are perforated by long pores through which the cell contents communicate and give the latter a stellate appearance when it becomes contracted.

The specimen is tetrasporic.

The stichidial layer (Fig. 10), which more or less covers the whole upwards turned surface of the thallus, reaches a thickness of up to about 250—300 μ; to begin with it forms roundish elevations which are gradually merged. A transverse section (Fig. 10) shows that it consists of densely placed filaments composed of, narrow, subcylindrical to spindle-shaped cells. Scattered about in this layer the transversely divided, spindle shaped sporangia are formed; they are about 30—40 μ long and 7—8 μ broad.

2. **Tenacciphyllum rotundilobum** nov. spec.

A praecedente, facie persimili specie, thallo in omnibus rebus minore, circuitu loborum magis rotundato, colore atropurpureo, superficie sublaevi inter alia recedit.

Stratum thalli superius ex cellulis oblongis compositum sicut inferius paululo tenuius.

Medulla ca. 150—200 μ crassa, ex cellulis rotundato-subpolygonis, in media parte maioribus, ca. 70—80 μ latis, sursum et deorsum minoribus formata.

Stratum nematheciale in superficie thalli expansum ca. 100 μ crassum, ex filamentis laxius quam in specie praecedente connatis formatum. Tetrasporangia 20 μ longa et 6—7 μ lata, in nematheciis dispersa.

Mauritius: Riambel near Souillac, 23-11-50, G. Morin, no. 984.

The flat, tough, leathery thallus of this species (Plate III below and Fig. 11) is fixed to the substratum by means of vigorous, rootlike hapters given out from the under side of the thallus often in small groups or solitarily.

The thallus is much and deeply, irregularly lobed and the irregularity is augmented by proliferations, all with broadly rounded circumferences and up to about 2 cm broad. The largest specimen is about 7 cm broad.

In a dry condition the surface of the thallus is dull, not shining, and its colour is dark reddish; the specimens preserved in formol show that the thallus is tough and lubricous and that the thallus is about $\frac{1}{2}$ mm thick.

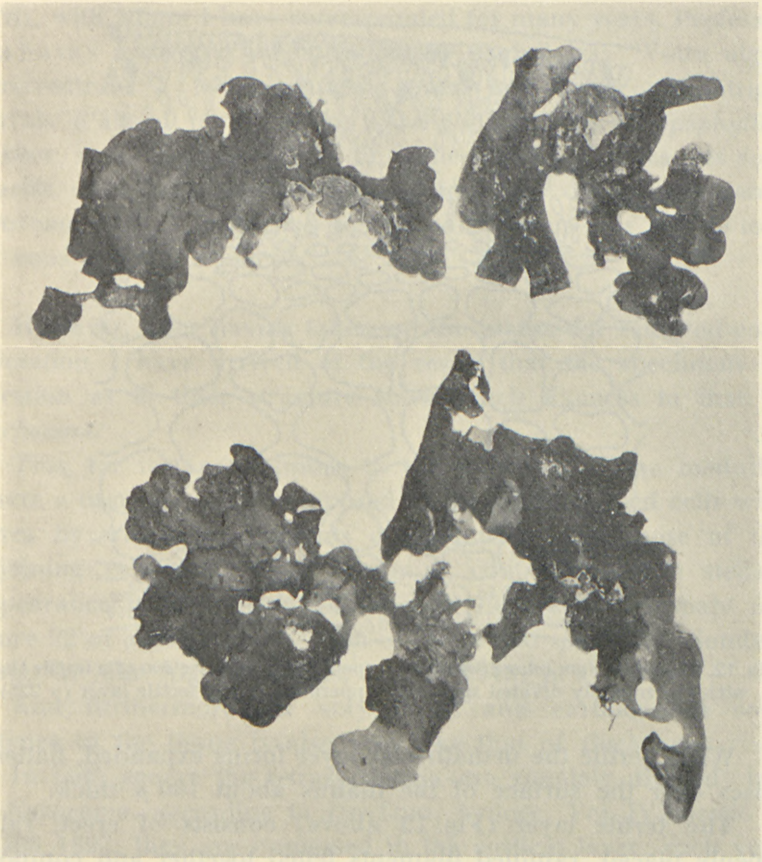


Fig. 11. *Tenaciphyllum rotundilobum* Børgs. Some specimens (× 1).

When the plant is sterile the upper side of the thallus has a thick cuticula about 10 μ thick and below that a layer of densely placed oblong, thick-walled cells with chromatophores; the peripheral layer in the side below is built in a similar way except for its being a little thinner.

The medullary layer in the middle of the thallus consists of roundish polygonate, very thick-walled cells, small above and below, but increasing in size towards a little below the middle of the thallus, where the cells in transverse section may reach a diameter of up to about 70—80 μ, and the dorsiventrality is thus often very easily observable; the medullary layer is about 150—200 μ thick.

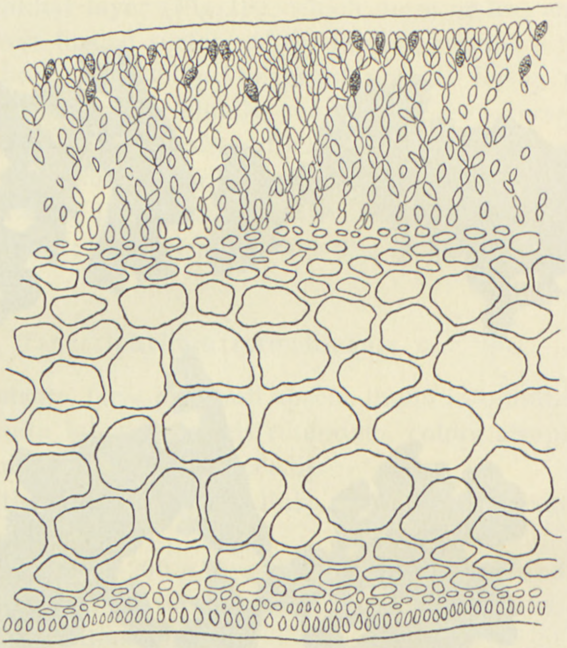


Fig. 12. *Tenaciphyllum rotundilobum* nov. spec. Transverse section of a fertile thallus with the zonately divided sporangia uppermost in the fertile layer (× 225).

When fertile the nemathecial layer forms expanded, flattened discs over the surface of the thallus about 100 μ thick.

The fertile layer (Fig. 12 above) consists of erect, rather openly placed, ramified filaments felted together and composed of oblong-subcylindrical cells. They are about 5—6 μ thick. From these filaments in their upper part the spindle-shaped zonately divided sporangia are given out. The fertile layer is about 100 μ thick.

As to the locality in which the specimens were found it is said: "Growing on rocks submerged at low tide."

It is not easy to say where in the system this new genus is to be placed so long as cystocarpic specimens are not found. And being unable to solve the question with the resources at my disposal here I wrote about the question to my French colleague, Monsieur le Professor J. Feldmann, Université de Paris, with whom I have corresponded for many years. Professor Feldmann answered me most kindly as follows: "Votre algue dorsiventrale à tetrasporanges zonés m'a beaucoup intrigé. J'avais d'abord pensé à un *Weberella* ou à un *Herpophyllon* Farlow, mais la structure est différente et les tetrasporanges sont cruciés dans ces deux genres. Il s'agit sans doute d'un genre nouveau, mais en l'absence de cystocarpe, je ne vois pas de tout ou vous pouvez le placer."

However, after having taken up the matter for renewed consideration I have arrived at the result that the specimens in question as to their structure show much likeness to that of *Eucheuma*.

This, for instance, applies to the structure of the medulla, where a tissue is found composed of very thick-walled cells with pores by which the contents communicate with those of the adjoining cells and when becoming contracted get a stellate appearance in agreement with that of *Eucheuma*; compare my figure 22 of a transverse section of *Eucheuma speciosum* (Sonder) J. Ag. in Mar. Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 51.

And furthermore the very tough and cartilaginous consistence of the tissue is also very like that of *Eucheuma*.

In both genera the tetrasporangia are zonately divided; but in *Eucheuma*, according to De-Toni, Sylloge, Vol. IV, Sectio I, p. 368 1897, they are immersed in the cortical layer; such very thick, expanded nemathecial layers, as are found in *Tenaciophyllum*, are not present in *Eucheuma*.

*Fam. 2. **Rhodophyllidaceae.***

Gelidiopsis Schmitz.

1. **Gelidiopsis scoparia** (Mont. et Mill.) Schmitz.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions IV, 1952, p. 26, figs. 13—14.

Of this species some larger specimens, up to about 10—12 cm high, with more slender thalli and without or with much reduced fanlike broadenings out of the thallus when it becomes ramified are contained in two collections recently received.

Both are taken from "base of large rocks". Most probably they have been growing in a more sheltered locality.

Mauritius: Point aux Sables, 24-4-51, G. Morin, no. 1114. Same locality: 22-6-51, R. E. V. no. 1146.

*Fam. 3. **Plocamiaceae.***

Plocamium (Lamour.) Lyngbye.

1. **Plocamium Telfairiae** Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 64.

Some small specimens received recently are referable to this species.

The collector writes about them: "usually epiphytic."

Mauritius: Riambel, 8-12-50, R. E. V. no. 1002.

2. **Plocamium cornutum** (Turn.) Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 64.

Some fine specimens of this species have recently been received from Mauritius.

As to the locality it is said: "Reef near Ile aux Aigrettes."

Mauritius: Mahébourg, 8-3-51, R. E. V. no. 1063.

Fam. 4. Sarcodiaceae.

Sarcodia G. Ag.

1. **Sarcodia ceylanica** Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 66, fig. 34; Additions II, 1950, p. 21, figs. 7—8.

var. *mauritiana* nov. var.

Planta caespitosa, ex surculis erectis ca. 6 cm altis, basi simplicibus a medio fere sursum repetite pseudodichotomis formata. Lobuli ultimi ca. 1—2 mm lati, obtusi.

Of this, as it seems, highly variable species I have formerly seen only some rather poorly developed specimens in most cases surely cast ashore, and—as pointed out in Additions II, p. 21—a great variability prevails among the specimens, which makes it difficult to clear up the specific value of them.

Among the specimens I have formerly seen, a single small female specimen from Jadin's collection agrees quite well with the specimens of Harvey's Alg. Ceylon. Exsicc, no. 27, and Kützing's figure in Tab. Phycologicae, vol. 19, p. 12, pl. 33 a, b.

Meanwhile in a collection of algae lately received some few better developed specimens of *Sarcodia* are found, which show a likeness to some of those which I have formerly seen from Mauritius, but which in reality are rather different from the form from Ceylon.

The collection contains 3 specimens of this form (no. 1037); to judge from the largest one of these (Fig. 13), the others are fragments only, the plant must be presumed to have had a basal disc from which a number of erect flat shoots arise, thus forming a small tuft about 6—7 cm high; these shoots are, in a dried condition, about $\frac{1}{2}$—1 cm broad near the base, when alive surely somewhat more, first undivided but from about their middle they become furcated several times, the lobes after each furcation becoming narrower in the way that the uppermost lobes reach a breadth of only 1—2 mm; the uppermost apices are broadly rounded.

This description shows that the form here mentioned differs much from that of Kützing quoted above; and it is also very different from the small form I have mentioned in Additions II, p. 22, fig. 7.

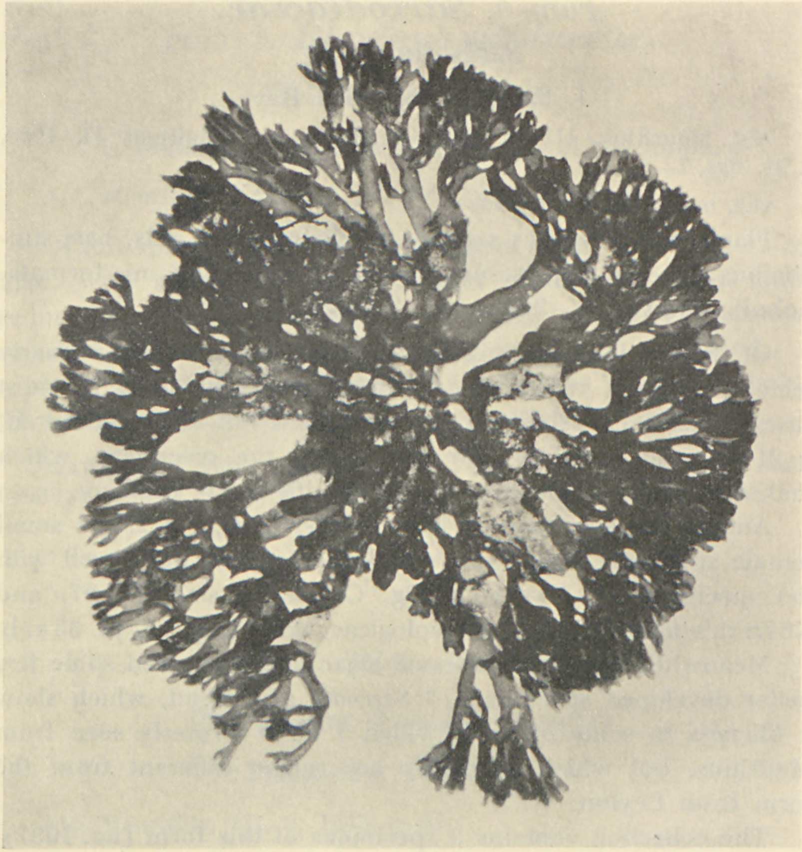


Fig. 13. *Sarcodia ceylanica* Harv. var. *mauritiana* nov. var. (× about $^4/_5$).

That there are upon the whole very deviating opinions about the species of this genus also appears from Kylin's observations on *Sarcodia ceylanica,* l. c. p. 56, 1932. There is no doubt that several of the species of *Sarcodia* ought to be systematically worked through upon new and abundant material.

Accordingly I shall restrict myself to considering the specimens in question as belonging to a special variety, only calling them var. *mauritiana* as mentioned above.

As to the locality of the specimens it is said: "On reef exposed to strong surf."

Mauritius: Riambel near Souillac, 8-2-51, G. Morin, no. 1037.

2. **Sarcodia multifida** nov. spec.

Frons ca. 10 cm alta, usque ad 1.5 mm crassa, carnoso-membranacea, lubrice flexilis. Axis in parte basali distinctus, planus, segmentis marginalibus plus minus ramosis et proliferis instructus, sursum gradatim indistinctus, teres, ramellos et prolificationes undique gerens. Apices ramellorum obtusi.

Color plantae in sicco obscure ruber.

Tetrasporangis in superficie thalli formata, zonatim divisa.

Mauritius: Blue Bay, 8-5-51, R. E. V. no. 1120.

The habit of the few specimens of this plant (Fig. 14), which moreover all seem to originate from the same tuft (no basal discs were found) is so deviating from the specimens hitherto described of this genus, that, in spite of the defective material, I take them to be representatives of a new species of this genus.

When asking Miss L. M. Newton, British Museum (cf. Additions, IV, 1952, p. 30), for information about *Sarcodia Gathyae* (J. Ag.) Kylin I took the opportunity to send a specimen of the plant discussed here to her requesting her most kindly to compare it with specimens of *Sarcodia* found in the herbarium there. Miss Newton most kindly informed me that no specimens of *Sarcodia* in the Herbarium of the British Museum nor of *Dicurella* and *Trematocarpus* had any likeness to the specimen in question.

As my supposition to have to do with a new species thus was supported I shall now give a description of the plant based especially upon some fragments of it preserved in formol and seawater.

Most probably the plant forms a dense tuft, about 10 cm high, composed of a number of erect shoots issuing from a flat disc. In the lower part of these shoots a main stem is recognizable, in the upper parts none. This stem is flattened and in the largest specimens lowermost about 1 cm broad and about $1\frac{1}{2}$ mm thick, a transverse section of it being elongated oblong; in the dried specimens it is only half this breadth. Upwards in the thallus the main stem becomes less broad and in the upper part it is not recognizable. Below, the branches and branchlets issue from the edges of the main stems, higher up, when the

Fig. 14. *Sarcodia multifida* nov. spec. (× 1).

stem becomes terete, in all directions. The uppermost branches and branchlets are about 1 mm thick only.

The ramification is very irregular and mostly very dense, branches and branchlets issuing without any order. The tips of the thallus are in a dried condition subacute, in the specimens preserved in formol obtuse.

The thallus is very flexible and slippery to judge from the fragments preserved in formol and seawater. The colour of the specimens preserved in the latter is dark red, that of the dried specimens nearly black brown.

Anatomically the present species agrees with the figure of a transverse section of the thallus of *Sarcodia ceylanica* in Part III, 2, 1943, p. 66. In the peripheral part of the thallus the contents of the cells are stellately contracted as is the case in several of the species of this genus.

The specimens are tetrasporic.

About the locality it is said: "on reef exposed to strong surf."

Fam. 5. Gracilariaceae.

Gracilaria Grev.

1. **Gracilaria dura** (Ag.) J. Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, Additions III, 1951, p. 41, pl. VII.

In the paper quoted above I referred some specimens of *Gracilaria* to this species which are characteristic by the presence of unilaterally placed, short branchlets issuing here and there in short rows from the main branches. Some specimens, which are in good accordance with those of which a single one is reproduced in the paper quoted above, were found in a collection of algae received recently.

As to the locality it is said: "Sandy lagoon, exposed at low tide."

Mauritius: Ile aux Aigrettes, 14-1-52, G. Morin, nos. 1205—1206.

2. Gracilaria Millardetii (Mont.) J. Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 2, 1943, p. 72, figs. 36—40. Addit. II, 1950, p. 26, figs. 11—19.

Some surely loose-lying specimens of rather variable shape with broad or slender thalli of this very polymorphous species are contained in a collection of algae recently received from Mauritius. That they have been loose-lying upon the bottom and because of this have given out slender elongated proliferations from the old thallus, also appears from the information about the locality: "Lagoon, sandy bottom."

Mauritius: Near Mahébourg, 15-11-51, G. Morin, no. 1175.

3. Gracilaria multifurcata nov. sp.

Thallus cartilagineus, caespitosus, ca. 4—5 cm altus (basis deest), compressus, ca. 2 mm latus et 0,5 mm crassus, repetite furcatus, superne magis irregulariter ramosus, interdum unilateralis.

Fig. 15. *Gracilaria multifurcata* nov. spec. (Natural size).

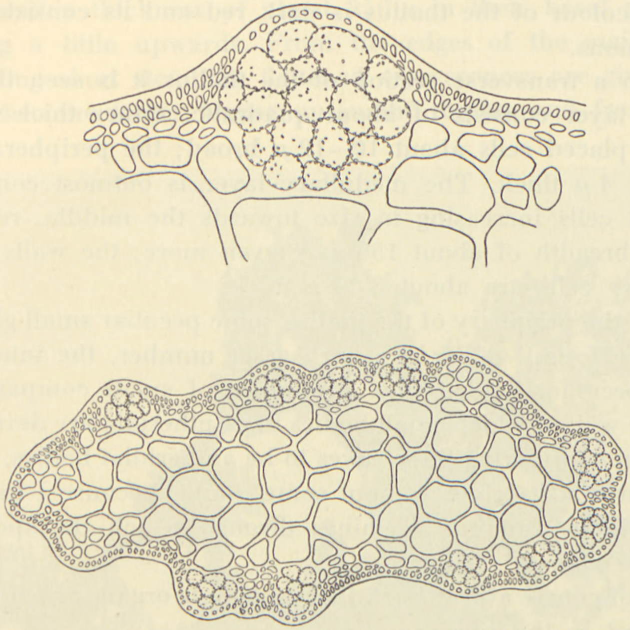


Fig. 16. *Gracilaria multifurcata* nov. spec. *a*, transverse section of a lobe of the thallus with antheridial caves. *b*, an antheridial cave more magnified ($\times$ *a* = 60, *b* = 165).

Color thalli in sicco ruber.

Stratum corticale ex cellulis subaequalibus, subquadratis, ca. 10—12 μ latis, densissime collatis formatum; medulla in medio thalli ex cellulis subrotundatis, ad 150 μ latis composita.

Cystocarpia et tetrasporangia ignota. Antheridia cavernas subglobosas, ca. 200 μ latas, ad dimidium in thallum immersas, in cameras minutissimas parietibus tenuissimis divisas formantia.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 22-6-51, R. E. V. no. 1149.

This nice little *Gracilaria* (Fig. 15) forms extensive cushions about 4 cm high upon exposed rocks. The thallus is repeatedly irregularly furcated; it is flattened, about 1—2 mm broad and ½ mm thick. The angles of the furcations are nearly right. Uppermost in the thallus the ramications are more irregular, often unilateral. The thallus keeps nearly the same breadth upwards, tapering gradually towards the tips.

The colour of the thallus is dark red and its consistency is cartaliginous.

Upon a transverse section of the thallus it is seen that the cortical layer consists of about quadratic, rather thick-walled, densely placed cells about 10—12 μ broad; the peripheral wall is about 4 μ thick. The medullary layer is outmost composed of small cells increasing in size towards the middle, reaching there a breadth of about 150 μ or even more; the walls of the medullary cells are about 3—4 μ thick.

Near the periphery of the thallus some peculiar small globular caves are found, often in a very great number, the interior of which become divided into a number of small compartments from the wall of which small bodies like antheridia are developed.

When considering these caves to be antheridial bodies, I must point out that it is not without some doubt, because I have not been able to find any openings through which the spermatia might be able to escape.

It is of course a drawback that no female organs or tetraspores are found in the specimens.

Regarding the locality it is said: "Forms large cushions on rocks near shore in calm water."

*Fam. 6. **Phyllophoraceae.***

Gymnogongrus Mont.

1. **Gymnogongrus** spec.

Two small fragments of a *Gymnogongrus* (Fig. 17) are found in a collection of algae received lately from Mauritius and because of the scarce material I prefer to let them remain unnamed, giving only a short description of them accompanied by a habit figure

As the base is lacking in the specimens any more exact description of the habit and its way of being fixed to the substratum is excluded, but most probably it has formed a low, about 5 cm high, dense tuft upon rocks fixed to them by a disc.

The thallus is flat, the main stems having a breadth of about

1 mm and a thickness of about 250 μ in their basal part decreasing a little upwards. From the edges of the main stems alternating short stem-like flattened excrescences are given out, which become larger higher up in the thallus and from these

Fig. 17. *Gymnogongrus* spec. (× 1½).

again most irregularly shaped outgrowths and lobes issue; the result of this is that the uppermost parts of the thallus become irregularly shaped clumps composed of the densely packed and intertwisted branchlets and proliferations.

A transverse section of the thallus shows that the cortical layer is composed of very densely packed small, square or more roundish cells, smallest at the periphery, innermost larger. The medulla is formed by rather densely placed filaments, thinner near the periphery, thicker innermost, and woven irregularly together.

The specimens are tetrasporic; the cruciately divided sporangia are found in the cortical layer of the irregularly shaped excrescences given out from the upper parts of the thallus.

As to the locality it is said only: "at the base of large rocks."

The specimens may show some likeness to *Chondrus duriusculus* Kütz. Tab. Phycologicae, pl. 62, figs. e, f = *Gymnogongrus corymbosus* J. Ag. from Cape.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 22-6-51, R. E. V. no. 1148.

Rhodymeniales.

*Fam. 1. **Rhodymeniaceae.***

Coelothrix Børgs.

1. **Coelothrix indica** Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 3, 1944, p. 14, figs. 9—11. Addit. II, 1950, p. 40, figs. 20—21. Additions III, 1951, p. 42.

Several specimens, some of which with stichidia, are included in a batch of algae received lately.

As to the localities it is said: no. 1097, "growing on coral in lagoon"; no. 1104, "growing on large rocks submerged at low tide"; no. 1152, "calm water, attached to rocks, exposed at low tide."

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 4-4-51, G. Morin, no. 1097. Same locality, 26-4-51, G. Morin, no. 1104. Same locality, 26-6-51, R. E. V. no. 1152.

Ceramiales.

Fam. 1. Ceramiaceae.

Subfam. 1. Ceramieae.

Ceramiella nov. gen.

Generibus *Ceramii* et *Centroceratis* proxima, facie et structura persimilis, sed incremento thalli per cellulam apicalem permagnam segmentaque disciformia deorsum formata progresso ut ramificatione non subdichotoma sed per ramos endogenes perfecta dispar. Spinae nullae.

1. **Ceramiella Huysmansii** (Weber v. Bosse) nov. comb.

Ceramium Huysmansii Weber v. Bosse, Algues Siboga, 1923, p. 322, fig. 115.

This little species together with other small epiphytes was found upon fragments of *Digenea simplex* (Fig. 12). It forms soft tufts reaching a height of 2—3 cm and had in a dried condition a scarlet red colour.

As to its structure *Ceramiella* agrees in some respects quite well with that of *Ceramium-Centroceras*, but in others it differs essentially from these two very closely related genera by its monopodial growth brought about by a large apical cell from the basal part of which gradually flat, disc-formed segments are cut off (Fig. 19 a). By longitudinal and transverse divisions of these segments a tissue is formed which consists of a very large thick-walled cell in the middle of the thallus and is surrounded by a coherent cortical layer, thus rather like that of *Centroceras*. The central cells are cylindrical or in older and fertile cells spindle-shaped, up to about 200 μ long and 70 μ broad, and connected with the adjoining cells through large pores. This central part is covered by a cortical layer composed of rectangular cells about 20 μ broad and 5—7 μ high, arranged mostly in rather regular transverse rows (compare Mme Weber's fig. 115 b), but also more irregularly (Fig. 19 b)[1].

[1] In some species, which surely are referable to *Ceramiella*, no coherent cortical layer is found.

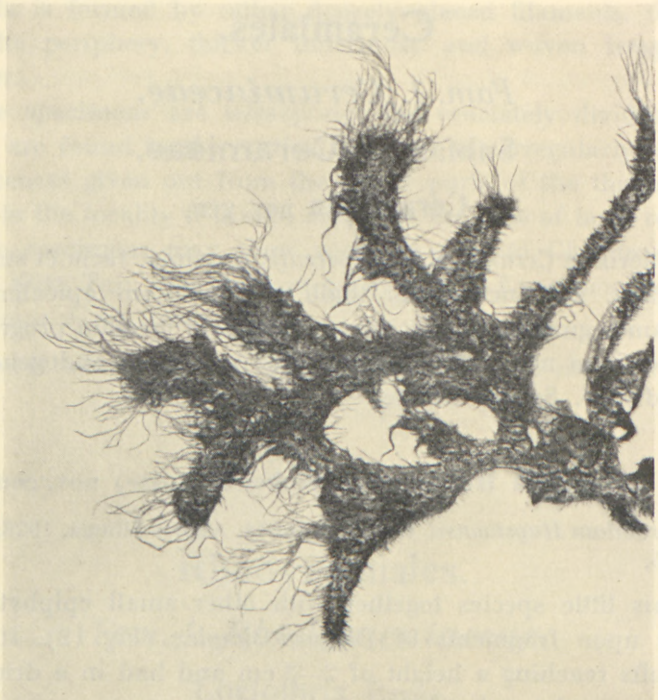


Fig. 18. *Ceramiella Huysmansii* (Weber v. Bosse) nov. comb. as an epiphyte upon *Digenea simplex* (× 1).

The scarce ramification is brought about by endogenous branches issuing here and there from the apical ends of the large central cells and grow into long shorts (Fig. 19 d).

As to the base I have found only decumbent filaments fixed to the substratum by means of rhizoids issuing in small tufts from the nodes; compare Mme Weber's Fig. 115 a, *l. c.*

In the fertile filaments the joints of the thallus become more or less spindle-shaped. Only tetrasporangia are found (Fig. 19c). These are as a rule developed at the nodes, but now and then also a single one may be found near the middle of the joints; 1—3 sometimes up to 5 sporangia may be found in a whirl at the nodes. The sporangia are globular or oblong, rather large, about 50 μ broad with thick walls.

They are tetrahedrally divided, sometimes also more irregularly. The fertile joints are often found in long rows in the specimens.

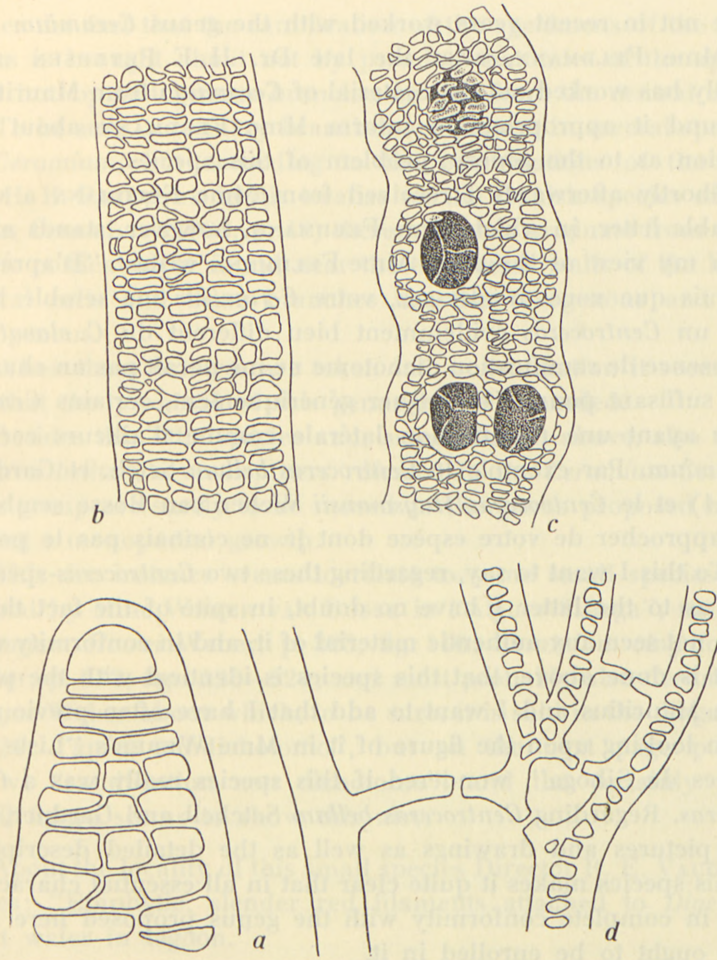


Fig. 19. *Ceramiella Huysmansii* (Web. v. Bosse) Børgs. *a*, apex of the thallus; *b*, part of the thallus; *c*, fragment of fertile thallus with sporangia; *d*, transverse section of the base of a branch (a, × ca. 500; b, c, × ca. 100; d, × ca. 300).

As appears from this description the plant from Mauritius must be said to be in good accordance with that of Mme Weber, even if I have not been able to compare it with authentic material.

On the other hand it must also be admitted that because of its monopodial growth and its endogenous ramification, it differs so much from the way in which these features are produced in the *Ceramium-Centroceras* group, that it seemed difficult for me to refer the plant to any of these genera. And because I have not in recent years worked with the genus *Ceramium* and as Mme Feldmann, after the late Dr. H. E. Petersen most kindly has worked out the material of *Ceramium* from Mauritius, I found it appropriate to inform Mme Feldmann about my opinion as to the generic problem of this species.

Shortly afterwards I received from Mme Feldmann a very amiable letter, in which Mme Feldmann, however, stands aloof from my view of the alga. Mme Feldmann writes: "D'après le croquis que vous m'adressez, votre *Ceramieae* me semble bien être un *Centroceras* évidemment bien different du *C. clavatum.* L'absence de ramification dichotome ne me paraît pas un charactère suffisant pour le distinguer génériquement, certains *Centroceras* ayant une ramification latérale comme d'ailleurs certain *Ceramium.* Par exemple le *Centroceras bellum* Setch. et Gardner (1924) et le *Centroceras Huysmansii* Weber van Bosse semblent se rapprocher de votre espèce dont je ne connais pas le port."

To this I want to say, regarding these two *Centroceras*-species, that as to the latter I have no doubt, in spite of the fact that I have not seen any authentic material of it, and in conformity with what is done above, that this species is identical with the plant from Mauritius and I want to add that I have often previously, when looking upon the figure of it in Mme Weber's "Liste des Algues du Siboga", wondered if this species really was a *Centroceras.* Regarding *Centroceras bellum* Setchell and Gardner, the fine pictures and drawings as well as the detailed description of this species makes it quite clear that in all essential characters it is in complete conformity with the genus proposed here and thus ought to be enrolled in it.

In her letter Mme Feldmann adds: "Chez le *C. clavulatum* la dichotomie très regulière, ne doit pas être une dichotomie vraie due à la division longitudinale de la cellule apicale mais une fausse dichotomie comme chez les *Ceramium*; cette fausse dichotomie se faisent tout près du sommet du filament donnant l'aspect d'une dichotomie vraie." To this I want to say that there is hardly any doubt that the division of the apical cell in *Centroceras* is like that of *Ceramium.*

But from what is the case there to that of *Ceramiella,* in which no longitudinal division of the apical cell at all takes place, is an essential difference and as a consequence of this comes the fact that the ramification of the specimens of the new genus is brought about not by pseudodichotomies of the apical cells but by endogenous branches issuing from the central cells.

To be sure, secondary branches are present in several species of *Ceramium*, but according to the examinations of the late Dr. H. E. PETERSEN in his treatise on the Danish species of the genus *Ceramium* (1908, p. 48) these branches originate from cells in the cortical layer found near the transverse walls of the large central cells and these branches are thus exogenous and not endogenous.

When these features are taken into consideration it seems to me that the proposal of this genus is well founded.

Besides this little species and, as mentioned above, also *Centroceras bellum*, several others referred to the *Ceramium-Centroceras* group are surely to be moved to the genus proposed here, having a monopodial growth.

This for instance seems to relate to some small species described by Mme WEBER VAN BOSSE in "Algues Siboga", namely *Ceramium Howei* Weber, p. 323, fig. 116; *Ceramium cingulatum* Weber, p. 332, figs. 123—124; and most probably also *Ceramium Maryae* Weber about which, to be sure, it is said in the diagnosis p. 324: "apice subdichotomo", but on the next page p. 325 below: "ramification non dichotome", and the certainly very small figure seems to show this also.

About the locality of this small species Director R. E. VAUGHAN writes: "Epiphytic, slender red filaments attached to *Digenea*, quiet water in lagoon."

Mauritius: Flic-en-Flacq, 22-2-51, R. E. V. no. 1056.

Centroceras Kütz.

1. **Centroceras clavulatum** (Ag.) Mont.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1945, p. 10.

Having formerly seen only small and poorly developed specimens of this species from the island I have in material received lately been able to examine some very good, even fertile specimens.

Mme GÉNEVIÈVE FELDMANN in her very valuable monographic examination of the Mediterranean *Ceramiaceae*, has given a detailed description of this species there. According to what is said here (p. 339), this species in the Mediterranean Sea propagates only vegetatively, while in the tropics it has tetrasporangia as well as sexual organs.

In the material from Mauritius I have found only tetrasporic specimens; in these, like those described and pictured by Mme FELDMANN upon specimens from the West Indies, the sporangia are annularly arranged round the nodes.

In some of the specimens the axial cells are much elongated, and likewise the cortical ones are more or less elongated. In one collection, no. 979, the specimens besides spines had long hairs, similar to those found in *Centroceras leptacanthum* Kütz. from the Mediterranean Sea; compare KÜTZING in Tab. Phycol., vol. 13, p. 7, pl. 18, fig. f. In a note about this form KÜTZING writes on p. 7: "Zwischen den schlanken Stacheln zeigt Fig. f auch feine Haare, welche den Spitzen ein zottiges Ansehen geben." KÜTZING has in this volume pictured a row of new species with references to these characters; they deserve surely to be taken up for a more detailed examination, when good material is to be had.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Cannoniers, 16-2-46, R. E. V. no. 523. Ilôt Barkly, 18-3-46, G. MORIN, no. 550. Pointe aux Caves, 1-12-51, R. E. V. no. 1184. Without locality and dates, C. NEYROLES. Riambel near Souillac, 23-11-50, G. MORIN, no. 979.

Subfam. 2. Spyridieae.

Spyridia Harv.

1. **Spyridia filamentosa** (Wulf.) Harv.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1945, p. 11; Additions, IV, 1952, p. 52.

A rather robust form with short ramuli in conformity with my fig. 234 in Mar. Alg. D. W. I., p. 234, was contained in a collection received lately.

Mauritius: Ilôt Barkly, 30-10-51, G. MORIN, no. 1173.

Subfam. 3. Griffithsieae.

Griffithsia C. Ag.

1. Griffithsia Weber-van-Bosseae Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 1945, p. 17.

Of this little species several fine specimens were found in batches of algae received lately, but most regretiably the material examined was sterile. In the material found originally only tetrasporic and antheridial specimens were found. The specimens reach a height of about 2 cm and the dried specimens have a fine rosy-red colour.

About the localities it is said: no. 1101, "3—4 feet of water at low-tide", and no. 1210: "shallow water near shore."

Mauritius: Pointe aux Sables, 24-4-51, G. Morin, no. 1101. La Preneuse, 12-4-52, R. E. V. no. 1210.

2. Griffithsia subcylindrica Okamura.

Okamura, K., On the Algae from the Island Hatidyo, 1930, p. 99, pl. VIII.

Some few specimens of a *Griffithsia* contained in a gathering of algae received from Mauritius I do not hesitate in referring to this species, even if the Mauritian specimens in some less essential characters differ somewhat from Okamura's description.

The Mauritian specimens form loosely built tufts about 2—3 cm high.

As to the base I have in a few cases found decumbent filaments from which issue unicellular, short rhizoids ending in an irregularly lobed disc, by which the plant was fixed to the substratum. From the upper side of these decumbent filaments erect ones are given out.

The upwards growing filaments are in their lower part ca. 200—300 μ broad and composed of subcylindrical cells, swelled somewhat at their upper ends and about 3 times as long. Upwards in the filaments the cells become gradually slender and less swelled, up to about 1 mm long.

The ramification is rather irregular, mostly alternate, but in some cases no branches are given out and in others two oppositely placed ones are present.

In the material examined I have found tetrasporic and male specimens.

The fertile organs are developed upon the broadly rounded apices of short unicellar branchlets. These are nearly pear-shaped with a broadly rounded, up to 350 μ broad, apex, from the uppermost part of which the tetrasporangia are developed, often in a great number borne upon a small basal cell. The sporangia are protected by a whirl of curved short, robust ramuli, about 8 in number, given out from the upper edge of the mother branchlet.

The antheridial bodies are in a very similar way developed from the broad apex of the branchlets. They are composed of very thin, much divided branchlets in the apices of which the antheridial bodies are developed. As is the case of the sporangia the antheridial bodies are protected by a whirl of short, thick, curved branchlets.

While Okamura compares his new species with *Gr. Schousboei,* it must be said to show also much likeness to *Gr. japonica* Okamura described by Okamura at about the same time in Icones Jap. Algae, vol. VI, p. 28, pl. 270, 1929—32. I shall not, however, enter upon a more thorough comparison with this species, but only point out as a special difference among the species in question that while the fertile branchlets in *Gr. subcylindrica* do not show any further growth, the branchlets in *Gr. japonica,* often produce one or two more cells above the lowermost one.

About the locality Dr. Vaughan writes: "Epiphyte, on stems and leaves of *Cymodocea* spec."

Mauritius: Riambel, 8-12-50, R. E. V.
Geogr. Distr.: Hatidyo, Japan.

*Fam. 2. **Delesseriaceae.***

Subfam. 1. Nitophylleae.

Martensia Hering.

1. Martensia elegans Hering.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1945, p. 27, Additions IV, 1952, p. 63.

In some specimens received lately (no. 1188) an examination has shown that they were female agreeing quite well with the fig. 31 of Svedelius, 1908, l. c. Some other specimens (no. 1213) were tetrasporic.

The first-mentioned specimens were growing in "deep pools exposed to strong currents and waves"; the others were "growing on *Hydroclatrus* in pools".

Mauritius: Pointe aux Caves, 1-12-51, G. Morin, no. 1188, Riambel, 24-7-52, G. Morin, no. 1263.

*Fam. 3. **Rhodomelaceae.***

Subfam. 1. Laurencieae.

Laurencia Lamour.

1. Laurencia flexilis Setchell.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1946, p. 56, figs. 31—33; Additions IV, 1952, p. 66, fig. 33.

Several well prepared specimens of this characteristic species were found in a batch of algae received recently from Mauritius.

As to the locality it is said: "Shallow water near shore. Dark green rather wiry filaments."

Mauritius: Souillac, 31-8-51, R. E. V. no. 1156.

Subfam. 2. Condrieae.

Chondria Harv.

Chondria dasyphylla (Woodw.) Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1945, p. 62.

Some very fine specimens of this species were lately received from Mauritius. Tetrasporic and female specimens were present. The specimens were growing upon "pieces of shell, coral, etc., in a lagoon".

Mauritius: Ile aux Aigrettes, 12-5-52, G. Morin, no. 1221.

Acanthophora Lamour.

1. **Acanthophora spicifera** (Vahl) Børgs.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1915, p. 61.

Since this species was mentioned in the part quoted above a gathering containing several well prepared specimens has been received.

Mauritius: Cassis, 3-8-40, G. Morin, no. 422.

Genus incertae sedis.

Endosiphonia Zanardini.

1. **Endosiphonia clavigera** (Wolny) Falkenberg.

Falkenberg, P., Rhodomelaceen, 1901, p. 568, pl. 13, figs. 1—11. — *Veprecula clavigera* Wolny in Herb. Kiel. *Sphaerococcus horridus* Ag., Spec. Alg., 1821, p. 322. *Gigartina horrida* Grev. Alg. Brittanica, 1830, p. LIX. *Hypnea* (?) *horrida* (Ag.) J. Ag., Nya Alger fr. Mexico, 1847, p. 14. Spec. Alg., vol. II, p. 454; Epicrisis, p. 565. Børgesen, F., Alg. Mauritius, 1943, p. 62, fig. 32; Additional List, II, 1950, p. 15, fig. 4; 1952, p. 28.

In a letter dated March 25, 1952, Miss Linda M. Newton, British Museum, most kindly informed me that in a collection of some miscellaneous undetermined algae found in the Museum a specimen of *Endosiphonia clavigera* from Amber Island, Mauritius, was included. Being at that time occupied with other things I put the letter aside to return to it later.

This I have done now and after seeing FALKENBERG's description and figures of *Endosiphonia clavigera* it became immediately clear to me that *Hypnea* (?) *horrida* (Ag.) J. Ag. was identical to *Endosiphonia clavigera*.

Not only does FALKENBERG's habit figure of the thallus give a very good picture of the plant leaving no doubt about their identity, but also the anatomical structure of the thallus with its 4 pericentral cells round the central axis is the same in both. The peculiarity that the surrounding cells of the medulla are all of the same length as that of the cells of the central axis and of the pericentral cells is also in perfect agreement with the description given by FALKENBERG of the plant; compare my figures, Fig. 32, l. c. While sexual organs are not found in this species, FALKENBERG describes and pictures the stichidia. These are formed scattered or in small groups over the whole surface of the thallus.

An examination of specimens received lately has shown that some are tetrasporic. In contrast to the coarse, robust thallus the stichidia are comparatively small and this is the reason for the fact that they are easily overlooked. As described by FALKENBERG they have a short monosiphonous stipe. The rather large ball-shaped tetrasporangia make the stichidia irregularly spirally swelled. The stichidia are about 300 μ long and 70—100 μ broad, and the tetraspores have a diameter of about 50 μ.

I have not observed any sexual organs.

In case C. AGARDH's name of the species is older than WOLNY's, its specific name ought to be that of C. AGARDH.

Mauritius: Pointe aux Roches, 22-9-52, G. MORIN, no. 1294.

Subfam. 3. Polysiphorieae.

Digenea Ag.

Digenea simplex (Wulf.) Ag.

Alg. Mauritius, III, 4, 1945, p. 39.

Having only once before met with this species, surely common in the island, I shall mention here that it was present in a collection of algae received lately and gathered because as usual it is covered by small epiphytes. An examination has shown that the specimen is tetrasporic in very good agreement with my fig. 281 (Mar. Alg. D. W. I., vol. II, p. 281) with the exception that the sporangia were more oblong. In the same paper, p. 469, I have given a figure of the antheridial bodies of this species (Fig. 427).

Mauritius: Flic-en-Flacq, 29-2-51, R. E. V. no. 1056.

Roschera Sonder.

1. **Roschera condensata** Weber v. Bosse.

Weber van Bosse, A., Algues Siboga, p. 359, pl. V, fig. 3.

A gathering received lately (no. 1179) has proved to be a *Roschera* which seems to be in good conformity with Mme Weber's description of *R. condensata* (Fig. 20).

The characteristic feature of this species is that the main branches are very densely covered by the likewise densely

Fig. 20. *Roschera condensata* Web. v. Bosse. A specimen (× 1).

branched short shoots; in the lower part of this tissue, the tips of the ramuli may here and there adhere to those of the neighbouring branchlets, forming in this way a very dense coat round the axis of the main branches. Above this the uppermost free, dome-like apices of the short-shoots protrude, giving the outline of the main branches a wavy appearance.

The specimens are tetrasporic; the sporangia are formed in the basal cells of the ramuli; as a rule only a single one is developed at the base of each ramulus. The sporangia are large, having a diameter of 75—80 μ.

Trichoblasts were not found in the specimens; they occurred numerously in a male specimen of *R. glomerulata* (Ag.) Web. v. Bosse gathered in the Arabian Sea near Dwarka in India; cf. Børgesen, "Some Indian Rhodophyceae", in Kew Bulletin, 1931, No. 1, p. 17, fig. 11.

The colour of the specimens is dark reddish-brown.

The plant is most probably found in an exposed locality, but as to the locality it is said only: "2—3 feet of water at low tide."

Mauritius: Pointe aux Caves, 1-12-51, G. Morin, no. 1179.
Geogr. Distrb.: Malayan Archipelago, New Caledonia.

List of Literature.

Additions to the lists in former parts.

EGEROD, LOIS EUBANK, An Analysis of the Siphonous Chlorophycophyta with special reference to the *Siphonocladales*, *Siphonales* and *Dasycladales* of Hawaii. University of California Publications in Botany, pp. 325—454, plates 29—42, 23 figures in Text. Berkeley and Los Angeles 1952.

OKAMURA, K., On the Algae from the Island Hatidyo. Records of Oceanographic Works in Japan. Vol. II, No. 2, 1920. Tokyo.

PAPENFUSS, G. F., Notes on South African Marine Algae III. The Journal of South African Botany, Vol. XVIII, 1952.

SAUVAGEAU, C., Note Préliminaire sur les Algues Marines du Golfe de Gascogne. Journal de Botanique. Paris 1897.

TAYLOR, W. R., Pacific Marine Algae of the Allan Hancock Expeditions to the Galapagos Islands. Allan Hancock Pacific Expeditions. Vol. 12. Los Angeles, California 1945.

— Plants of Bikini and other Northern Marshall Islands. Ann Arbor, Michigan 1950.

Index of Species

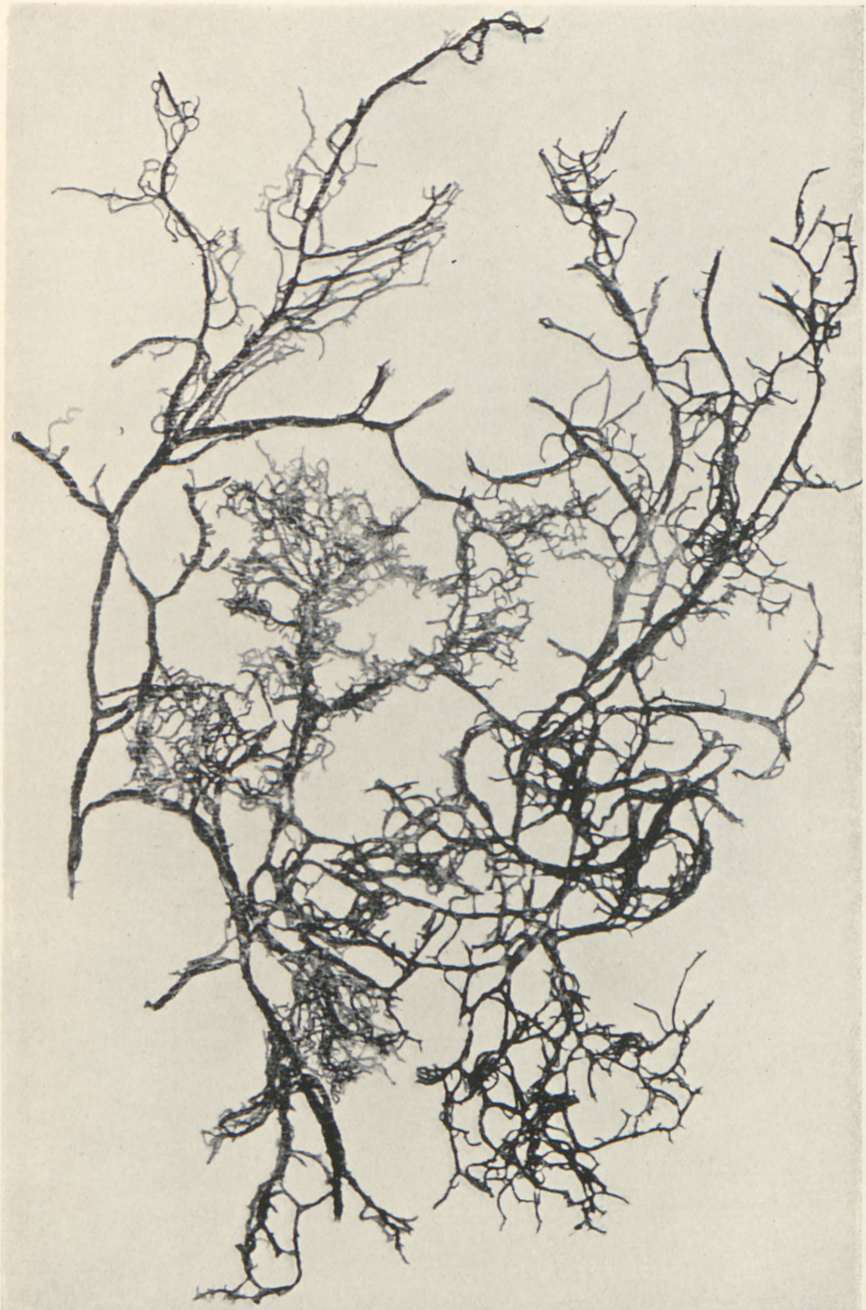
together with some essential synonyms, the latter in italics.

Chlorophyceae.

Phaeophyceae.

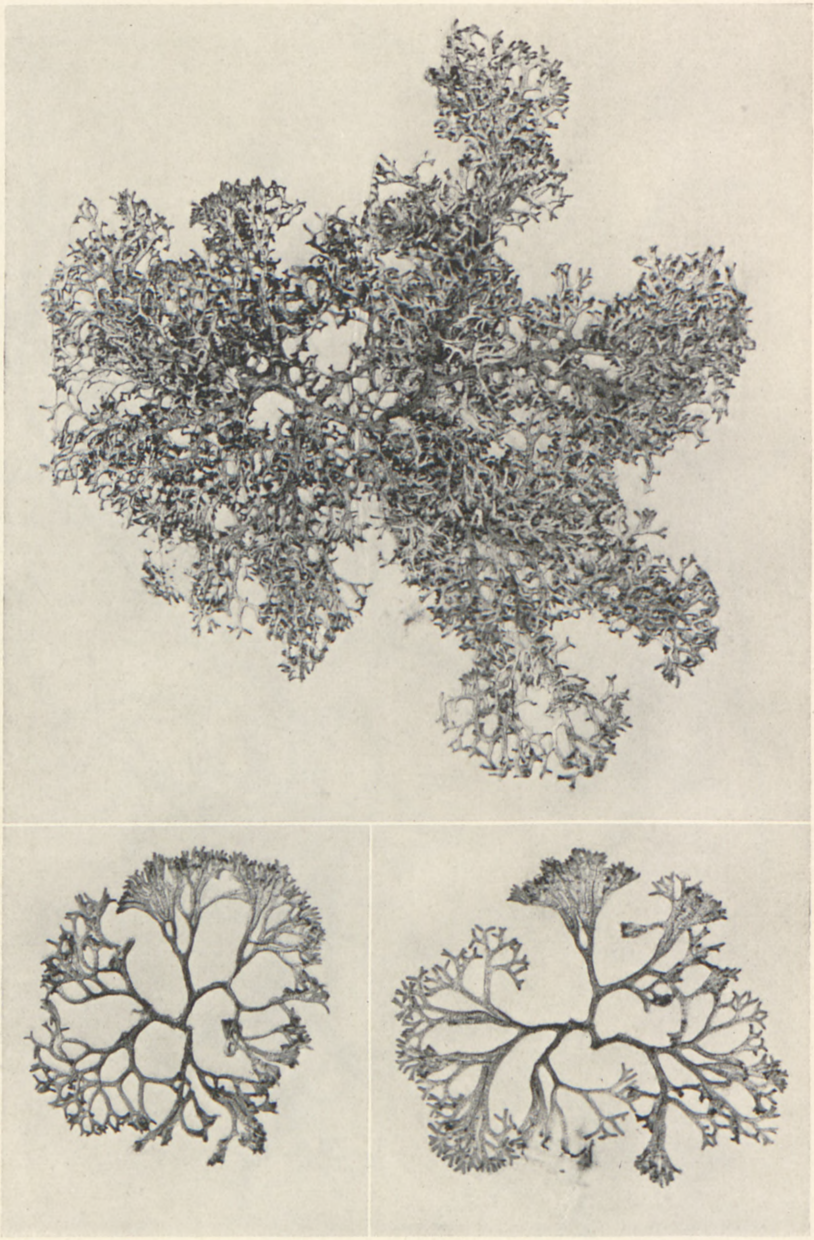
Rhodophyceae.

Indleveret til selskabet den 10. april 1953.
Færdig fra trykkeriet den 27. juli 1953.

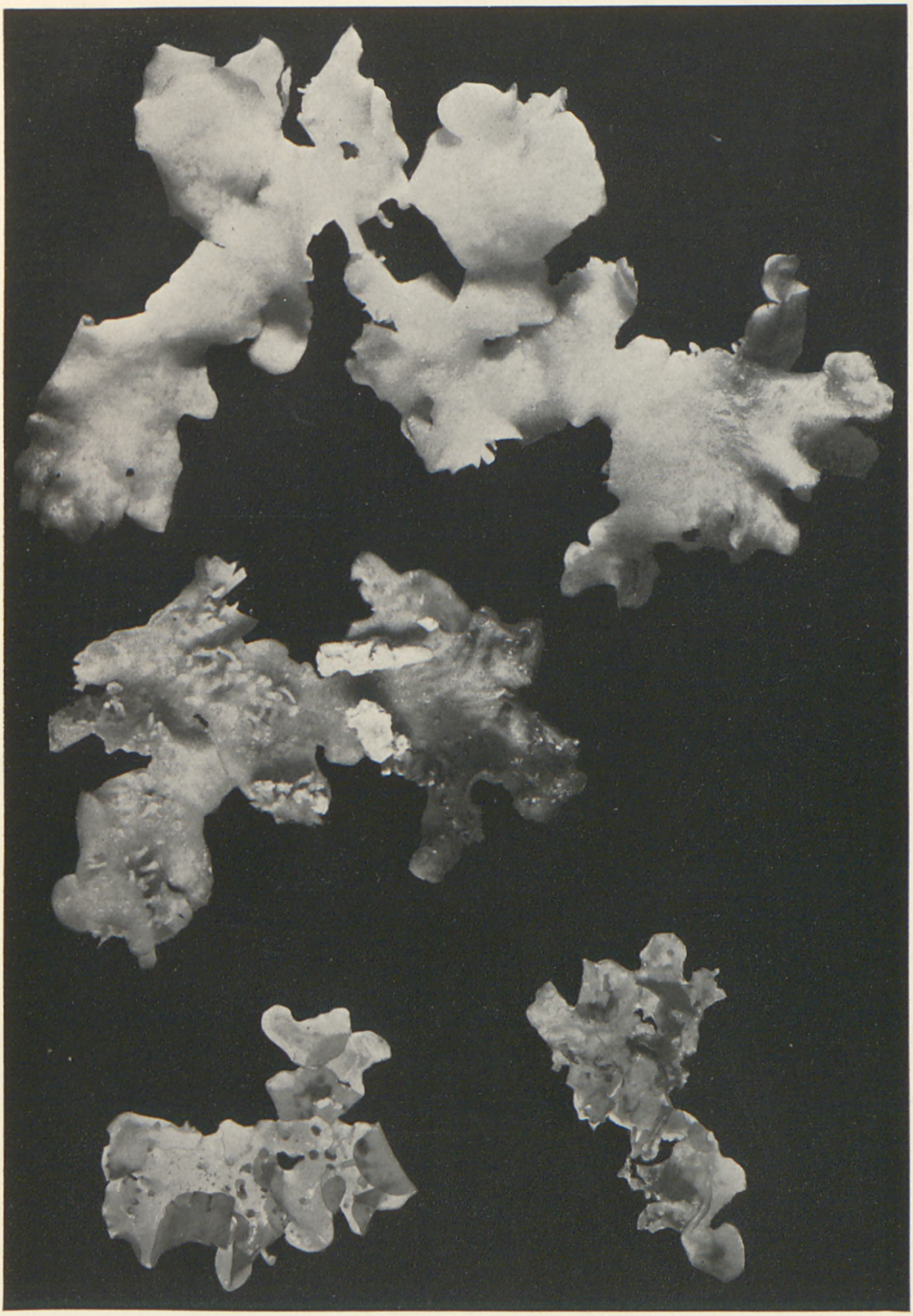


Nemacystus erythraeus (J. Ag.) Sauv. Fragments of the thallus (× 1).

PLATE II



Above: A specimen of *Liagora valida* Harv.
Below: Two fragments of *Liagora bella* nov. spec. (× 1).



Above: Two specimens of *Tenaciphyllum lobatum* nov. spec., the uppermost seen from above, that below showing the underside with the rootlike processes.
Below: Two specimens of *Tenaciphyllum rotundilobum* nov. spec. (× 1).